NATOPS
INSTRUMENT FLIGHT MANUAL

THIS PUBLICATION SUPERSEDES NAVAIR 00-80T-112 DATED 15 OCTOBER 2002.

ISSUED BY AUTHORITY OF THE CHIEF OF NAVAL OPERATIONS AND UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE COMMANDER, NAVAL AIR SYSTEMS COMMAND.

DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
NAVAL AIR SYSTEMS COMMAND
RADM WILLIAM A. MOFFETT BUILDING
47123 BUSE ROAD, BLDG 2272
PATUXENT RIVER, MD 20670-1547

15 November 2006

LETTER OF PROMULGATION

1. The Naval Air Training and Operating Procedures Standardization (NATOPS) Program is a positive approach toward improving combat readiness and achieving a substantial reduction in the aircraft mishap rate. Standardization, based on professional knowledge and experience, provides the basis for development of an efficient and sound operational procedure. The standardization program is not planned to stifle individual initiative, but rather to aid the Commanding Officer in increasing the unit's combat potential without reducing command prestige or responsibility.

2. This manual standardizes ground and flight procedures but does not include tactical doctrine. Compliance with the stipulated manual requirements and procedures is mandatory except as authorized herein. In order to remain effective, NATOPS must be dynamic and stimulate rather than suppress individual thinking. Since aviation is a continuing, progressive profession, it is both desirable and necessary that new ideas and new techniques be expeditiously evaluated and incorporated if proven to be sound. To this end, Commanding Officers of aviation units are authorized to modify procedures contained herein, in accordance with the waiver provisions established by OPNAV Instruction 3710.7, for the purpose of assessing new ideas prior to initiating recommendations for permanent changes. This manual is prepared and kept current by the users in order to achieve maximum readiness and safety in the most efficient and economical manner. Should conflict exist between the training and operating procedures found in this manual and those found in other publications, this manual will govern.

3. Checklists and other pertinent extracts from this publication necessary to normal operations and training should be made and carried for use in naval aircraft.

S. R. EASTBURG
Captain, United States Navy
By direction of
Commander, Naval Air Systems Command

INTERIM CHANGE SUMMARY

The following Interim Changes have been canceled or previously incorporated into this manual.

INTERIM CHANGE NUMBER(S)	REMARKS/PURPOSE

The following Interim Changes have been incorporated into this Change/Revision.

INTERIM CHANGE NUMBER(S)	REMARKS/PURPOSE

Interim Changes Outstanding — To be maintained by the custodian of this manual.

INTERIM CHANGE NUMBER(S)	ORIGINATOR/DATE (or DATE/TIME GROUP)	PAGES AFFECTED	REMARKS/PURPOSE

RECORD OF CHANGES

Change No. and Date of Change	Date of Entry	Page Count Verified by (Signature)

NATOPS INSTRUMENT FLIGHT MANUAL

Contents

Page No.

Page No.

PART III — PHYSIOLOGY OF INSTRUMENT FLIGHT

CHAPTER 7 — INTRODUCTION TO INSTRUMENT FLIGHT PHYSIOLOGY

CHAPTER 8 — SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

CHAPTER 9 — FACTORS THAT INCREASE THE POTENTIAL FOR SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

CHAPTER 10 — MEDICATIONS, ALCOHOL, AND NUTRITION

Page No.

CHAPTER 15 — PERFORMANCE INSTRUMENTS

CHAPTER 16 — POSITION INSTRUMENTS

Page No.

PART V — ATTITUDE INSTRUMENT FLIGHT

CHAPTER 17 — ATTITUDE INSTRUMENT FLYING

CHAPTER 18 — INSTRUMENT FLIGHT MANEUVERS

Page No.

CHAPTER 19 — INSTRUMENT PATTERNS AND CONFIDENCE MANEUVERS

CHAPTER 20 — UNUSUAL ATTITUDES

PART VI — NAVIGATIONAL AIDS/FACILITIES AND PROCEDURES

CHAPTER 21 — VHF OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE (VOR)

Page No.

CHAPTER 25 — RADAR APPROACHES

CHAPTER 26 — GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)

CHAPTER 30 — TERMINAL PROCEDURES

Page No.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

Page No.

Page No.

CHAPTER 8 — SPATIAL DISORIENTATION

CHAPTER 14 — ATTITUDE INSTRUMENTS

CHAPTER 15 — PERFORMANCE INSTRUMENTS

CHAPTER 16 — POSITION INSTRUMENTS

Page No.

CHAPTER 17 — ATTITUDE INSTRUMENT FLYING

CHAPTER 18 — INSTRUMENT FLIGHT MANEUVERS

CHAPTER 19 — INSTRUMENT PATTERNS AND CONFIDENCE MANEUVERS

Page No.

CHAPTER 20 — UNUSUAL ATTITUDES

CHAPTER 21 — VHF OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE (VOR)

Page No.

CHAPTER 22 — TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION (TACAN)

CHAPTER 23 — ADF, UHF/ADF, MARKER BEACONS

CHAPTER 24 — INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM (ILS)

Page No.

CHAPTER 25 — RADAR APPROACHES

CHAPTER 26 — GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)

CHAPTER 29 — EN ROUTE PROCEDURES

CHAPTER 30 — TERMINAL PROCEDURES

APPENDIX A — REFERENCES

Bibliography

1. AFMAN Instrument Flight Manual.

2. Cohen, M. M., et al., “Disorienting Effects of Aircraft Catapult Launchings,” Aerospace Med. 44(1): 37-39, 1973.

3. Cohen M. M., “Disorienting Effects of Aircraft Catapult Launchings: II. Visual and Postural Contributions.” Aviat. Space Environ. Med. 47(1):39-41, 1976.

4. Cohen, M. M., “Disorienting Effects of Aircraft Catapult Launchings: III. Cockpit Displays and Piloting Performance.” Aviat. Space Environ. Med. 48(9):797-804, 1977.

5. Cutting, W. C., Guide to Drug Hazards in Aviation Medicine. Federal Aviation Agency, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1962.

6. Dhenin, G. (Ed.), Aviation Medicine — Physiology and Human Factors. Tri-Med Books Limited, London, 1978, p 405-467.

7. Flying Training — Instrument Flying. AF Manual 51-37, 15 October 1982, Chapter 7, “Spatial Disorientation,” p.7-1 to 7-14.

8. Gillingham, K. K. and Krutz, R. W., Effects of the Abnormal Acceleratory Environment of Flight. Aeromedical Review 10-74, SAM-TR-74-57, p. 55-82.

9. Lawrence, F. H. and Dully, F. E., Jr., “An Aviators Guide to Self-Destruction.” Approach, May 1979.

10. Malcolm, R., “Pilot Disorientation and the Use of a Peripheral Vision Display,” The 1983 Annual Harry G. Armstrong Lecture; Aviat. Space Environ. Med. 1984 55(3):231-38.

11. Malov, I. S., “False Perceptions in Flyers During Helicopter Flights.” J. Milit. Med., Vol. #9, Moscow, 1964.

12. “Medication and Alcohol.” Flying Safety, December 1981.

13. NAVTOPS Instrument Flight Manual, Department of the Navy, Office of Naval Operations, 15 June 1972.

14. OPNAV INSTRUCTION 3710.7S, 15 Nov 2001.

15. Spence, AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL 2002.

16. U.S. Naval Aerospace Physiologist’s Manual, NAVAIR 00-80T-99, Bio Technology, Inc., September 1972.

17. U.S. Naval Flight Surgeon’s Manual, 2nd ed., Bio Technology, Inc., 1978.

18. Voge, V. M., “Aha! It’s the tonic water, after all!” Approach, October 1981.

19. “Weight Loss and Decongestants,” Weekly Summary of Aircraft Mishaps No. 40-81 (27 September – 3 October 1981).

GLOSSARY

A

absolute altitude. The altitude above the terrain directly below the aircraft.

aeronautical chart. A map used in air navigation containing all or part of the following: topographic features, hazards and obstructions, navigation aids, navigation routes, designated airspace, and airports. Commonly used aeronautical charts are:

1. Sectional aeronautical charts (1:500,000). Designed for visual navigation of slow- or medium- speed aircraft. Topographic information on these charts features the portrayal of relief and a judicious selection of visual checkpoints for VFR flight. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, restricted areas, obstructions, and related data.

2. VFR terminal area charts (1:250,000). Depict Class B airspace, which provides for the control or segregation of all the aircraft within Class B airspace. The charts depict topographic information and aeronautical information, which includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, restricted areas, obstructions, and related data.

3. World Aeronautical Charts (WACs) (1:1,000,000). Provide a standard series of aeronautical charts covering land areas of the world at a size and scale convenient for navigation by moderate- speed aircraft. Topographic information includes cities and towns, principal roads, railroads, distinctive landmarks, drainage, and relief. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, airways, restricted areas, obstructions, and other pertinent data.

4. En route low altitude charts. Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the low altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of airways, limits of controlled airspace, position identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, minimum en route and minimum obstruction clearance altitudes, airway distances, reporting points, restricted areas, and related data. Area charts, which are a part of this series, furnish terminal data at a larger scale in congested areas.

5. En route high altitude charts. Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the high altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of jet routes, identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, distances, time zones, special use airspace, and related information.

6. Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts. Portray the aeronautical data that is required to execute an instrument approach to an airport. These charts depict the procedures, including all related data, and the airport diagram. Each procedure is designated for use with a specific type of electronic navigation system including NDB, TACAN, VOR, ILS/MLS, and RNAV. These charts are identified by the type of navigational aid(s) that provide final approach guidance.

7. Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) charts. Designed to expedite clearance delivery and to facilitate transition between takeoff and en route operations. Each DP is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

8. Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) charts. Designed to expedite air traffic control arrival procedures and to facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach operations. Each STAR procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

9. Airport taxi charts. Designed to expedite the efficient and safe flow of ground traffic at an airport. These charts are identified by the official airport name (e.g., Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport).

10. Operational Navigation Chart (ONC). The ONC is the standard worldwide small-scale (1:1,000,000) aeronautical chart series, and contains cartographic data with an aeronautical overprint depicting obstructions, aerodromes, special use airspace, navigational aides, Maximum Elevation Figures (MEFs), and related data. Because of scale, some features, including obstructions, are generalized in developed regions. A Military Grid is overprinted for interoperability, especially in regions of no TPC coverage. Designed for medium altitude high-speed visual and radar navigation. Also used for mission planning/ analysis and intelligence briefings, and as source for navigational filmstrips, special purpose, and cockpit/ visual display products.

11. Tactical Pilotage Chart (TPC). The TPC is the standard worldwide medium-scale aeronautical chart series (1:500,000) produced by NGA. The TPC is designed to provide an intermediate scale translation of cultural and terrain features for pilots/navigators flying at very low altitudes (below 500 feet above ground level) through medium altitudes or low altitude, high speed operations. TPCs provide essential cartographic data appropriate to scale, and are overprinted with stable aeronautical information such as contour lines, aerodromes, obstructions, special use air-space, navigational aids, and related data. Cartographic data with aeronautical overprint depicting obstructions, MEFs, special use airspace, navigational aids and related data. Because of scale, some features, including obstructions, are generalized in developed regions. A Military Grid is overprinted for interoperability. Designed for very low-altitude through medium-altitude high-speed visual and radar navigation. TPCs are also used for mission planning/analysis and intelligence briefings, and are source for navigational filmstrips, special purpose, and cockpit/visual display products.

12. Joint Operations Graphic (JOG). The JOG is a standard large-scale series modified for aeronautical use (1:250,000). The JOG displays topographic data and aeronautical overprint depicting obstructions, aerodromes, special use airspace, navigational aids and related data. The JOG supports tactical and other air activities including low altitude visual navigation, helicopter operations, tactical and close-air support. Elevation values are given in feet.

13. Jet Navigational Chart (JNC). The JNC is a standard worldwide small-scale aeronautical chart series published by NGA. These charts are on a scale of 1:2,000,000 and intended for high-altitude, high-speed, extended long-range navigation and bombing by strategic aircraft, pre-flight mission and operational planning. The charts show principal towns, drainage, primary roads and railroads, prominent culture, shaded relief, and spot elevations. The series comprises complete world coverage at 122 charts.

14. Global Navigational Chart (GNC). The GNC is a worldwide series of aeronautical charts produced by NGA. These charts are on a scale of 1:5,000,000 and intended for high-altitude, high-speed, extended long-range navigation and flight planning. The charts show principal towns, drainage, primary roads and railroads, prominent culture, shaded relief, and spot elevations.

air defense identification zone. The area of airspace over land or water, extending upward from the surface, within which the ready identification, the location, and the control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

1. Domestic Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ within the United States along an international boundary of the United States.

2. Coastal Air Defense Identification Zone. An ADIZ over the coastal waters of the United States.

3. Distant Early Warning Identification Zone (DEWIZ). An ADIZ over the coastal waters of the state of Alaska.

air route traffic control center. A facility established to provide traffic control service to Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flights operating within controlled airspace and principally during the en route phase of flight.

air traffic clearance. An authorization by air traffic control for the purpose of preventing collision between known aircraft, for an aircraft to proceed under specified traffic conditions within controlled airspace. The pilot in command of an aircraft may not deviate from the provisions of a Visual Flight Rules (VFR) or Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) air traffic clearance except in an emergency or unless an amended clearance has been obtained. Additionally, the pilot may request a different clearance from that issued by Air Traffic Control (ATC) if information available to the pilot makes another course of action more practicable or if aircraft equipment limitations or company procedures forbid compliance with the clearance issued. Pilots may also request clarification or amendment, as appropriate, any time a clearance is not fully understood or considered unacceptable because of safety of flight. Controllers should, in such instances and to the extent of operational practicality and safety, honor the pilot's request. 14 CFR Part 91.3(a) states: "The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft." THE PILOT IS RESPONSIBLE TO REQUEST AN AMENDED CLEARANCE if ATC issues a clearance that would cause a pilot to deviate from a rule or regulation or, in the pilot's opinion, would place the aircraft in jeopardy.

air traffic control clearance. Authorization by air traffic control, for the purpose of preventing collision between known aircraft, for an aircraft to proceed under specified traffic conditions within controlled airspace.

air traffic control service. A service provided for the purpose of promoting the safe, orderly, and expeditious plan of air traffic including airport, approach, and en route air traffic control service.

aircraft approach category. A grouping of aircraft based on a speed of 1.3 times the stall speed in the landing configuration at maximum gross landing weight. An aircraft shall fit in only one category. If it is necessary to maneuver at speeds in excess of the upper limit of a speed range for a category, the minimums for the next higher category should be used. For example, an aircraft that falls in Category A, but is circling to land at a speed in excess of 91 knots, should use the approach Category B minimums when circling to land. The categories are as follows:

1. Category A. Speed less than 91 knots.
2. Category B. Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.
3. Category C. Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.
4. Category D. Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.
5. Category E. Speed 166 knots or more.

aircraft classes. For the purposes of Wake Turbulence Separation Minimums, ATC classifies aircraft as Heavy, Large, and Small as follows:

1. Heavy. Aircraft capable of takeoff weights of more than 255,000 pounds whether or not they are operating at this weight during a particular phase of flight.
2. Large. Aircraft of more than 41,000 pounds, maximum certificated takeoff weight, up to 255,000 pounds.
3. Small. Aircraft of 41,000 pounds or less maximum certificated takeoff weight.

AIRMET advisory. AIRMETs (WAs) are issued separately by the National Weather Service to amend relevant portions of Aviation Area Forecasts (FAs) whenever the phenomena are not adequately forecast in the FA. The purpose of this service is to notify en route pilots of weather phenomena that may be potentially hazardous to aircraft. Although the criteria for AIRMETs (see Chapter 27) are not as hazardous as that used for SIGMETs, they are still worthy of evaluation by the pilot in regard to the operational limits of his/her aircraft.

airport. A defined area on land or water (including any buildings, installations, and equipment) intended to be used either wholly or in part for the arrival, departure, movement, and servicing of aircraft.

airport advisory area. The area within 10 statute miles of an uncontrolled airport on which is located a flight service station so depicted on the appropriate sectional aeronautical chart.

airport advisory service. A service provided by flight service stations located at airports not serviced by a control tower. This service consists of providing information to arriving and departing aircraft concerning wind direction and speed, favored runway, altimeter setting, pertinent known traffic, pertinent known field conditions, airport taxi routes and traffic patterns, and authorized instrument approach procedures. This information is advisory in nature and does not constitute an ATC clearance.

airport surface detection equipment. A short-range radar for a panoramic presentation of all aircraft and vehicles, moving or stationary, on an aerodrome for use by air traffic controllers for expeditious movement of surface aircraft on the ramp, taxiway, and runway.

airport surveillance radar. Radar providing position of aircraft by azimuth and range data without elevation data.

airport traffic. All traffic on the maneuvering area of an airport and all aircraft flying in the vicinity.

airport traffic control tower. A unit established to provide air traffic control service to airport traffic. The term "airport traffic control tower" is normally used in areas under FAA control.

alert area. An airspace that may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft.

alternate airport. An airport specified in the flight plan to which an aircraft may proceed when landing at the intended destination becomes inadvisable.

altitude. The vertical distance of a level, a point, or an object considered as a point, measured from a given surface.

altitude reservation. The prior approval by the appropriate air traffic control agencies of flight plans, requesting use of certain airspace for the purpose of expediting mass movement of aircraft, or other special air operations.

angle of attack. The angle at which an airfoil meets the relative wind, measured between the chordline of the wing and the direction of aircraft movement.

approach control. A term used to indicate an air traffic control facility providing approach control service.

approach control service. Air traffic control service, provided by a terminal area traffic control facility, for arriving and/or departing IFR flights and, on occasion, VFR flights.

approach sequence. That order in which aircraft are positioned while awaiting approach clearance or while on approach.

area navigation. A method of navigation that permits aircraft operations on any desired course within the coverage of station-referenced navigation signals or within the limits of self-contained system capability.

automatic direction finder. A type of radio compass that, when properly tuned to a transmitting station, automatically indicates the direction of the station in relation to the heading of the aircraft.

automatic terminal information service. The continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected high activity terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information.

B

back-taxi. A term used by air traffic controllers to taxi an aircraft on the runway opposite to the traffic flow. The aircraft may be instructed to back-taxi to the beginning of the runway or at some point before reaching the runway end for the purpose of departure or to exit the runway.

braking action (good, fair, poor, or nil). A report of conditions on the airport movement area providing a pilot with a degree/quality of braking that he/she might expect. Braking action is reported in terms of good, fair, poor, or nil.

C

calibrated airspeed. Airspeed corrected for installation error.

calibrated altitude. Indicated altitude corrected for static-pressure error, installation error, and instrument error.

ceiling. The height above the surface of the Earth of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuration phenomena that is reported as “broken,” “overcast,” or “obscuration” and not classified as “thin” or “partial.” As applied to TERPS, a ceiling is expressed in feet above the published airport elevation and is equal to or greater than the height of the associated Decision Height (DH) or Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA).

circle-to-land maneuver. A maneuver initiated by the pilot to align the aircraft with a runway for landing when a straight-in landing from an instrument approach is not possible or is not desirable. At tower-controlled airports, this maneuver is made only after ATC authorization has been obtained and the pilot has established required visual reference to the airport.

clearance limit. The fix to which an aircraft is issued an air traffic clearance.

codes. The numbers assigned to the multiple pulse reply signals transmitted by Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) and SIF transponders.

compass locator. A low-power, Low- or Medium-Frequency (L/MF) radio beacon installed at the site of the outer or middle marker of an Instrument Landing System (ILS). It can be used for navigation at distances of approximately 15 miles or as authorized in the approach procedure.

1. Locator Outer Marker (LOM). A compass locator installed at the site of the outer marker of an instrument landing system.
2. Locator Middle Marker (LMM). A compass locator installed at the site of the middle marker of an instrument landing system.

contact approach. An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, having an air traffic control authorization, operating clear of clouds with at least 1 mile flight visibility and a reasonable expectation of continuing to the destination airport in those conditions, may deviate from the instrument approach procedure and proceed to the destination airport by visual reference to the surface. This approach will only be authorized when requested by the pilot and the reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

controlled airspace. An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

1. Controlled airspace is a generic term that covers Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E airspace.

2. Controlled airspace is also that airspace within which all aircraft operators are subject to certain pilot qualifications, operating rules, and equipment requirements in 14 CFR Part 91 (for specific operating requirements, refer to 14 CFR Part 91). For IFR operations in any class of controlled airspace, a pilot must file an IFR flight plan and receive an appropriate ATC clearance. Each Class B, Class C, and Class D airspace area designated for an airport contains at least one primary airport around which the airspace is designated (for specific designations and descriptions of the airspace classes, refer to 14 CFR Part 71).

3. Controlled airspace in the United States is designated as follows:

   a. Class A. Generally, that airspace from 18,000 feet MSL up to and including FL 600, including the airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous states and Alaska. Unless otherwise authorized, all persons must operate their aircraft under IFR.

b. Class B. Generally, that airspace from the surface to 10,000 feet MSL surrounding the busiest airports of the nation in terms of airport operations or passenger enplanements. The configuration of each Class B airspace area is individually tailored and consists of a surface area and two or more layers (some Class B airspace areas resemble upside-down wedding cakes) and is designed to contain all published instrument procedures once an aircraft enters the airspace. An ATC clearance is required for all aircraft to operate in the area, and all aircraft that are so cleared receive separation services within the airspace. The cloud clearance requirement for VFR operations is “clear of clouds.”

c. Class C. Generally, that airspace from the surface to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower, are serviced by a radar approach control, and have a certain number of IFR operations or passenger enplanements. Although the configuration of each Class C area is individually tailored, the airspace usually consists of a surface area with a 5 nautical-mile (nm) radius, an outer circle with a 10 nm radius that extends from 1,200 feet to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation, and an outer area. Each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while within the airspace. VFR aircraft are only separated from IFR aircraft within the airspace.

d. Class D. Generally, that airspace from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower. The configuration of each Class D airspace area is individually tailored and when instrument procedures are published, the airspace will normally be designed to contain the procedures. Arrival extensions for instrument approach procedures may be Class D or Class E airspace. Unless otherwise authorized, each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while in the airspace. No separation services are provided to VFR aircraft.

e. Class E. Generally, if the airspace is not Class A, Class B, Class C, or Class D, and it is controlled airspace, it is Class E airspace. Class E airspace extends upward from either the surface or a designated altitude to the overlying or adjacent controlled airspace. When designated as a surface area, the airspace will be configured to contain all instrument procedures. Also in this class are Federal airways, airspace beginning at either 700 or 1,200 feet AGL used to transition to/from the terminal or en route environment, en route domestic, and offshore airspace areas designated below 18,000 feet MSL. Unless designated at a lower altitude, Class E airspace begins at 14,500 MSL over the United States, including that airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous states and Alaska, up to, but not including, 18,000 feet MSL, and the airspace above FL 600.

cruise. A word used in an ATC clearance to authorize a pilot to conduct flight at any altitude from the Minimum En Route Altitude/Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude (MEA/MOCA) up to and including the altitude specified in the clearance. The pilot may level off at any intermediary altitude within this block of airspace. Climb/descent within the block is to be made at the discretion of the pilot; however, once the pilot starts descent and reports leaving an altitude in the block, he/she may not return to that altitude without additional ATC clearance. Further, it is approval for the pilot to proceed to and make an approach at destination airport, and can be used in conjunction with:

1. An airport clearance limit at locations with an approved/prescribed instrument approach procedure. The FARs require that if an instrument letdown to an airport is necessary, the pilot shall make the letdown in accordance with an approved/prescribed instrument approach procedure for that airport, or

2. An airport clearance limit at locations that are within/below/outside controlled airspace and

without an approved/prescribed instrument approach procedure. Such a clearance is not authorization for the pilot to descend under IFR conditions below applicable MEA/MOCA nor does it imply ATC is exercising control over aircraft in uncontrolled airspace; however, it provides a means for the aircraft to proceed to destination airport and descend and land in accordance with applicable FARs governing VFR flight operations. Also, this provides search and rescue protection until such time as the IFR flight plan is closed.

D

decision height. The height, specified in MSL, above the highest runway elevation in the touchdown zone at which a missed approach shall be initiated if the required visual reference has not been established. This term is used only in procedures where an electronic glideslope provides the reference for descent, as in ILS or Precision Approach Radar (PAR).

defense visual flight rules. Special visual flight rules applicable to those flights that operate within or penetrate an ADIZ.

density altitude. Pressure altitude corrected for existing free air temperature.

departure control. Air traffic control service provided to pilots departing an airport.

distance measuring equipment. Electronic navigation equipment for finding the slant range distance in nautical miles between an aircraft and a ground station by measuring time interval between pulses from an airborne radar and the reception of answering pulses from a transponder at the ground station.

DoD FLIP. Department of Defense Flight Information Publications used for flight planning, en route, and terminal operations. FLIP is produced by the National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (NGA) for worldwide use. United States Government Flight Information Publications (en route charts and instrument approach procedure charts) are incorporated in DoD FLIP for use in the National Airspace System (NAS).

domestic airspace. Airspace that overlies the continental land mass of the United States plus Hawaii and U.S. possessions. Domestic airspace extends to 12 miles offshore.

downburst. A strong downdraft that induces an outburst of damaging winds on or near the ground. Damaging winds, either straight or curved, are highly divergent. The sizes of downbursts vary from ½ mile or less to more than 10 miles. An intense downburst often causes widespread damage. Damaging winds, lasting 5 to 30 minutes, could reach speeds as high as 120 knots.

due regard. A phase of flight wherein an aircraft commander of a state-operated aircraft assumes responsibility to separate his/her aircraft from all other aircraft.

E

emergency safe altitude. An altitude expressed in 100-foot increments providing 1,000 feet of clearance (2,000 feet in designated mountainous areas) over all obstructions/terrain within 100 miles of the navigational aid on which the instrument approach (AL/JAL) chart is centered.

equivalent airspeed. Calibrated airspeed corrected for compressibility error.

expected further clearance time. The time at which it is expected that additional clearance will be issued to an aircraft.

expedite. Used by ATC when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation. Expedite climb/descent normally indicates to a pilot that the approximate best rate of climb/descent should be used without requiring an exceptional change in aircraft handling characteristics.

F

federal airway. Airspace of defined dimensions in which certain additional rules apply (described in

FAR Part 71) and depicted as a colored or VOR airway that extends upward from 700 or 1,200 feet AGL to, but not including, 18,000 feet MSL except that Federal airways for Hawaii have no upper limit.

final approach — IFR. The flightpath of an aircraft that is inbound to the airport on an approved final instrument approach course, beginning at the point of interception of that course and extending to the airport or the point where circling for landing or missed approach is executed.

flight level. A level of constant atmospheric pressure that is related to the standard pressure datum of 29.92 inches of mercury.

flight plan. Specified information provided to air traffic service units, relative to the intended flight of an aircraft.

flight service station. Air traffic facilities that provide pilot briefing, en route communications and VFR search and rescue services, assist lost aircraft and aircraft in emergency situations, relay ATC clearances, originate Notices to Airmen, broadcast aviation weather and NAS information, receive and process IFR flight plans, and monitor NAVAIDs. In addition, at selected locations, FSSs provide En route Flight Advisory Service (Flight Watch), take weather observations, issue airport advisories, and advise Customs and Immigration of transborder flights.

flight watch. A shortened term for use in air-ground contacts to identify the flight service station providing En route Flight Advisory Service (e.g., “Oakland Flight Watch).”

G

glideslope intercept altitude. The minimum altitude to intercept the glideslope/path on a precision approach. The intersection of the published intercept altitude with the glideslope/path, designated on government charts by the lightning bolt symbol, is the precision Final Approach Fix (FAF); however, when the approach chart shows an alternative lower glideslope intercept altitude, and ATC directs a lower altitude, the resultant lower intercept position is then the FAF.

global positioning system. A space-based radio positioning, navigation, and time-transfer system. The system provides highly accurate position and velocity information, and precise time, on a continuous global basis, to an unlimited number of properly equipped users. The system is unaffected by weather and provides a worldwide common grid reference system. The GPS concept is predicated upon accurate and continuous knowledge of the spatial position of each satellite in the system with respect to time and distance from a transmitting satellite to the user. The GPS receiver automatically selects appropriate signals from the satellites in view and translates these into three-dimensional position, velocity, and time. System accuracy for civil users is normally 100 meters horizontally.

go around. Instructions for a pilot to abandon his/her approach to landing. Additional instructions may follow. Unless otherwise advised by ATC, a VFR aircraft or an aircraft conducting visual approach should overfly the runway while climbing to traffic pattern altitude and enter the traffic pattern via the crosswind leg. A pilot on an IFR flight plan making an instrument approach should execute the published missed approach procedure or proceed as instructed by ATC; for example, “GO AROUND” (additional instructions if required).

ground controlled approach. A radar approach system operated from the ground by air traffic control personnel transmitting instructions to the pilot by radio.

groundspeed. True airspeed corrected for wind effects.

H

heading. The direction in which the longitudinal axis of an aircraft is pointed, usually expressed in degrees from North (true, magnetic, or compass).

height above airport. Indicates the height of the MDA above the published airport elevation. Height

Above Airport (HAA) will be published in conjunction with all circling minimums.

height above touchdown. Indicates the height of the DH or MDA above the highest runway elevation in the touchdown zone. Height Above Touchdown (HAT) will be published in conjunction with all straight-in minimums.

helipad (touchdown area). That part of the landing and takeoff area where it is preferred that the helicopter alight.

heliport. An area, either at ground level or elevated on a structure, that is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of helicopters and includes some or all of the various facilities useful to helicopter operation such as helicopter parking, waiting room, fueling, and maintenance equipment.

helistop. A heliport, either at ground level or elevated on a structure, for the landing and takeoff of helicopters, but without auxiliary facilities such as waiting room, hangar parking, maintenance, or fueling equipment.

holding fix. A specified fix used as a reference point in establishment of and maintaining the position of an aircraft while holding.

holding procedure. A predetermined maneuver that keeps an aircraft within a specified airspace while awaiting further clearance.

I

IFR aircraft. An aircraft conducting flights in accordance with the instrument flight rules.

IFR flight. Flight conducted in accordance with the instrument flight rules.

immediately. Used by ATC or pilots when such action compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

indicated airspeed. The airspeed displayed by the airspeed indicator.

indicated altitude. Altitude as shown by a pressure or barometric altimeter uncorrected for instrument error and uncompensated for variations from standard atmospheric conditions.

indicated Mach number. Mach number displayed on the Mach indicator.

initial approach. That part of an instrument approach procedure consisting of the first approach to the first navigational facility associated with the procedure or to a predetermined fix.

instrument approach procedure. A series of predetermined maneuvers for the orderly transfer of an aircraft under instrument flight conditions from the beginning of the initial approach to a landing or to a point from which a landing may be made visually. It is prescribed and approved for a specific airport by competent authority.

instrument landing system. A precision instrument approach system that normally consists of the following electronic components and visual aids:

1. Localizer.
2. Glideslope.
3. Outer marker.
4. Middle marker.
5. Approach lights.

instrument meteorological conditions. Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from clouds, and ceiling less than the minimums specified for visual meteorological conditions. Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC) exist anytime a visible horizon is not distinguishable.

international civil aviation organization. A specialized agency of the United Nations whose objective is to develop the principles and techniques of international air navigation and to foster planning and development of international civil air transport.

There are seven ICAO regions that are described in the DoD FLIP General Planning and Area Planning publications.

international flight information manual. A publication designed primarily as a pilot's preflight planning guide for flights into foreign airspace and for flights returning to the U.S. from foreign locations.

interrogator. The ground-based surveillance radar beacon transmitter/receiver that scans in synchronism with a primary radar, transmitting discrete radio signals that repetitiously request all transponders on the mode being used to reply. The replies received are then mixed with the primary radar video to be displayed on the plan position indicators.

J

jet routes. A high-altitude route system at 18,000 feet MSL to flight level 450, inclusive. Jet routes are predicated on high-altitude navigational aids.

joint military/civil airport. An airport owned by the military or a community, or both, where an agreement exists for joint civil/military, fixed-based aviation operations.

joint use restricted area. An area wherein an aircraft may operate if prior permission has been granted by either the restricted area "using agency" or the "controlling agency." (1) The using agency organization, or military command whose activity within a restricted area necessitated the area being so designated; except that, in the case of those restricted area/military climb corridors that do not have a designated controlling agency, the using agency is a military air traffic control facility that may be contacted for transit through the climb corridor. The using agency notifies the controlling agency whenever permission may be granted by the controlling agency for transit of, or flight within, a restricted area. (2) The controlling agency is a designated ATC facility that may authorize transit of a restricted area.

K

knot. One nautical mile (6,076.1033 feet) per hour.

L

land and hold short operations. Operations that include simultaneous takeoffs and landings and/or simultaneous landings when a landing aircraft is able and is instructed by the controller to hold short of the intersecting runway/taxiway or designated hold-short point. Pilots are expected to inform the controller promptly if the hold-short clearance cannot be accepted.

landing minimums. The minimum visibility prescribed for landing a civil aircraft while using an instrument approach procedure. The minimum applies with other limitations set forth in 14 CFR Part 91 with respect to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or Decision Height (DH) prescribed in the instrument approach procedures as follows:

1. Straight-in landing minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility, or DH and visibility, required for a straight-in landing on a specified runway, or

2. Circling minimums. A statement of MDA and visibility required for the circle-to-land maneuver.

Note

Descent below the established MDA or DH is not authorized during an approach unless the aircraft is in a position from which a normal approach to the runway of intended landing can be made and adequate visual reference to required visual cues is maintained.

localizer. The component of an ILS that provides course guidance to the runway.

localizer-type directional aid. A facility of comparable utility and accuracy to a localizer but which is not part of a complete ILS and will not be aligned with the runway. Localizer-type Directional Aid (LDA) is more accurate than SDF.

lost communications. Loss of the ability to communicate by radio. Aircraft are sometimes referred to as NORDO (No Radio). Standard pilot procedures are specified in 14 CFR Part 91. Radar controllers issue procedures for pilots to follow in the event of lost communications during a radar approach when weather reports indicate an aircraft will likely encounter IFR weather conditions during the approach.

M

Mach number. A number expressing the ratio of the speed of a body or of a point on a body with respect to the surrounding air or other fluid, or speed of a flow, to the speed of sound in the medium. Thus, a Mach Number of 1.0 indicates a speed equal to the speed of sound.

maintain. The altitude/flight level instructions in an ATC clearance normally require that a pilot "maintain" the altitude/flight level at which the flight will operate when in controlled airspace. Altitude/flight level changes while en route should be requested prior to the time the change is desired.

mandatory altitude (instrument approach). The MSL altitude vertical to a graphic location that an aircraft must maintain during a portion of an instrument approach. The requirement for such may be created by airspace separation criteria or airspace separation criteria in conjunction with obstruction clearance criteria. A mandatory altitude will be depicted as an underlined number with a line above it.

maximum authorized altitude. A Maximum Authorized Altitude (MAA) is the highest altitude at which adequate reception of navigational aid signals is assured. The establishment of an MAA at 40,000 feet MSL means that adequate reception on a jet route so designated is assured up to, and including, 40,000 feet MSL.

military assumes responsibility for separation of aircraft. Military Assumes Responsibility for Separation of Aircraft (MARSA) shall be authorized only for those special military operations that are specified in a letter of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military documents.

minimum altitude (instrument approach). MSL altitude vertical to a geographic location below which an aircraft may not descend during an instrument approach until after passing the location. The requirement for a minimum altitude may be created by obstruction clearance criteria or airspace separation criteria. On the approach plates, a minimum altitude will be depicted as an underlined number.

minimum crossing altitude. The lowest altitude at certain radio fixes at which an aircraft must cross when proceeding in the direction of a higher minimum en route IFR altitude.

minimum descent altitude. An altitude, specified in feet above MSL, below which descent will not be made until visual reference has been established with the runway environment and the aircraft is in a position to execute a normal landing. Minimum descent altitudes apply to nonprecision, straight-in, and circling approaches.

minimum en route altitude. The altitude established between navigational aids or reporting points on airways, air routes, or advisory routes, that will meet obstruction clearance requirements and will also ensure acceptable navigational signal coverage unless otherwise indicated.

minimum fuel. Indicates that an aircraft's fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching the destination, it can accept little or no delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur.

minimum IFR altitudes. Minimum altitudes for IFR operations as prescribed in 14 CFR Part 91. These altitudes are published on aeronautical charts and prescribed in 14 CFR Part 95 for airways and routes and in 14 CFR Part 97 for standard instrument approach procedures. If no applicable minimum altitude is prescribed in 14 CFR Part 95 or

14 CFR Part 97, the following minimum IFR altitude applies:

1. In designated mountainous areas, 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or
2. Other than mountainous areas, 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or as otherwise authorized by the Administrator or assigned by ATC.

minimum obstruction clearance altitude. The specified altitude in effect between radio fixes on VOR/TACAN/LF airway, off-airway routes, or route segments, that meets obstruction clearance requirements for the entire route segment and ensures acceptable navigational signal coverage only within 22 nautical miles of a VOR.

minimum reception altitude. The lowest altitude required to receive adequate signals to determine specific VOR/VORTAC/TACAN fixes.

minimum safe altitude. Altitudes depicted on approach charts that provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance for emergency use within a specified distance from the navigation facility upon which a procedure is predicated. These altitudes will be identified as Minimum Sector Altitudes or Emergency Safe Altitudes and are established as follows:

1. Minimum sector altitudes. Altitudes depicted on approach charts that provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance within a 25-mile radius of the navigation facility upon which the procedure is predicated. Sectors depicted on approach charts must be at least 90 degrees in scope. These altitudes are for emergency use only and do not necessarily ensure acceptable navigational signal coverage.

2. Emergency safe altitudes. Altitudes depicted on approach charts that provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet of obstacle clearance in designated mountainous areas within a 100-mile radius of the navigation facility upon which the procedure is predicated and normally used only in military procedures. These altitudes are identified in published procedures as “Emergency Safe Altitudes.”

minimum vectoring altitude. The lowest altitude, expressed in feet above mean sea level, that aircraft will be vectored by a radar controller. This altitude ensures communications and radar coverage and meets obstruction clearance criteria.

missed approach.

1. A maneuver conducted by a pilot when an instrument approach cannot be completed to a landing. The route of flight and altitude are shown on instrument approach procedure charts. A pilot executing a missed approach prior to the Missed Approach Point (MAP) must continue along the final approach to the MAP. The pilot may climb immediately to the altitude specified in the missed approach procedure.
2. A term used by the pilot to inform ATC that he/she is executing the missed approach.

At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure.

missed approach point. A point prescribed in each instrument approach procedure at which a missed approach procedure shall be executed if the required visual reference does not exist and/or a safe landing cannot be made.

mode. The number or letter referring to the specific pulse spacing of the signal transmitted by an interrogator. (See radar beacon.)

N

NAVAID classes. VOR, VORTAC, and TACAN aids are classed according to their operational use. The three classes of NAVAIDs are:

1. T. Terminal.
2. L. Low altitude.
3. H. High altitude.

nautical mile. A unit of distance equal to 1 minute of a great circle (6,076.1033 feet).

nonjoint use of restricted area. For restricted areas that are not joint use, or for areas not controlled by Air Traffic Service (ATS), the pilot filing an IFR or VFR-on-top flight plan must obtain clearance from the using activity. Failure to advise ATS that clearance has been obtained will result in ATS routing to avoid the area. An exception applies to aircraft flying in accordance with an approved Altitude Reservation (ALTRV). When flying VFR, the pilot is responsible for obtaining approval from the using or controlling agency prior to penetration or transit of a restricted area.

nonprecision approach procedure. A standard instrument approach procedure in which no electronic glideslope is provided.

nonradar. Precedes other terms and generally means without the use of radar, such as:

1. Nonradar approach. Used to describe instrument approaches for which course guidance on final approach is not provided by ground-based precision or surveillance radar. Radar vectors to the final approach course may or may not be provided by ATC. Examples of nonradar approaches are VOR, NDB, TACAN, and ILS/MLS approaches.

2. Nonradar approach control. An ATC facility providing approach control service without the use of radar.

3. Nonradar arrival. An aircraft arriving at an airport without radar service or at an airport served by a radar facility and radar contact has not been established or has been terminated due to a lack of radar service to the airport.

4. Nonradar route. A flight path or route over which the pilot is performing his/her own navigation. The pilot may be receiving radar separation, radar monitoring, or other ATC services while on a nonradar route.

5. Nonradar separation. The spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minimums without the use of radar (e.g., vertical, lateral, or longitudinal separation).

notice to airmen. A notice containing information (not known sufficiently in advance to publicize by other means) concerning the establishment, condition, or change in any component (facility, service, or procedure of, or hazard in, the National Airspace System) the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

1. NOTAM(D). A NOTAM given (in addition to local dissemination) distant dissemination beyond the area of responsibility of the flight service station. These NOTAMs will be stored and available until canceled.

2. NOTAM(L). A NOTAM given local dissemination by voice and other means, such as telautograph and telephone, to satisfy local user requirements.

3. FDC NOTAM. A NOTAM regulatory in nature, transmitted by a U.S. NOTAM Facility (USNOF) and given system-wide dissemination.

O

option approach. An approach requested and conducted by a pilot that will result in a touch-and-go, missed approach, low approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing.

overhead maneuver. A series of predetermined maneuvers prescribed for aircraft (often in formation) for entry into the Visual Flight Rules (VFR) traffic pattern and to proceed to a landing. An overhead maneuver is not an Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) approach procedure. An aircraft executing an overhead maneuver is considered VFR and the IFR flight plan is canceled when the aircraft reaches the initial point on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The pattern usually specifies the following:

1. The radio contact required of the pilot.

2. The speed to be maintained.

3. An initial approach 3 to 5 miles in length.

4. An elliptical pattern consisting of two 180-degree turns.

5. A break point at which the first 180-degree turn is started.

6. The direction of turns.

7. Altitude (at least 500 feet above the conventional pattern).

8. A rollout on final approach not less than ¼ mile from the landing threshold and not less than 300 feet above the ground.

P

penetration. That portion of a published high altitude terminal instrument approach procedure that prescribes a descent path, from the fix on which the procedure is based, to a fix or altitude from which an approach to the airport is made.

pilot-to-dispatcher. A communication facility established to enable pilots to transmit non-ATC information (e.g., servicing, maintenance, VIP information, etc.) to base operations.

pilot's discretion. When used in conjunction with altitude assignments, means that ATC has offered the pilot the option of starting climb or descent whenever he/she wishes and conducting the climb or descent at any rate he/she wishes. He/she may temporarily level off at any intermediate altitude; however, once he/she has vacated an altitude, he/she may not return to that altitude.

precision approach radar. Radar equipment in some ATC facilities operated by the FAA and/or the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and separate military installations to detect and display azimuth, elevation, and range of aircraft on the final approach course to a runway. This equipment may be used to monitor certain nonradar approaches, but is primarily used to conduct a precision instrument approach (PAR) wherein the controller issues guidance instructions to the pilot based on the position of the aircraft in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), the glidepath (elevation), and the distance (range) from the touchdown point on the runway as displayed on the radarscope.

Note

The abbreviation PAR is also used to denote preferential arrival routes in Air Route Traffic Control (ARTCC) computers.

pressure altitude. The altitude above the standard datum plane. This standard datum plane is where the air pressure is 29.92 inches of mercury (corrected to +15 °C).

procedure turn inbound. That point of a procedure turn maneuver where course reversal has been completed and an aircraft is established inbound an intermediate approach segment or final approach course. A report of PROCEDURE TURN INBOUND is normally used by ATC as a position report for separation purposes.

prohibited area. A specified area within the land areas of a state, or territorial waters adjacent thereto, through which the flight of aircraft is prohibited.

Q

QNE. The barometric pressure used for the standard altimeter setting (29.92 inches Hg).

QNH. The barometric pressure as reported by a particular station.

R

radar. A device that, by measuring the time interval between transmission and reception of radio pulses and correlating the angular orientation of the radiated antenna beam or beams in azimuth and/or elevation, provides information on range, azimuth, and/or elevation of objects in the path of the transmitted pulses.

1. Primary radar. A radar system in which a minute portion of a radio pulse transmitted from a site is reflected by an object and then received back at that site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

2. Secondary radar/radar beacon (ATCRBS). A radar system in which the object to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a radio receiver/transmitter (transponder). Radar pulses transmitted from the searching transmitter/receiver (interrogator) site are received in the cooperative equipment and used to trigger a distinctive transmission from the transponder. This reply transmission, rather than a reflected signal, is then received back at the transmitter/receiver site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

radar advisory. Term used to indicate that the provision of advice and information is based on radar observation.

radar contact. The term air traffic controllers use to indicate that an aircraft is identified on the radar display and that radar service can be provided until radar identification is lost or radar service is terminated; when the aircraft is informed of RADAR CONTACT, it automatically discontinues reporting over compulsory reporting points.

radar flight following. The general observation of the progress of identified aircraft targets to retain their identity sufficiently or the observation of the movement of specific radar targets.

radar handoff. That action whereby radar identification of, radio communications with, and, unless otherwise specified, control responsibility for an aircraft is transferred from one controller to another without interruption of radar flight following.

radar identification. The process of ascertaining that a radar target is the radar return from a particular aircraft.

radar service. A term that encompasses one or more of the following services, based on the use of radar, which can be provided by a controller to a pilot of a radar-identified aircraft:

1. Radar monitoring. The radar flight-following of an aircraft, the primary navigation of which is being performed by its pilot, to observe and note deviations from its authorized flightpath, airway, or route. As applied to the monitoring of instrument approaches from the final approach fix to the runway, it also includes the provision of advice on position relative to approach fixes and whenever the aircraft proceeds outside the prescribed safety zones.

2. Radar navigation guidance. Vectoring aircraft to provide course guidance.

3. Radar separation. Radar spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minimums.

4. Radar surveillance. The radar observation of a given geographical area for the purpose of performing some radar function.

5. Radar vector. A heading issued to an aircraft to provide navigational guidance by radar.

radial. A radial is a magnetic bearing extending from a VOR, VORTAC, or TACAN.

radio magnetic indicator. A radio-navigation instrument coupled with a gyrosyn compass or the like that indicates magnetic heading and bearing with respect to a transmitting station.

reduced vertical separation minimums. Reduced Vertical Separation Minimums (RVSM) reduce the vertical separation between Flight Level (FL) 290 to 410 from 2,000 feet to 1,000 feet and make six additional FLs available for operation. The additional FLs enable more aircraft to fly more time/fuel efficient profiles and provide the potential for enhanced airspace capacity. RVSM operators must receive authorization from the appropriate civil aviation authority. RVSM aircraft must meet required equipage and altitude-keeping performance standards. Operators must operate in accordance with RVSM policies/procedures applicable to the airspace where they are flying. Additional information is found in the AIM/FAR.

reporting point. A specified geographic location in relation to which the position of an aircraft can be reported.

rescue coordination center. A center established within an assigned search and rescue area to promote efficient organization of search and rescue.

restricted area. A specified area within the land areas of a state, or territorial waters adjacent thereto, designated for other than air traffic control purposes, over which the flight of aircraft is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions.

runway condition reading. Numerical decelerometer reading provided by air traffic controllers at USAF bases for use by the pilot in determining runway braking action. The Flight Information Handbook supplement provides a suggested table of equivalents for use by naval aviators in converting these readings to a comparable braking action description.

S

safety alert. A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude that, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. The controller may discontinue the issuance of further alerts if the pilot advises he/she is taking action to correct the situation or has the other aircraft in sight.

1. Terrain/obstruction alert. A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude that, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions (e.g., LOW ALTITUDE ALERT, CHECK YOUR ALTITUDE IMMEDIATELY).

2. Aircraft conflict alert. A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware of an aircraft which is not under their control at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, ATC will offer the pilot an alternate course of action when feasible (e.g., TRAFFIC ALERT, ADVISE YOU TURN RIGHT HEADING ZERO NINER ZERO OR CLIMB TO EIGHT THOUSAND IMMEDIATELY).

SIGMET advisory. These advisories are issued by the National Weather Service and are identified as either Nonconvective-WS or Convective-WST. These advisories are issued individually and their information may be included in relevant portions of Aviation Area Forecasts (FAs). Normally, WSs and WSTs are issued separately and will automatically amend the relevant portion of the FA for the period of the advisory. The purpose of this service is to notify en route pilots of the possibility of encountering hazardous flying conditions that may not have been provided in preflight weather briefings. Refer to Chapter 27 for SIGMET criteria.

simplified directional facility. A facility of comparable utility and accuracy to a localizer, but that is not part of a complete ILS and will not be aligned with the runway. An approach facility similar to a localizer, except it may be offset up to 3 degrees from runway and the course may be wider. Less accurate than LDA.

single-frequency approach. A service provided under a letter of agreement to military single-piloted turbojet aircraft that permits use of a single UHF frequency during approach for landing. Pilots will not normally be required to change frequency from the beginning of the approach to touchdown except that pilots conducting an en route descent are required to change frequency when control is transferred from the air route traffic control center to the terminal facility. The abbreviation to SFA in the DoD FLIP IFR Supplement under "Communications" indicates this service is available at an aerodrome.

single-piloted aircraft. Any aircraft that has only one set of flight controls or any aircraft that has two sets of flight controls and instruments and is being operated by only one pilot who meets the requirements of the NATOPS manual for that model aircraft.

skid. A sidewise movement of an aircraft toward the outside of the turn.

slip. A sidewise movement of an aircraft toward the inside of the turn.

special use airspace. Airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the Earth wherein activities must be confined because of their nature and/or wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities. Types of special use airspace are:

1. Alert area. Airspace that may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an alert area are conducted in accordance with Federal aviation regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance.

2. Controlled firing area. Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground.

3. Military Operations Area (MOA). A MOA is airspace established outside of Class A airspace area to separate or segregate certain nonhazardous military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted.

4. Prohibited area. Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73 within which no person may operate an aircraft without the permission of the using agency.

5. Restricted area. Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73, within which the flight of aircraft, though not wholly prohibited, is subject to restriction. Most restricted areas are designated joint use and IFR/VFR operations in the area may be authorized by the controlling ATC facility when it is not being utilized by the using agency. Restricted areas are depicted on en route charts. Where joint use is authorized, the name of the ATC controlling facility is also shown.

6. Warning area. A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions extending from 3 nautical miles outward from the coast of the United States that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning area is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

special VFR conditions (special VFR minimum weather conditions). Weather conditions that are less than basic VFR weather conditions and that permit flight in a control zone clear of clouds with 1 mile visibility.

special VFR operations. Aircraft operating in accordance with clearances within control zones in weather conditions less than the basic VFR weather minimums.

standard instrument departure. A preplanned, coded air traffic control IFR departure routing, preprinted for pilot use in graphic and textual or textual form only.

standard rate turn. A turn in an aircraft in which the heading changes at the rate of 3° per second.

standard terminal arrival route. A preplanned, coded air traffic control IFR arrival routing, preprinted for pilot use in graphic and textual or textual form only.

surveillance approach. An instrument approach conducted in accordance with directions issued by a controller referring only to the surveillance radar display.

T

TACAN. An ultrahigh frequency tactical air navigation system combining the functions of the omnidirectional radio range and distance measuring equipment to indicate the distance and bearing of an aircraft from a transmitting station.

TACAN-only aircraft. An aircraft possessing TACAN but no VOR navigational system capability.

terminal radar service area. Airspace surrounding designated airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring, sequencing, and separation on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. The AIM contains an explanation of Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA). TRSAs are depicted on VFR aeronautical charts. Pilot participation is urged but is not mandatory.

terminal VFR radar service. A national program instituted to extend the terminal radar services provided to Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) aircraft to Visual Flight Rules (VFR) aircraft. The program is divided into four types service referred to as basic radar service, TRSA service, Class B service, and Class C service. The type of service provided at a particular location is contained in the Airport/Facility Directory.

1. Basic radar service. These services are provided for VFR aircraft by all commissioned terminal radar facilities. Basic radar service includes safety alerts, traffic advisories, limited radar vectoring when requested by the pilot, and sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a letter of agreement. The purpose of this service is to adjust the flow of arriving IFR and VFR aircraft into the traffic pattern in a safe and orderly manner and to provide traffic advisories to departing VFR aircraft.

2. TRSA service. This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, sequencing of all IFR and participating VFR aircraft to the primary airport and separation between all participating VFR aircraft. The purpose of this service is to provide separation between all participating VFR aircraft and all IFR aircraft operating within the area defined as a TRSA.

3. Class C service. This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation between IFR and VFR aircraft, sequencing of VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport.

4. Class B service. This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation of aircraft based on IFR, VFR, and/or weight, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport(s).

track. The projection on the surface of the Earth of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which at any point is usually expressed in degrees from North (true or magnetic).

transition.

1. The general term that describes the change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another (e.g., transition from en route flight to the approach or transition from instrument flight to visual flight).
2. A published procedure (DP Transition) used to connect the basic DP to one of several en route airways/jet routes, or a published procedure (STAR Transition) used to connect one of several en route airways/jet routes to the basic STAR. (Refer to DP/STAR charts.)

transitional airspace. That portion of controlled airspace wherein aircraft change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another.

transponder. Airborne radar beacon receiver/transmitter that automatically receives radio signals from all interrogators on the ground and selectively replies with a specific reply pulse or pulse group only to those interrogations being received on the mode to which it is set to respond.

tricolor visual approach slope indicator. The tricolor approach slope indicator normally consists of a single light unit projecting a three-color visual approach path into the final approach area of the runway upon which the system is installed. In all of these systems, a below glidepath indication is red, or amber, and the on path indication green.

true airspeed. Equivalent airspeed corrected for air density error.

true altitude. Calibrated altitude corrected for nonstandard atmospheric conditions. Actual height above mean sea level.

true Mach number. Mach corrected for installation error.

U

united states standard for terminal instrument procedures. The approved criteria for formulating instrument approach procedures.

urgency. A condition of being concerned about safety and of requiring timely but not immediate assistance; a potential distress condition.

V

vertical speed indicator. A flight instrument that indicates the rate of climb or rate of descent of an aircraft in any convenient unit (e.g., feet per minute).

VFR aircraft. An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with visual flight rules.

VFR conditions. Weather conditions equal to or better than the minimum for flight under visual flight rules. The term may be used as an ATC clearance/instruction only when:

1. An IFR aircraft requests a climb/descent in VFR conditions.
2. The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA-approved noise abatement route or altitude.
3. A pilot has requested a practice instrument approach and is not on an IFR flight plan.

VFR flight. A flight conducted in accordance with the visual flight rules. (See OPNAVINST 3710.7 series.)

VFR not recommended. An advisory provided by a flight service station to a pilot during a preflight or in-flight weather briefing that flight under visual flight rules is not recommended. To be given when the current and/or forecast weather conditions are at or below VFR minimums. It does not abrogate the pilot's authority to make his/her own decision.

VFR-on-top. ATC authorization for an IFR aircraft to operate in VFR conditions at any appropriate VFR altitude (as specified in 14 CFR and as restricted by ATC). A pilot receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility, distance from cloud criteria, and the minimum IFR altitudes specified in 14 CFR Part 91. The use of this term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAAO 7110.65.

visibility. The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night. Visibility is reported as statute miles, hundreds of feet, or meters.

1. Flight visibility. The average forward horizontal distance, from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight, at which prominent unlighted objects may be seen and identified by day and prominent lighted objects may be seen and identified by night.
2. Ground visibility. Prevailing horizontal visibility near the surface of the Earth as reported by the United States National Weather Service or an accredited observer.
3. Prevailing visibility. The greatest horizontal visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least half the horizon circle, which need not necessarily be continuous.
4. Runway Visibility Value (RVV). The visibility determined for a particular runway by a transmissometer. A meter provides a continuous indication of the visibility (reported in miles or fractions of miles) for the runway. RVV is used in lieu of prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.
5. Runway Visual Range (RVR). An instrumentally derived value, based on standard calibrations, that represents the horizontal distance a pilot will see down the runway from the approach end. It is based on the sighting of either high-intensity runway lights or on the visual contrast of other targets, whichever yields the greater visual range. RVR, in contrast to prevailing or runway visibility, is based on what a pilot in a moving aircraft should see looking down the runway. RVR is horizontal visual range, not slant visual range. It is based on the

measurement of a transmissometer made near the touchdown point of the instrument runway and is reported in hundreds of feet. RVR is used in lieu of RVV and/or prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

a. Touchdown RVR. The RVR visibility readout values obtained from RVR equipment serving the runway touchdown zone.

b. Mid-RVR. The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located midfield of the runway.

c. Rollout RVR. The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located nearest the rollout end of the runway.

visual approach. An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, operating in VFR conditions and having received an air traffic control authorization, may deviate from the prescribed instrument approach procedures and proceed to the airport of destination by visual reference to the surface.

visual approach slope indicator. A lighting system usable at night, or in limited visibility, that aids the pilot in maintaining a predetermined glidepath on final approach. The lights are visible up to 15 miles at night and 5 miles by day. Each unit is equipped with a high-beam white light and a low-beam red filter that enables the pilot, when on the proper glidepath, to see the front row of lights as white and the back row of lights as red on both sides of the runway. If glidepath is too high, both rows of lights show white; if too low, they show red.

visual descent point. A defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided the approach threshold of that runway, or approach lights, or other markings identifiable with the approach end of that runway are clearly visible to the aircrew. Aircrew should not descend below the MDA prior to reaching the VDP and acquiring the necessary visual reference.

visual meteorological conditions. Basic weather conditions prescribed for flight under visual flight rules.

visual separation. A means of separating IFR, DVFR, and, where special programs are in effect, VFR aircraft in terminal areas wherein either of the following methods is applied:

1. The tower controller sees the aircraft involved and issues information and instructions, as necessary, to ensure the aircraft avoid each other.

2. The pilot sees the other aircraft involved and, upon instructions from the controller, provides his/her own separation by maneuvering his/her aircraft as necessary to avoid it. This may involve following in-trail behind another aircraft or keeping it in sight until it is no longer a factor. A pilot's acceptance of traffic information and instructions to follow another aircraft or provide visual separation from it is considered to constitute acknowledgement that he/she sees the other aircraft and will avoid it.

W

wake turbulence. Phenomena resulting from the passage of an aircraft through the atmosphere. The term includes vortices, thrust stream turbulence, jet blast, jet wash, propeller wash, and rotorwash both on the ground and in the air.

waypoint. A predetermined geographical position used for route/instrument approach definition, progress reports, published VFR routes, visual reporting points or points for transitioning and/or circumnavigating controlled and/or special use airspace, that is defined relative to a VORTAC station or in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates.

List of Abbreviations and Acronyms

A

AAS. Airport Advisory Service.

ACLS. Automated Carrier Landing System.

ACM. Air Combat Maneuvering.

ADCUS. Advise Customs (message).

ADF. Automatic Direction Finder/Finding.

ADI. Attitude Direction Indicator.

ADIZ. Air Defense Identification Zone.

ADRL. Automatic Distribution Requirements List.

AFCS. Automatic Flight Control System.

AFM. Aircraft Flight Manual.

AGL. Above Ground Level.

AIM. Aeronautical Information Manual.

AIRMET. Airmen's Meteorological Information.

AL. Low-Altitude Approach.

ALS. Approach Light System.

ALSF. Approach Light System with Sequential Flashing Lights.

ALTRV. Altitude Reservation.

AOA. Angle of Attack.

AP. Area Planning (FLIP).

ARTCC. Air Route Traffic Control Center.

ASDE. Airport Surface Detection Equipment.

ASE. Automatic Stabilization Equipment.

ASOS. Automated Surface Observing System (WX broadcasts).

ASR. Airport Surveillance Radar.

ASW. Antisubmarine Warfare.

ATC. Air Traffic Control.

ATCRBS. Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System.

ATCT. Airport Traffic Control Tower.

ATD. Along Track Distance.

ATIS. Automatic Terminal Information Service.

ATS. Air Traffic Service.

AWOS. Automated Weather Observing System (broadcasts).

AZ-EL. Azimuth/Elevation Scope Presentation.

B

BARO-VNAV. Barometric Vertical (altitude) Navigation.

BDHI. Bearing-Distance-Heading Indicator.

BRC. Base Recovery Course.

C

C/A. Coarse Acquisition (GPS).

CAS. Calibrated Airspeed.

CAT. Clear Air Turbulence.

CDI. Course Deviation Indicator.

CERAP. Center Radar Approach Control.

CF. Course to Fix. (GPS).

CFIT. Controlled Flight Into Terrain.

CFR. Code of Federal Regulations.

CONUS. Continental United States.

COP. Changeover Point.

CTAF. Common Traffic Advisory Frequency.

CV. Aircraft Carrier.

CVFP. Charted Visual Flight Procedure.

D

DA. Decision Altitude.

DEWIZ. Distant Early Warning Identification Zone.

DF. Direct to Fix (GPS).

DG. Directional Gyro.

DH. Decision Height.

DINS. Defense Internet NOTAM Distribution System.

DME. Distance Measuring Equipment.

DoD. Department of Defense.

DP. Departure Procedure.

DVFR. Defense VFR.

E

EAS. Equivalent Airspeed.

EFAS. En Route Flight Advisory Service.

EFC. Expected Further Clearance Time.

EGT. Exhaust Gas Temperature.

ESA. Emergency Safe Altitude.

ETA. Estimated Time of Arrival.

ETD. Estimated Time of Departure.

ETE. Estimated Time En Route.

F

FA. Aviation Area Forecast.

FAA. Federal Aviation Administration.

FAF. Final Approach Fix.

FAR. Federal Aviation Regulation.

FAWP. Final Approach Waypoint (GPS).

FBWP. Fly-By Waypoint (GPS).

FDC. Flight Data Center (FAA).

FDS. Flight Director System.

FIR. Flight Information Region.

FL. Flight Level.

FLIP. Flight Information Publications.

FM. Frequency Modulation.

FM/CW. Frequency Modulation/Continuous Wave.

FMS. Flight Management System.

FMSP. Flight Management System Procedure.

FOWP. Fly-Over Waypoint (GPS).

FSDO. Flight Standards District Office.

FSS. Flight Service Station.

G

GCA. Ground Controlled Approach.

GEO. Geostationary Satellite.

GIP. Government-Industry Partnership (GPS).

GLS. GNSS Landing System (GPS).

GLS PA. GNSS Landing System Precision Approach (GPS).

GNC. Global Navigational Chart.

GNSS. Global Navigation Satellite System (GPS).

GP. General Planning (FLIP).

GPS. Global Positioning System.

GS. Groundspeed.

GSI. Glideslope Indicator.

GUS. Ground Uplink Station (GPS).

H

HAA. Height Above Airport.

HAT. Height Above Touchdown.

HDTA. High Density Traffic Airport.

HIRL. High Intensity Runway Lighting.

HIWAS. Hazardous In-Flight Weather Advisory Service.

HSI. Horizontal Situation Indicator.

HUD. Heads-Up Display.

HWD. Horizontal Weather Depiction.

I

IAF. Initial Approach Fix.

IAP. Instrument Approach Procedure.

IAS. Indicated Airspeed.

IAWP. Initial Approach Waypoint (GPS).

ICAO. International Civil Aviation Organization.

IF. Intermediate Fix.

IFF. Identification Friend or Foe.

IFIM. International Flight Information Manual.

IFR. Instrument Flight Rules.

ILS. Instrument Landing System.

IM. Inner Marker.

IMC. Instrument Meteorological Conditions.

IMN. Indicated Mach Number.

IPA. Initial Penetration Altitude.

ITCZ. Intertropical Convergence Zone.

ITO. Instrument Takeoff.

J

JAL. High-Altitude Approach.

JNC. Jet Navigational Chart.

JOG. Joint Operations Graphic.

K

KIAS. Knots Indicated Airspeed.

L

L/MF. Low/Medium Frequency (NAVAIDs).

LAAS. Local Area Augmentation System (GPS).

LAHSO. Land And Hold Short Operations.

LDA. Localizer-type Directional Aid.

LF. Low Frequency.

LFM. Low-Power Fan Marker.

LIRL. Low Intensity Runway Lighting.

LMM. Locator Middle Marker.

LNAV. Lateral Navigation (GPS).

LOC. Localizer.

LOM. Locator Outer Marker.

LPV. Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance.

M

MAA. Maximum Authorized Altitude.

MAHWP. Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (GPS).

MALSF. Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Sequential Flashing Lights.

MALSR. Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

MAP. Missed Approach Point.

MARSA. Military Assumes Responsibility for Separation of Aircraft.

MAWP. Missed Approach Waypoint (GPS).

MCA. Minimum Crossing Altitude.

MDA. Minimum Descent Altitude.

MDF. Manual Direction Finder.

MEA. Minimum En Route Altitude.

MEF. Maximum Elevation Figure.

MF. Medium Frequency.

MH. Magnetic Heading.

MHA. Minimum Holding Altitude.

MIA. Minimum IFR Altitude.

MIRL. Medium Intensity Runway Lighting.

MLS. Microwave Landing System.

MN. Mach Number.

MOA. Military Operations Area.

MOCA. Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitude.

MRA. Minimum Reception Altitude.

MSA. Minimum Safe Altitude.

MSL. Mean Sea Level.

MTI. Moving Target Indicator.

MVA. Minimum Vectoring Altitude.

MWWA. Military Weather Warning Advisory.

N

NAS. National Airspace System/Naval Air Station.

NATOPS. Naval Aviation Training and Operating Procedures Standardization.

NAVAID. Navigation Aid.

NAVICP. Navy Inventory Control Point.

NDB. Non-Directional Beacon.

NFDC. National Flight Data Center.

NFO. Naval Flight Officer.

NGA. National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency.

NM. Nautical Mile(s).

NORDO. No Radio.

NOTAM. Notice to Airmen.

NTSB. National Transportation Safety Board.

NTZ. No-Transgression Zone.

NWS. National Weather Service.

O

OAT. Outside Air Temperature.

ODALS. Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System.

ONC. Operational Navigation Chart.

OPARS. Optimum Path Aircraft Routing System.

ORM. Operational Risk Management.

OROCA. Off-Route Obstruction Clearance Altitude.

P

PAPI. Precision Approach Path Indicator.

PAR. Precision Approach Radar.

PFR. Primary Flight Reference.

PIREP. Pilot Report.

PMSV. Pilot-to-Metro Service.

PPS. Precise Position Service (GPS).

PRM. Precision Runway Monitor.

PRMS. Precision Runway Monitor System.

PRN. Pseudo Random Noise.

PT. Procedure Turn.

PTD. Pilot-to-Dispatcher.

Q

QFE (ICAO). A pressure type altimeter with a QFE Setting indicates altitude above the aerodrome providing the setting (Absolute Altitude).

QNE (ICAO). The QNE Setting is the Standard Altimeter Setting of 29.92 inches. It shows the altitude above the Standard Datum Plane (Pressure Altitude).

QNH (ICAO). A pressure type altimeter with a QNH Setting indicates altitude above mean sea level (true altitude).

R

RA. Resolution Advisory (TCAS II).

RAIM. Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (GPS).

RCAG. Remote Center Air/Ground (ARTCC).

RCLS. Runway Centerline Lighting System.

RCR. Runway Condition Reading.

REIL. Runway End Identifier Lights.

REILL. Low-Intensity REIL.

RF. Radio Frequency/Radius to Fix (GPS).

RMI. Radio Magnetic Indicator.

RNAV. Area Navigation.

RNP. Required Navigation Performance.

RPM. Revolutions Per Minute.

RVR. Runway Visual Range.

RVSM. Reduced Vertical Separation Minimums.

RVV. Runway Visibility Value.

S

SA. Selective Availability (GPS).

SAAAR. Special Aircraft and Aircrew Authorization Required.

SAR. Search and Rescue.

SCAT-1. Special Category 1 Differential GPS.

SDF. Simplified Directional Facility.

SFA. Single-Frequency Approach.

SFL. Sequenced Flashing Lights.

SIAP. Standard Instrument Approach Procedure.

SID. Standard Instrument Departure.

SIF. Selective Identification Feature.

SIGMET. Significant Meteorological Information.

SM. Statute Mile(s).

SPS. Standard Positioning Service (GPS).

SRT. Standard Rate Turn.

SSALR. Simplified Short Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

STAR. Standard Terminal Arrival.

SVN. Satellite Vehicle Number (GPS).

T

TA. Traffic Advisory (TCAS).

TAA. Terminal Arrival Area.

TACAN. Tactical Air Navigation.

TAS. True Airspeed.

TCAS. Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System.

TDZL. Touchdown Zone Lights.

TERPS. Terminal Instrument Procedures.

TF. Track to Fix (GPS).

TLS. Tactical Landing System.

TMN. True Mach Number.

TPC. Tactical Pilotage Chart.

TPP. Terminal Procedures Publication (FAA).

TRSA. Terminal Radar Service Area.

TWEB. Transcribed Weather Broadcast.

U

UHF. Ultrahigh Frequency.

USAF. United States Air Force.

USNOF. U.S. NOTAM Facility.

USNS. U.S. NOTAM System.

V

VASI. Visual Approach Slope Indicator.

VASIL. Low-Intensity VASI.

VDA. Vertical Descent Angle.

VDP. Visual Descent Point.

VFR. Visual Flight Rules.

VGSI. Visual Glideslope Indicator.

VHF. Very High Frequency.

VMC. Visual Meteorological Conditions.

VNAV. Vertical Navigation (GPS).

VOR. VHF Omnidirectional Range.

VORTAC. VOR and TACAN Navigation Facilities Co-located.

VSI. Vertical Speed Indicator.

VVI. Vertical Velocity Indicator.

W

WA. AIRMET.

WAAS. Wide Area Augmentation System (GPS).

WAC. World Aeronautical Chart.

WMS. Wide-Area Master Station (GPS).

WOD. Wind-Over-Deck.

WP. Waypoint.

WRS. Wide-Area Ground Reference Station (GPS).

WS. SIGMET.

WST. Convective SIGMET Meteorological Information.

WW. Severe Weather Watch Bulletin.

PREFACE

SCOPE

NATOPS manuals are issued by the authority of the Chief of Naval Operations and under the direction of the Commander, Naval Air Systems Command in conjunction with the Naval Air Training and Operating Procedures Standardization (NATOPS) program. NATOPS publications provide the best available operating instructions for most circumstances. However, no manual can cover every situation or be a substitute for sound judgment; operational situations may require modification of the procedures contained therein. Read these publications from cover to cover. It is your responsibility to have a complete knowledge of their contents.

Note

See Chapter 1 for more information on the scope and purpose of this manual, and for any special requirements or procedures that compliment those contained in this preface.

DETERMINING THE CURRENT VERSION OF THIS PUBLICATION

The current versions of NATOPS publications are listed in the NATOPS Status Report which is available online at https://airworthiness.navair.navy.mil. Upon receiving a copy of a NATOPS, consult the NATOPS Status Report to determine its current configuration (through the latest revision, change, and interim change). Before using this publication, users shall ensure that they have the current version of it.

OBTAINING COPIES OF THIS PUBLICATION

One-Time Orders

Copies of this publication and the current changes thereto may be ordered from the Naval Logistics Library (NLL) using NAVICP Pub 2003, which is available online at https://nll.ahf.nmci.navy.mil, or procured through the supply system in accordance with NAVSUP P-409 (MILSTRIP/MILSTRAP). This manual is also available in pdf format and may be viewed on, and downloaded from, the NATEC or AIRWORTHINESS websites, www.natec.navy.mil or https://airworthiness.navair.navy.mil, respectively.

Note

- When the current revision of a publication is ordered through NLL or NAVSUP, copies of all active changes to the publication will be forwarded along with it. The printed changes to a revision need not be ordered in addition to ordering the revision.

- An order for a publication that exceeds the maximum order quantity posted on the NLL website will be filled not to exceed the maximum order quantity. Additional orders will be required in order for an activity to receive more than the posted maximum order quantity of a publication.

- Interim changes to NATOPS publications are not stocked within the NLL or NAVSUP systems and must be obtained separately. Active interim changes to NATOPS publications are published in electronic media only and most are available online at www.natec.navy.mil and https://airworthiness.navair.navy.mil for viewing and downloading.

AUTOMATIC DISTRIBUTION

NATEC automatically sends copies of new revisions and changes to users whose NAVAIR publication requirements are maintained within its Automatic Distribution Requirements List (ADRL) database. Detailed procedures for establishing and maintaining an ADRL account are contained in NAVAIR technical manual 00-25-100 work package (WP) 017-00, which is available online at www.natec.navy.mil.

Note

- When a user's ADRL account has not been updated within the last 12 months, all automatic distribution to the user will be suspended until the account has been updated.

- To avoid the gross cost and delivery inefficiencies that have resulted from excessive or insufficient distributions, the NATOPS Program Manager has been granted authority to adjust the automatic distribution quantities of NATOPS publications. Units requiring large or unusual distribution quantities of NATOPS publications should confirm them with the NATOPS Program Manager in advance of distribution to ensure that the quantities they will receive will be acceptable.

KEEPING THIS PUBLICATION CURRENT

To be effective, NATOPS publications must be kept current through an active manual change program. Corrections, additions to, deletions from, and suggestions for improvement of contents should be submitted as NATOPS change recommendations as soon as possible after discovery. Suggestions for improvement should avoid vague and generalized language and shall be worded as specifically as possible. Detailed standards for NATOPS publications are found in MIL-DTL-85025B(AS), which is available online at https://airworthiness.navair.navy.mil. Change recommendations may be submitted by anyone in accordance with OPNAVINST 3710.7 series. All users are encouraged to contribute to the currency, accuracy, and usefulness of this and other NATOPS publications by submitting timely change recommendations for these publications.

SUBMITTING CHANGE RECOMMENDATIONS

Types of Change Recommendations

Change recommendations should be submitted as URGENT, PRIORITY or ROUTINE. Urgent and Priority change recommendations are changes that cannot be allowed to wait for implementation until after the next review conference. These usually involve safety-of-flight matters. Some priority change recommendations may be upgraded to URGENT by NATOPS Program Manager, Program Class Desk, or NAVAIR (AIR 4.0P) following receipt and initial review.

Submitting Change Recommendations to NATOPS Publications

While each type of change recommendation is processed and approved differently, the preferred means of submitting all of them is through the Airworthiness Issue Resolution System (AIRS) which may be accessed online at https://airworthiness.navair.navy.mil, or on SIPRNET at https://airworthiness.navair.navy.smil.mil for classified or otherwise sensitive change recommendations. AIRS provides the fastest and most efficient means of processing and resolving NATOPS change recommendations. It expedites distribution of the URGENT and PRIORITY change recommendations to those who need to act on them and compiles the ROUTINE change recommendations into their respective review conference agenda packages.

In the event that a worldwide web connection to AIRS is not available, PRIORITY change recommendations may be submitted via Naval message in accordance with OPNAVINST 3710.7 series. When AIRS is not accessible, ROUTINE change recommendations may be submitted on a NATOPS/Tactical Change Recommendation (Form OPNAV 3710/6), a copy of which is contained within the preface of this manual. The completed change recommendation forms for changes to this manual should be sent by U.S. Mail to the NATOPS Model Manager of this publication at:

Message PLAD:
TRARON THREE ONE CORPUS CHRISTI TX(UC)

Address:
Commanding Officer Training Squadron 31
ATTN: IFM NATOPS Evaluator
501 Bataan St., Suite B,
NAS Corpus Christi,
Texas 78419

Telephone:
Commercial (361) 961-2876
DSN 861-2876

Email:
v31_co–xo@navy.mil

ISSUING UPDATES TO NATOPS PUBLICATIONS

Interim Changes

Approved NATOPS urgent and priority change recommendations are issued via Naval messages and may involve making pen-and-ink entries and/or replacing pages. Copies of interim change messages and their replacement pages are posted on the NATEC website at www.natec.navy.mil, https://airworthiness.navair.navy.mil, or https://airworthiness.navair.navy.smil.mil for viewing and downloading. Interim change replacement pages are always issued in electronic format and are not distributed in paper format except under unusual circumstances. Following the incorporation of an interim change into this publication, its entry shall be recorded on the Interim Change Summary page within this publication.

Revisions, Changes and Errata

Routine change recommendations are compiled into a conference agenda and held for review at the next NATOPS review conference for this publication. Change recommendations approved by the review conference are published by the NATOPS Model Manager in a review conference report and then incorporated into a revision or change to this manual, copies of which are mailed on paper and/or electronic media to users that have a listed requirement for it in the NATEC ADRL system database. Copies of most unclassified publications are also posted on the NATEC and Airworthiness websites. When printing errors are found in publications, errata may also be prepared and posted and/or distributed in electronic or paper form in the same manner as for revisions and changes. After incorporating a change or errata into this publication, you should page check and record its entry on the Record of Changes page within this publication.

CHANGE SYMBOLS

Revised text is indicated by a black vertical line in the outside margin of the page, like the one printed next to this paragraph. The change symbol shows where there has been a change. The change might be material added or information restated. A change symbol in the margin by the chapter number and title indicates a new or completely revised chapter.

NATOPS/TACTICAL CHANGE RECOMMENDATION
OPNAV 3710/6 (4-90) S/N 0107-LF-009-7900

DATE ____________

TO BE FILLED IN BY ORIGINATOR AND FORWARDED TO MODEL MANAGER

FROM (Originator)	Unit
TO (Model Manager)	Unit

Complete Name of Manual/Checklist	Revision Date	Change Date	Section/Chapter	Page	Paragraph

Recommendation (Be specific.)

☐ CHECK IF CONTINUED ON BACK

Justification

Signature	Rank	Title

Address of Unit or Command

TO BE FILLED IN BY MODEL MANAGER *(Return to Originator)*

FROM	DATE
TO	

REFERENCE
(a) Your Change Recommendation Dated ____________

☐ Your change recommendation dated ____________ is acknowledged. It will be held for action of the review conference planned for ____________ to be held at ____________

☐ Your change recommendation is reclassified URGENT and forwarded for approval to ____________ ____________ by my DTG ____________

/S/ ____________ MODEL MANAGER | ____________ AIRCRAFT

Form OPNAV 3710/6

SPECIAL TERMINOLOGY IN NATOPS PUBLICATIONS

The following special terminology and meanings apply to the contents of this and other NATOPS publications:

Warnings, Cautions, and Notes

The following definitions apply to WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and Notes:

WARNING

An operating procedure, practice, or condition, etc., that may result in injury or death, if not carefully observed or followed.

CAUTION

An operating procedure, practice, or condition, etc., that may result in damage to equipment, if not carefully observed or followed.

Note

An operating procedure, practice, or condition, etc., that is essential to emphasize.

Requirement for compliance.

The concept of word usage and intended meaning adhered to in preparing this manual is as follows:

“Shall” is used only when application of a procedure is mandatory.

“Should” is used only when application of a procedure is recommended.

“May” and ”need not” are used only when application of a procedure is optional.

“Will” is used only to indicate futurity, and never to indicate any degree of requirement for applicability of a procedure.

Requirement for landing aircraft.

“Land immediately” means execute a landing without delay. The primary consideration is to ensure the survival of the occupants. (Applicable to helicopters and other VTOL aircraft).

“Land as soon as possible” means land at the first landing site at which a safe landing may be made.

“Land as soon as practical” means extended flight is not recommended. The landing and duration of flight is at the discretion of the pilot in command.

PART I

Introduction

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

1.1 PURPOSE

This manual presents an overview of information required for flying U.S. Navy and Marine Corps aircraft under Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) and conditions in various operating environments. It has been prepared for use as a reference for U.S. Navy and Marine Corps Aircrew preparing for their annual instrument flight evaluations, especially those unable to attend instrument ground training. It also provides guidance and standardization for instrument flight evaluators and aircrews on criteria for evaluating the instrument flying abilities and proficiency of aircrew members and conducting NATOPS Instrument Flight Evaluations.

1.2 SCOPE

This manual is intended as a general reference for those aviators and evaluators reviewing the information and procedures and preparing for instrument flights, and/or for aviators receiving and evaluators performing instrument flight evaluations. It contains information on the spectrum of subjects that provide the necessary background of information for those planning and executing flights under instrument flight rules. This manual includes a review of meteorology and of the physiological factors that may arise during flights under instrument conditions, as well as the procedures for countering their effects. It addresses aircraft instrumentation, and communications and navigation equipment and use. It discusses aircraft attitude instrument flying, aircraft navigational aids, Air Traffic Control (ATC) facilities, and the procedures for using them. It also describes the procedures for planning, filing and executing an IFR flight from takeoff through landing within the air traffic control system. The last part in this manual complements OPNAVINST 3710.7 series instrument flight evaluation policy and requirements by providing standards for content, conduct and grading criteria or instrument flight evaluations. This manual shall be used in the renewal of instrument ratings by and for designated Naval Aviators only. Initial instrument ratings shall only be granted by authority of Commander, Navy Air Training Command.

1.3 GENERAL

If conflicts develop between the contents in this manual and OPNAVINST 3710.7 series, the requirements in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series shall take precedence.

1.4 RESPONSIBILITIES

1.4.1 NATOPS Advisory Group

NATOPS Advisory Group member relationships, responsibilities and procedures are contained in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series.

In accordance with OPNAVINST 3710.7 series, each commander shall designate his NATOPS Advisory Group representative in writing and forward copies of this correspondence to NAVAIR (AIR 4.0P), and CNAF(N455), and CNATRA (N7) on each occasion when a new representative is assigned.

1.4.2 NATOPS Cognizant Command

Commander, Naval Air Training Command is assigned as the NATOPS Cognizant Command and is responsible for the contents and maintenance of this manual in accordance with OPNAVINST 3710.7 series.

1.4.3 NATOPS Model Manager

The NATOPS Model Manager for this manual is listed in the Preface of this manual.

1.4.4 Commanding Officers

Commanding Officers are responsible for ensuring assigned aircrew are familiar with this publication and its contents.

1.5 TRAINING

Training requirements for aircrew instrument flight evaluations are contained in Part VIII of this manual.

1.6 WAIVERS

There are no waivers authorized for the provisions contained in this manual. Grading criteria for instrument flight evaluations are contained in Part VIII of this manual. Instrument evaluation policy, requirements and administrative procedures are contained in OPNAVINST 3710.7. Procedures for extensions of instrument flight ratings and qualification, restrictions on instrument ratings, and revocation of instrument ratings are all contained in OPNAVINST 3710.7.

PART II

Meteorology

CHAPTER 2

Concept

2.1 METEOROLOGY FOR NAVAL AVIATORS

Meteorology for Naval Aviators, NAVAIR 00-80U-24, looks into the fundamentals of meteorology and how it can be applied to aviators. In today's Navy, the concept of Operational Risk Management (ORM) is not only a buzzword, it is a way of life that is both paramount and mandatory. Naval aviators and flightcrews must become thoroughly familiar with the above document and be able to apply the concept of ORM for each and every flight.

The following chapters, though short and basic in discussion, provide naval aviators with weather information that is designed to alert you to the possible consequences of misunderstanding Mother Nature. Each of the following chapters provides fundamental weather information only. As a result, all aviators and crewmen are encouraged to learn as much as possible about aviation meteorology.

These chapters deal primarily with aviation weather and the potential impact to flight. It is important to note that preflight planning is an integral part of all missions, especially where weather is involved. Short discussions include airmasses, fronts, cloud types/recognition, basic radar and satellite interpretation, tropical meteorology, and conclude with weather hazards to flight.

CHAPTER 3

Airmasses

3.1 CONCEPT

The airmass concept is one of the most important developments in the history of meteorology. By definition, an airmass is a large body of air whose physical properties, particularly temperature and moisture distribution, are nearly homogeneous, level for level. Forecasting is largely a matter of recognizing various airmasses, determining their characteristics, predicting their behavior/modification, and identifying their boundaries.

3.1.1 Airmass Classification

Airmasses are classified geographically and thermodynamically.

The geographical classification, which refers to the source region of the airmass, is divided into four basic categories: these are arctic or antarctic (A), polar (P), tropical (T), and equatorial (E). The first three of these are further subdivided into maritime (m) and continental (c). An airmass is considered to be maritime if its source of origin is over an oceanic surface. If the airmass originates over a land surface, it is considered to be continental. It should be noted that maritime arctic/antarctic airmasses are rare because there is a predominance of landmass or icefields in the polar regions. On the other hand, virtually all equatorial airmasses are considered to be maritime in origin. Additionally, there is one other airmass classification that is sometimes used in addition to the four basic categories mentioned above. This airmass is called a superior (S) airmass. A superior airmass is extremely dry and is generally found aloft over the southwestern United States. On occasion, this airmass does appear at or near the surface.

The thermodynamic classification applies to the relative warmth or coldness of the airmass. A warm airmass (w) is one that is warmer than the underlying surface; a cold airmass (k) is one that is colder than the underlying surface.

3.1.2 Airmass Development

The airmass source region is the area where the airmass initially develops. The conditions that are ideal for the development of an airmass are the stagnation of air over a surface (water, land, or icecap) of uniform temperature and humidity. While the airmass is stagnant over the source region, it acquires definite properties and characteristics from the surface up and becomes virtually homogeneous throughout; its properties become uniform at each level. It should be noted that in the middle latitudes, the land and sea areas are generally not homogeneous enough to serve as a source region; therefore, these areas act as transitional (modification) zones for airmasses after they leave their source regions.

The source regions for airmasses are depicted in Figure 3-1. Note the uniformity of the underlying surfaces; also note the relatively uniform climatic conditions in the various source regions such as the southern North Atlantic and Pacific Oceans for maritime tropical air (mT), and the deep interiors of North America and Asia for continental polar air (cP).

3.1.3 Airmass Modification

As soon as an airmass begins to leave its source region, it undergoes modification. When changes in the physical properties of an airmass take place, they usually start in the lower levels and travel upward. The changes to the airmass depend greatly on the nature of the surface over which it travels, the difference between the original properties and those of the surface, its speed of movement, and the time that has elapsed since it left its source region. For example, if a warm, moist airmass moves over cold, dry land, its characteristics are modified in that moisture is lost and the temperature is lowered. It must be remembered that this process is not necessarily rapid and that time away from the original source region is important. If an airmass has recently left its source region, it will not become as modified as another similar airmass that has been removed from its source region for a longer period of time.

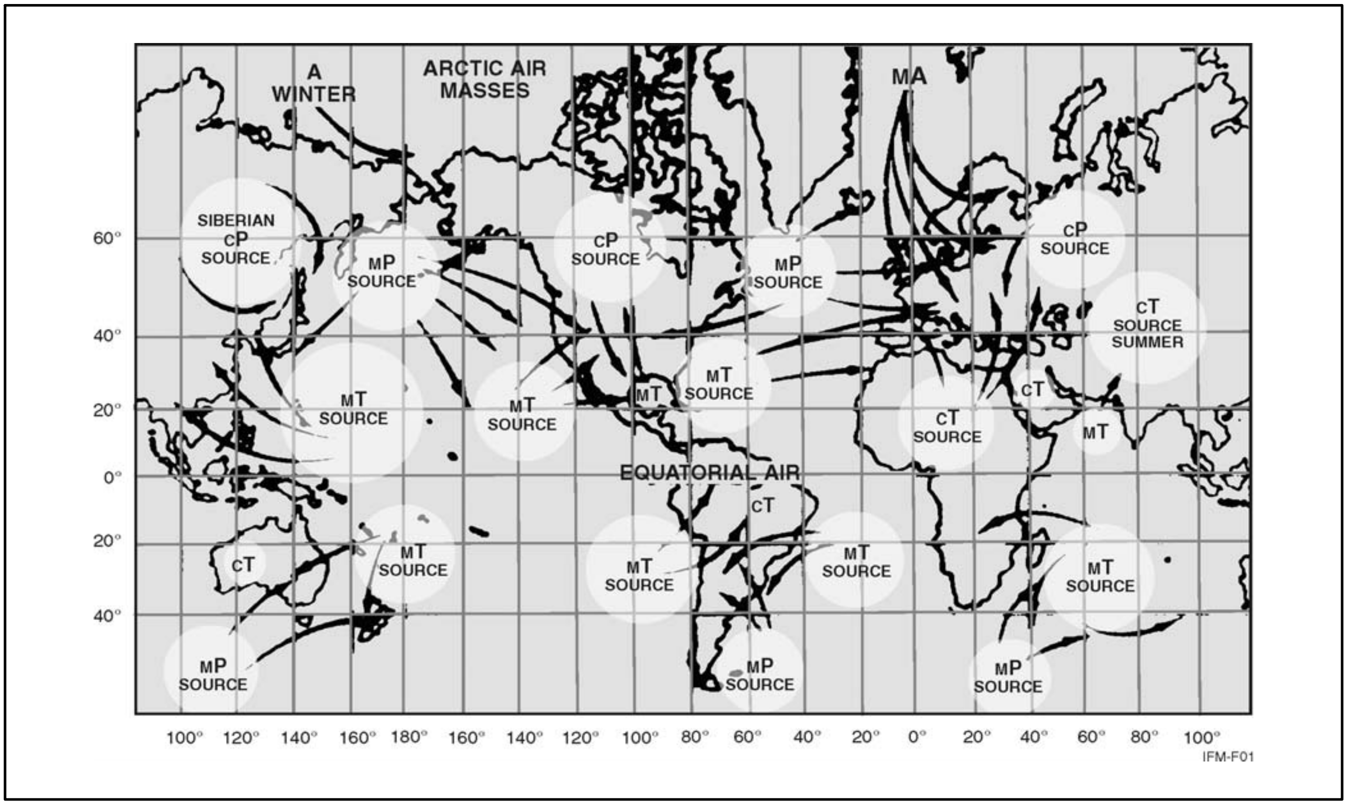


Figure 3-1. Air Mass Source Regions

3.1.4 Airmass Weather

With an airmass, weather is controlled primarily by the moisture content of the air, the relationship between the surface temperature and temperature of the airmass, and the terrain over which it is located or passing (upslope or downslope). Rising air is cooled, whereas descending air is warmed. Condensation takes place when the air is cooled to its dewpoint. A cloud warmed above its dewpoint temperature will evaporate and dissipate. Stability tends to increase if the surface temperature is lowered or if the temperature of the air at higher levels is increased while the surface temperature remains the same. Stability tends to be reduced if the surface temperature remains the same and the temperature aloft is lowered.

An airmass that has a cyclonic trajectory will be predominantly unstable in the lower layers, whereas an airmass with an anticyclonic trajectory will be stable in the lower layers.

Smooth stratiform clouds are associated with stable air, whereas convective clouds and thunderstorms are associated with unstable air.

CHAPTER 4

Fronts

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Because most major changes in the weather are associated with fronts, it is essential that aviators be totally familiar with them. This requires a thorough understanding of the relationship of fronts to cyclones and airmasses, their characteristics, and the weather phenomena associated with the various types of fronts.

4.2 RELATION OF FRONTS TO CYCLONES

A cyclone is defined as a low pressure system around which the air flows in a counterclockwise motion (in the Northern Hemisphere). In most cases, frontal activity is associated with low pressure systems. Normally, low pressure systems are associated with bad weather, and the fronts branching out from the system are also zones of bad weather.

4.3 RELATION OF FRONTS TO AIRMASSES

A front is defined as a boundary or line of discontinuity separating two different airmasses. When viewing a surface map, a front would only be indicated as a line separating the two airmasses. Viewing fronts in this manner does not give the true picture because airmasses have vertical extent (Figure 4-1). For example, a cold airmass, being heavier, tends to underrun a warm airmass; thus, the cold air is below and the warm air is above the surface of discontinuity. This vertical line of discontinuity is called the frontal slope. The average slope of a cold frontal surface is usually 1:50 (1 mile vertical for 50 miles horizontal), whereas the slope of a warm frontal surface is 1:300 (1 mile vertical for 300 miles horizontal). The slope of a front is of considerable importance in visualizing and understanding the weather along the front. In general, all cross sections of fronts as shown in this chapter summarize pictorially all the pertinent features of all types of fronts under average conditions.

4.3.1 Cold Fronts

A cold front is the line of discontinuity along which a wedge of cold air is underrunning and displacing a warmer airmass.

There are certain weather characteristics and conditions that are typical of cold fronts. In general, with the passage of a cold front, the temperature and humidity decrease, the pressure rises, and, in the Northern Hemisphere, the surface wind usually veers from the southwest to the northwest. Visibilities improve considerably, and the ceiling increases almost immediately. The distribution and type of cloudiness and the intensity and distribution of precipitation, along and in advance of the cold front, depend primarily on the vertical velocity within the warm airmass. On the basis of this factor, these fronts are classified as either slow-moving or fast-moving cold fronts. When viewing a cold frontal system, it is important that they be characterized as either a slow-moving or fast-moving system.

4.3.1.1 Slow-Moving Cold Fronts

A slow-moving cold front is defined as a cold front with an average speed of 15 knots or less and an average slope of 1:100; however, near the surface, the slope is much steeper than in the upper atmosphere. The cloud and precipitation areas associated with this type front are extensive, with showers, thunderstorms, and squalls that persist for hundreds of miles along the front. Additionally, extensive cloud cover and precipitation extend for several hundred miles behind the front. The development of convective activity is largely dependent on the original instability characteristics of the warm airmass. Within the cold airmass there may be some stratified clouds in the rain area, but there are no clouds in the cold air beyond this area unless the cold airmass in unstable. See Figure 4-2 for a cross section of a typical slow-moving cold front.

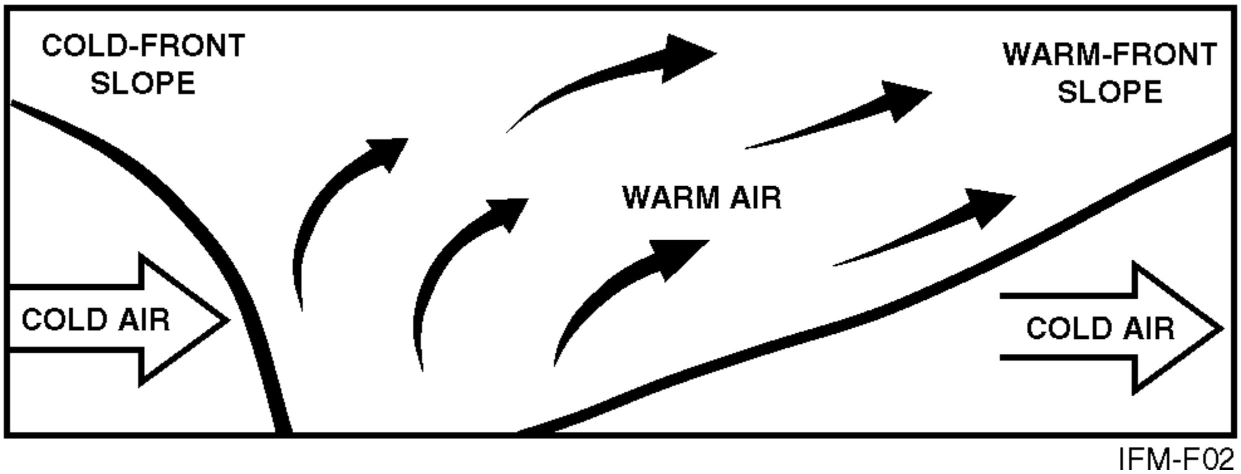


Figure 4-1. Frontal System (Without Clouds Shown)

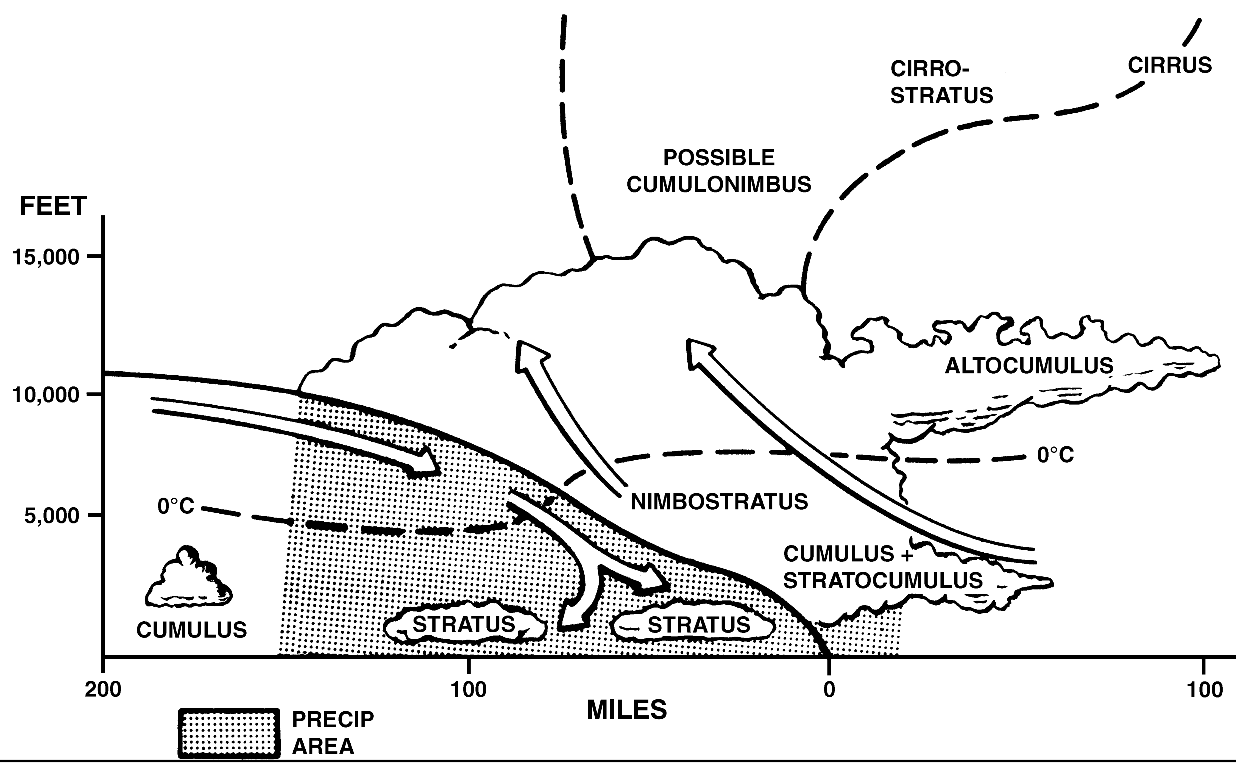


Figure 4-2. Vertical Cross Section of a Slow-Moving Cold Front

4.3.1.2 Fast-Moving Cold Fronts

These types of cold fronts are very important in that they move very rapidly and normally are associated with violent weather. Their adverse slope is 1:40 to 1:80, with an average speed of 25 to 30 knots. The development of squall lines, and in some situations, tornado activity, are not uncommon with these systems. Normally, after the passage of a fast-moving cold front, rapid clearing will take place. Figure 4-3 shows a typical cross section of a fast-moving cold front.

4.3.2 Warm Fronts

A warm front is the line of discontinuity where the forward edge of an advancing mass of warm air is replacing a retreating colder airmass. As in the case of the cold front, the term is used inexactly when referring to a warm frontal surface.

Certain characteristics and weather conditions are associated with warm fronts. The winds shift from southeast to southwest or west, but the shift is not as pronounced as with the cold front. The average slope of a warm front is 1:150.

A characteristic phenomena of a typical warm front is the sequence of cloud formation. This cloud formation is noticeable in the following sequence: cirrus, cirrostratus, altostratus, nimbostratus, and stratus. With a typical warm front, cirrus clouds may appear 700 to 1,000 miles ahead of the surface front, followed by cirrostratus at about 600 miles, altostratus at 500 miles, and nimbostratus and stratus clouds within 300 miles of the actual frontal surface. As stated earlier, convective activity is frequently embedded along and in advance of the frontal surface. Clearing usually occurs after the passage of a warm front; however, under certain conditions, drizzle and fog may occur within the warm sector of the frontal system. Figure 4-4 shows a typical cross section of a warm front.

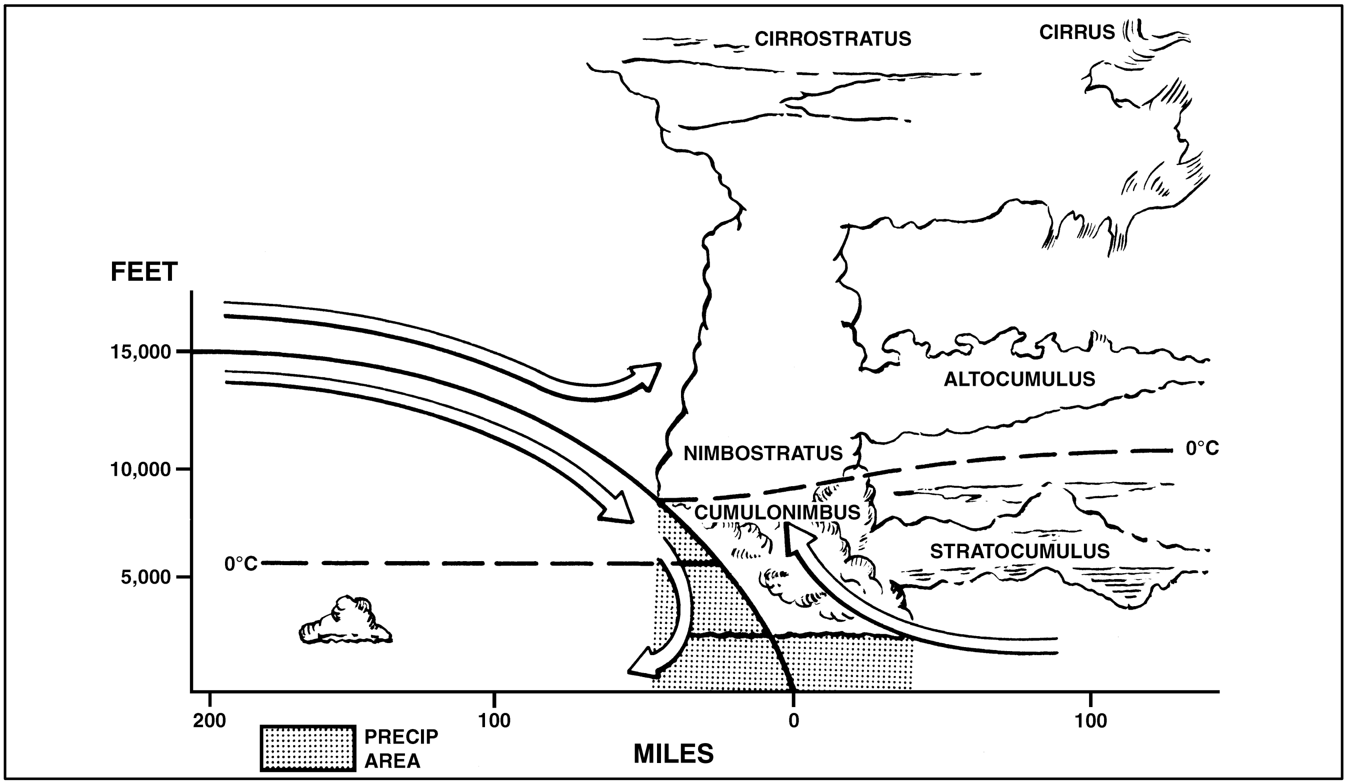


Figure 4-3. Vertical Cross Section of a Fast-Moving Cold Front

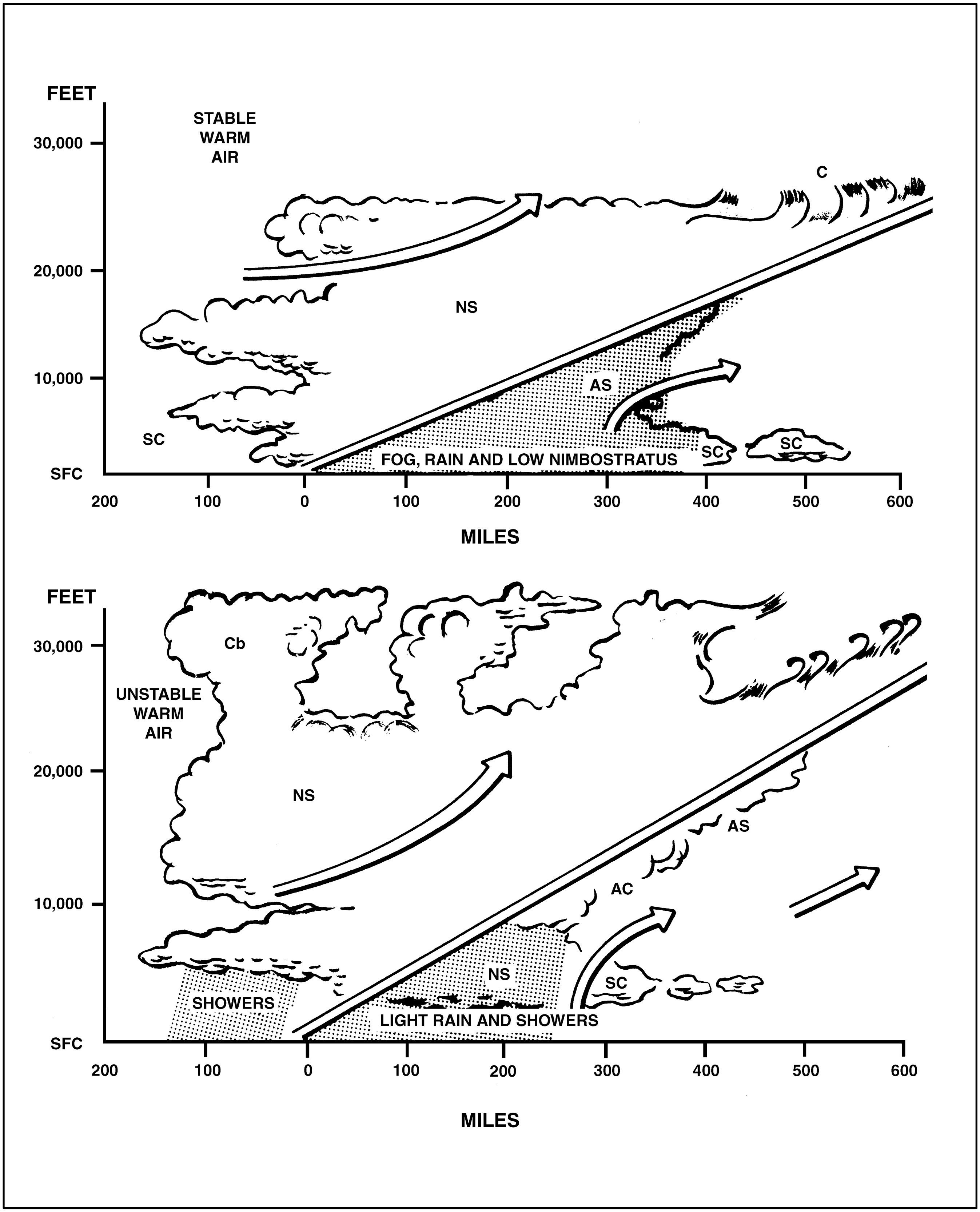


Figure 4-4. Vertical Cross Section of a Warm Front

4.3.3 Occluded Fronts

An occluded front occurs when the cold front overtakes the warm front, and one of the two fronts is forced aloft, thereby creating a situation where the warm air between the fronts is displaced above the surface. Occluded fronts either display a combination of both warm and cold frontal type weather or a predominate weather pattern that is more relative to either a warm or cold frontal system. When dealing with an occluded front, the zone of the most adverse weather is located near the apex of the warm and cold frontal surfaces. Figures 4-5 and 4-6 provide a vertical cross section of warm and cold type occlusions, respectively, and Figure 4-7 provides occlusions in the horizontal and associated upper front.

4.3.4 Stationary Fronts

When a front is stationary, the cold airmass, as a whole, does not move either toward or away from the front. In terms of wind direction, this means that the wind above the friction layer blows neither toward nor away from the front, but parallel to it. It follows that the isobars, too, are nearly parallel to a stationary front. This characteristic makes it easy to recognize a stationary front on a weather map.

The frictional inflow of warm air toward a stationary front causes a slow upglide of air on the frontal surface. As the air is lifted to and beyond its lifting condensation level, clouds form in the warm air above the front.

If the warm air in a stationary front is stable, the clouds are stratiform. Drizzle may then fall; and as the air is lifted beyond the freezing level, icing conditions develop and light rain or snow may fall. At very high levels above the top of the front, ice clouds are present.

If the warm air is conditionally unstable and sufficient lifting occurs, the clouds are then cumuliform or stratiform with cumuliform protuberances. If the energy release is great (warm, moist, unstable air), thunderstorms result. Rainfall is generally showery.

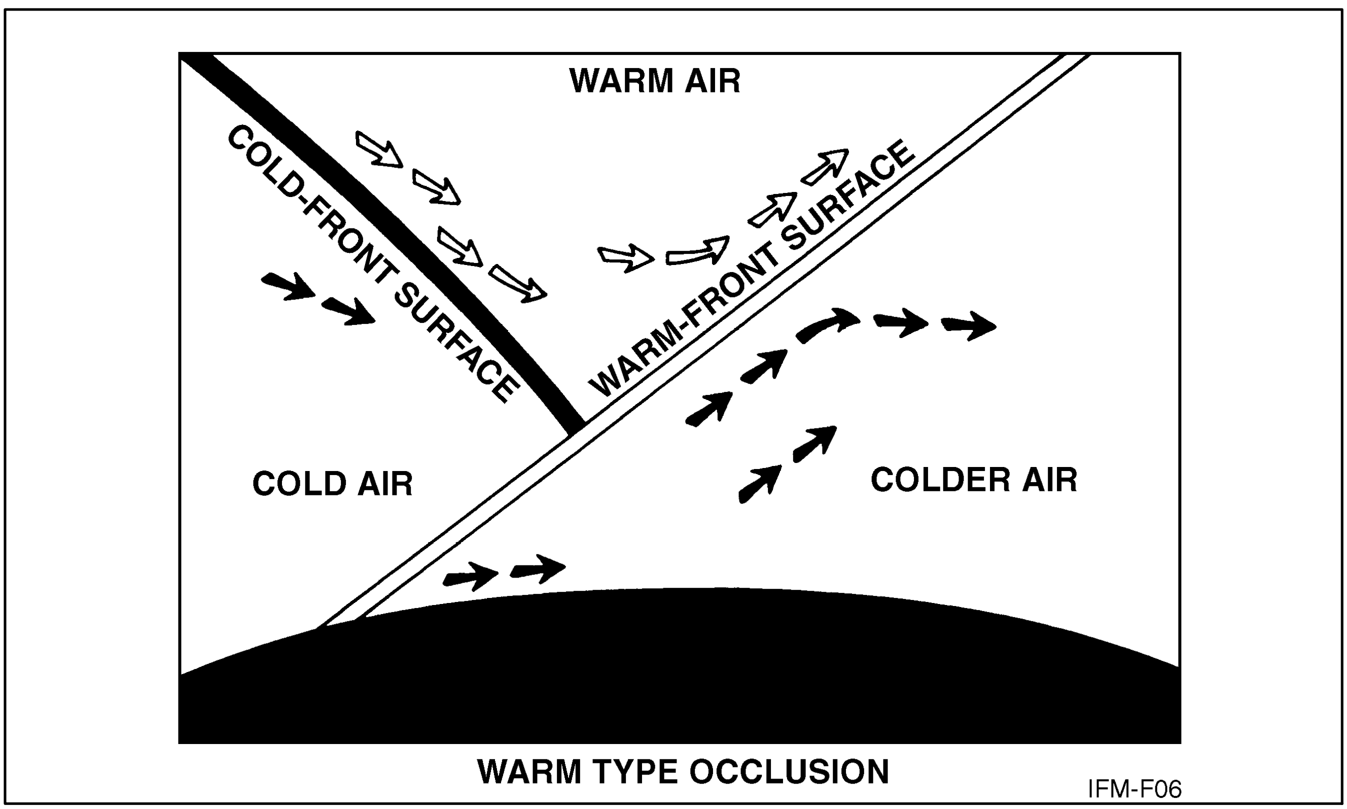


Figure 4-5. Vertical Cross Section of a Warm-Type Occlusion

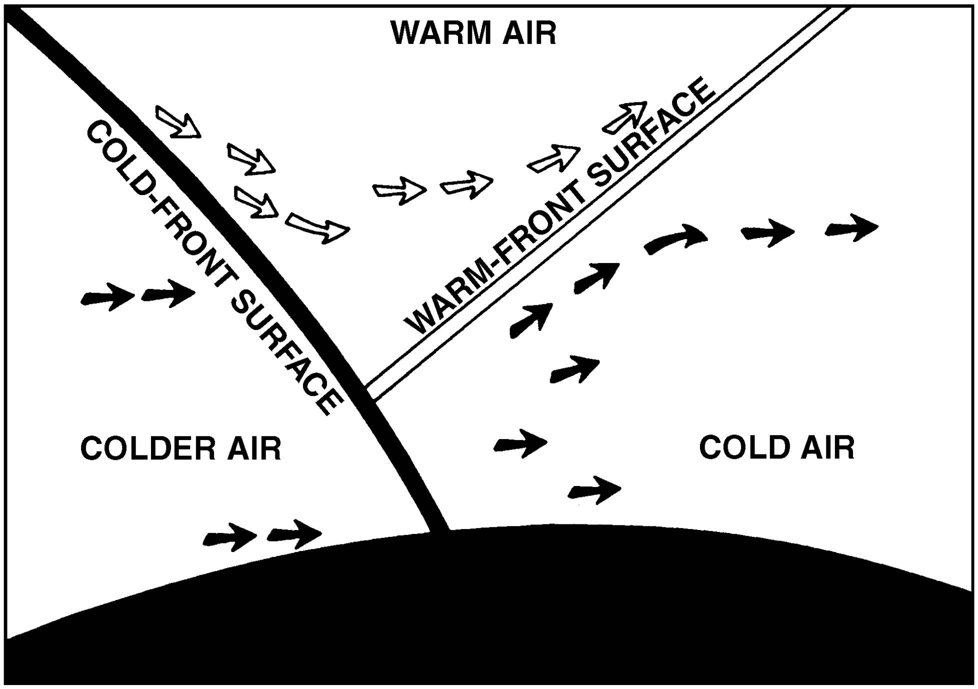


Figure 4-6. Vertical Cross Section of a Cold-Type Occlusion

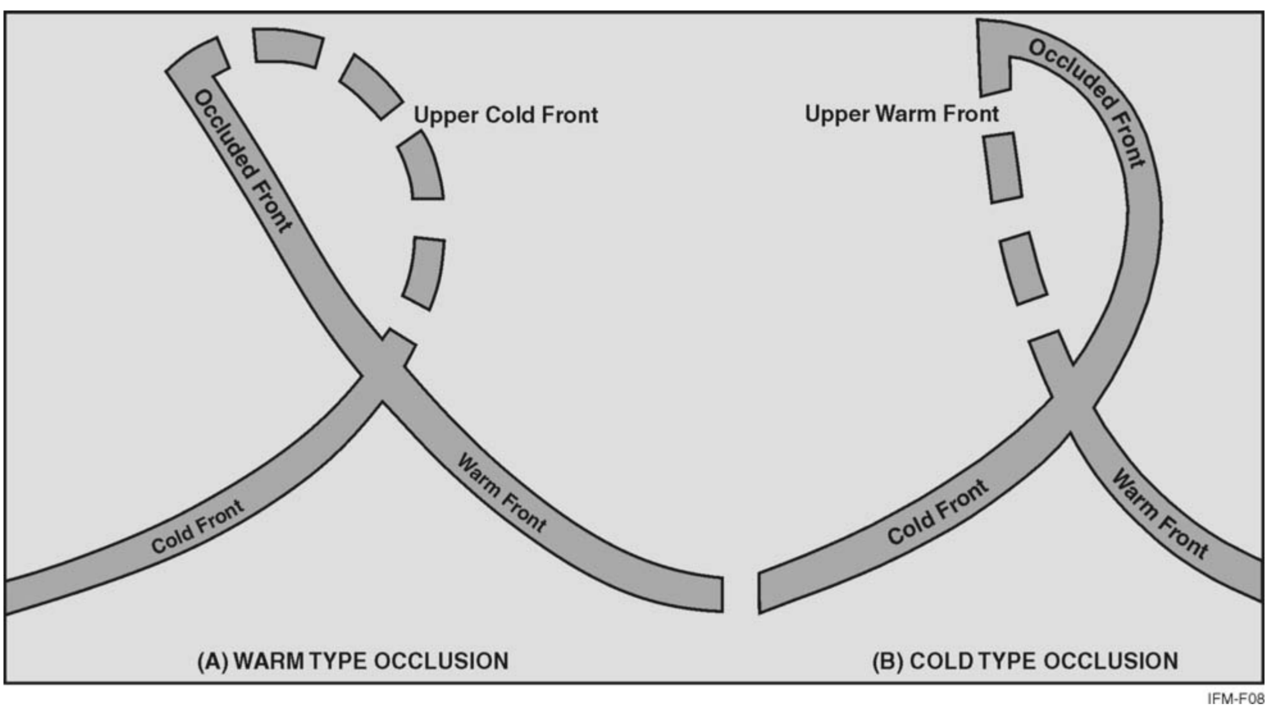


Figure 4-7. Occlusions (in the Horizontal) and Associated Upper Front

Within the cold airmass, extensive fog and low ceiling may result, where the cold air is saturated by warm rain or drizzle falling through it from the warm airmass above. If the temperature is below 32 °F, icing may occur, but generally is light.

The width of the band of precipitation and low ceiling varies from 50 miles to approximately 200 miles, depending upon the slope of the front and the temperatures of the airmasses. One of the most annoying characteristics of a stationary front is that it may greatly hamper and delay air operations by persisting in the area for several days.

4.4 PRESSURE AT FRONTS

One of the important characteristics of all fronts is that on both sides of a front, the pressure is higher than at the front. This is true even though one of the airmasses is relatively warm and the other is relatively cold; hence, there is always a net movement of air upward in the region of a front. This is another important characteristic of fronts, as the lifting of the air causes condensation, clouds, and weather.

Whereas air motion within an area of high pressure is downward and outward (divergence), motion in a frontal zone is inward and upward (convergence).

4.5 FRONTAL MOVEMENT

The weather is greatly affected by the movement of frontal systems. From the time the front develops until it passes out of the weather picture, it is watched closely. The speed at which it travels and the modifications that it undergoes are important considerations in analyzing and forecasting the weather.

4.5.1 Speed

The speed of the movement of frontal systems is an important determining factor of weather conditions. Rapidly moving fronts usually cause more severe weather than slower-moving fronts. For example, fast-moving cold fronts often cause severe prefrontal squall lines, which are extremely hazardous to flying. The fast-moving front does have the advantage of moving across the area rapidly, permitting the particular locality to enjoy a quick return of good weather. Slow-moving fronts, on the other hand, may cause extended periods of unfavorable weather. A stationary front, which may bring bad weather, can disrupt flight operations for several days in succession.

4.5.2 Modifications

There are many factors that can modify the movement of frontal systems. In this section, only a few of the more important factors are considered.

4.5.2.1 Effect of Mountains

Mountain ranges affect the speed, the slope, and the weather associated with a front. The height and horizontal distance of the mountain range, along with the angle of the front along the mountain range, are the influencing factors. The effect of mountain ranges differs in regard to cold fronts and warm fronts.

As a cold front approaches a mountain range, the lower portion of the front is retarded as the upper portion pushes up and over the mountain. On the windward side of the mountain, precipitation is increased due to the additional lift as the warm air is pushed up along the mountain slope. After the front reaches the crest of the mountain, the air behind the front commences to flow down the leeward side of the range. If the air on the leeward side of the mountain is warmer than the air in the rear of the cold front, the warmer air is forced away and replaced by the colder airmass. As the cold air descends the lee side of mountain, the air warms adiabatically (Figure 4-8) and clearing occurs within it; however, because the cold air is displacing warm air, typical cold frontal clouds and precipitation may occur within the warm air if the warm air is sufficiently moist and conditionally unstable. In some cases, maritime polar air that has crossed the Rockies is less dense then maritime tropical air from the Gulf of Mexico, which may lie just east of the mountains. If the maritime polar air is moving with a strong westerly wind current, the maritime polar air is moving with a strong westerly wind current, and the maritime tropical air is moving with a strong southerly wind current, the maritime polar air may overrun the maritime tropical air. This results in extremely heavy showers and violent thunderstorms and is one of the conditions under which tornadoes occur.

If colder stagnant air lies to the lee side of the mountain range, the cold front, on passing over the range, does not reach the surface and travels as an upper cold front. Under this condition, frontal activity is at a minimum. This situation does not continue indefinitely; either the stagnant air mixes with the air above and the surface of separation becomes spread out, or the cold front breaks through to the ground with the development of thunderstorms and squalls.

As a cold front passes a mountain range, it may develop a bulge or a wave as a portion of the front is retarded. In the case of an occlusion, a new and separate cyclone circulation may occur at the peak of the warm sector as the occluded front is retarded by a mountain range.

In general, it may be said that the area of precipitation is widened as the front approaches the range and that there is increased intensity of the precipitation area and cloud system on the windward side of the range and a decrease on the leeward side (Figure 4-9).

Consider the effect of a mountain range on a warm front. When a warm front approaches a mountain range, the upper section of the frontal surface is above the effects of the mountain range and does not come under its influence. As the lower portion of the frontal surface approaches the range, the underlying cold wedge is cut off, forming a more or less stationary front on the windward side of the range. The inclination of the frontal surface above the range decreases and becomes more horizontal near the mountain surfaces, but the frontal surface maintains its original slope at higher altitudes. Whereas the stationary front on the windward side of the range may be accompanied by prolonged precipitation, the absence of ascending air on the leeward side of the range causes little or no precipitation. The warm air descending the leeward side of the range causes the cloud system to dissipate and the warm front to travel as an upper front.

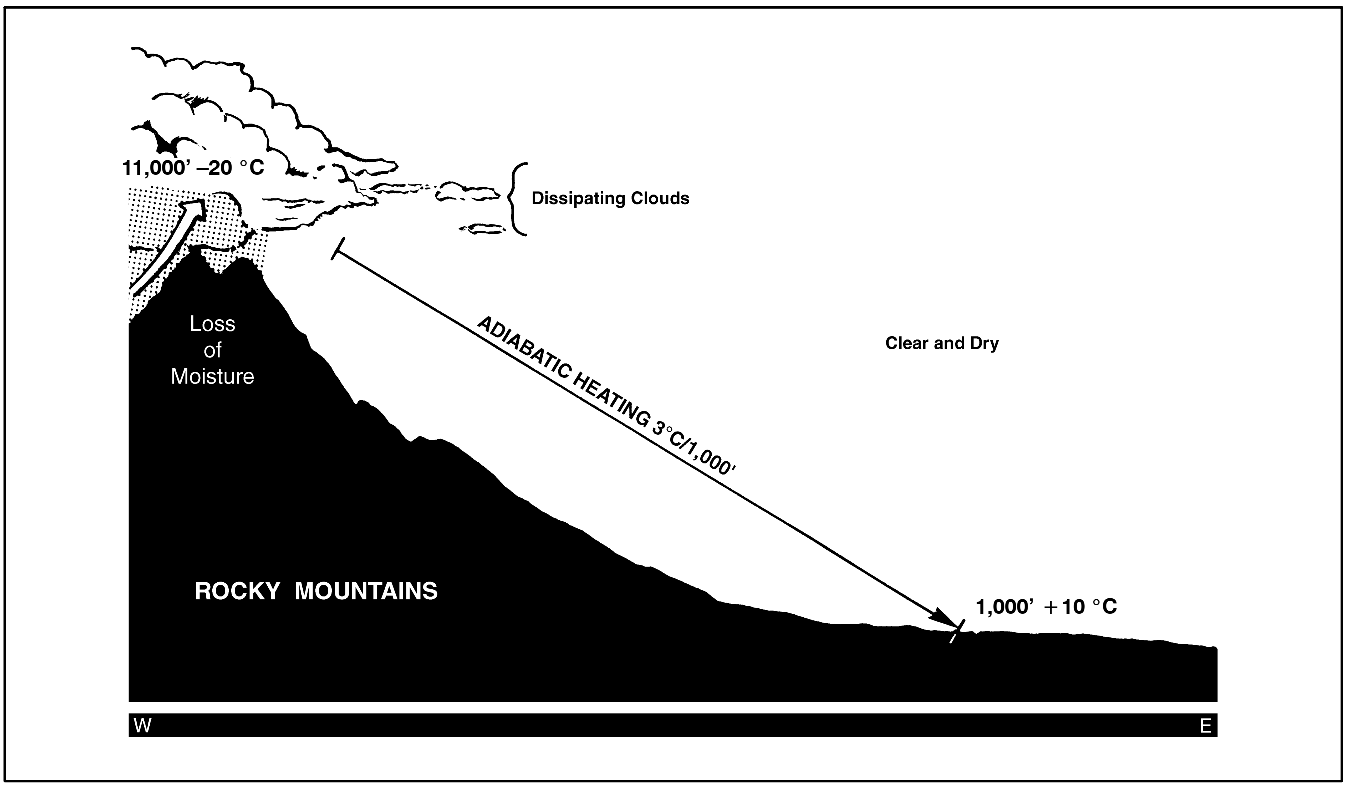


Figure 4-8. Effect of Adiabatic Heating

Frontogenesis (the formation of a new front or the regeneration of an old front) may occur in the pressure-trough area that accompanies the front. The frontal surface then gradually forms downward as the frontal system moves away from the mountain, and it extends to the surface of the Earth again; therefore, the effect of the mountain range on a warm front is to widen and prolong the precipitation on the windward side of the range, while on the leeward side the precipitation band is narrowed and weakened, or dissolved (Figure 4-10).

Mountain ranges have much the same effect on occluded fronts as they do on warm and cold fronts. Cold-type occlusions behave as cold fronts and warm-type occlusions behave as warm fronts. The occlusion process is accelerated when an open wave approaches a mountain range because the warm front is retarded whereas the cold front continues its normal movement until is reaches the mountain range.

4.5.2.2 Effect of Ocean Currents

Ocean currents have a modifying effect on frontal movement. To understand why ocean currents have such an effect, it is necessary to consider the movement of the currents.

In middle latitudes, ocean currents carry warm water away from the equator along the eastern coasts of continents and carry cold water toward the equator along the western coasts of continents. The most active frontal zones of the winter season are found where cold continental air moves over warm water off eastern coasts. This situation is noticeable over the Atlantic Ocean off the east coast of the United States. As a cold front moves off the coast and over the Gulf Stream, it becomes intensified, causing wave development to occur near the Cape Hatteras area. This gives the east coast of the United States much cloudiness and precipitation. A similar situation occurs off the east coast of Japan. That area in the Pacific generates more cyclones than any other area in the world.

4.5.2.3 Other Effects

The movement of a frontal system from one area to another often has a great modifying effect, causing the front to be regenerated in some instances and to be dissipated in others. Transition affects waves and cyclones as well as fronts.

When dissipating, extratropical cyclones enter regions of frontogenesis and cyclogenesis; they are frequently regenerated into active disturbances. This is usually caused by an influx of warm, moist air to the east and cold air to the west of the center. In a situation in which a well-defined cyclone, associated with a front (or fronts), moves eastward over the Rocky Mountains, the frontal system is usually weakened by the time it descends the eastern slopes. If there is an influx of warmer moist air from the Gulf of Mexico, the frontal system is regenerated as it moves eastward. If the circulation to the east of the mountain range is such that no moist air is drawn into the cyclone or frontal system, frontolysis (the process of a front weakening or dissolving) takes place.

Frontal systems moving from water to land areas tend to weaken if an influx of moist air is not brought into the situation; on the other hand, a frontal system moving from land areas to water areas is generally regenerated by the influx of moist air. For example, a frontal system may become quasi-stationary in the vicinity of the east coast of the United States. This frontal system is usually oriented in a northeast-southwest direction and occurs mostly during the summer and autumn months, when outbreaks of continental polar air (cP) move southeastward over the states. These fronts usually lose their intensity over the southern states and movement ceases. Frequently, stable waves develop and travel along this frontal system, causing unfavorable weather conditions. When these waves move out to sea and warmer moist air is brought into them, they become unstable waves and are regenerated as they move across the ocean.

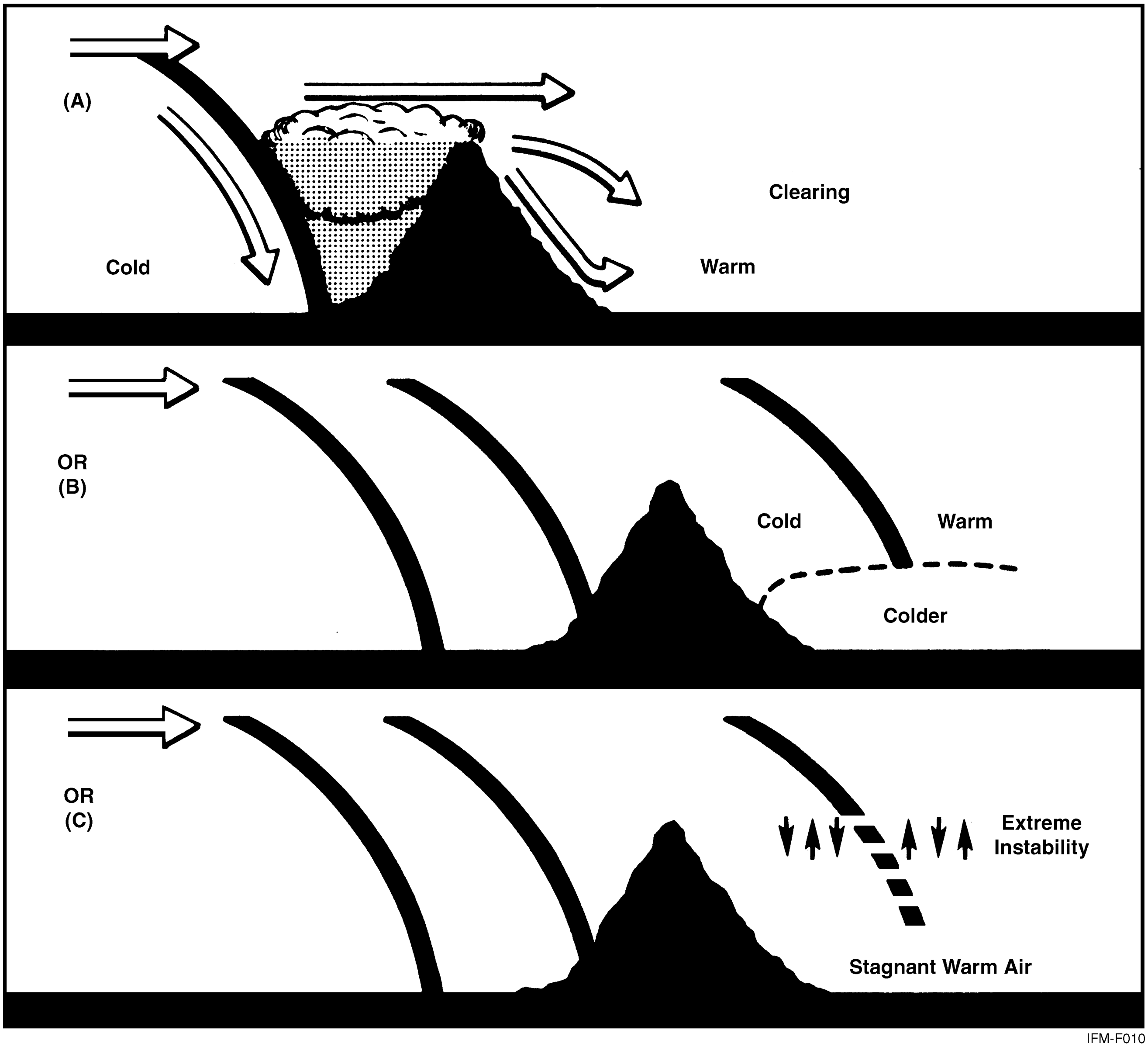


Figure 4-9. Effect of Mountains on a Cold Front

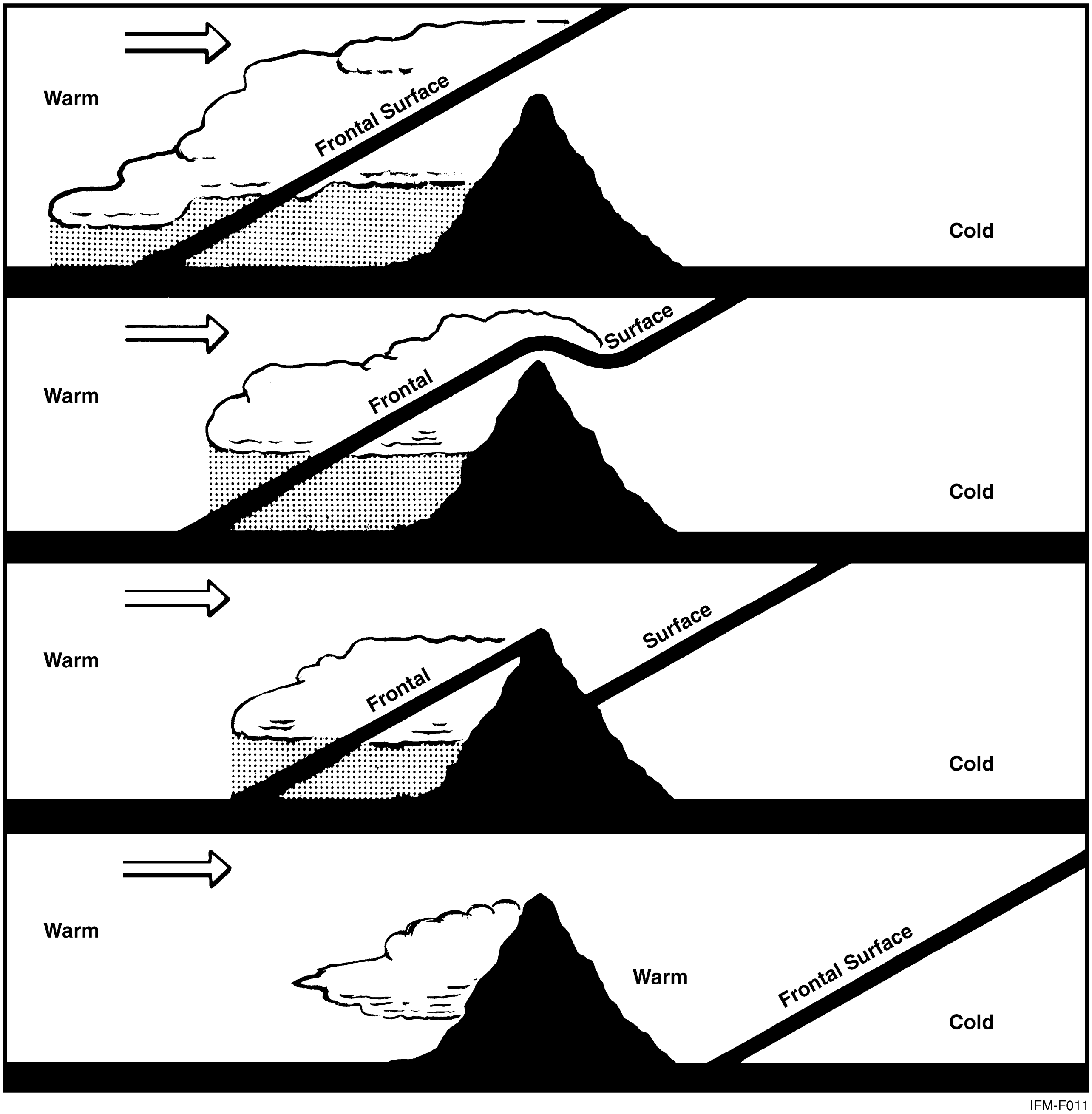


Figure 4-10. Effect of Mountains on a Warm Front

CHAPTER 5

Tropical Meteorology

5.1 INTRODUCTION

With the advent of satellite data and the application of high-speed computers, the quality of forecasts for tropical regions has improved greatly. The most effective rule of thumb used in forecasting in the tropics is to identify areas where a change in the normal weather pattern(s) is taking place, then determining what atmospheric feature is inducing said change. When viewing tropical weather in general, significant weather may occur over, or adjacent to, land areas or in areas affected by certain atmospheric features. Two significant features that are worthy of discussion are tropical waves and areas of converging wind flow, such as the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ).

5.2 TROPICAL WAVES

A tropical wave, more commonly known as an easterly wave, is defined as a wavelike disturbance that moves from east to west in the tropical easterlies (Northern Hemisphere). When viewed in a vertical plane, the wave appears as an inverted trough that will slope to the east, west, or be nearly vertical (no slope). The slope of a wave may change with time. Adverse weather associated with a tropical wave is an indication of the slope of the wave. Weather associated with waves is showery precipitation and thunderstorms. Cloud patterns usually consist of cumulus congestus and cumulonimbus, arranged in parallel bands, with layers of altocumulus and altostratus clouds along with higher layers of cirrus clouds associated with convective activity. Embedded thunderstorms may also be present in areas of extensive cloud precipitation areas. Tropical waves also support the development of haze conditions; this haze normally reduces visibility and will be present in advance of the wave.

There are three types of tropical waves: stable, neutral, and unstable.

5.2.1 Stable Wave

This type of wave slopes to the east with height. To the west of the trough line, winds at the surface and aloft are predominantly northeasterly. This area experiences falling pressures, but because of divergence at all levels, fair weather prevails. East of the trough line, the surface and upper air winds veer to the southeast. The intense convergence found in this area produces widespread cloudiness and shower activity. This is the most common type of easterly wave (Figure 5-1).

5.2.2 Neutral Wave

With a neutral wave, the bad weather is symmetrical around the trough line, with the most intense weather occurring along the trough line. This type of wave is vertical (no slope) and is typical of a wave that is intensifying.

5.2.3 Unstable Wave

This type of wave has the most violent weather and is often associated with the development of typhoons and hurricanes. The weather associated with the unstable wave is ahead of the trough line, and the wave slopes to the west with height.

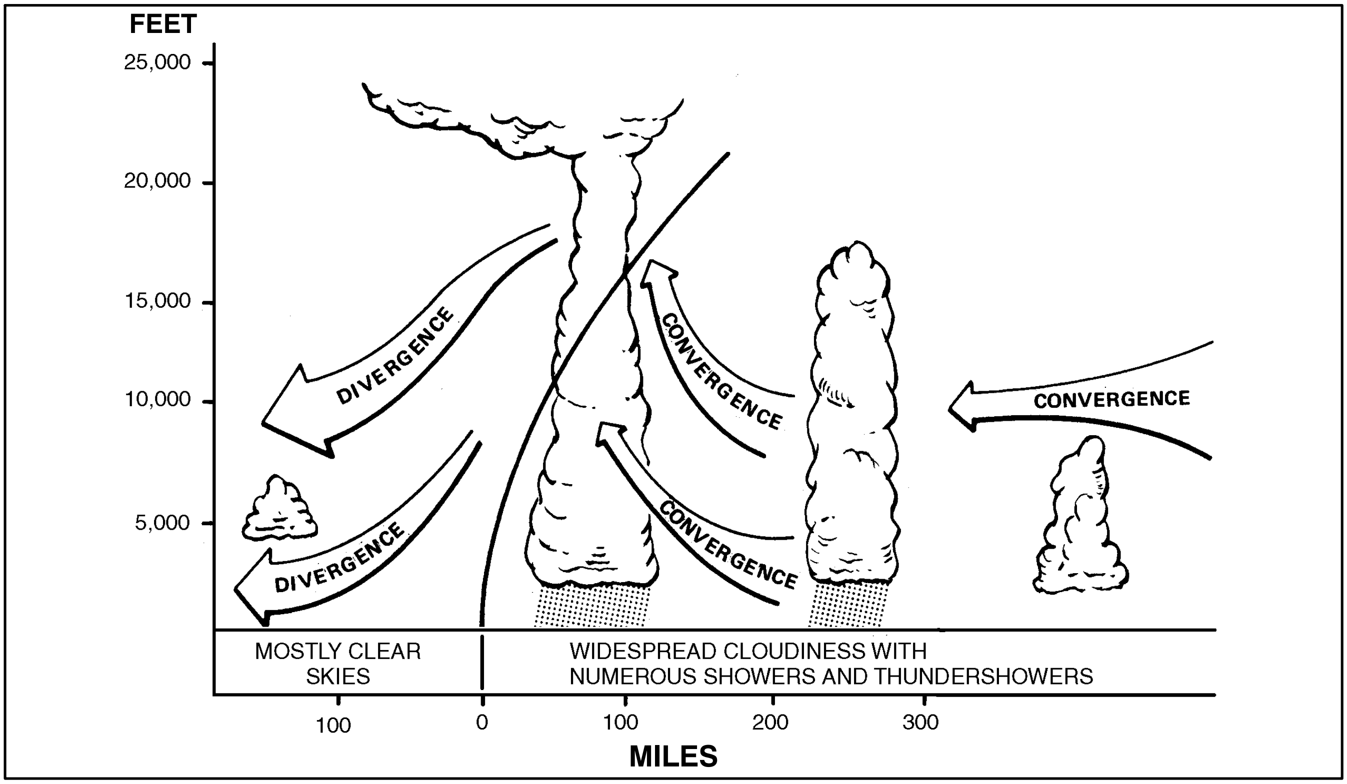


Figure 5-1. Vertical Cross Section of a Stable Easterly Wave

5.3 INTERTROPICAL CONVERGENCE ZONE

The ITCZ appears as an extensive band of clouds and weather that is caused by the convergence of the northeast trade winds of the Northern Hemisphere and the southeast trade winds of the Southern Hemisphere. In most cases, the ITCZ has no sharp frontal discontinuity, and its width may vary from 50 to 400 miles.

As the intensity of the converging wind fields may vary from place to place, the extent of the weather associated with the zone will vary correspondingly in width and intensity.

The ITCZ is a migratory zone that reaches it northernmost position in February and its southernmost position in August. In the Atlantic and Eastern Pacific oceans, the ITCZ normally remains north of the equator year round, whereas in the Indian Ocean and Western Pacific, the zone will lie south of the equator during the Northern Hemisphere winter.

The intensity of the weather within the ITCZ depends on the level of instability and the extent of convergence that is present. Weather within the zone may vary between an area of solid cumulonimbus clouds with many thick cloud layers at several levels and an area of broken to overcast cloud layers, with little or no convective activity (Figure 5-2).

At times, fractures along the zone will occur. In some cases these fracture zones may spawn a hurricane or typhoon.

5.4 CONVERGENCE ZONES

On occasion, converging windflow in areas other than the ITCZ will produce cloud conditions that would not be present under normal conditions. Although convective activity is not normally encountered in convergence zones unless they are associated with major features such as tropical waves, the presence of clouds above the freezing level, or convergence zones of intensities within a relatively shallow layer within the atmosphere, will produce icing or turbulence, respectively.

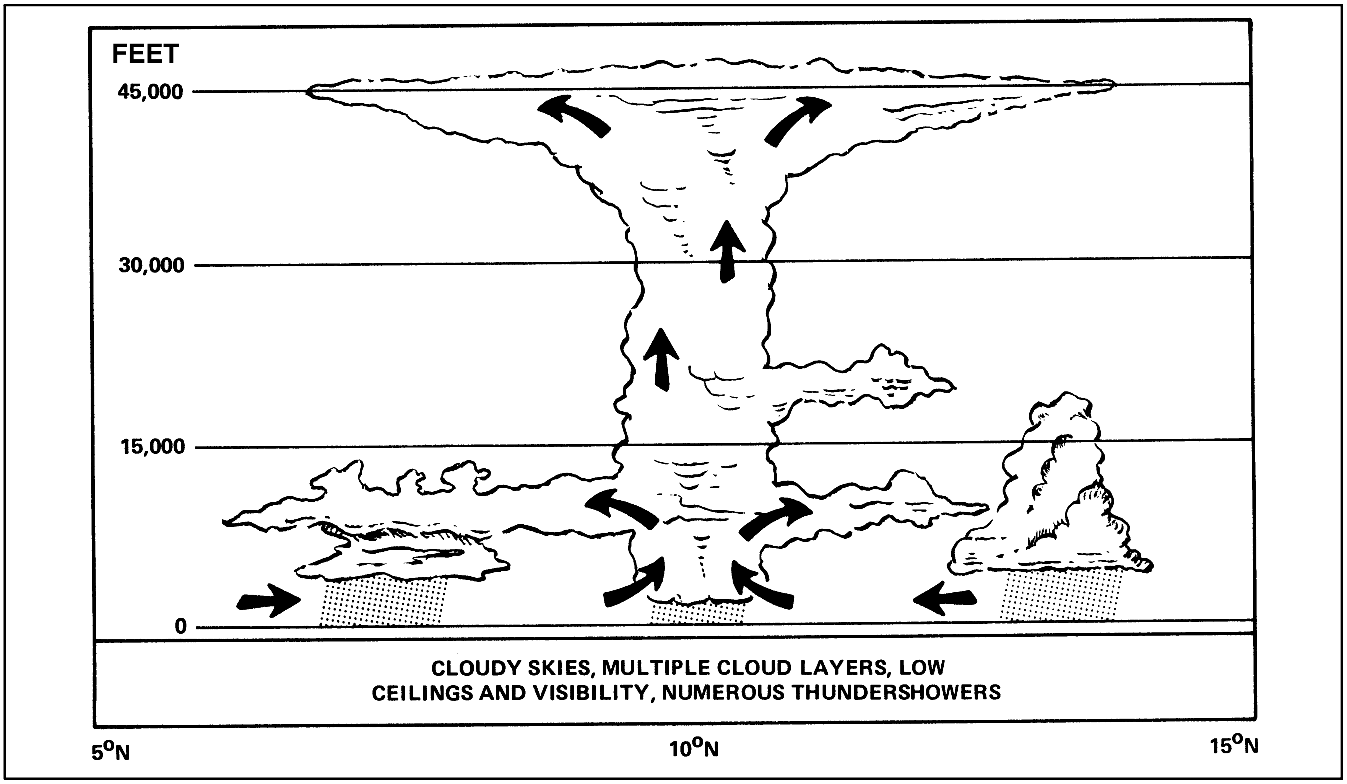


Figure 5-2. Weather Conditions in an Active Portion of the ITCZ

5.5 SHEAR LINES

A shear line is defined as a line or narrow zone across which there is an abrupt change in the horizontal wind component parallel to said line. It most commonly refers to lines of cyclonic shear. Monsoon and upper tropospheric troughs, as well as remnants of cold fronts, are examples of shear lines.

It has been known for many years that cold fronts from midlatitude penetrate deep into the tropics and occasionally move across the equator. The leading edge of the front is usually marked by a pronounced line of convection and a series of convecting lines oriented parallel to the front (and to the wind) may occur on the poleward side of the main line. The average tops in these shear lines are usually not high (10,000 to 15,000 feet), but the associated low ceilings and rainfall along the line may cause poor terminal weather conditions, especially with orographic effects.

CHAPTER 6

Weather Hazards to Flight

6.1 THUNDERSTORMS

It is estimated that more than 44,000 thunderstorms occur daily over the surface of the Earth. The frequency with which these destructive storms occur, the quantity of energy they release, and the variety of forms this energy may take — hail, lightning, strong gusty winds, abundant rainfall, and, on occasion, tornadoes — mark thunderstorms as the most serious threat to the safe and successful accomplishment of the naval aviation mission.

6.1.1 Thunderstorm Development

A certain combination of atmospheric conditions is necessary for the formation of a thunderstorm to take place. These conditions are an unstable temperature lapse rate, high moisture content, and some type of lifting action. The lifting action may be caused by heating, terrain, fronts, or converging wind fields.

The fundamental structural element of the thunderstorm is the unit of convective circulation known as a convective cell. A mature thunderstorm contains several of these cells, which vary in diameter from 1 to 6 miles, and it has been determined that, generally, each cell is independent of surrounding cells of the same storm. Each cell progresses through a cycle that lasts from 1 to 3 hours. In the initial stage, the cloud consists of a single cell, but, as the development progresses, new cells form and older cells dissipate. The life cycle of the thunderstorm consists of three distinct stages (Figure 6-1).

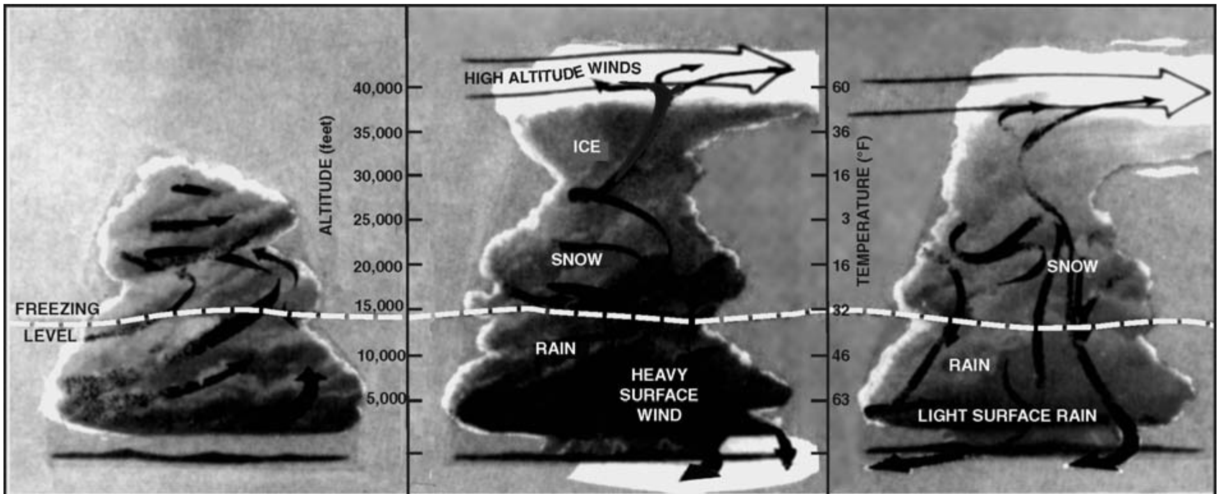
6.1.1.1 Cumulus Stage

Although most cumulus clouds do not become thunderstorms, the initial stage of a thunderstorm is always a cumulus cloud. The distinguishing feature of this cumulus (building) stage is the presence of an updraft, which prevails throughout the entire cell. These updrafts may vary from a few fpm to as much as 6,000 fpm in cells approaching the mature stage (Figure 6-1).

When transiting through an area where the rate of cumulus development is such that potential exists for further development to thunderstorm intensity, aircraft should make every effort to circumnavigate or overfly these cells, rather than fly through or under the cells. The reason for such action is that because the point where the cell will reach the mature stage cannot be predicted, aircraft flying through or under these cells could be exposed to unexpected downdrafts that could produce disastrous effects, especially when operating at low altitudes or involved in the landing or approach phases of flight.

6.1.1.2 Mature Stage

The mature stage is often called the precipitation or hail stage. This stage begins when precipitation from the cell first reaches the ground. The beginning of this surface rain also indicates the presence of both updrafts and downdrafts within and adjacent to the cell. Normally, a cell that has reached the mature stage will have reached a height of 20,000 feet Above Ground Level (AGL) or more. As raindrops begin to fall within the cell, the frictional drag between the drops and the surrounding air causes the air to begin a downward motion. The descending saturated air eventually reaches a level where it is colder and denser than the surrounding air. Consequently, its rate of downward motion is accelerated, thus creating a downdraft. Shortly after rain initially starts to fall, the updraft within the cell will reach its maximum speed. The speed of updrafts increases with altitude, whereas downdrafts are usually strongest at the middle and lower levels. The mature stage of a thunderstorm is the most dangerous of development in that all hazards may be found in this stage.



Centered on converging surface winds, an updraft drives warm, moist air past condensation levels, where Cumulus clouds form. Vertical development is aided by air entering from sides, heat energy released by condensing water vapor, and outflow aloft.

Rain and snow begin to fall within the cloud and an ice phase appears in the towers. The formation and precipitation of solid or liquid particles marks the thunderstorm's mature stage, when a downdraft joins the updraft and lightning begins.

Eventually the downdraft destroys the parent cell. As surface winds shift from convergent to divergent, the updraft is cut off from its source of energy, precipitation weakens, stops, and the downdraft ceases.

Figure 6-1. Thunderstorm Development

6.1.1.3 Dissipating Stage

Also known as the anvil stage, the dissipating stage is characterized by the gradual spreading of the downdrafts as they take the place of dissipating updrafts. As this process continues, the entire lower portion of the cell becomes an area of downdrafts. At this point, the high winds aloft have now carried the upper section of the cloud into an anvil form, thus indicating that gradual dissipation is occurring.

Thunderstorms have been accurately measured as high as 67,000 feet. In some cases, the tops of some severe thunderstorms have attained a height greater than 70,000 feet. Normally, the maximum height of a thunderstorm will be between 40,000 and 45,000 feet. In general, airmass thunderstorms extend to greater heights than frontal types.

6.1.1.4 Severe Thunderstorms

Less frequently encountered, but far more dangerous, severe thunderstorms are capable of producing surface wind gusts in excess of 50 knots, hail three-fourths of an inch or greater, and, in some cases, tornadoes. They are normally found within squall lines, or in airmass situations, either singularly or embedded in lines or clusters, primarily during the spring and summer in the midwestern and southeastern United States. Severe thunderstorms often reach massive proportions, covering an area of hundreds of square miles, and produce an extensive cirrus shield, from their anvil top, which may spread over an area of nearly 1,000 square miles. A confrontation with a severe thunderstorm should be avoided at all costs.

WARNING

The penetration of a thunderstorm, regardless of its stage of development, or level of intensity, should never be attempted.

6.1.2 Thunderstorm Weather

6.1.2.1 Precipitation

Liquid precipitation may be ascending, if encountered in a strong updraft; it may be suspended, seemingly without motion, yet extremely concentrated; or it may be falling to the ground. Rain is found in almost every case below the freezing level. The greatest incidence of heavy rain occurs in the middle and lower levels of the storm. Frozen precipitation is found in the form of snow and hail. The maximum frequency of moderate to heavy snow occurs several thousand feet above the freezing level. Snow, mixed in many cases with supercooled rain, may be encountered in updraft areas at all altitudes above the freezing level. This type of action will cause wet snow to become packed on the leading edge of the aircraft wings, resulting in the formation of rime ice. Hail, if present, is most often found in the mature stage and it is normally found at more than one or two levels within the cell. The maximum occurrence of hail is at middle levels.

6.1.2.2 Turbulence

Within the thunderstorm cell, there is a definite correlation between turbulence and precipitation. The intensity of turbulence, in most cases, varies proportionately with the intensity of the precipitation.

6.1.2.3 Icing

This phenomenon may be encountered at any level where the temperature is below freezing. Both rime and clear ice occur, with rime predominate in regions of snow and mixed rain and snow, and clear ice more predominant at levels where supercooled water droplets (temperature of −4 to −8 °C) are present. As the freezing level is also the zone of strongest precipitation and turbulence, this altitude is considered to be the most hazardous.

6.1.2.4 Lightning

There are four types of lightning associated with thunderstorms: (1) cloud to ground, (2) cloud to cloud, (3) cloud discharges (lightning that takes place within the cloud), and (4) air discharges (discharges that pass from the cloud to the air, but do not strike the ground or reach to another cloud). Lightning will occur in, near, or over the top of a storm area, and has been known to strike objects as far as 35 miles from the convective cell.

6.1.3 Thunderstorm Classification

All thunderstorms are similar in their physical makeup. Their classification is based on the type of weather situation that generates them; therefore, there are two basic classifications of thunderstorms: airmass or frontal.

6.1.3.1 Airmass Thunderstorms

These thunderstorms are subdivided into several types.

6.1.3.1.1 Convective Thunderstorms

Convective thunderstorms are a form of airmass thunderstorm that may occur over land or water almost anywhere in the world. They are generated within a large airmass of moist, unstable air. Their formation is caused by solar heating of various areas of the land or sea, which in turn provides heat to the air above. The type of convective thunderstorms that forms over land normally develops during the afternoon hours and usually begins to dissipate during the early evening hours. These thunderstorms are usually scattered over a broad area; however, these thunderstorms have been known to form in large groups (clusters), especially where a unique topographical feature is present. Convective thunderstorms also form over bodies of water in the same manner as those over land, except they form during the evening hours and dissipate by late morning. The coastal areas of Florida, Cuba, and the Philippines are perfect examples of areas where both the land and water area types of convective thunderstorms are common.

6.1.3.1.2 Orographic Thunderstorms

Orographic thunderstorms are triggered when the air is lifted over terrain that slopes upward, such as mountains and hills. This type of thunderstorm forms on the windward side of the topographical feature and at times may form a long unbroken line of storms that will be similar to a cold front. Orographic thunderstorms will persist as long as the circulation continues to produce an upslope motion. When approaching from the lee side, an orographic barrier along which thunderstorms are developing, the outline of each storm is normally plainly visible; however, when approaching from the windward side, it may be difficult to identify storms or individual cells because they may be obscured by other clouds. Orographic thunderstorms, almost without exception, will enshroud mountain peaks or hills.

6.1.3.2 Frontal Thunderstorms

These thunderstorms are associated with either warm, cold, occluded, or stationary frontal systems.

6.1.3.2.1 Warm Front Thunderstorms

The warm front thunderstorm is caused when warm, moist, unstable air is forced aloft over the colder (denser), retreating air. Warm front thunderstorms are generally scattered and they are difficult to identify because they are frequently embedded within other cloud layers. The use of radar is extremely helpful when dealing with warm front thunderstorms.

6.1.3.2.2 Cold Front Thunderstorms

The cold front thunderstorm is caused by the forward motion of a wedge of cold air into a body of warm, moist, unstable air. This type of thunderstorm is normally positioned along the frontal surface in what appears to be a continuous line. Cold fronts normally have rapid movement and a steep frontal slope. Although the line of thunderstorms is relatively narrow, 50 to 100 miles wide, the line may extend for hundreds of miles with scarcely a break between the cells. The density of these storms presents a serious hazard to aviation operations. In a few cases, squall lines may be associated with cold fronts, and more frequently with fast-moving cold fronts.

6.1.3.2.3 Occluded and Stationary Fronts

Thunderstorms are also encountered with occluded and stationary fronts. The occluded front is actually a combination of a cold front and a warm front. When penetrating such a weather system, the pilot can expect to experience weather patterns synonymous with both types of fronts. The most severe weather associated with an occluded front is normally found near the apex of the system (the point where the cold front meets the warm front at the surface). Whenever this situation exists, the flight should be planned to avoid this area, if at all possible.

6.2 SQUALL LINES

Squall lines (Figure 6-2) are generally associated with fast-moving cold fronts. They are a line of prefrontal thunderstorms that develop when surface friction retards the forward motion of the cold air at the surface to an extent that the cold air aloft is advanced many miles ahead of the surface front; therefore, this action causes the warm air ahead of the front to rise at a greater distance ahead of the front. Squall lines will normally form at ranges from 50 to 100 miles in advance of a cold front. These systems are very violent, produce widespread low cloudiness, and support the development of tornadic activity.

6.3 TORNADOES AND WATERSPOUTS

A tornado (Figure 6-3) may occur in association with severe squall line conditions. A tornado is a violent whirlpool of air with an average diameter of approximately 250 yards. Within its funnel-shaped cloud, winds are estimated at 100 to more than 300 knots, making it the most violent of all storms. Not only is it small in area, but usually it wears itself out in an hour. Nobody has ever flown into a tornado and survived.

Figure 6-2. Squall Line Thunderstorms

Figure 6-3. A Tornado

Waterspouts (Figure 6-4) are much the same, but waterspouts occur over the ocean and contain much moisture, whereas the tornado contains much dust and debris from the surface.

6.4 TURBULENCE

6.4.1 Mountainous Terrain

Flight in mountainous terrain must take account of altimeter errors, turbulence, thunderstorm development, and frontal modifications over large continental ridges. The following factors must also be considered during flight over mountainous terrain:

1. Windward approach — An aircraft approaching a ridge from windward is lifted over the ridge by the airstream blowing up the slope.

2. Leeward approach — An aircraft approaching a ridge while flying into the wind will experience difficulty in maintaining altitude in the downdraft and eddies on the leeward slopes.

3. Eddy pattern — In rough, mountainous terrain, the complex eddy pattern will cause turbulence. The amount of turbulence will increase with the windspeed and the roughness of the terrain.

Extreme caution should be exercised for the following factors:

4. Strong winds — Strong winds blowing around and over peaks cause a deflection of the airstream similar to the flow over the leading edge of an airfoil. Pressure is locally lowered by this distortion of the airstream.

5. Low pressure — An aircraft flying in the low pressure caused by the deflected airstream will have an altimeter indication showing the aircraft considerably above the actual height.

Figure 6-4. A Waterspout

6.4.2 Clear-Air Turbulence

One of the major hazards to modern, high-performance aircraft is the problem of Clear Air Turbulence (CAT) — a rough cobblestone type of bumpiness experienced in cloudless portions of the sky. This bumpiness, occurring without visual warning, may be violent enough to disrupt tactical operations and possibly cause serious aircraft stresses. The turbulent areas are both patchy in space and variable in time. Most cases of pronounced clear air turbulence can be associated with the jetstream, or more specifically with abrupt vertical windshears (increases or decreases of wind velocity with altitude), and are experienced more frequently during the winter months when jetstream winds are strongest. Statistically, this type of turbulence usually occurs with windshears in excess of 8 knots per 1,000 feet. Because of its random and transient nature, exact locations of clear air turbulence are extremely difficult to forecast.

6.5 FOG

Fog is a restriction to visibility caused by moisture condensing in the atmosphere and forming a cloud at the surface of the Earth. Fog is reported when the horizontal visibility at an air terminal is reduced to less than 5/8 mile (1 kilometer). Fog is formed when the atmosphere is saturated by the air being cooled to the dewpoint temperature or the addition of sufficient moisture to raise the dewpoint to the temperature of the atmosphere.

Radiation and advection fogs are examples of the former; frontal, steam, and arctic-ice fogs are examples of the latter means of saturating the air.

Being formed by different conditions, the various types of fog are characteristically found in particular areas of the world. The pilot should be aware of the natural processes working in his/her area that could result in fog formation and dissipation.

Although fog often forms very quickly and can cover large areas, formation is seldom without warning. The pilot must be alert for the indicators that foretell the formation of fog. He/she must also recognize the more vexing and dangerous situation when fog has not formed, though conditions are favorable for its imminent formation. This situation is precarious because the tendency may be to ignore the potential hazard that ceiling and visibility could very quickly go from that which is completely adequate for normal operations to zero-zero. The general indicators for the pilot to carefully watch for fog formation are dewpoint spread and wind direction and speed. The following paragraphs contain a short description of the four primary categories of fog, the conditions necessary for their formation, and the areas in which they are most likely to occur.

Note

> When filing to an area where fog is present, the pilot should request that the forecaster identify what type of fog condition is present, either advection or radiation.

6.5.1 Radiation Fog

Radiation fog or ground fog is formed on clear, relatively calm nights when the surface cools by radiating its heat to a deep layer of the atmosphere. If there is sufficient cooling to reduce the air temperature to the dewpoint at the surface and a very light breeze to stir the saturated air, fog will form. A wind of more than 8 knots will stir the air to a greater depth and inhibit the formation of fog, although it may lead to the formation of low stratus clouds. Cloud cover will also inhibit radiation fog formation by acting as a blanket and keeping the heat of the Earth in the lower layers of the atmosphere. This usually prevents the temperature from approaching the dewpoint.

Theoretically, the relative humidity should be 100 percent for the formation of fog, but in actuality it is normally something less due to impurities in the atmosphere that absorb moisture at humidities less than saturation. Visibility will start to deteriorate at temperature dewpoint spreads of 5 to 8 °F. In industrial areas, fog can form at even greater temperature dewpoint spreads because of large amounts of the products of combustion in the air, which have a strong affinity for moisture. In this case, the visibility reduction is actually because of a combination of smoke and fog and is called “smog,” a familiar term in many large cities.

Radiation fog normally reaches its greatest intensity shortly after sunrise, which is because of the increased mixing in the lowest layers of the atmosphere by the initial heating of the sun. This same heating will normally dissipate the fog within 1 to 4 hours after sunrise.

6.5.2 Advection Fog

Advection fog is formed when moist air moves over a surface that is cool enough to reduce the temperature in the lower levels of the airmass to the dewpoint. This type of fog is often found in coastal regions and can blanket very large geographic areas. An example is the winter fogs over the eastern United States formed by Gulf air moving north over progressively cooler land. These fogs have at times virtually stopped all aircraft operations east of the Mississippi River.

Advection fogs are common over land areas during the late winter months along the receding edge of the continental snow cover. In these areas, the melting of the snow maintains a temperature of 32 °F at the surface; thus, warm air moving northward over the snow is both cooled and saturated, forming fog.

Both the North Atlantic and North Pacific have large areas often covered by advection fogs where warm, moist air moves out of the regions of subtropical high pressure across cool Arctic Ocean currents. The most common areas for these sea fogs are off the maritime provinces of Canada and near the Aleutian Islands. Unlike radiation fog, which is normally dispersed by wind greater than 10 knots, the density of advection fog will often increase with increasing windspeeds. This is especially true of sea fogs, which can persist for long periods with winds of 40 knots or greater.

Another type of advection fog is upslope fog. This type of fog is common along the windward slopes of mountain ranges and in some cases can be produced by rather modest topography. It is formed when gently moving moist air is forced aloft by the topographic slope of the land and is cooled to condensation. The altitude at which the fog forms is a function of the temperature dewpoint spread. The wider the dewpoint spread, the farther up the slope the fog will form.

Note

Forecasting the dissipation of advection fog is extremely difficult, even for the most seasoned forecaster; therefore, pilots should ensure that when dealing with a situation that involves advection fog, whenever possible, the aerodrome selected as the alternate field should be outside the geographic area being influenced by the advection fog.

6.5.3 Frontal Fog

Frontal fogs are a result of precipitation falling from the warm air aloft through the wedge of cold air and saturating it by evaporation. In the case of a warm front, where most of the weather precedes the passing of the surface front, it is called prefrontal fog. This type of fog can precede the surface front by as much as 200 miles, although it is usually much less. Postfrontal fog follows a surface cold front and, again, is the result of precipitation evaporating in the wedge of cold air, causing saturation. Due to the narrow band of weather normally associated with a cold front, postfrontal fogs are much less common than prefrontal fog.

6.5.4 Arctic Fog

Two types of fog are common to arctic regions: steam fog and ice fog. Steam fog, often called sea smoke, forms when very cold air blows over warmer water in the presence of an inversion aloft. Moisture evaporating from the water is immediately condensed by the cold air and it takes on the appearance of wisps of smoke. Sea smoke can become quite dense and reach altitudes as high as 500 feet. The principal hazard to aviation caused by sea smoke occurs when it is formed in the vicinity of carrier operations or near a land area where it can be advected over an airfield.

Ice fogs form in the regions of the Arctic and Antarctic ice cap under very cold temperatures. They are caused by moisture changing directly into ice crystals and remaining suspended in the atmosphere. Many ice fogs form around regions of human habitation during periods of very light winds when the products of combustion and melted snow act as a moisture source. Ice fogs can also form as a result of moist air being advected into an arctic region. These fogs can cover a large geographic region and have been known to extend to altitudes as high as 8,000 feet.

6.6 AIRCRAFT ICING

Aircraft icing creates many hazards to the safe operation of aircraft. Ice on the airframe can alter or destroy the effectiveness of airfoils, load an aircraft beyond its weight-carrying ability, reduce the effectiveness of communications antennae, create serious cockpit visibility problems, and introduce large errors in air pressure-actuated flight instruments. Structural icing occurs only in clouds or precipitation. Engine icing can occur in clear air as well as in the clouds. Under certain conditions, it can reduce the available power output of either turbine or piston engines and, in some cases, cause their complete failure. Because of the different conditions under which they form, structural icing and engine icing will be treated separately.

6.6.1 Structural Icing

Structural icing will only form when two conditions are met: the aircraft must be flying through liquid moisture in the form of clouds or precipitation, and the temperatures must be below freezing. Structural icing is possible in the temperature range between 0 and −40 °C; however, very little icing occurs at the colder temperature due to the infrequent occurrence of supercooled water droplets at those temperatures. Structural icing occurs most frequently between 0 and −17 °C, with the majority of cases falling in the temperature range between −3 and −12 °C. Avoid flying in clouds at those temperatures. There are three basic types of structural ice: rime ice, clear or glaze ice, and frost. The rate of accumulation and the type of ice collected are dependent on many conditions.

6.6.1.1 Rime Ice

Rime ice is the result of many small, supercooled moisture droplets freezing instantly as they strike an aircraft and forming a milky white agglomeration of small ice particles. It is usually porous and brittle and collects on any part of the aircraft that offers an impact area to particles in the airstream. This includes the leading edge of airfoils, the nose and windscreen of the aircraft, propellers and prop hubs, antennae, and even rivet heads. Rime ice is most commonly encountered in stable clouds containing small, supercooled water droplets. It is also formed in unstable clouds at temperatures colder than −15 °C.

6.6.1.2 Clear Ice

Clear ice is a mass of clear, solid ice. It is far more dangerous than rime ice because of its greater weight, the difficulty of removing it, and its tendency to spread along the skin of the aircraft beyond the operating areas of deicing equipment. Clear ice forms when the aircraft encounters large water droplets under subfreezing conditions in unstable (cumuliform) clouds. The larger droplets do not freeze instantly as in rime ice formation, but spread back across the airfoils and fuselage as they freeze, causing the buildup of a large mass of solid ice.

Clear ice can also form as a result of freezing rain. This occurs when cold air is overlain by warm air (as in a warm front) and rain falls into freezing temperatures. When the rain strikes the cold surface of an aircraft, it spreads, cools, and freezes, adhering to the surface. Freezing rain is one of the most hazardous conditions encountered in aviation and should always be avoided. If a pilot finds him/herself encountering freezing rain he/she should, as soon as possible, climb to a higher altitude into the warmer air above.

The most common temperature range for the formation of clear ice is between 0 and −8 °C. Under certain conditions, at temperatures below −8 °C in unstable clouds, a mixture of clear and rime ice will form on the airframe.

6.6.1.3 Frost

When encountered in flight, frost is only considered a hazard in that it restricts visibility by covering the windscreen and windows of the aircraft. Frost is somewhat more of a hazard on the ground. A light coating of frost, though seemingly insignificant, can sufficiently disrupt the airflow over wings and control surfaces to alter the takeoff characteristics of an aircraft. A takeoff should never be attempted under such conditions.

The rate of ice accumulation on an aircraft is dependent on several factors: the temperature, the liquid moisture content of the air, the airspeed, and the airfoil shape. The relationship between icing rate and liquid water content of the air is obvious. The higher the water content, the greater the ice accumulation rate. The same holds true for airspeed. A higher airspeed causes the aircraft to encounter a greater amount of moisture in a given period of time, resulting in a greater ice accumulation rate. Although the rate of ice accumulation is less at low airspeeds, the underside area of the aircraft exposed to moisture particles is greatly increased because of the increased angle of attack required for slow flight; thus, in very slow flight at high angles of attack, the aircraft may actually pick up a greater load of ice then at cruising airspeeds where the angle of attack is slight and only the leading edge of airfoils and fuselage is exposed to ice accumulation.

The airfoil shape determines deflection characteristics. A thick airfoil found on most propeller-driven aircraft will cause a large deflection in the air passing the airfoil. This in turn deflects much of the moisture around the leading edge. A thin airfoil, more common to jet aircraft, causes only a small deflection in the air passing it; hence, the water drops are much more likely to impinge on the leading edge. Fortunately, for jet aircraft, most icing occurs in the lower and middle flight altitudes, and only a small percentage at jet cruising levels. The principal icing danger to jet aircraft occurs during approach and landing.

6.7 STRUCTURAL DEICING

The following discussion is general in nature. In all cases of discussion of techniques, the NATOPS procedures for the aircraft in question should be followed. Most aircraft are equipped with means either to prevent or remove ice from critical areas of the aircraft. These areas are the leading edge of airfoils, radomes, propellers, windshields, and the pitot-static air system. Notable exceptions to this rule are attack and fighter-type jet aircraft and most training aircraft. The design of high-performance jet aircraft is not readily adaptable to deicing gear, and in the normal operation of this type of aircraft, little time is spent at the lower, more potential icing altitudes.

Note

Preventive icing systems are not designed to remove ice and should be used when icing is anticipated.

6.7.1 Airfoil

Airfoil deicing is accomplished by inflatable boots. Between 1/4 and 1/2 inch of ice is allowed to build up on the boot prior to inflating it to break the ice off. The inflation cycle, once activated, is automatic to give the optimum breaking action. If the boot is activated with less than 1/8 inch of ice, the ice sometimes breaks up in small pieces, some of them adhering to the boot and collecting further ice that cannot readily be removed.

Hot wing anti-icers deliver heat to the leading edge of wings and empennage to prevent ice formation. Airfoil heaters may be activated prior to entry into icing conditions to be used effectively as an anti-icing system. If operated after a significant amount of ice has accumulated, the airfoil heaters will often only melt a cavity under the ice. The air (or water vapor) in this cavity acts as an insulator and prevents the heat from melting further ice, rendering the anti-icing system ineffective. Some aircraft must use airfoil heaters as a deicing system because of a problem of runback of melted ice off the leading edge, which could freeze farther back on the airfoil surface, or possibly build up on flap and control surfaces, which have no anti-ice/deice capability. In these aircraft, the procedure is to let a certain amount of ice build up and then heat the leading edge, loosening the inner layers of ice and allowing the airstream to blow the ice off the leading edge.

6.7.2 Propeller

Propeller anti-icing is accomplished by electrically produced heat on the leading edge or alcohol that is sprayed on the base of the propeller and forced out along the leading edge by centrifugal force. Both systems are designed to be preventive but can serve to remove ice if necessary. Propeller ice can seldom be identified visually except on the prop hub; however, its presence may be inferred by the formation of ice on other parts of the aircraft and by vibration from unbalanced propellers.

6.7.3 Pitot-Static/Angle of Attack (AOA) Systems

The pitot-static and Angle of Attack (AOA) systems are anti-iced by electric heating elements in the pitot tube or AOA probe that provide sufficient heat to prevent the formation of ice, or melt ice that has already formed. Static ports are normally located in areas of the fuselage where the formation of ice is unlikely and where there is no deicing system. Some aircraft are equipped with an alternate static air inlet in case there is a failure of the static air system.

6.7.4 Structural Icing Precautions

The following procedures are recommended when structural icing is encountered or expected:

1. Avoid prolonged operations in weather conditions that could lead to the formation of structural ice. Monitor the outside air temperature gauge.

2. Increase airspeed when climbing or descending through icing conditions. This accomplishes a threefold purpose: It decreases the length of time spent in icing conditions; the decreased angle of attack reduces ice accumulation on the underside of the airfoils, control surfaces, and fuselage; and the increased speed is necessary during approach and landing due to the increased stall speed caused by an ice buildup.

3. Do not lower flaps or landing gear until needed. Ice collects rapidly on flaps and landing gear. This adds to the weight of the aircraft and can possibly cause structural damage if the flaps or landing gear are retracted when covered with ice.

4. Keep controls moving to keep ice from jamming the control surfaces. This is also true of trim tabs and governors. Both should be cycled occasionally to ensure they remain free.

5. Climb to escape freezing rain.

6. Sleet particles are frozen raindrops that indicate a layer of freezing rain above. In sleet, it it best to maintain altitude, as sleet will not adhere to the aircraft.

7. After takeoff from a slush- or snow-covered runway, either leave the landing gear extended or recycle them to alleviate the possibility of the landing gear freezing in the wheel wells.

6.7.5 Aircraft Engine Icing

6.7.5.1 Turbine Icing

Turbine engines, whether prop or pure jet, are subject to structural ice that obstructs engine air intakes. This reduces the volume of air available to the engine and shows up on the instrument panel as a loss in rpm and an increase in exhaust gas temperature or a loss of power. The conditions that lead to jet engine intake icing are the same as those that cause other structural icing, as described in previous paragraphs.

When in icing conditions in jet aircraft, and a combination of Exhaust Gas Temperature (EGT) rise and rpm drop is noted, suspect engine icing and land at the nearest suitable airfield. Refer to the appropriate NATOPS flight manual for the type of anti-icing/deicing equipment used.

6.8 LOW-LEVEL WINDSHEAR

In the past, low-level windshear has been proven as the cause of several major mishaps as documented by flight data recorders. Windshear is defined as a change in wind direction and/or speed over a relatively short distance in the atmosphere. As the atmosphere is very dynamic, pure speed shears or pure directional shears are rare; most shears involve a change in both direction and speed. A common result of this phenomena is known as clear air turbulence.

Low-level windshear is defined in the same manner stated above with the exception that it relates to the atmosphere below 1,500 feet AGL. Low-level windshear can adversely affect an aircraft performance during the landing and takeoff phases of flight.

An aircraft experiences hazardous low-level windshear when the change in direction or speed takes place faster than the airplane can accelerate or decelerate to compensate for the change in forces.

Low-level wind shear is categorized into two types: convective and nonconvective.

6.8.1 Convective Windshear

This phenomena is produced by downdrafts spreading outward from the bottom of a cumulonimbus cloud. The most common type of this windshear is the first gust front associated with thunderstorms, which will normally extend outward to 10 to 15 miles. The speed of the first gust is normally the highest gust recorded during storm passage. The wind direction in a first gust can vary as much as 180° from the previously prevailing surface wind. First gust windspeeds in excess of 75 knots have been recorded. In nearly all cases, forecasters are readily capable of accurately forecasting this phenomena, however, there are other types of convective windshear, such as microbursts and downbursts, which are less frequent, nearly impossible to forecast, yet are capable of producing far more severe conditions. These phenomena are discussed in paragraph 6.9.

6.8.2 Nonconvective Windshear

Development of this type of shear is related to synoptic patterns, major topographical features, or local terrain. Examples of situations that produce nonconvective windshear are (1) frontal shear; (2) low-level jets caused by radiation inversions; (3) funnelling, which may be induced by local terrain or, in some cases, surface obstructions such as large hangars; (4) land and sea breezes; and (5) mountain waves.

As there is no existing instrumentation that will effectively detect and measure windshear, there are no foolproof procedures for forecasting this phenomena within an acceptable level of accuracy. The disastrous effect windshear can have on aircraft during the approach and departure phases of flight cannot be overly stressed. Increased monitoring of cockpit indicators, whenever the potential for shear exists, is the most prudent procedure to follow.

The best indication that an aircraft is experiencing low-level windshear is a fluctuation in Indicated Airspeed (IAS) and the rate of descent/ascent. The relationship is a simple one; for example, if a decrease in airspeed is experienced during approach, then the Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI) rate of descent will increase; if a decrease in airspeed occurs during takeoff, then the rate of ascent decreases. The converse is true for increases of airspeed. The best rule of thumb is that whenever strong surface winds or convective activity is present, the pilot can expect to encounter some type of shear situation.

6.9 MICROBURSTS

By definition, a microburst is a small-sized downburst of air from the base of a cumulonimbus cloud that is capable of producing peak winds of more than 135 knots. Microbursts will normally last for 2 to 5 minutes. Some microbursts occur as large-scale downbursts. These are called macrobursts. An intense macroburst will often cause widespread tornado-like damage, last for a period of 5 to 20 minutes, and produce a peak wind in excess of 135 knots.

There are no set patterns associated with the development or occurrence of microbursts. Not all severe thunderstorms produce microbursts; likewise, some small-to-moderate thunderstorms have produced this phenomena. The most recent theory on how microbursts occur is that the high pressure dome at the center of the downburst is surrounded by a low pressure ring toward which the outward flowing winds are accelerated (Figure 6-5).

Microbursts may either be wet (associated with heavy rainfall) or classified as dry, when only virga (rain evaporating prior to reaching the surface) is present.

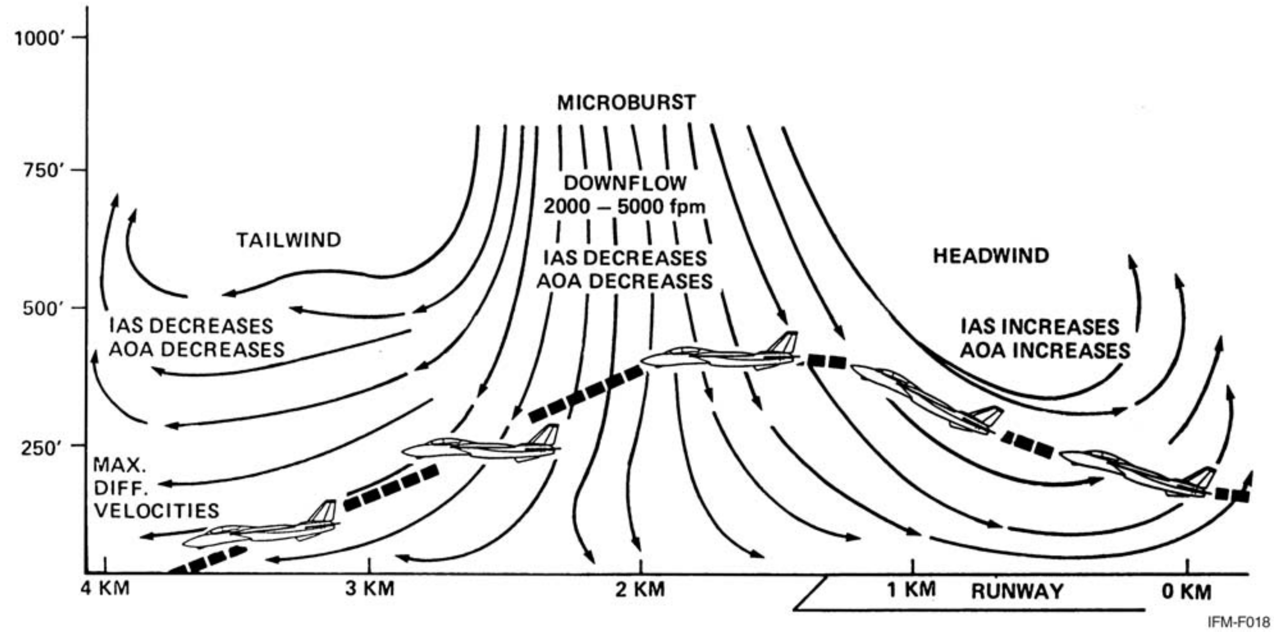


Figure 6-5. Profile of a Microburst

Research in the area of microbursts indicates there are some visual indicators that frequently occur when a microburst is taking place. These indicators are virga (a pronounced rain shaft reaching the ground), dust rings (circular areas of dust near convective activity), or lines of cumulus clouds spreading outward from the convective activity. The fact that there are no proven observation or forecasting methods available to predict microbursts cannot be overly stressed. In most cases, the presence of a microburst is not detected until it actually occurs.

From the cockpit of an aircraft, a microburst may look like a local shower, either light or heavy in intensity; however, there is no proven method by which the pilot can visually determine that a microburst will take, or has taken, place. When an aircraft is approaching an area of convective activity, at or below the base of the clouds, the pilot should look for an unusual increase in the airspeed and lift (increase in altitude) of the aircraft, which will indicate the onset of the microburst. If this scenario takes place, the pilot must take prompt and appropriate measures to deal with the rapid onset of a downflow, tailwind, crosswind, or a combination of said elements.

WARNING

Microbursts pose a serious threat to aircraft, especially those conducting the arrival or departure phase of flight, or operating at low altitudes adjacent to areas of convecting activity. The rapid onset of dangerous downflow and tailwind shear must be met with quick responsive action by the pilot. The only safe way to deal with a microburst is to avoid flying in areas where microbursts may develop. Specifically, pilots should delay takeoffs, approaches, and/or landings when operating near convective activity until the convective activity has moved safely away from the flightpath.

PART III

Physiology of Instrument Flight

CHAPTER 7

Introduction to Instrument Flight Physiology

7.1 GENERAL

Spatial disorientation is a condition that exists when a pilot does not correctly perceive his/her position, attitude, or motion relative to the Earth. During flight, the sense of sight is used to determine the aircraft attitude in relation to the surface of the Earth. In visual flight conditions, aircraft attitude is determined by reference to the horizon of the Earth and flight instruments. During instrument flight conditions when the horizon is not visible, aircraft attitude must be determined by reference to the aircraft attitude indicator and other flight instruments. Under instrument flight conditions, the visual sense may disagree with supporting senses, resulting in a conflict between what the pilot sees on his/her flight instruments and what he/she “feels” his/her attitude in space to be. It is this conflict that may lead to spatial disorientation and loss of aircraft control.

Sensory illusions can occur regardless of the pilot’s experience or proficiency; however, the effects of spatial disorientation may be decreased, provided the pilot believes his/her instrument indications and maintains proficiency in instrument flight. In addition, an understanding of the physiological basis of various illusions, the flight conditions where these illusions may be expected, and ways to prevent or overcome an episode of spatial disorientation effectively is of great importance.

7.2 YOUR SENSES

The ability to maintain equilibrium and orientation depends on sensations or signals from three sources. These sensations come from the motion-sensing organs of the inner ear (vestibular system); the postural senses of touch, pressure, and tension (proprioceptive system); and the sense of sight. In the absence of good visual references, the ability to maintain equilibrium and orientation based on the other senses is markedly reduced.

The three sensory systems function adequately for normal earthbound activities, but when a person is subjected to the flight environment, these organs may relay false information, resulting in spatial disorientation or vertigo (Figure 7-1).

7.2.1 Motion (Inner Ear)

The sense of motion originates in the inner ear. The motion-sensing organs are the otolith organs and semicircular canals (Figure 7-2).

7.2.2 Semicircular Canals

The semicircular canals register rotational acceleration. They can detect turns, slips, and skids during flight.

This organ consists of three canals oriented at right angles to each other so that angular accelerations in the pitch, yaw, and roll planes can be detected. The canals are filled with fluid that moves when angular accelerations are applied to the head. The movement bends the sensory hairs, which result in nerve impulses being sent to the brain. The pilot interprets this as rotary motion. If the fluid catches up to the canal walls, such as in a prolonged turn, the sensory hairs are no longer bent and no motion is perceived. Also, very small or short-lived angular accelerations may not be perceived; thus, patterns of acceleration experienced in flight are different from those experienced on the ground. This can result in an erroneous perception of position in flight (Figure 7-3).

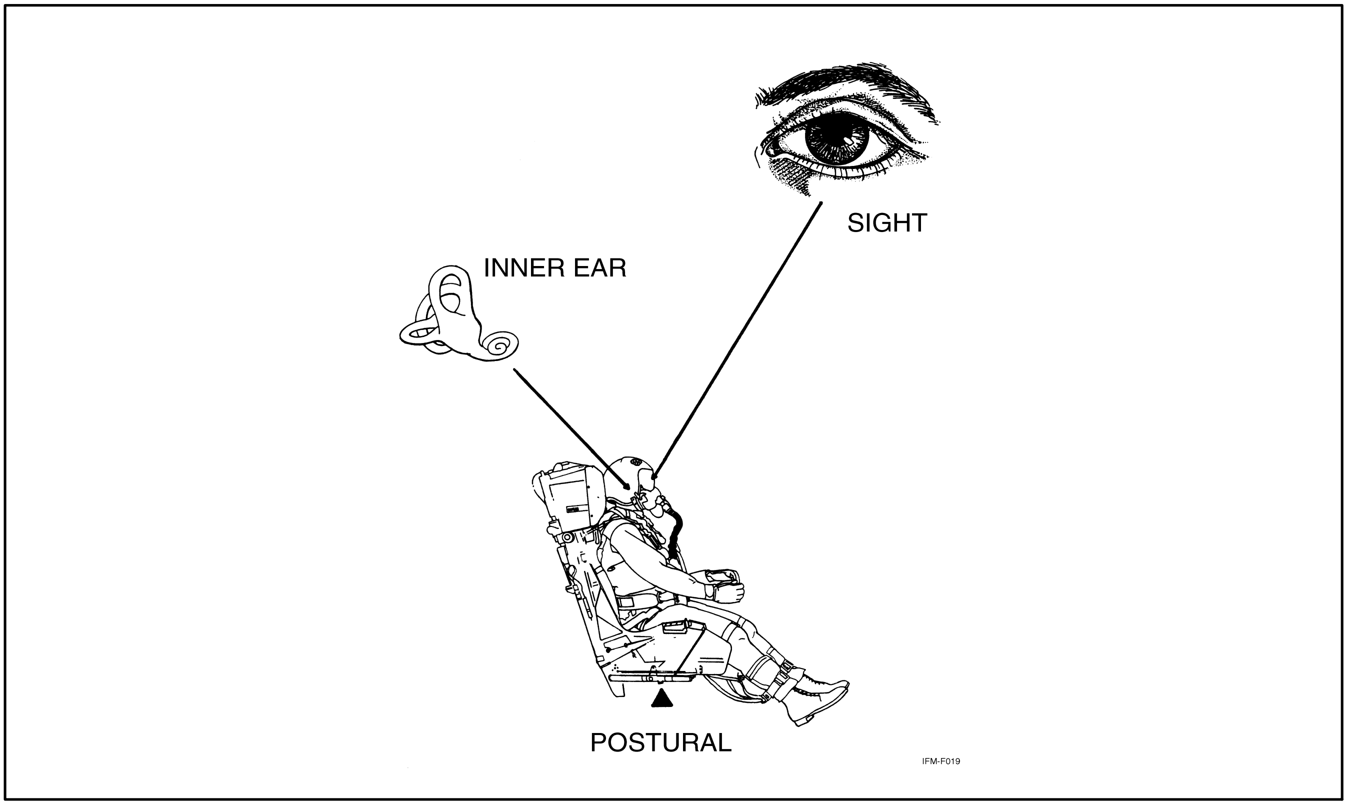


Figure 7-1. Senses Used for Maintaining Equilibrium and Orientation

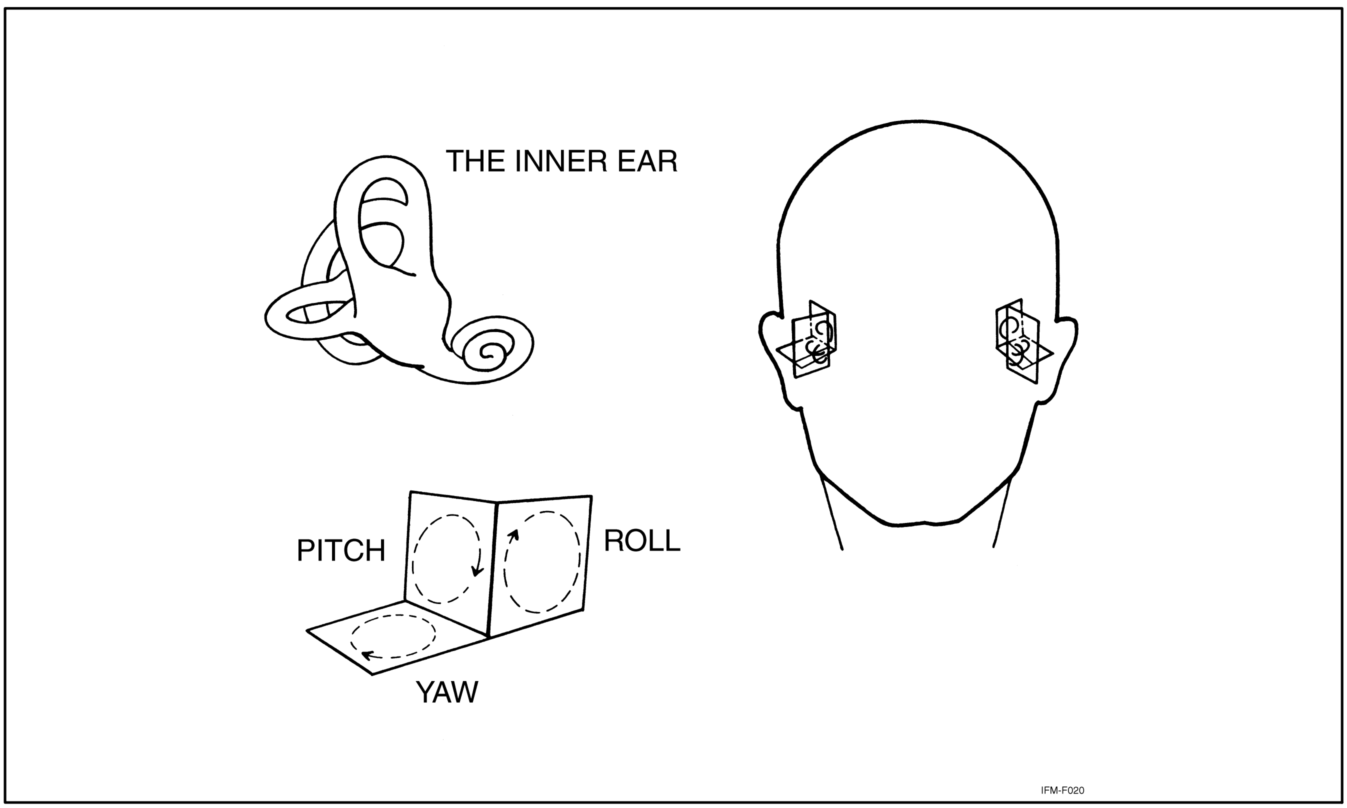


Figure 7-2. The Inner Ear

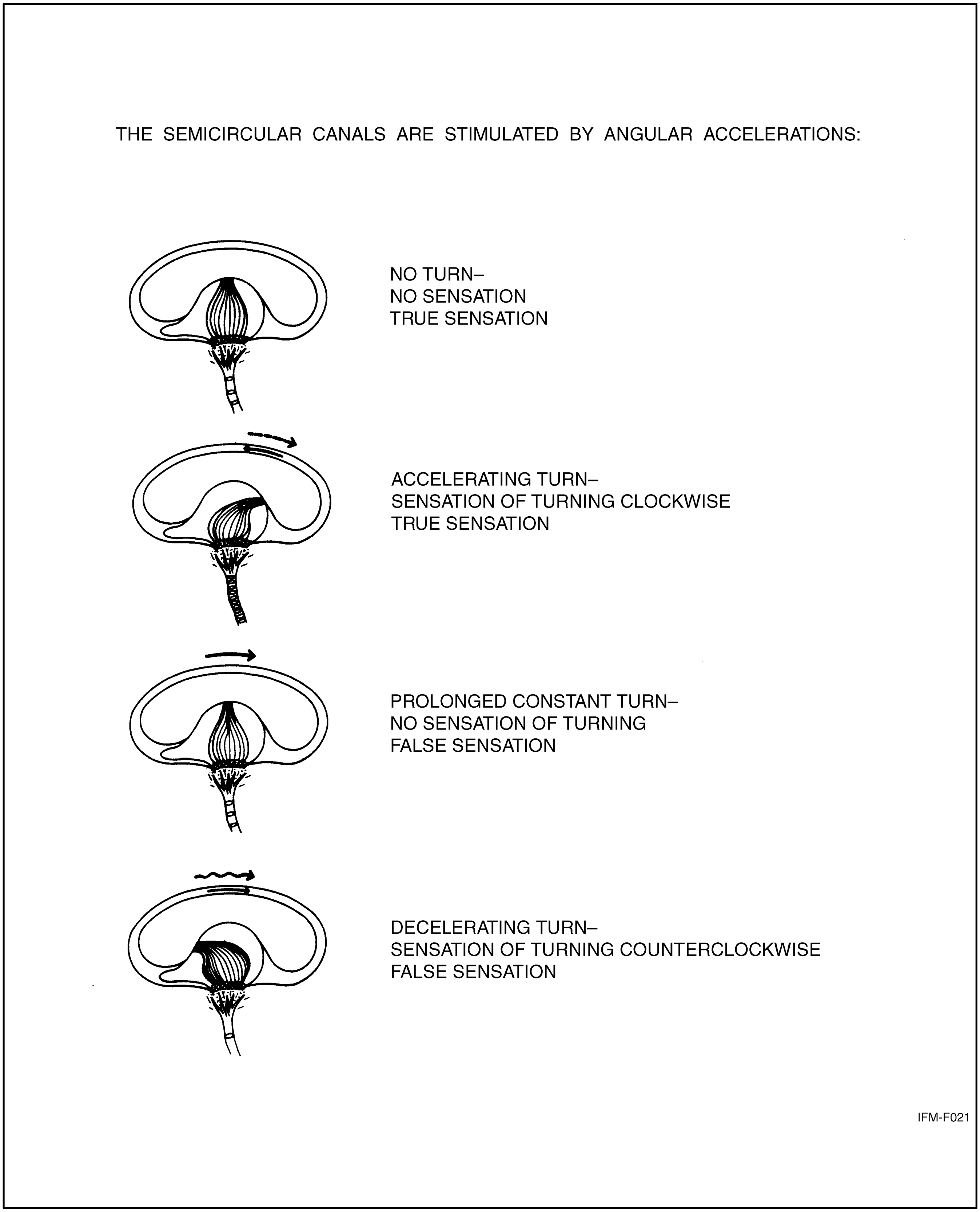


Figure 7-3. Semicircular Canals

7.2.3 Otolith Organs

The otolith organs are stimulated by linear accelerations or gravity force. These organs consist of sensory hairs projecting into a gel on which rest small crystals (otoliths). When the head is tilted with respect to gravity, the crystals move and bend the hairs, creating the sensation of tilting the head or body in relation to the true vertical (gravity). During flight, inertial forces are combined with the force of gravity. The resultant force that acts upon the otolith organ is almost never the direction of the true vertical. The brain monitors this and determines which way is "down"; therefore, the brain will be deceived much of the time in flight (Figure 7-4).

7.2.4 Postural (Seat of the Pants)

The postural sense derives its sensations from the expansion and contraction of muscles and tendons and from touch and pressure. This is the so-called seat-of-the-pants sense not considered reliable in flying. A greater increase in this pressure occurs in climbing, and any maneuver that produces pressure against the seat may be interpreted as climbing; therefore, without visual aid, this sense often interprets centrifugal force as a false climb or descent. Without visual reference to the natural horizon or flight instruments, a steep turn could be interpreted as a steep climb and a shallow, descending turn could be perceived as straight-and-level flight; therefore, the postural senses, like those of the inner ear, are unreliable without visual aid. Pilots are aware that they cannot fly by feel alone but must subordinate these false sensations to their flight instruments (Figure 7-5).

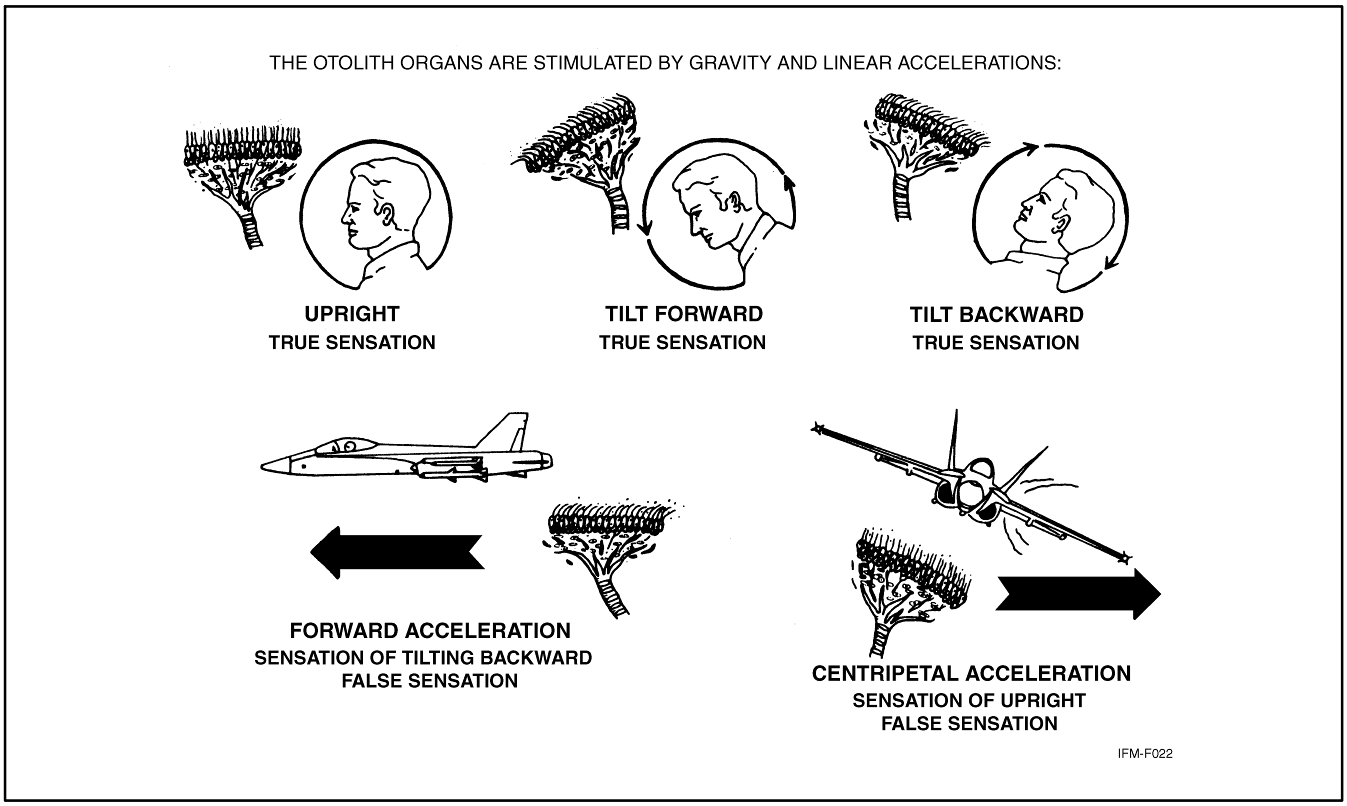


Figure 7-4. Otolith Organs

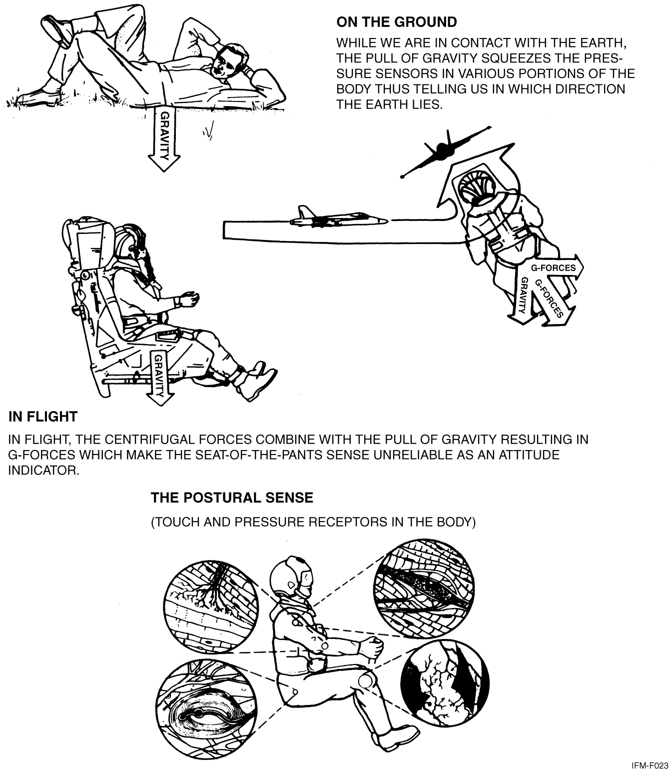


Figure 7-5. Postural (Seat-of-the-Pants) Sense

7.2.5 Sight

The only reliable information for a pilot to maintain spatial orientation is provided by the visual system. On a clear day when adequate visual reference is available, spatial disorientation is unlikely to happen despite the presence of linear or angular accelerations. Any false sensory inputs from the inner ear and postural senses are naturally and easily suppressed and ignored. Recent studies have postulated that the principal functions of the semicircular canals must be to stabilize the eyes in space during head movement and the otolith to provide a sense of direction at the resultant G vector.

At night or in IFR conditions, a pilot should be aware that what is seen outside the aircraft may be confusing and can potentially lead to sensory conflicts. One must maintain visual dominance solely by reference to aircraft instruments. Chief among those instruments is the attitude indicator, which provides a representation of aircraft attitude in relation to the Earth. Other instruments give valuable supporting information. Instrument proficiency with an efficient instrument cross-check will make it possible for a pilot to maintain visual dominance and to ignore potentially disorienting sensory data (Figure 7-6).

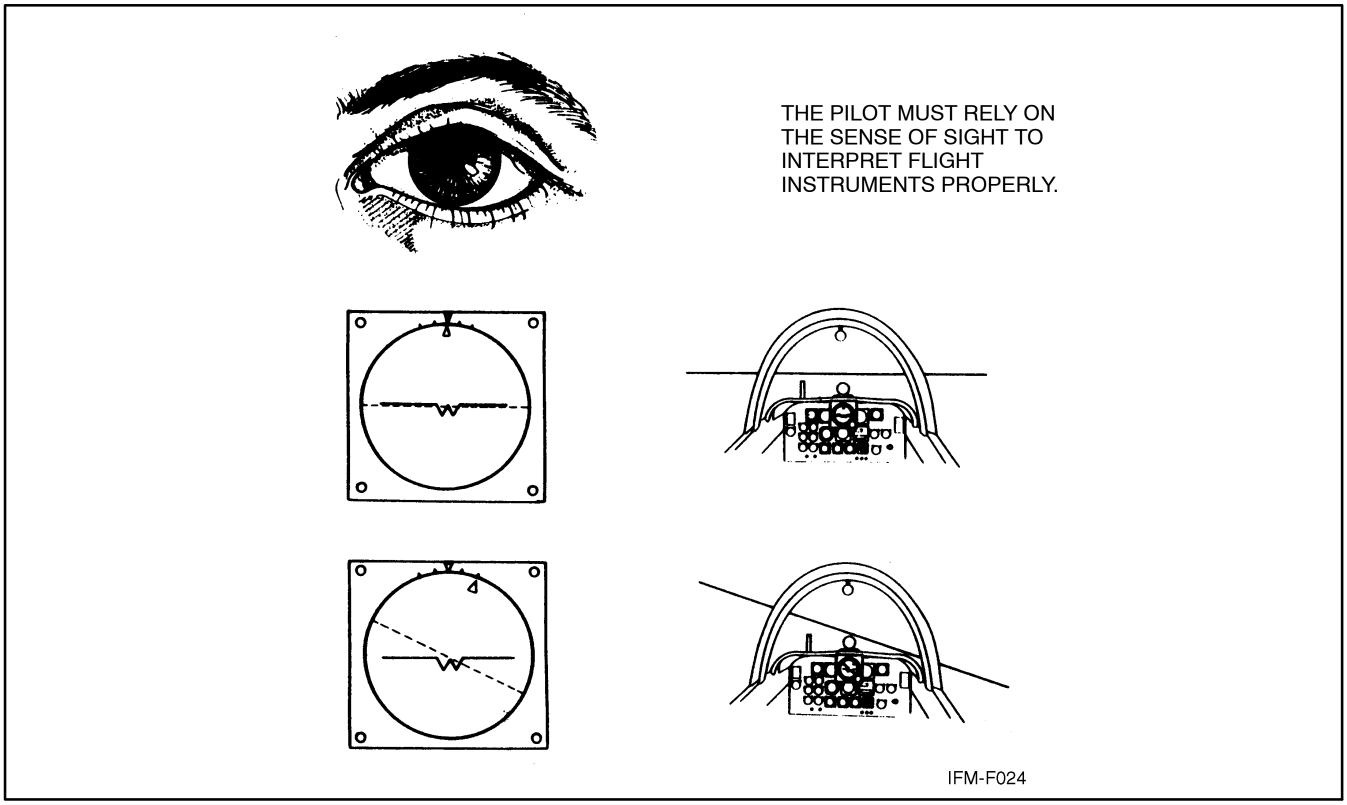


Figure 7-6. The Sense of Sight

CHAPTER 8

Spatial Disorientation

8.1 FALSE PERCEPTION (GENERAL)

8.1.1 Illusions: Primarily Inner Ear

Illusions related to the inner ear can result from semicircular canal stimulation (angular motion) and from otolith organ stimulation (linear motion).

8.1.1.1 The Leans

This is a common illusion and is caused by rolling or banking the aircraft after the pilot establishes a false impression of the true vertical. In a prolonged turn, the semicircular canals may perceive a roll to wings level as a turn in the opposite direction. This causes pilots to lean in an attempt to assume what they think is a true vertical posture. Should a pilot establish a very subtle roll to the left that does not stimulate the semicircular canals and then roll rapidly to level flight, the pilot may retain the false impression of only having rolled to the right. Again, the pilot may fly adequately in spite of this illusion, although the pilot may lean to assume a false vertical posture (Figure 8-1).

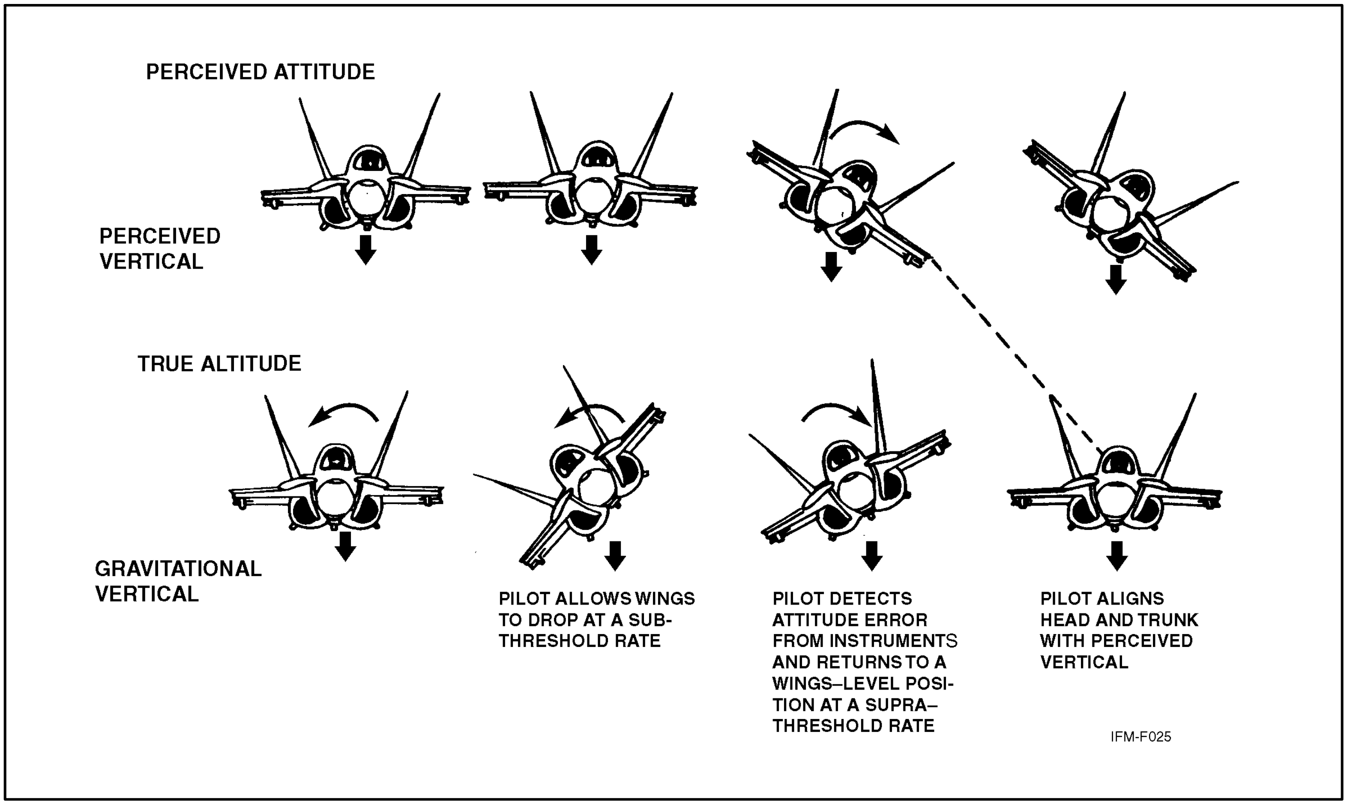


Figure 8-1. The Leans

8.1.1.2 A False Sensation of Rotation (Somatogyral Illusion)

This condition can occur when the semicircular canals are abnormally stimulated by certain turning maneuvers and the resulting angular acceleration. Examples include the following:

8.1.1.2.1 Graveyard Spin

When the semicircular canals are stimulated by the angular acceleration produced by the spin entry, the first impression of the pilot is accurate (i.e., a spin is perceived). After approximately 10 to 20 seconds, the fluid in the canals reaches a constant speed and the sensing mechanism returns to the resting position, whereupon, the sensation of spinning is replaced by one of no rotary motion despite the fact the spin continues. If the spin is then terminated, an angular deceleration is produced, which acts upon the semicircular canals to cause a sensation of spinning the opposite direction. Suffering from the illusion of spinning in the opposite direction, the pilot may try to correct for this false impression by putting the aircraft back into the original spin (Figure 8-2).

8.1.1.2.2 Graveyard Spiral

This maneuver is similar to the graveyard spin except the aircraft is in a descending turn rather than a stalled condition. The constant rate of turn causes one to lose the sensation of turning after a period of time. The pilot, noting the loss of altitude, may pull back on the stick or perhaps add power in an attempt to gain the lost altitude. Unless the sink attitude is first corrected, such actions can only serve to tighten a downward spiral. Once the spiral has been established, the pilot will suffer the illusion of turning in the opposite direction after the turning motion of the aircraft stops. Under these circumstances, the wrong corrective action may be taken, which will result in reestablishment of the spiral.

8.1.1.3 Coriolis Illusion

The coriolis illusion is perhaps the most dangerous of the inner ear illusions because it causes an overwhelming disorientation of the pilot, which can be extremely dangerous at low altitudes. This reaction is most apt to occur when a pilot is in a constant-rate turn, such as in a penetration turn or holding pattern. When the body is in a prolonged turn, the fluid in those canals that were stimulated by the onset of the turn eventually come up to speed with the canal walls. If the head is then tipped, the angular momentum of the fluid causes it to move again relative to the canal walls. The resulting sensation is one of rotation in the plane of the new position of the canal even though no actual motion has occurred in that plane; thus, abrupt head movements may cause false sensations of angular motion and erroneous perceptions of attitude. An attempt to correct for this is likely to result in a loss of aircraft control. To prevent this reaction, pilots should avoid sudden extreme head movements, especially while making turns. The head movement often results in an overwhelming sensation of a roll coupled with a climb or dive. Correction for this apparent unusual attitude should be made on the aircraft attitude indicator and not by reflex action. The solution is simple: minimize head movement.

8.1.1.4 Nystagmus

Nystagmus often accompanies coriolis illusion. During and immediately after maneuvers resulting from particularly violent angular accelerations such as spins and rapid aileron rolls, the eyes can exhibit an uncontrollable oscillatory movement called nystagmus. This eye movement generally results in an inability to focus either on flight instruments or on outside visual references. Rolling maneuvers are especially likely to result in visual blurring because of nystagmus. Normally, nystagmus ceases several seconds after termination of angular acceleration, but under conditions of inner ear dominance and high task loading, nystagmus and blurring of vision can persist much longer — long enough to prevent recovery.

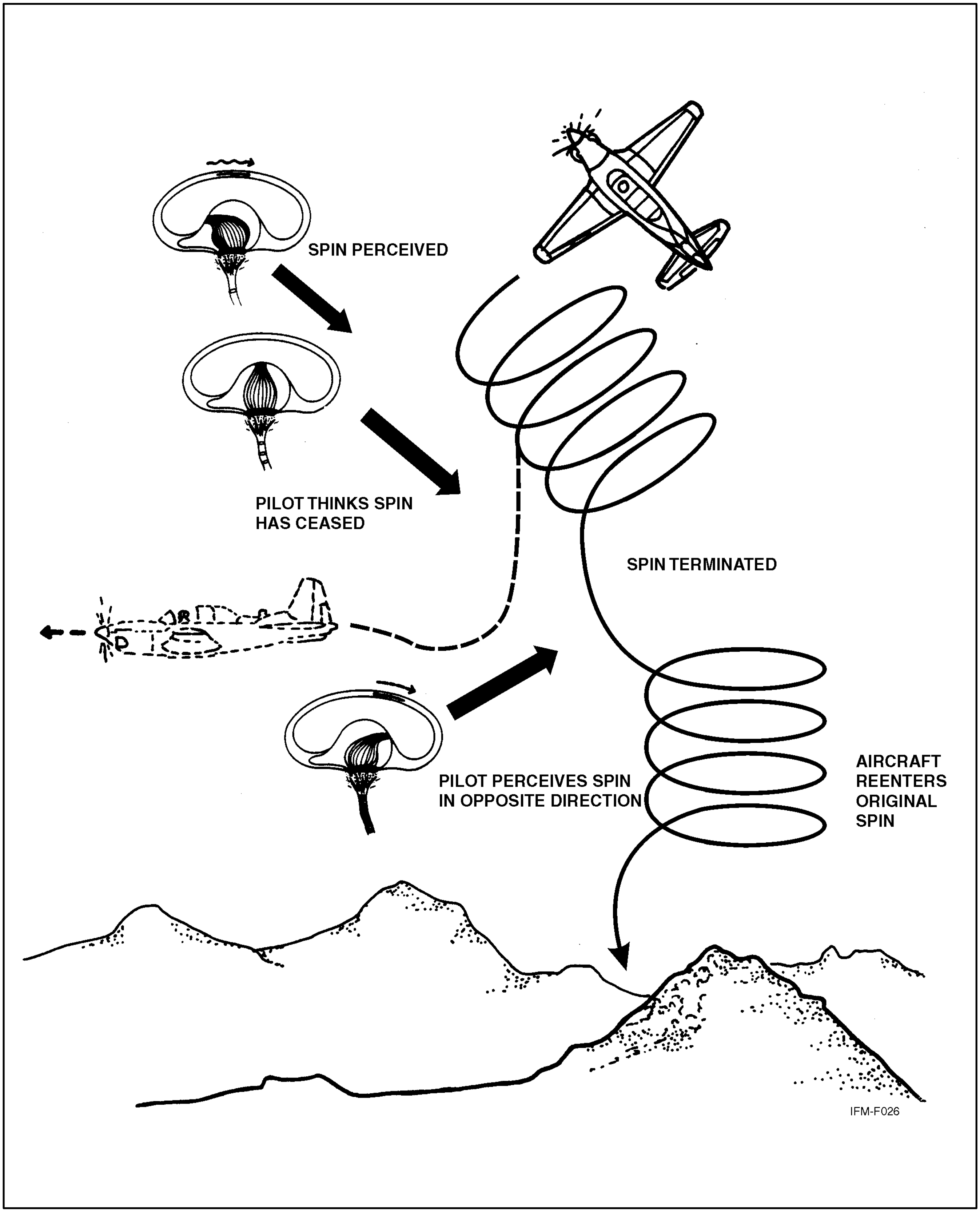


Figure 8-2. The Graveyard Spin

8.1.1.5 Pressure Vertigo

This condition is also of inner ear origin, although the exact mechanism is not understood. Symptoms include blurring of vision, nystagmus, and illusory sensations of turning. These symptoms occur more commonly and more severely when there is an explosive increase in middle ear pressure (e.g., with the Valsalva maneuver), although they can occur with gradual increases in middle ear pressure (such as with aircraft ascent). Pressure vertigo usually occurs when there is some difficulty or hesitation in "clearing the ears," especially if the individual has a cold or flu.

8.1.1.6 Illusion of Attitude Change (Somatogravic Illusion)

This illusion can occur when the otolith organs are abnormally stimulated by linear acceleration. Examples include the following:

8.1.1.6.1 Illusion of Noseup

This illusion can occur when an aircraft accelerates forward while in level flight and gives the pilot the sensation of being in a noseup attitude. This may occur as a result of a missed approach or during takeoff. The chest-to-spine acceleration experienced by the pilot is vectored with gravity, and the combined gravitational-inertial acceleration vector is increased in length and rotated as the acceleration continues (Figure 8-3). This can generate both visual and postural illusions. The visual illusion causes objects to appear to rise above their true physical positions, and the postural illusion causes the pilot to feel that his/her body is being tilted backwards. Because of these illusions, the pilot can become disoriented; the entire array of cockpit instruments may appear to rise, and the pilot may feel that his/her aircraft is climbing in an excessively high, noseup attitude. If a pilot were to correct for this illusion, he/she might inadvertently dive the aircraft.

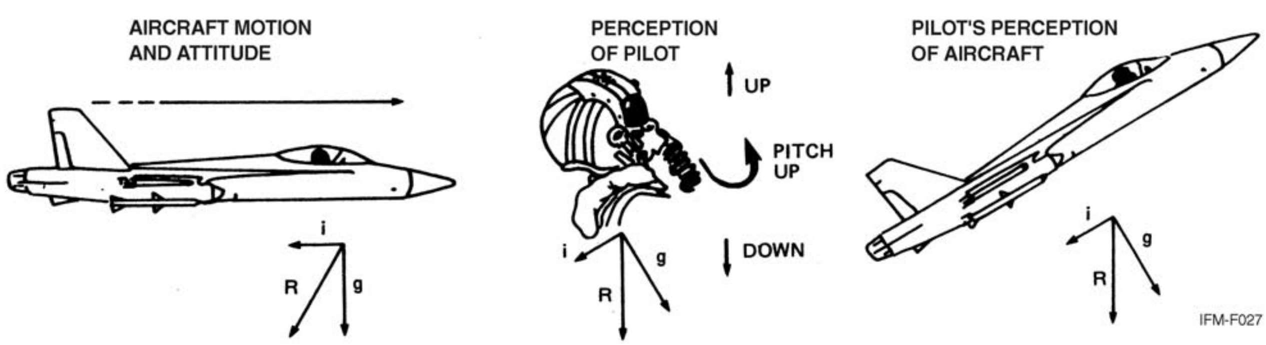


Figure 8-3. Forward Acceleration Illusion of Noseup

This type of illusion can be extremely dangerous during catapult launching of carrier-based aircraft and deserves special mention here. When an aircraft is launched from the deck of a carrier, the pilot is exposed to a sudden and dramatic change in the accelerative forces acting on his/her body. The pilot is pushed sharply back into his/her seat as the aircraft hurtles forward, accelerating rapidly to attain adequate airspeed. Although the acceleration is of brief duration, lasting for only 2 to 4 seconds, it is of sufficient intensity that the pilot may be disoriented during its application and for some time after the catapult launch accelerations have been terminated. The visual impression of a noseup attitude can lead to control errors, especially on a moonless, starless, black, overcast night when there is little opportunity for external visual cues to override the illusion; thus, if the pilot was deprived of appropriate information concerning the true pitch attitude, the natural tendency would be to reduce the illusory excessive noseup attitude of the aircraft by easing forward on the stick. This could result in a fatal water collision accident (Figure 8-4).

Although flight instruments can help the pilot to overcome disorientation, the value of the instruments depends critically on how closely they are monitored, how accurately they are interpreted, and how well they provide the pilot with information needed to control the aircraft. The prescribed technique in instrument flight immediately following a catapult launching at night is for the pilot to scan the cockpit instruments continuously, making certain that the end airspeed is sufficiently high to support flight, a positive rate of climb is established, the angle of attack and the pitch attitude of the aircraft are appropriate, adequate airspeed is maintained, and altitude is increasing. Instrument scanning should be continued throughout the entire climbout procedure, and trim, stick, and rudder adjustments should be made to keep all flight variables within general specified limits. Clearly, the pilot's workload during the climbout procedure is high, and lapses in performance can hold fatal consequences.

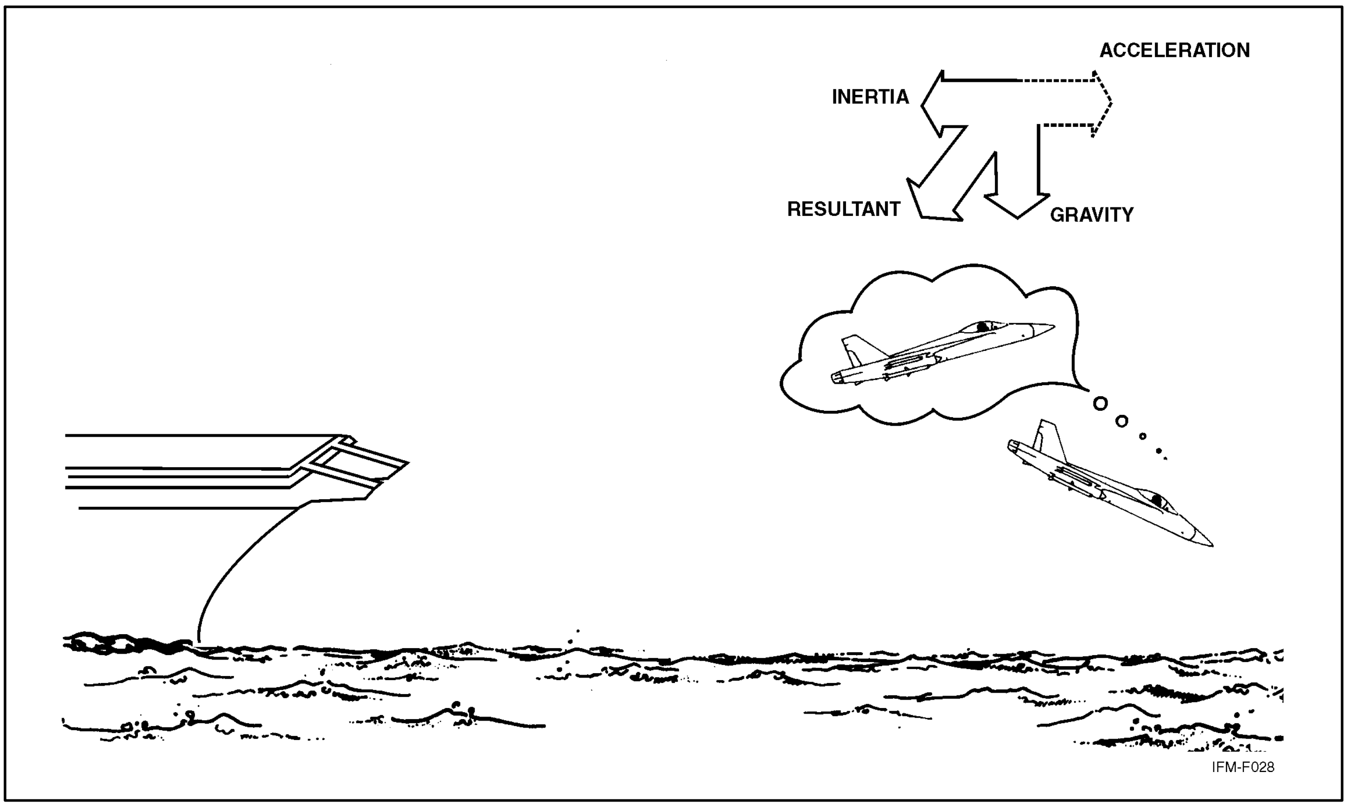


Figure 8-4. Noseup Illusion During Catapult Launch

8.1.1.6.2 Illusion of Nosedown

The opposite illusion of nosedown attitude may occur as a result of deceleration (Figure 8-5). If a pilot were to correct for the illusion of nose-low pitch caused by deceleration on final approach, the corrective action might result in a low altitude stall. Although this type of illusion is of greatest magnitude in high-performance aircraft, it can occur in all aircraft. A pilot can readily overcome the illusion by giving attention to distinct, valid references or to flight attitude instruments.

8.1.1.6.3 False Perception of Attitude

False perception of attitude can also occur during a flat or coordinated turn. The pilot can equate the sustained resultant (R) with the vertical (gravity); therefore, in a flat turn (Figure 8-6), the pilot may feel as if rolled out of the turn. In a coordinated turn (Figure 8-7), the resultant is aligned with the pilot's axis, and there will be no sensation of a banked attitude.

8.1.1.7 Inversion Illusion

Inversion illusion can occur during an abrupt pushover from a climb into level flight (Figure 8-8). The abrupt aircraft attitude change and consequent negative g force acting on the otolith organs cause a sensation of being inverted. Reflex action can cause the pilot to correct for this illusion by pushing the nose of the aircraft abruptly downward, thus intensifying the illusion.

8.1.1.8 Elevator Illusion

Elevator illusion results from stimulation of otolith organs by an increase in gravity (Figure 8-9). If an upward linear acceleration occurs while the aircraft wings are level, as in a sudden updraft, the pilot's eyes reflexly move downward. The illusory upward motion of the immediate surroundings can give the pilot the impression that the aircraft is climbing and cause the pilot to reflexly place the aircraft into a dive.

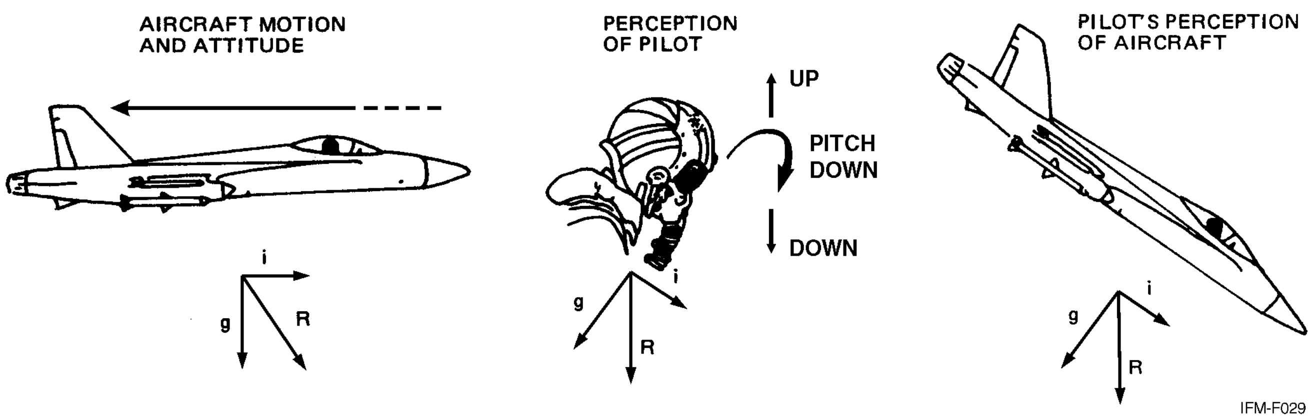


Figure 8-5. Deceleration Illusion of Nosedown

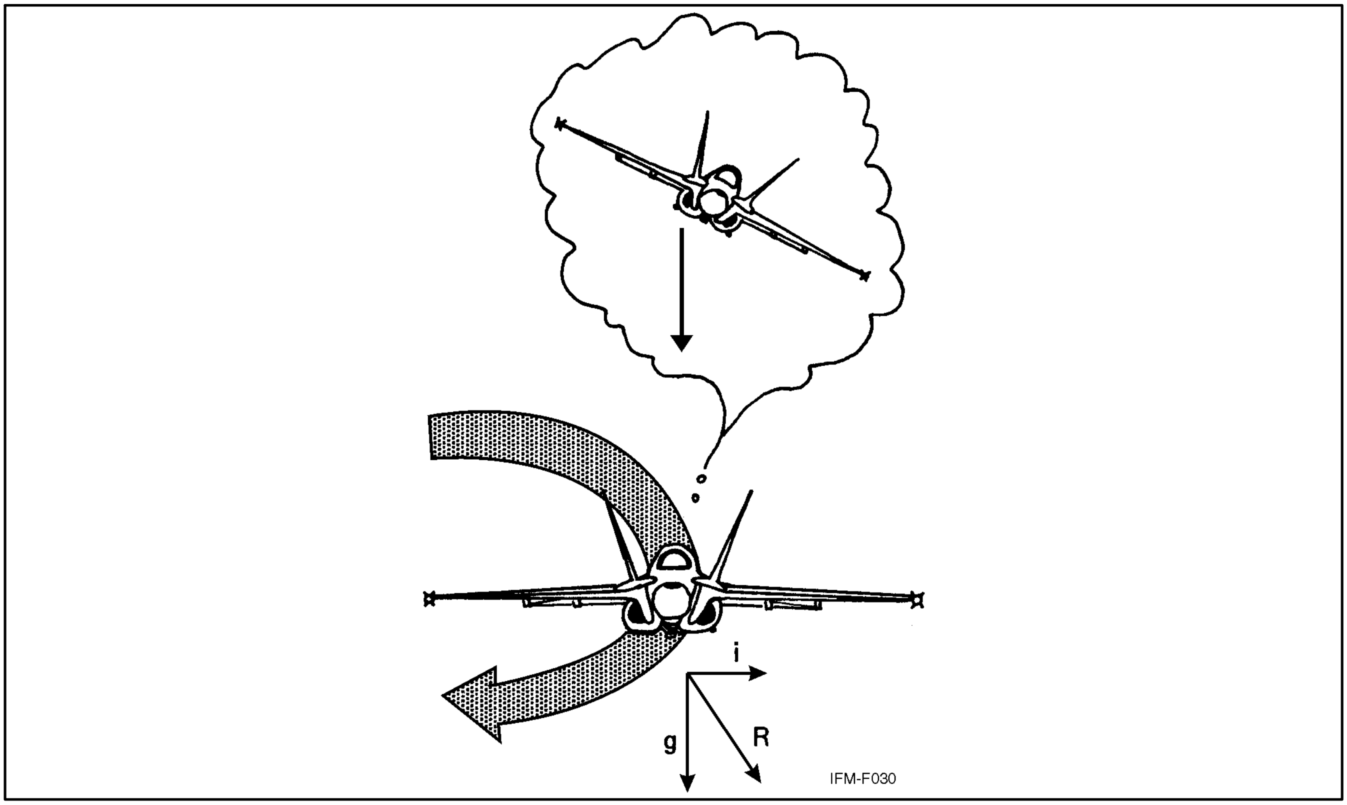


Figure 8-6. False Perception of Attitude During Flat Turn

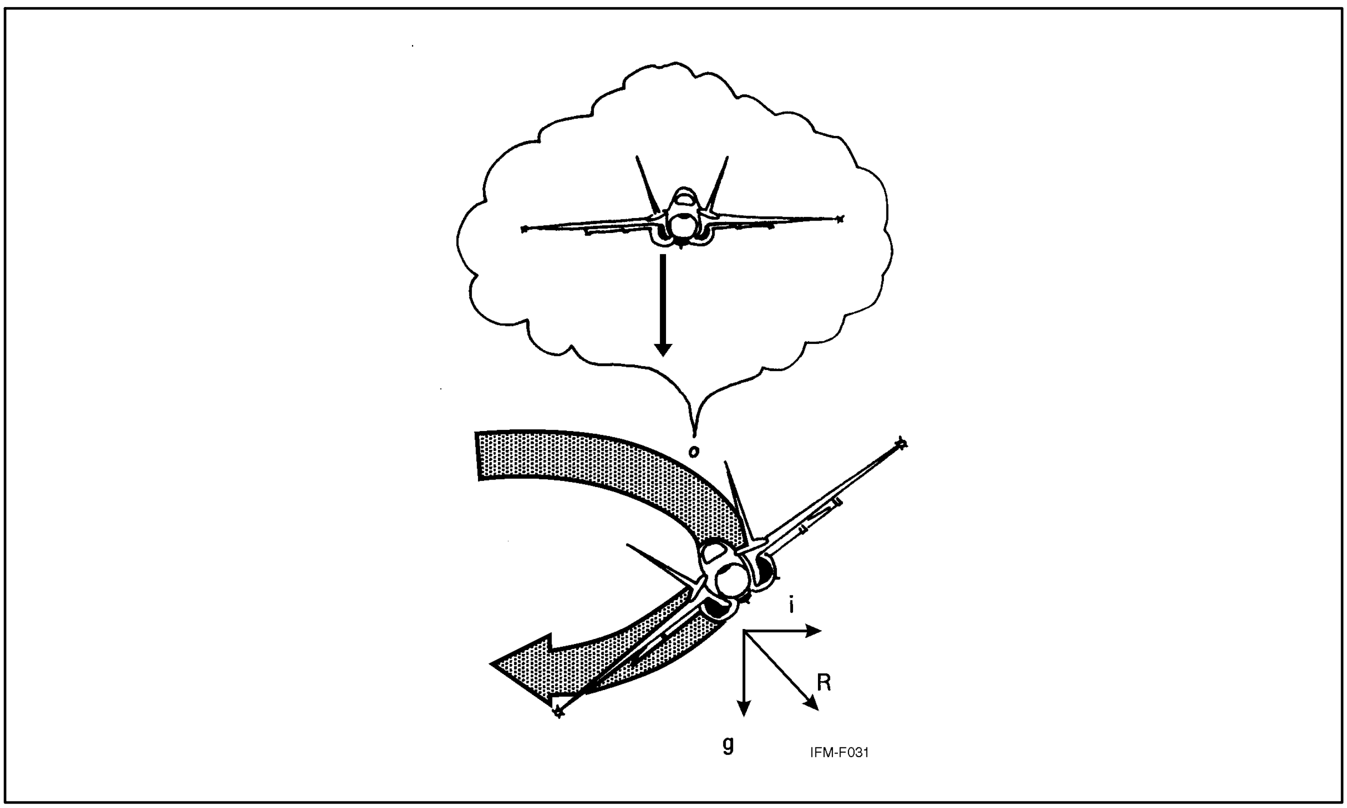


Figure 8-7. False Perception of Attitude During Coordinated Turn

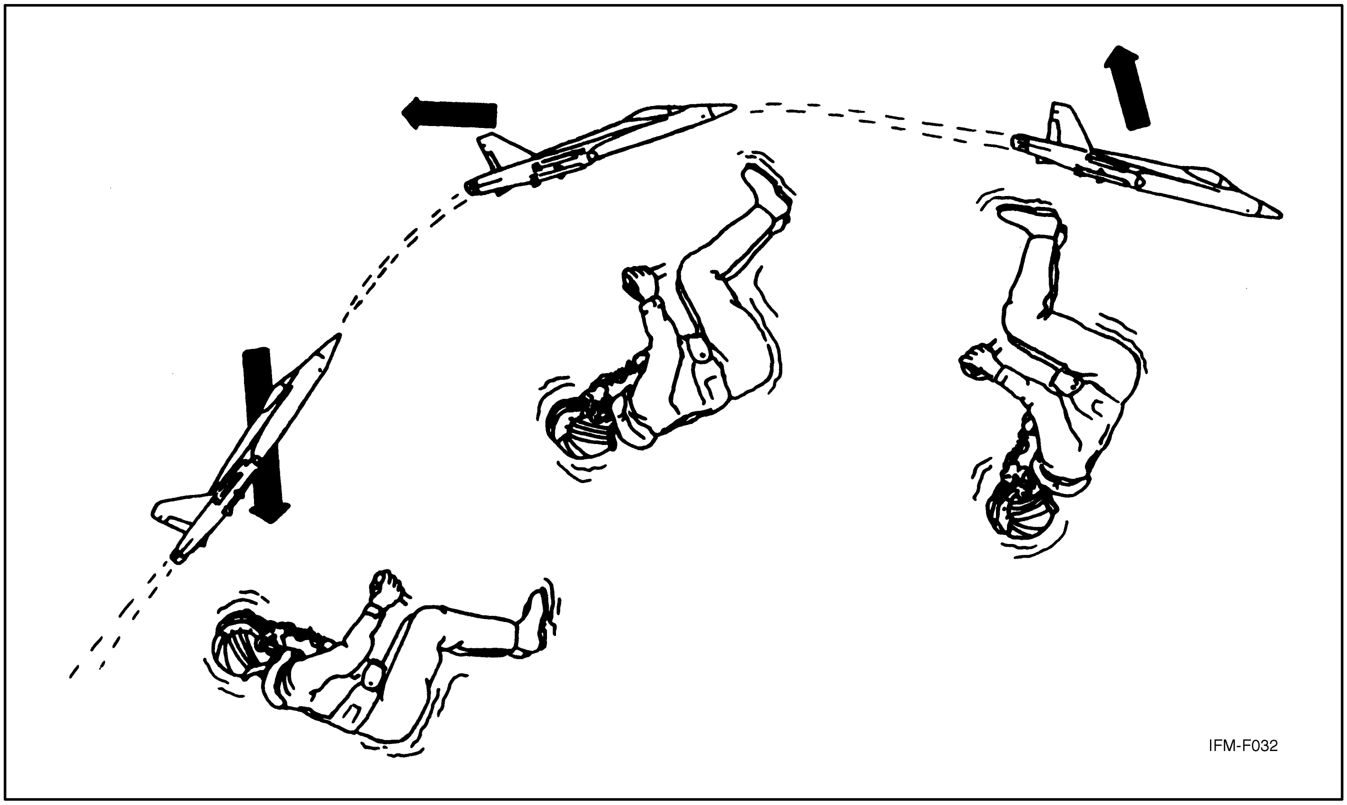


Figure 8-8. The Inversion Illusion

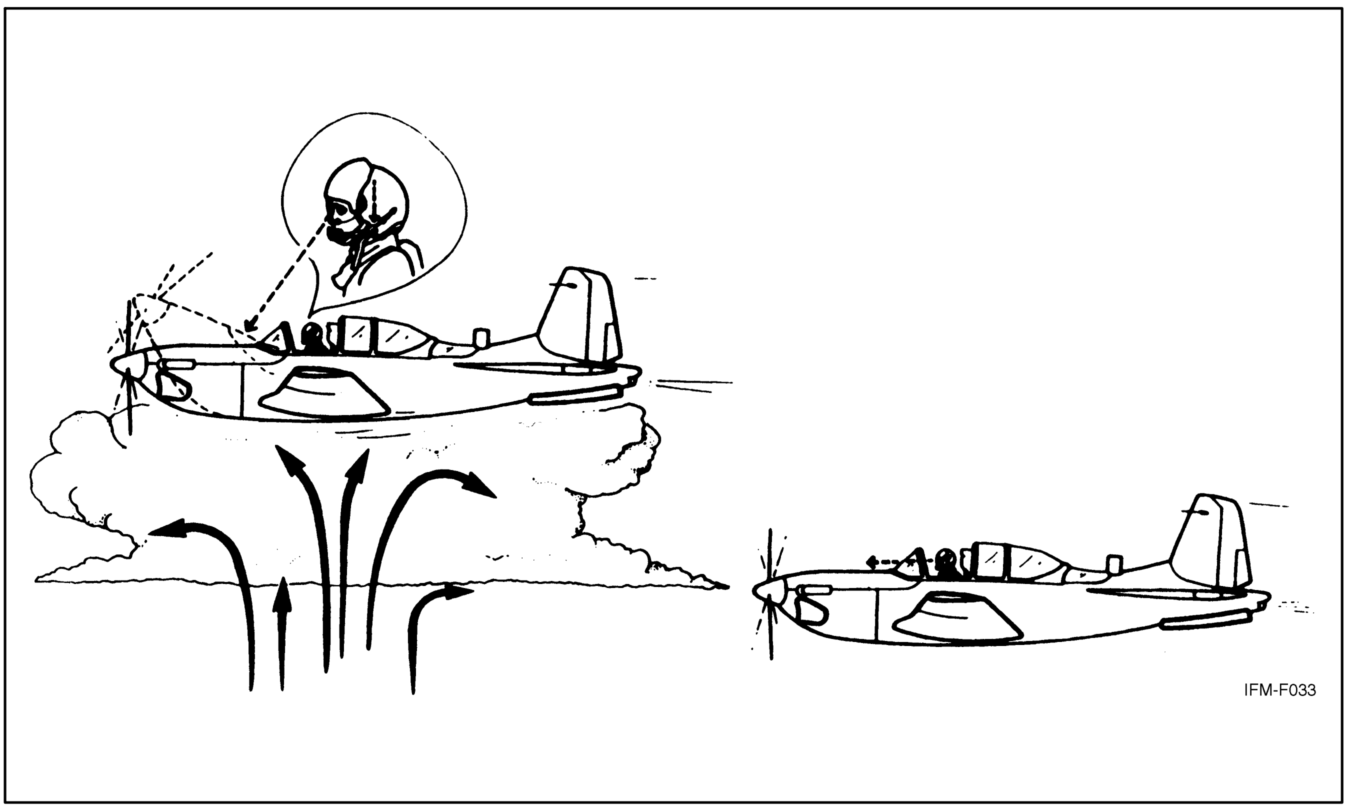


Figure 8-9. The Elevator Illusion

The opposite of the elevator illusion (oculoagravic illusion) can occur during a sudden downdraft. The eyes will react with an upward shift, resulting in apparent downward shift of objects interpreted as a nosedown aircraft attitude. The pilot may react by pulling back on the stick, and enter an unperceived climb.

8.1.2 Visual Illusions and Problems

The aircraft instruments are extensions of the pilot's senses. As long as the pilot correctly interprets and uses the instruments when deprived of external visual references, orientation will remain; however, there are certain conditions encountered during VFR and formation flight that may cause confusion, illusions, and spatial disorientation.

8.1.2.1 Confusion of Ground Lights with Stars

Confusion of ground lights with stars is a common problem associated with night flying (Figure 8-10). Incidents have been recorded where pilots have put their aircraft into very unusual attitudes to keep some ground lights above because they believed the lights were stars. Sometimes pilots have mistaken certain geometric patterns of ground lights, such as freeway lights, with runway and approach lights, or assumed a line of ground lights represented the horizon. In doing so, the possibility exists of flying into the ground because the perceived horizon is below the actual one. Sometimes pilots confuse unlighted areas of the Earth with an overcast night sky. They are likely to perceive certain ground features such as a seashore as the horizon and fly into the unlighted water or the terrain above it.

8.1.2.2 False Vertical and Horizontal Cues

False vertical and horizontal cues can occur while flying over sloping cloud decks or land that slopes gradually upward into mountainous terrain (Figure 8-11). Pilots are often compelled to fly with their wings parallel to the slope rather than straight and level. A related phenomenon is the disorientation caused by the aurora borealis, in which false vertical and horizontal cues generated by the aurora result in attitude confusion in pilots trying to fly formation or refuel at night in northern regions.

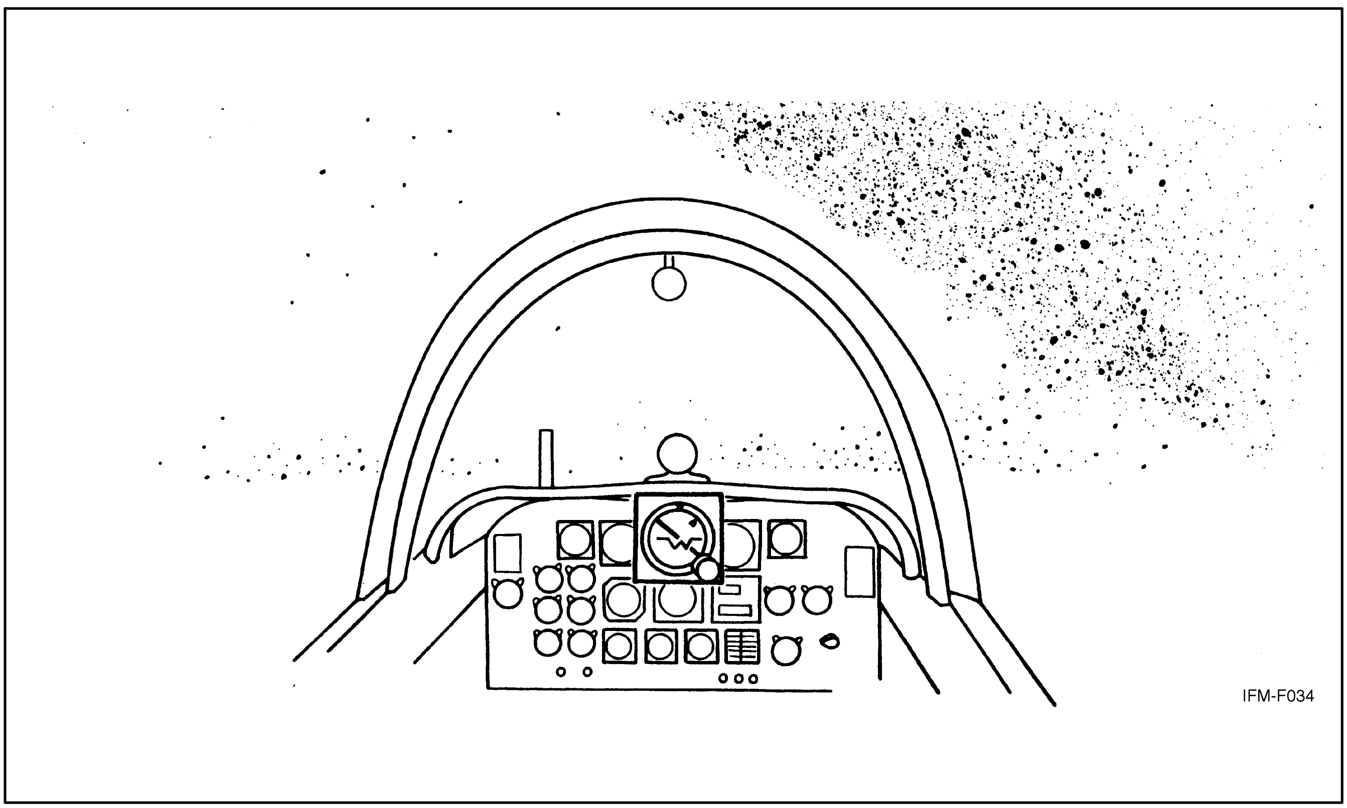


Figure 8-10. Confusion of Ground Lights with Stars

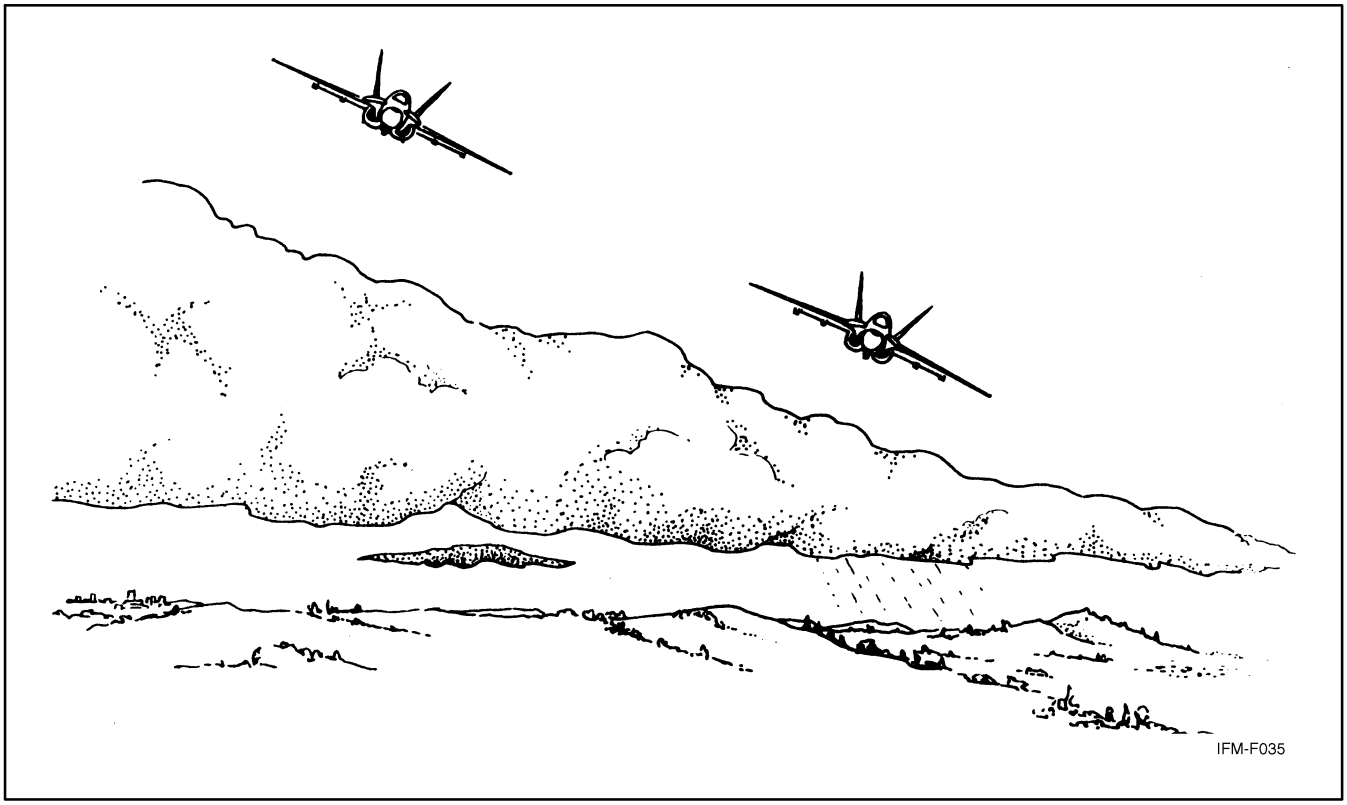


Figure 8-11. Sloping Cloud Decks

8.1.2.3 Visual Autokinesis

A stationary light stared at for several seconds in the dark will appear to move (Figure 8-12). This phenomenon can cause considerable confusion in pilots flying formation at night. Increasing the brilliance, size, or number of lights, or causing the lights to flash on and off, will diminish the effect of this phenomenon.

8.1.3 False Perceptions During Helicopter Flights

The problem of illusions in helicopter pilots is not totally understood due to various complicating factors: the fundamental difference between a helicopter and other aircraft, the complexity of its piloting, its instability in flight, and excessive noises and vibrations. All of these probably have definite effects on the pilot's spatial orientation and at the same time may promote the development of false perceptions.

Poorly developed habits of instrument flying are the most frequent cause of false perceptions, especially during flights with limited visibility and few definite clouds, when the pilot is distracted from instrument flying and tries to orient him/herself visually. Illusions develop under conditions hampering orientation in space, such as flights over the sea on moonless starry nights, in calm twilight, or when caught in thickly falling snow. Other factors contributing to illusions are poor rest before flight, fatigue during lengthy flights, indulgence in alcohol on the eve of the flight, and poor adjustment to instrument flight.

8.1.3.1 Illusion of Banking

This illusion is connected with the persistent tendency of helicopters to bank during flight. The inhibitory processes in the pilot's brain are intensified under the influence of noise and vibration, especially if the pilot has had insufficient preflight rest, use of alcohol on the eve of flight, or recent cold or flu. The false perception can hold for a few seconds or as long as 15 minutes.

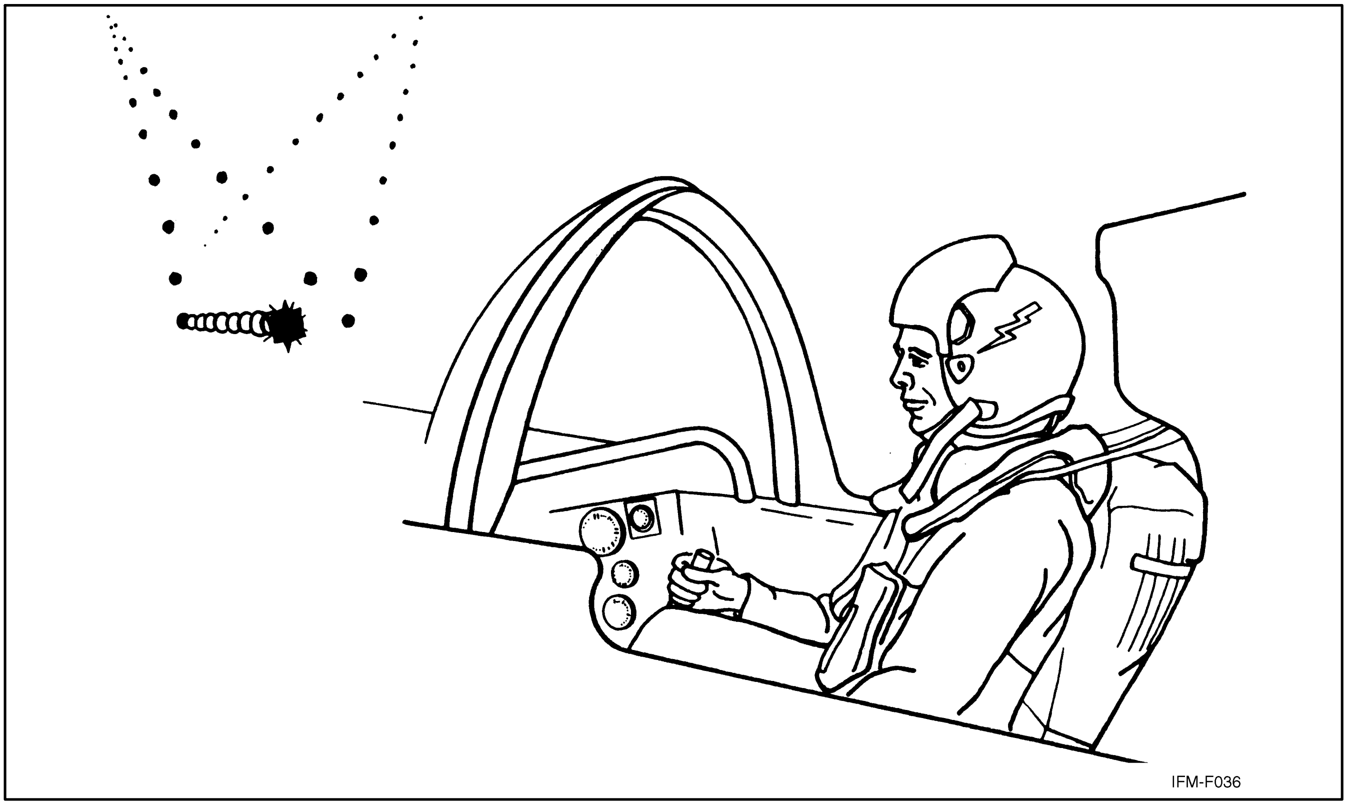


Figure 8-12. Visual Autokinesis

When this illusion develops, the pilot should concentrate all attention on the instruments. If the false perception does not pass, it is necessary to transfer the control to the copilot and rest awhile. After this, the illusion generally disappears. In certain instances, the illusion ceases after the helicopter is positioned by the second pilot.

8.1.3.2 Illusion of Deviation

During entry into clouds, or during a flight through occasional clouds, pilots can experience the illusion that the helicopter deviates from its course. This can occur if the pilot has not completely switched to instrument flying. Oncoming clouds, flowing around the helicopter, swerve to the side, creating the impression that the helicopter is deviating from the course. As the pilots are seated at the sides of the helicopter, they only see the part of the oncoming cloud flow that bypasses at their side; thus, in pilots sitting at the left, an illusion develops that the helicopter is diverging to the right, and in the pilots sitting at the right, this deviation seems to be to the left. The illusion can last from 1 to 1.5 minutes and disappears as soon as the pilot completely switches to instruments.

8.1.3.3 Illusion of Pivoting on Longitudinal Axis

Weak instrument technique causes this illusion, which can appear in dense masses of homogeneous clouds. The motion of an approaching mass of clouds is least marked but, instead, a downward flow directed by the shape of the supporting structure is distinctly apparent. This creates the impression that the front portion of the helicopter is rising and the tail girder dropping. The helicopter seems to pivot on its longitudinal axis. The pilot feels as if he/she were not sitting but lying on his/her spine. This illusion lasts for a few seconds to 1 minute. Switching attention completely to instruments, or the appearance of varied density or illumination of the clouds, brings about cessation of the illusion.

8.1.3.4 Illusion of Vertical Flight

This illusion is caused by simultaneous excitation of the receptors of the inner ear and visual analyzers. A change in body position and simultaneous observations of uniformly moving background (in particular the flow of clouds downward from the rotors) give rise to false impressions as to the position and direction of the helicopter. An impression is created that the helicopter has turned 90° downward on its longitudinal axis and is flying vertically. This illusion can appear in pilots at the moment of forward acceleration with the sudden increase in the angle formed by the horizontal and longitudinal axis of the helicopter (angle of pitch) while the pilot is at the same time watching the downward flow of the cloud stream from the rotors. With a change of no more than 5° in the angle formed by the longitudinal axis of the helicopter and the horizontal, the illusory perception of angle change may reach 90°. The illusion lasts 20 to 30 seconds and disappears completely.

8.1.3.5 Flicker Vertigo

This term refers to the feelings of dizziness that may be accompanied by nausea caused by intermittently flickering lights. Sources of flickering lights include sunlight through rotor blades, windshield wipers, or reflection of anticollision lights off clouds. Turning off distracting lights or changing direction may help reduce flicker vertigo.

8.1.3.6 Preventive Measures

The study and awareness of illusions by flight personnel have definite value in prevention. All flight personnel should be acquainted during flight briefings with the flight conditions and the possibility of false perceptions arising during one or another portion of the flight. If the pilot would be aware beforehand of what might be encountered, this could help forestall illusions. A strict regime of work and rest should be observed. When fatigued during a flight, the pilot should pass the control to the copilot. Instruments should be trusted and the aircraft flown to make them read correctly.

8.2 SPATIAL MISORIENTATION

Unlike spatial disorientation, spatial misorientation occurs unrecognized by the pilots and aircrew. Spatial misorientation mishaps are characterized by controlled, 1-G collisions with the ground or obstacles on the ground. Terms that have been used to describe symptoms of spatial misorientation include unrecognized spatial disorientation, task overload, task saturation, loss of situational awareness, fixation, distraction, or preoccupation. Typically, a pilot who experiences spatial misorientation is mistakenly comfortable with the attitude or flightpath of the aircraft, or is distracted from monitoring flight instrument cross-checks. The pilot unconsciously accepts peripheral visual cues such as outside horizons, cloud banks, etc. for attitude flying, instead of central visual cues such as cockpit instruments. Factors that prevent or distract a pilot from utilizing central visual cues for cross-checking flight/attitude instruments are numerous, but are especially present during times of high pilot workload, fatigue, and night flying. Preflight considerations should take into account the type of mission, anticipated workloads, time of day, etc., which might distract a pilot from using visual cues for cross-checking flight/attitude instruments.

CHAPTER 9

Factors That Increase the Potential for Spatial Disorientation

9.1 GENERAL

There are a number of factors that will increase the potential for spatial disorientation. Some of these are personal in nature whereas others are external and related to the flying environment and various phases of flight. Pilot and supervisor awareness may reduce the risks associated with these factors.

The key to success in instrument flying is an efficient instrument cross-check. Any situation or factor that interferes with this flow of information will increase the potential for disorientation.

9.2 PERSONAL FACTORS

A pilot who is mentally stressed, preoccupied with personal problems, fatigued, ill, or taking unprescribed medication is at increased risk. A pilot preoccupied with significant family problems may not be able to fully concentrate on the tasks related to flying duties. Any of these factors may be detrimental to an effective instrument cross-check and can adversely affect the pilot's ability to interpret and process information provided by aircraft instruments.

9.3 ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

Certain environmental factors and situations, when the visual system becomes compromised, can reduce a pilot's ability to maintain spatial orientation. Some of these factors include:

1. Weather. In particular, transfer from external visual to instrument cues.

2. Night. Isolated light sources can enhance the probability of sensory illusions. Confusing ground lights with stars can also occur.

9.4 FACTORS RELATED TO TYPE OR PHASE OF FLIGHT

Prolonged linear acceleration or deceleration, prolonged angular motion, subthreshold changes in attitude, or ascent or descent are flight maneuvers that can precipitate an episode of spatial disorientation. Specific types and phases of flight are described in the following paragraphs.

9.4.1 Takeoff and Landing Phases

Spatial disorientation mishaps have occurred after takeoff, in the initial climbout following takeoff, during the penetration, following a penetration turn, or in the transition to final approach and landing. The takeoff and landing phases of flight are dynamic, demanding environments. Aircraft acceleration, speed, trim requirements, rate of climb/descent, and rate of turn are flight parameters undergoing frequent change. The aircraft may pass in and out of Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) and Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC). At night, ground lights may add confusion. Radio channel or Identification Friend or Foe/Selective Identification Feature (IFF/SIF) changes may be directed during a critical phase of flight while close to the ground. Unexpected changes in climbout or approach clearances may increase workload and interrupt an efficient instrument cross-check. An unexpected requirement to make a missed approach or a circling approach at night or in IMC conditions is particularly demanding. At a strange field with poor runway lighting, this may be especially dangerous.

9.4.2 ACM or Air-to-Ground Ordnance Deliveries

A critical phase of flight with a high potential for spatial disorientation is the maneuvering associated with Air Combat Maneuvering (ACM) or air-to-ground ordnance deliveries during night or periods of reduced visibility. Under such conditions, the only reliable information related to aircraft attitude is provided by the flight instruments. Because of the nature of the mission, the pilot's attention is directed outside the cockpit. Potential for distraction is great. Failure to scan an important instrument parameter such as bank or pitch attitude, airspeed, or vertical velocity during a critical phase of the weapons delivery may occur. These factors can lead to spatial disorientation or to a "lack of situational awareness" in which the pilot inadvertently places the aircraft into a position from which recovery may be impossible. Distraction, lack of situational awareness, and spatial disorientation are not the same, but the root causes of each are related (i.e., failure to maintain an effective instrument cross-check). One can lead to the other and any one of the three may result in a fatal mishap.

9.4.3 Formation Flight

The most critical situation for developing spatial disorientation is night or weather formation flights. Formation flying can present special problems to the pilot in maintaining spatial orientation. First and most important, the pilot flying wing cannot maintain visual dominance during orientation-information processing and is deprived of any reliable visual information concerning aircraft attitude related to the surface of the Earth. The pilot cannot see the true horizon and has little or no time to scan the aircraft instruments. Under these conditions, it becomes difficult to suppress information provided by unreliable sources such as the inner ear. Illusions are almost inevitable. A pilot's concentration on maintaining proper wing position may be diverted by what the pilot "feels" the aircraft attitude to be. Lack of confidence in the lead will increase tension and anxiety. An inexperienced, rough flight lead will most certainly aggravate the situation. Poor in-flight communications and the lack of specific procedures (properly briefed) to recover a disoriented wingman will increase the potential for an aircraft mishap.

CHAPTER 10

Medications, Alcohol, and Nutrition

10.1 GENERAL

Self-medication in aviation is a common and potentially dangerous act. With the increasing medical sophistication of the general public through media advertising, there is a definite possibility of self-diagnosis and self-prescription. Self-medication and taking medicine in any form while flying can be extremely hazardous to a pilot. Even simple, over-the-counter remedies may seriously impair judgment and coordination, adversely affect the pilot's ability to interpret and process information provided by aircraft instruments, or produce inner ear effects that may precipitate or intensify experiences of vertigo in aircraft. OPNAVINST 3710.7 series prohibits the use of all drugs by flight personnel unless specifically approved by a flight surgeon, aviation medical examiner, or aviation medical officer.

The adverse effects of drugs on the human body are further complicated by the complex interactions that occur in the body between drugs, between drugs and alcohol, and between drugs and food additives, including caffeine and nicotine. Adverse drug effects are additive but can be synergistic, where the resulting effect is greater than the sum of the individual effects.

The insidious incapacitation that may result from the effects of drugs and alcohol is increased when the pilot is fatigued, frustrated, or in a state of mild hypoxia. In addition, it is an even greater problem when a drug is used over a period of several days, weeks, or even longer. Never take medication before flying except on the advice of a flight surgeon.

10.2 NUTRITION

All flight and ground support personnel shall be provided a positive program of information for the establishment and maintenance of good dietary habits. Failure to eat within 12 hours preceding end of flight may impair performance and ability to control aircraft adequately. Reducing diets should be under strict supervision of a flight surgeon.

10.3 EXERCISE

Planned physical fitness programs promote health. All levels of command are encouraged to establish approved physical fitness programs for all personnel in accordance with OPNAVINST 6110.1. Due consideration must be given to avoiding contact sports, skiing, etc. Adequate rest periods must be provided for aviators before flying following participation in competitive or particularly tiring sports activity. Twelve hours should normally be adequate.

10.4 DRUGS

Drugs are defined as any chemical that when taken into the body causes a physiological response. All flight and support personnel shall be provided appropriate information by a command drug abuse education program.

1. Legal drugs are those medically prescribed or legally purchased for treatment of illness.

   a. Prescription drugs — Taking drugs prescribed by competent medical authority shall be considered sufficient cause for recommendation of grounding unless their use is specifically approved by a flight surgeon, or a waiver of specific drug use has been granted by Chief of Naval Personnel or the Commandant of the Marine Corps. Consideration shall be given to the removal of ground support personnel from critical duties, for the duration of the drug effects, if appropriate. Medicines such as antihistamines, antibiotics, tranquilizers, sleeping pills, etc. obtained by prescription shall be discarded if all are not used during the period of medication.

   b. Over-the-counter drugs — Because of the possibility of adverse side effects and unpredictable reactions, the use of over-the-counter drugs by flight personnel is prohibited unless specifically approved by a flight surgeon. Ground support personnel shall be briefed on the hazards of self-medication and should be discouraged from using such drugs.

c. Alcohol — The well-recognized effects (i.e., intoxication and hangover) are detrimental to safe operations. Consumption of any type of alcohol is prohibited within 12 hours of flight planning. Adherence to the letter of this rule does not guarantee a crewmember will be free from the effects of alcohol after a period of 12 hours. Alcohol can adversely affect the vestibular system for as long as 48 hours after consuming, even when blood-alcohol content is zero. Special caution should be exercised when flying at night, over water, or in Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC). In addition to abstaining from alcohol for 12 hours prior to flight planning, flightcrews shall ensure they are free of hangover effects prior to flight. Detectable blood alcohol or symptomatic hangover shall be cause for grounding of flight personnel and the restriction of the activities of aviation ground personnel.

d. Tobacco — Smoking has been shown to cause lung disease and impair night vision, dark adaptation, and increase susceptibility to hypoxia. Smoking is hazardous to nonsmokers, as the effects occur whether smoke is inhaled directly or secondarily. Persons desiring to smoke shall show due consideration for the desires of nonsmokers in the vicinity and abstain from smoking if asked. Further guidance on smoking is contained in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series.

e. Caffeine — Excessive intake of caffeine from coffee, tea, cola, etc. can cause excitability, sleeplessness, loss of concentration, decreased awareness, and dehydration. Caffeine intake should be limited to not more than 450 mg per day, or 3 to 4 cups of coffee.

2. The use of illicit drugs is prohibited.

10.5 ILLNESS

Acute minor illnesses such as upper respiratory infections, vomiting, or diarrhea can produce serious impairment of flight personnel. All illnesses shall be evaluated by competent medical authority. Recommendations for grounding shall be accomplished by the submission of a grounding notice (NAVMED 6410/1). Clearance notices (NAVMED 6410/2) shall be issued only by a flight surgeon. Where a flight surgeon is not available, clearance notices shall be handled in accordance with BUMEDINST 6410.5. Flight personnel who are hospitalized shall be evaluated in accordance with BUMED directives and a clearance notice issued prior to flight. Ground support personnel should be similarly monitored. Aircrew shall not fly for at least 48 hours after general, spinal, or epidural anesthetic. Return to flying status thereafter shall be upon the recommendation of a flight surgeon and at the discretion of the commanding officer.

10.6 DENTAL CARE

Dental procedures that involve the use of injectable drugs (e.g., novocaine) shall be cause for grounding for a period of 24 hours.

10.7 IMMUNIZATION/INJECTIONS

Flight personnel shall not participate in flight duties for 12 hours after receiving an immunization or injection unless cleared sooner by a flight surgeon. Those showing protracted or delayed reaction shall be grounded until cleared by a flight surgeon.

10.8 BLOOD DONATION

Although blood donated in small quantities is quickly replaced and does not adversely affect ground activities, the hazards of hypoxia and reduced barometric pressure make it desirable to limit such donations by flight personnel in accordance with the following:

1. Flight personnel shall not be regular blood donors.

2. Flight personnel in combat or flying in a shipboard environment shall not donate blood within 4 weeks prior to such flying.

3. Flight personnel shall not participate in flight duties or perform low-pressure chamber runs for 4 days following donation of 450 cc of blood (1 pint).

CHAPTER 11

Prevention of Spatial Disorientation

11.1 GENERAL

In the prevention of spatial disorientation, there are primarily two aspects: training and experience.

11.2 TRAINING

The training aspect includes lectures and reading material on the unreliability of bodily senses in flight and factors favoring disorientation. Most important are the training and qualifications of learning to fly by instruments and maintaining proficiency in instrument flight.

Training in controlled spatial disorientation situations is also helpful. A number of maneuvers can be used to demonstrate spatial disorientation. Each maneuver normally creates a specific reaction; however, any reaction resulting in a false sensation is effective. The purpose of these maneuvers is to help pilots understand how susceptible the human system is to disorientation. They demonstrate that interpretations of aircraft attitudes from bodily sensations are frequently false and unrealistic and provide a better understanding of how disorientation relates to aircraft motion and head movement. They instill in the pilot a greater confidence in flight instrument interpretation by the sense of sight to determine the aircraft attitude.

The following spatial disorientation maneuvers are selected because of their relationship with normal instrument and/or turbulent flight. Other maneuvers, more violent and prolonged, may have a disorienting effect; however, they are not the type of maneuver or situation likely to be inadvertently encountered.

Note

The following maneuvers should be simulated and practiced only under direct supervision. They should not be accomplished in single-place aircraft.

11.2.1 Sensation of Climbing During a Turn

This sensation can be induced by having the pilot close his/her eyes while the aircraft is in a straight-and-level attitude. The supervisory pilot should execute, with a relatively slow entry, a well-coordinated 90° turn using approximately 1-1/2 positive g's. While the aircraft is turning under the effect of positive g and with the pilot's eyes still closed, the supervisory pilot should ask the pilot his/her version of the aircraft attitude. The usual sensation is that of a climb. When the pilot responds, have him/her open his/her eyes. The pilot can then see that a slowly established coordinated turn produces a climb sensation from the action of centrifugal force on the equilibrium organs.

11.2.1.1 Correlation Under Actual Instrument Conditions

If the aircraft enters a slight, coordinated turn in either direction while the eyes are diverted away from the instruments, the sensation of a noseup attitude may occur. The instantaneous application of similar forces may create this same illusion without the aircraft actually turning.

When a change of direction in any one of the three planes of motion occurs and the rate of angular acceleration in the turn is 2° per second per second or less, the body cannot detect this motion without some positive visual reference; consequently, the positive g applied during the turn is the only motion perceived. Positive g is usually associated with a climb. This association is an unconscious habit developed through experience with g forces, as well as a conscious feeling of climbing because of the effect of gravity on the inner ear mechanism.

11.2.2 Sensation of Diving During Recovery From a Turn

This sensation can be created by repeating the turning procedure described in paragraph 11.2.1, except that the pilot keeps his/her eyes closed until the recovery from the turn is approximately one-half completed. While the recovery is being executed and with the pilot's eyes still closed, the supervisory pilot should note the pilot's version of the aircraft attitude. The usual response is that the aircraft is descending. This false sensation is apparent when the pilot opens his/her eyes while the aircraft is still recovering from the turn.

11.2.2.1 Correlation Under Actual Instrument Conditions

If the eyes are diverted from the instruments during a turn under instrument conditions, a slow, inadvertent recovery will cause the body to perceive only the decrease in positive g forces. This sensation causes the pilot to believe he/she has entered a descent.

11.2.3 False Sensations of Tilting to Right or Left

This sensation may be induced from a straight-and-level attitude with the pilot's eyes closed. The supervisory pilot should maintain wings level and use right rudder to produce a slight skid to the left. The usual sensation is that of being tilted to the right. This false sensation is the effect of side-to-side accelerative forces on the organs of equilibrium.

11.2.3.1 Correlation Under Actual Instrument Conditions

If the eyes are momentarily diverted from the instruments as a skid to one side occurs, a false sensation of tilting the body to the opposite side may occur.

11.2.4 False Sensation of Reversal of Motion

This false sensation can be demonstrated in any one of the three planes of motion. The pilot should close his/her eyes while in straight-and-level flight. The supervisory pilot should roll the aircraft to between 30° and 45° of bank. The roll should be stopped abruptly and the bank attitude held. The usual reaction is a sense of rapid rotation in the opposite direction. After this false sensation is noted, the supervisory pilot should have the pilot open his/her eyes and observe the attitude of the aircraft. The false sensations produced from stopping the roll abruptly may result in a strong urge to apply reverse aileron pressure for recovery.

11.2.4.1 Correlation Under Actual Instrument Conditions

If the aircraft rolls or yaws with an abrupt stop while the eyes are diverted from the instruments, a sensation of rolling or yawing to the opposite direction may occur; therefore, the natural response to this false sensation would result in a reentry or an increase of the original roll or yaw. This response is a common error in rolls or spins when the visual references are poor. The sense of sight is the only sense that should be relied upon for correct recovery techniques.

11.2.5 Sensation of Diving or Rolling Beyond the Vertical Plane

This maneuver should be started from straight-and-level flight while the pilot sits normally and either closes his/her eyes or lowers his/her gaze to the floor. The supervisory pilot should start a normal coordinated turn to between 30° and 45° angle of bank. As the aircraft is turning, have the pilot lean forward and turn his/her head to either side, then rapidly resume the normal upright position. The supervisory pilot should time the maneuver so that the turn is stopped just as the pilot resumes his/her normal position.

11.2.6 Sensation of Climbing During Straight-and-Level Flight

This maneuver may be demonstrated by starting from straight-and-level flight at the aircraft normal final approach airspeed. While the pilot closes his/her eyes, the supervisory pilot should increase the airspeed and maintain straight-and-level flight. During the latter part of the airspeed increase, the supervisory pilot should ask the pilot, whose eyes are still closed, what is his/her sensation of the aircraft attitude. The usual sensation perceived without visual reference is that the aircraft is climbing.

11.2.6.1 Correlation Under Actual Instrument Conditions

This sensation may be very strong during an instrument missed approach. The false sensation of an excessive climb is produced by the change in aircraft attitude and aircraft acceleration. This sensation may occur prior to the climb and after level-off. The use of afterburners usually increases this illusion. The degree of disorientation and physical response is dependent upon the attitude change and the rate of aircraft acceleration.

This maneuver usually produces an intense disorientation by giving the sensation of falling in the direction of roll and downward. The sensation is so strong and rapid that it may result in a quick and forcible movement upward and backward in the opposite direction. The marked physical response associated with this type of sensation can be very dangerous if it occurs at low altitude.

11.2.6.2 Correlation Under Instrument Conditions

Severe spatial disorientation may result when the aircraft enters a turn while the pilot's head is moved down and sideways and then suddenly returned to the upright position. The usual reflex and almost uncontrollable urge to move physically in the opposite direction may be transferred to the aircraft controls. If this reflex is not controlled, it could easily cause exaggerated aircraft attitudes and further disorientation. Cockpit duties and/or distractions most likely to create this sensation under actual instrument conditions are changing radio frequencies, reaching for maps or charts, studying terminal instrument approach procedures, looking for obscure switches or controls, etc. The degree of disorientation and physical response is dependent upon the motion of the aircraft, the motion of the head, and the time element.

WARNING

Extreme care should be taken to limit rapid head movements during descents and turns, particularly at low altitudes. Cockpit duties should be subordinate to maintaining aircraft control. If possible, these duties should be delegated to other crewmembers so that sufficient attention can be given to the attitude indicator and other flight instruments.

11.3 EXPERIENCE

Through experience, the pilot learns to recognize those factors that favor an episode of spatial disorientation. Most of these are related to situations in which the visual system is compromised in its ability to provide orientation information. Most important is the experience of flying by instruments. Inexperienced pilots with little actual instrument time are particularly susceptible to spatial disorientation. It takes time and experience to "feel" comfortable in a new aircraft system and develop a solid, effective instrument cross-check. Pilots who still must search for switches, knobs, and controls in the cockpit have less time to concentrate on their flight instruments and may be distracted during a critical phase of an instrument flight. The cockpit chores and workload associated with single-seat fighter aircraft are particularly significant for the recent pilot graduate or pilots new to these systems. A second crewmember is not available to change radio channels, set up navigational aids, and share other cockpit chores. The potential for spatial disorientation during the transition phase into these new aircraft is great.

Total flying time does not protect an experienced pilot from spatial disorientation. More important is current proficiency and the number of flying hours or sorties in the past 30 days. Aircraft mishaps due to spatial disorientation almost always involve a pilot who has very few flying hours in the past 30 days. Instrument flying proficiency is directly related to overall general flying proficiency. Flying proficiency deteriorates rapidly after 3 or 4 weeks out of the cockpit. Vulnerability to spatial disorientation is high for the first couple of flights following a significant break in flying duties.

CHAPTER 12

Overcoming Spatial Disorientation

12.1 GENERAL

Some general suggestions for overcoming an episode of spatial disorientation include:

1. Get on instruments. They are supplying correct information about the aircraft position.

2. Believe the instrument indications. The pilot must be able to know that the instruments are correct, even if his/her sensations are indicating a different aircraft position or attitude.

3. Make the instruments read correctly by controlling the aircraft.

4. Minimize head movements.

5. Fly straight and level, if permissible, to allow the sensations of disorientation to dissipate.

6. Seek help if severe disorientation persists. Call ground controller or other aircraft. If flying with another aircraft, the other pilot may be able to talk the disoriented pilot into believing his/her instruments by describing his/her aircraft attitude to him/her over the radio.

7. Transfer control to copilot or autopilot (in dual-piloted aircraft) until disorientation is overcome.

8. Egress. If control cannot be regained, abandon aircraft with safe ground clearance according to the procedures outlined by the aircraft NATOPS manual. Do not leave it too late!

Crewmembers must have an established set of procedures to follow in the event they experience spatial disorientation. Specific procedures may differ depending on whether the aircraft system is a single-seat fighter, dual-seat fighter, or multicrewed aircraft. Additional procedures should be established for formation flight. Commands should ensure specific procedures are established for aircraft systems under their control. A few general principles are stated in the following paragraphs.

12.2 SINGLE-SEAT AIRCRAFT

1. If a pilot begins to feel disoriented, the key is to recognize the problems early and take immediate corrective actions before aircraft control is compromised.

2. Actions are directed at reestablishing visual dominance. The pilot should keep his/her head in the cockpit, defer all cockpit chores that are not essential, and concentrate solely on flying basic instruments. Frequent reference should be made to the attitude indicator, which is the primary instrument in establishing and maintaining visual dominance. Do not rely on the Heads-Up Display (HUD)!

3. If the symptoms do not improve after 30 to 60 seconds or if they get worse, the pilot should bring the aircraft to straight and level using the attitude indicator. Maintain straight and level until the symptoms abate. Declare an emergency if necessary (clearance limits) and advise Air Traffic Control (ATC) of the problem.

4. If action is not taken early, the pilot may not be able to resolve the sensory conflict. It is possible for spatial disorientation to proceed to a point (a true state of “panic”) where the pilot is unable to either see, interpret, or process information from the flight instruments. Further, the pilot may not be able to hear or respond to verbal instructions. Aircraft control in such a situation is obviously impossible. The pilot must recognize this and eject.

12.3 DUAL-SEAT AIRCRAFT

1. Principles outlined previously also apply here. A second crewmember is generally available to share the cockpit workload. The second crewmember can assist the pilot by copying clearances, changing radio/IFF channels, and acquiring information from flight publications.

2. The division of workload between the crewmembers should be clearly understood and covered in the preflight briefing.

3. During a penetration or en route descent and approach, the second crewmember should closely monitor and call out altimeter settings, altitudes, and airspeeds.

4. If the pilot experiences spatial disorientation to a degree that interferes with maintaining aircraft control, then control of the aircraft should be transferred to the second crewmember if that crewmember is able to control the aircraft safely.

5. The second crewmember should be specifically tasked to monitor aircraft airspeed, altitude, and attitude while maneuvering on range missions at night or during periods of reduced visibility.

12.4 MULTICREWED AIRCRAFT

1. Principles outlined previously also apply to multiengine, multicrewed aircraft systems.

2. The potential for spatial disorientation is less in these systems because of the difference in maneuverability. Additional crewmembers are available to reduce pilot workload. Illusions and sensory conflicts are possible and do occur. Illusions that are experienced are more likely to be visual in origin rather than vestibular.

3. Weather- and night-related mishaps do occur in these systems, but the cause is usually related to either distraction or poor crew coordination during an approach to a strange field, generally with a poor runway lighting system. Fatigue and circadian rhythm problems may be aggravating factors on long flights in cargo-type aircraft.

4. Specific procedures concerning division of workload and crew coordination should be covered in the preflight briefing.

12.5 FORMATION FLIGHTS IN NIGHT OR WEATHER

1. The potential for spatial disorientation is greatest for formation flights during night or weather conditions.

2. Night joinups are dangerous, particularly when conducted at low altitude over dark terrain or water under an overcast. Alternative profiles such as a trail departure and climbout should be selected if possible.

3. Pilots scheduled for formation flights in night/Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC) conditions should be current and proficient in instrument, night, and formation flying. Particular attention should be directed to the number of sorties and flying hours in the past 30 days.

4. The flight leader in the preflight briefing should cover specific procedures to manage a disoriented wingman.

Note

Lost wingman procedures are designed to ensure safe separation between aircraft in a flight when a wingman loses sight of the lead. Lost wingman procedures are not for the purpose of recovering a wingman with severe spatial disorientation. Precise execution is required to execute lost wingman procedures, which a severely disoriented pilot will not be able to accomplish.

5. There are two essential requirements for safe formation flight in weather. First, the flight leader must be experienced, competent, and smooth. Second, the wingman must be proficient in formation flying. The wingman must have total confidence in the lead and concentrate solely on maintaining a proper wing position.

6. If the weather encountered during a formation flight is either too dense or turbulent to ensure safe flight, the flight leader should separate the aircraft under controlled conditions. This would be better than having a wingman initiate lost wingman procedures at a time that may be inopportune or, worse yet, losing sight of the wingman who may be severely disoriented.

7. Flight lead should encourage the wingman to advise when the wingman begins to feel disoriented. Early, a few words from the lead may reassure the wingman and help the wingman form a mental picture of the wingman's position in space. For example, "TWO, WE ARE LEVEL AT 20,000 FEET IN A 30° LEFT TURN AT 300 KNOTS." This may be all that is necessary. Simply calling "ROLLING OUT" when rolling out of a turn will help minimize disorientation for a wingman at night or in weather.

8. If the wingman continues to have problems, lead should bring the flight to straight and level and advise the wingman, "TWO, WE ARE STRAIGHT AND LEVEL AT 20,000 FEET, 300 KNOTS." Maintain straight and level for at least 30 seconds (60 seconds, if possible). Generally, the wingman's symptoms will subside in 30 to 60 seconds. Advise ATC if necessary.

9. If the preceding procedures are not effective, the lead should consider transferring the flight lead position to the wingman while straight and level: "TWO, WE ARE STILL STRAIGHT AND LEVEL, TAKE THE LEAD NOW."

Note

The wingman should be briefed to go straight to the attitude indicator and maintain straight-and-level flight for 60 seconds before initiating turns, climbs, or descents. The objective is for the wingman to reestablish visual dominance as quickly as possible. Again, a wingman who is severely disoriented should not elect or be directed to "go lost wingman." The wingman will be unable to accomplish these procedures precisely or safely.

10. At this point, the mission should be terminated and the flight recovered by the simplest and safest means possible. The safest method to recover flight formations in IMC conditions is a single-frequency straight-in penetration or en route descent to the Final Approach Fix (FAF). Teardrop penetrations and arc approaches greatly task the skills of a wingman.

PART IV

Aircraft Flight/Navigational Instrumentation

CHAPTER 13

Introduction to Aircraft Flight Instruments

13.1 GENERAL

Aircraft flight instruments are divided into three categories according to their specific function. The attitude instrument indicates the aircraft attitude in relation to the surface of the Earth.

The position instruments convey the aircraft location in space and the performance instruments indicate how the aircraft is performing as a result of attitude changes.

For information concerning a specific aircraft instrument, consult the applicable NATOPS flight manual.

CHAPTER 14
Attitude Instruments

14.1 GENERAL

The primary flight instrument in all naval aircraft is the attitude indicator. It provides the pilot with a substitute for the Earth's horizon as a reference in instrument flight. The instrument shows a horizontal bar representing the horizon, upon which a miniature aircraft is superimposed. There are graduated scales on the instrument face to indicate angles of bank and pitch. The combined indications provide a constant visual presentation of the flight attitude of the aircraft as to longitudinal, vertical, and horizontal information. Some aircraft installations may have additional information displayed on the instrument, such as heading, glideslope information, turn and bank, and yaw and course deviation. The pilot should refer to the appropriate NATOPS flight manual for detailed operation of a particular system (Figure 14-1).

14.2 HEADS-UP DISPLAY

Heads-Up Displays (HUDs) are electronic instruments with a centralized means of displaying a large amount of information. They can be used for display of attitude, performance, and position depending on the aircraft and its technology. Figure 14-2 shows a typical HUD configuration and some of the terms for its symbology. The pilot should refer to the appropriate NATOPS flight manual for detailed operation of a particular system.

14.2.1 HUD Limitations

HUDs not endorsed as a Primary Flight Reference (PFR) may be integrated into the normal instrument cross-check, but concerns about insidious failures and its use in maintaining attitude awareness and recovering from unusual attitudes preclude its use as a sole-source instrument reference. Improvements in information integrity and failure indications have increased confidence in the reliability of HUDs; however, the combination of symbology and mechanization enabling their use as a sole-source attitude reference has not been incorporated into all HUDs.

14.2.2 Global Orientation

Many HUDs are incapable of providing intuitive global orientation information because of the small sections of space that they represent. Also, because many HUDs provide only a partial picture of the aircraft attitude, a pilot who tries to use the HUD to confirm an unusual attitude may see only a blur of lines and numbers. In a fast-moving environment, the pilot may not be able to differentiate or recognize the difference between the solid climb lines from the identical, but dashed, dive lines in the flightpath scale. Any confusion or delay in initiating proper recovery inputs may make recovery impossible.

WARNING

Unless your HUD is endorsed as a PFR, do not use it when spatially disoriented, for recovery from an unusual attitude, or during lost wingman situations; use the heads-down display anytime an immediate attitude reference is required. Typically, heads-down displays are inherently easier to use in these situations because of the larger attitude coverage, color asymmetry between the solid ground and sky, and reduced interference from the outside visual scene (glare, optical illusions, etc.).

Figure 14-1. Attitude Indicator

14.2.3 HUD Field of View

HUD symbology may also obscure objects within the HUD field of view. When nonessential HUD information is displayed or when the HUD brightness level is excessive, the probability of obscuration is dramatically increased. Proper HUD settings (including elimination of non-task-essential information and adjusting the brightness to the proper level) are imperative to prevent potential hazards to safe flight.

14.2.4 Conventional Cross-Check

Pilots should remain proficient in the conventional instrument cross-check for their specific aircraft. Regardless of the type HUD you have, it is important to fly an instrument approach or accomplish a level-off occasionally without using the HUD so you retain your proficiency in the event of a HUD malfunction. Using HUD information incorrectly or at the wrong time can actually increase pilot workload, but timely, proper use of it can help you fly more precise instruments on a routine basis.

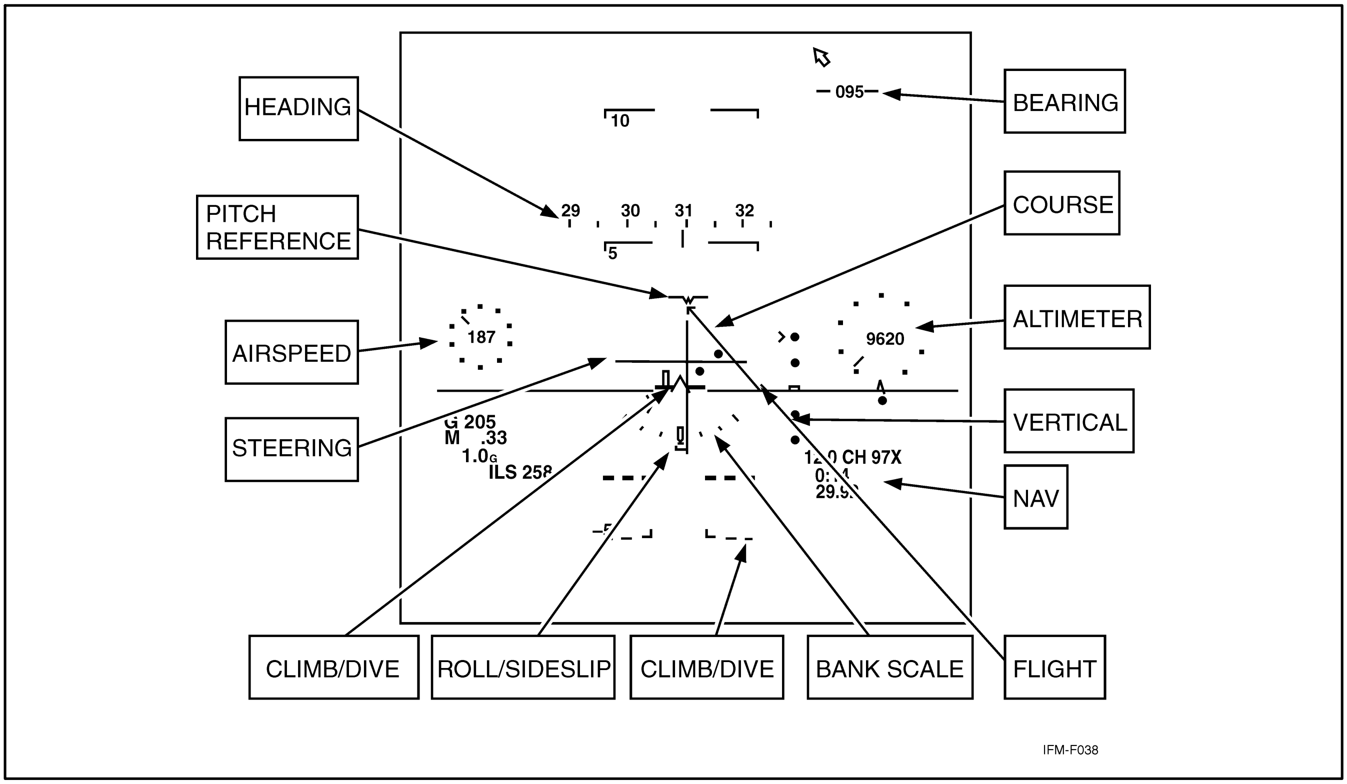


Figure 14-2. Heads-Up Display (HUD)

CHAPTER 15

Performance Instruments

15.1 COMPASSES

Compasses provide Magnetic Heading (MH) information. Some magnetic compasses are not gyro-stabilized and are subject to some errors, whereas the gyro-stabilized compasses largely eliminate these errors. Only nongyro-stabilized (standby) compasses will be discussed in this section. Gyro-stabilized compasses are discussed in paragraph 16.3.

15.1.1 Standby Magnetic Compass

The standby magnetic compass is simple in construction. It contains two steel magnetized needles mounted on a float, around which is mounted the compass card. The needles are parallel, with their north-seeking ends pointed in the same direction. The needles react to the Earth's magnetic field and cause the compass card to indicate magnetic heading relative to magnetic north. The compass card has letters for cardinal headings and numbers every 30° in between. The last zero of the degree indication is omitted. Between these numbers, the card is graduated for each 5° (Figure 15-1).

The float assembly, comprised of the magnetized needles, compass card, and float, is housed in a bowl filled with acid-free white kerosene. This liquid dampens out excessive oscillations of the compass card, and its buoyancy relieves part of the weight of the float from the bearings.

Mounted behind the compass glass face is a lubber or reference line by which compass indications are read. If the face is broken, the fluid is lost and the compass becomes inoperative.

The standby compass is used for training or cross-check purposes and when any kind of failure renders the gyro-stabilized compass useless. One of the principal reasons for the reduced importance of the standby compass is the large and variable amount of deviation present. Variable electrical loads, armament, and the position of the nose landing gear create deviation errors for which compass correction cards cannot provide sufficient tolerance. The gyro-stabilized compasses largely eliminate these errors.

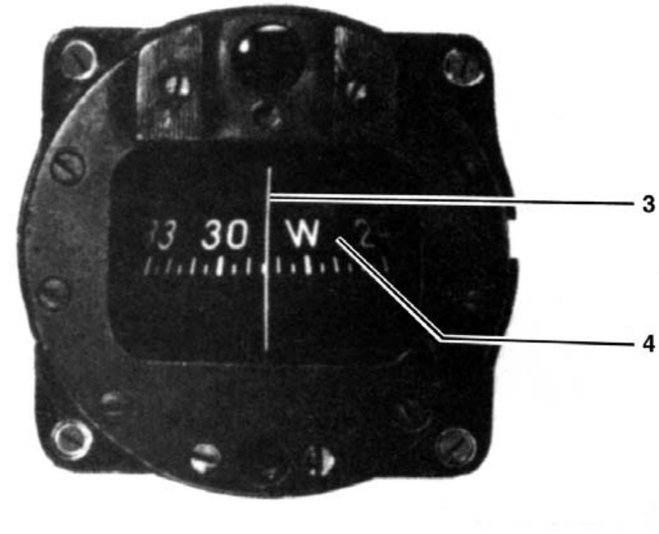
The standby compass is so mounted that when the aircraft is in straight-and-level unaccelerated flight, the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field has no effect on the compass indication; however, when the aircraft is banked, on or near a heading of north or south, or when it is accelerated or decelerated on or near east or west headings, the compass indications are erroneous. Because of this dip error, precision flying without the use of a gyro-stabilized heading indicator is difficult, especially in rough air. Another disadvantage is that the fluid in which the panel compass is immersed to dampen oscillation is subject to swirl, which may create noticeable error. Additionally, the comparatively small size of the compass bowl restricts the use of efficient dampening vanes.

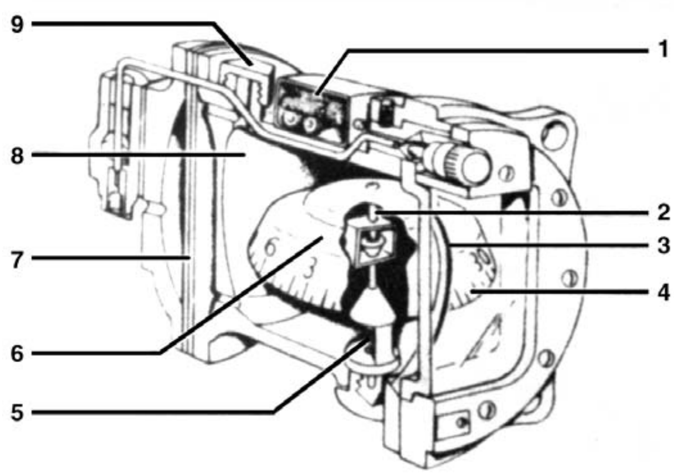
In extreme latitudes (near the North or South Poles), the standby magnetic compass is useless because of the proximity to the magnetic poles. This may cause the compass to spin erratically or display other incorrect indications.

The following are descriptions of the various standby magnetic compass errors:

15.1.2 Variation

The angular difference between true and magnetic north is known as variation. It is different for different spots on the Earth. Lines of equal magnetic variation are called isogonic lines and are plotted on aeronautical charts with the amounts shown in degrees of variation east or west (Figure 15-2). A line connecting the 0° points of variation is termed the agonic line. These lines are replotted periodically to take care of any change that may occur as a result of the shifting of the pole.





1. MAGNETIC COMPENSATOR ASSEMBLY
2. PIVOT ASSEMBLY
3. LUBBER LINE
4. CARD
5. SPRING SUSPENSION
6. FLOAT
7. EXPANSION CHAMBER
8. LIQUID CHAMBER
9. FILLER PLUG

IFM-F039

Figure 15-1. Magnetic Standby Compass

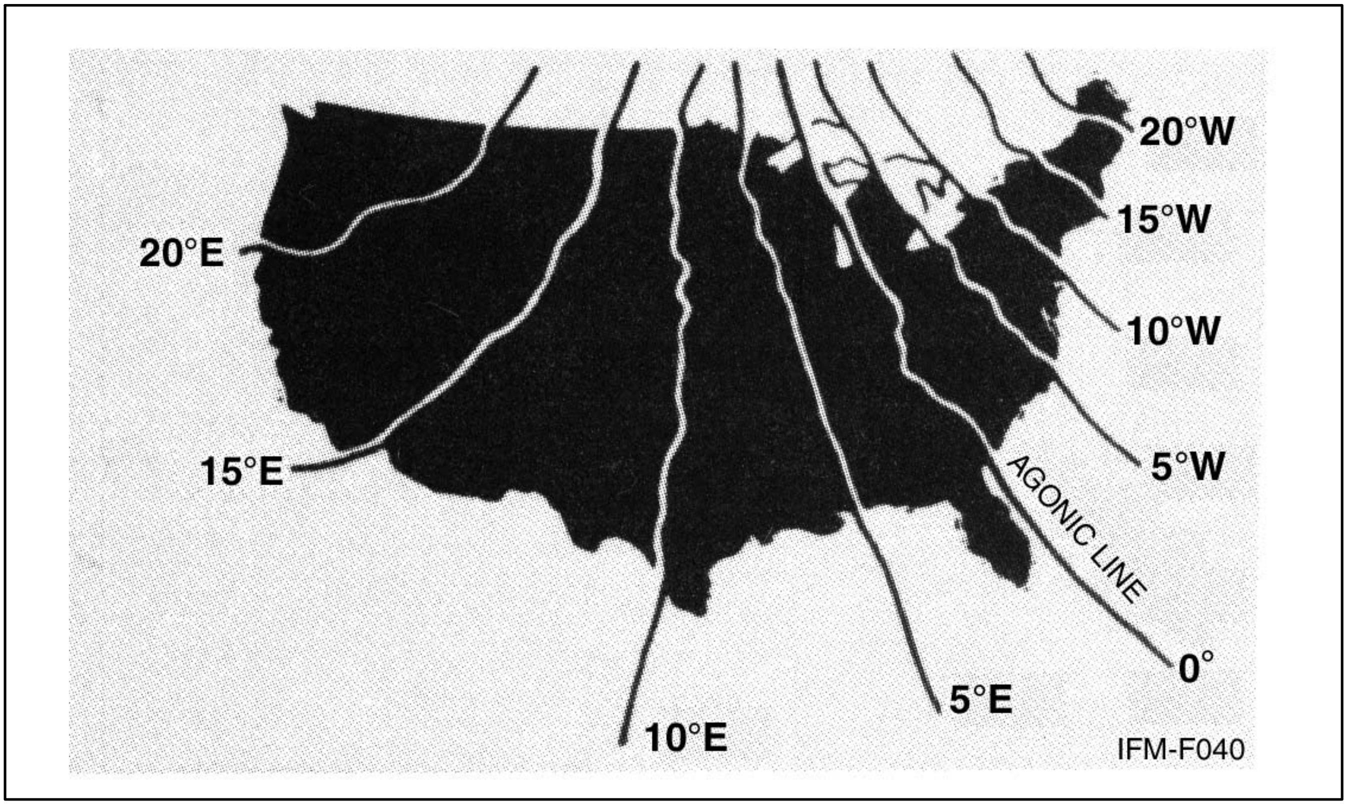


Figure 15-2. Lines of Equal Magnetic Variation in the United States

15.1.3 Deviation

Electrical equipment mounted in the aircraft and accessories made of iron or steel, such as guns and armor plate, may affect the reading of the magnetic compass. The difference between the indications of a compass on a particular aircraft and the indications of an unaffected compass at the same point on the Earth's surface is called deviation. Deviation may change for each piece of electrical equipment turned on. In addition, the magnetism of the aircraft itself may change as a result of severe jolts; therefore, it is necessary to swing the compass periodically and prepare a new correction card. Because deviation also changes with latitude, the compass should be swung on arrival at a new base of materially different latitude from the old base.

15.1.4 Magnetic Dip

The tendency of the magnetic compass to point down as well as north in certain latitudes is known as magnetic dip. This is responsible for the northerly and southerly turning error as well as the acceleration and deceleration error on headings of east and west. At the magnetic equator, the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field is zero and the magnetic compass is not disturbed by this factor. As you fly from the magnetic equator to the higher latitudes, the effect of the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field becomes pronounced. The tendency is not noticed in straight-and-level unaccelerated flight because the compass card is mounted in such a way that its center of gravity is below the pivot point and the card is well balanced in the fluid; however, when the aircraft is banked, the compass card banks too, as a result of the centrifugal force acting on it. While the compass card is in this banked attitude in northern latitudes, the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field causes the north-seeking ends of the compass to dip to the low side of the turn, giving the pilot an erroneous turn indication. This error, called northerly turning error, is most apparent on headings of north and south. In a turn from a heading of north, the compass briefly gives an indication of a turn in the opposite direction; in a turn from a heading south, it gives an indication of a turn in the proper direction, but at a more rapid rate than is actually the case. In southern latitudes, all these errors are reversed and are called southerly turning error.

15.1.5 Acceleration Error

Acceleration error is also due to the action of the vertical component of the Earth's magnetic field. Because of its pendulous-type mounting, the compass card is tilted during changes of speed. This deflection of the card from the horizontal results in an error that is most apparent on headings of east and west. When the aircraft is accelerating or climbing on either of these headings, the error is in the form of an indication of a turn to the north; when the aircraft is decelerating or descending, the error is in the form of an indication of a turn to the south. Acceleration error is constantly present during climb and descent.

15.1.6 Oscillation Error

This error is due to the erratic swinging of the compass card, probably the result of rough air or rough pilot technique. The fluid serves to reduce this oscillation. When the errors and characteristics of the magnetic compass are thoroughly understood, it offers a reliable means of determining the direction in which the aircraft is headed. When reading the compass to determine direction, make certain the aircraft is as steady as possible; is not in a turn, climb, or dive; and is flying at a constant airspeed.

15.2 AIRSPEED INDICATOR

An airspeed indicator is a presentation of the forward velocity in knots of the aircraft through the surrounding airmass. Components within the instrument case react to the difference between ram and static pressure inputs, causing a mechanically linked pointer to indicate the airspeed on a graduated scale. As the ram/static pressure differential changes, the pointer indicates a change in airspeed. Depending upon the type instrument, the airspeed depicted may be either in terms of indicated, true, or displayed as a Mach number (Figure 15-3).

15.3 VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR (VSI/VVI)

The Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI) or Vertical Velocity Indicator (VVI) (Figure 15-4) measures change of aircraft altitude in feet per minute (fpm). It indicates the rate of climb or descent by measuring the rate of change in atmospheric pressure. This information is valuable in maintaining specific rates of descent during instrument approaches or for maintaining and correcting to a desired altitude.

15.3.1 VSI Error

Vertical speed indicators are subject to two types of error: lag and reversal. After entering or completing an altitude change, approximately 6 seconds is required for the pressure differential within the instrument itself to equalize. This time delay is an inherent error called lag. The vertical speed indicator is also subject to reversal error. This error is caused by inducing false static pressure in the static system and normally occurs during sudden or abrupt pitch changes. The reversal error is not synonymous with lag error; however, both may occur simultaneously. The magnitude of this error varies with the aircraft and the abruptness of pitch changes. The reversal error can be minimized by making small and/or smooth pitch changes.

15.3.2 Dial Calibration

The vertical speed indicator uses a single pointer to indicate rate of altitude change on a fixed circular scale. The scale is calibrated in 1,000-foot increments. Between 0 and 1, the scale is graduated in 100-foot increments with a 0.5 (500-foot) reference for ease of interpretation. The 100-foot increments are beneficial in maintaining a glideslope and to indicate trends from level flight. Beyond the 1,000 fpm indications, the scale markings vary; some are graduated in 200-foot increments and others use 500-foot increments. The pointer will not indicate rates of altitude change in excess of 6,000 fpm.

15.4 TURN AND SLIP INDICATOR

Cockpit instrumentation includes a rate of turn indicator and a slip indicator. Though these are usually integrated in one instrument, they will be discussed separately.

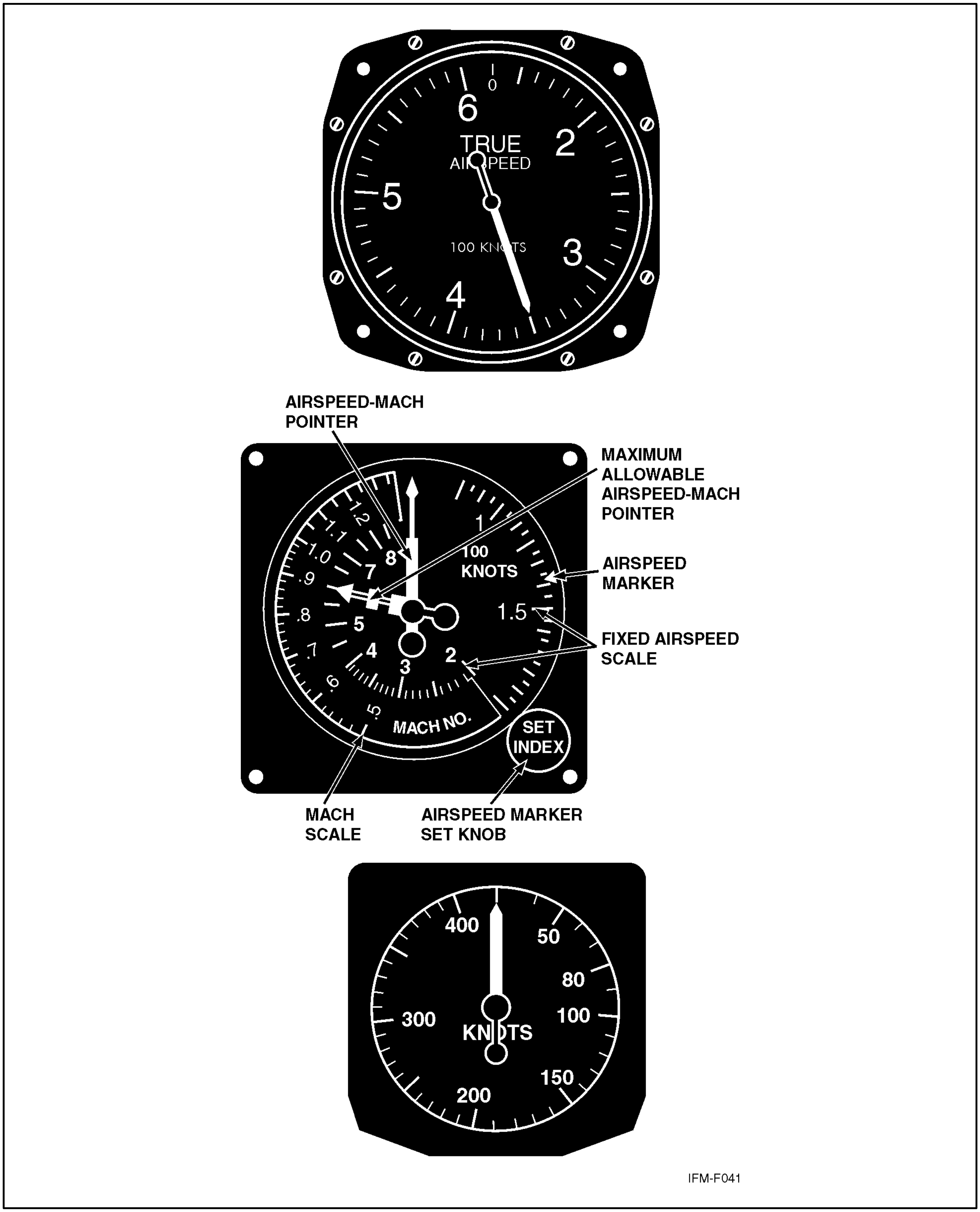


Figure 15-3. Airspeed Indicators

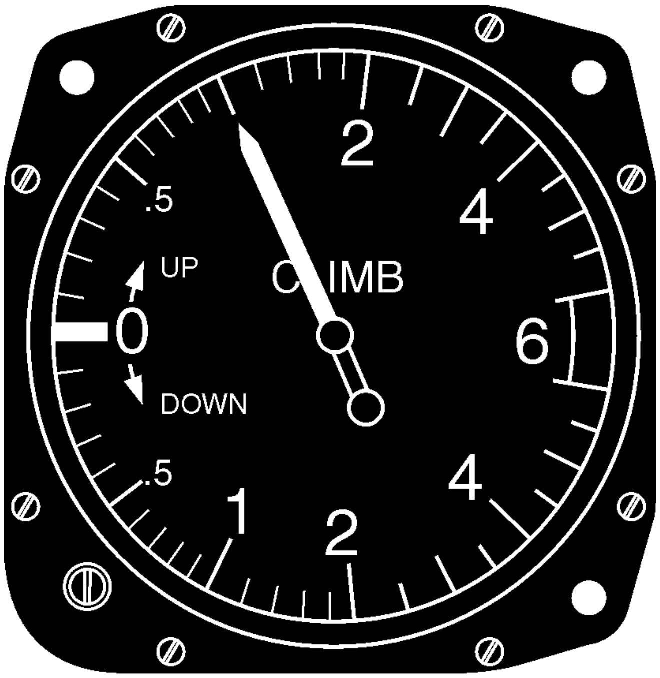


Figure 15-4. Vertical Speed Indicator

15.4.1 Turn Indicator (Needle)

The turn indicator is a vertical needle pointer or, in some aircraft, a miniaturized horizontal sliding bar on the attitude indicator. A gyroscope is used in its operation. Though some turn indicators still use vacuum-driven gyros, most are now electrically powered.

The primary function of the turn indicator is to measure the rate at which the aircraft is turning. A secondary function is to provide an indication of bank as a backup for the attitude indicator.

The needle on the turn indicator is designed to deflect, in the direction the aircraft is turning, one needle width to indicate a turn at the rate of 360° every 2 or 4 minutes. A single needle width deflection on a 2-minute turn needle indicates the aircraft is turning 3° per second. A single needle width deflection on a 4-minute turn needle indicates the aircraft is turning 1-1/2° per second.

15.4.2 Slip Indicator (Ball)

The slip indicator, called the ball, is a simple inclinometer. It consists of a marble in a slightly curved clear tube containing a liquid. The ball indicates the relationship between the angle of bank and the rate of turn. The forces acting on the ball are gravity and centrifugal force. During a coordinated turn, these forces are in balance and the ball will remain centered (Figure 15-5). When the forces acting on the ball become unbalanced, the ball moves away from center, indicating uncoordinated flight — a skid or slip (Figure 15-6). In a skid, the rate of turn is too large for the angle of bank, and the excessive centrifugal force causes the ball to move to the outside of the turn. Correcting to coordinated flight requires increasing the angle of bank or decreasing the rate of turn using less rudder or a combination of both. In a slip, the rate of turn is too slow for the angle of bank, and the lack of centrifugal force causes the ball to move to the inside of the turn. Correcting to coordinated flight requires decreasing the angle of bank or increasing the rate of turn using more rudder or a combination of both.

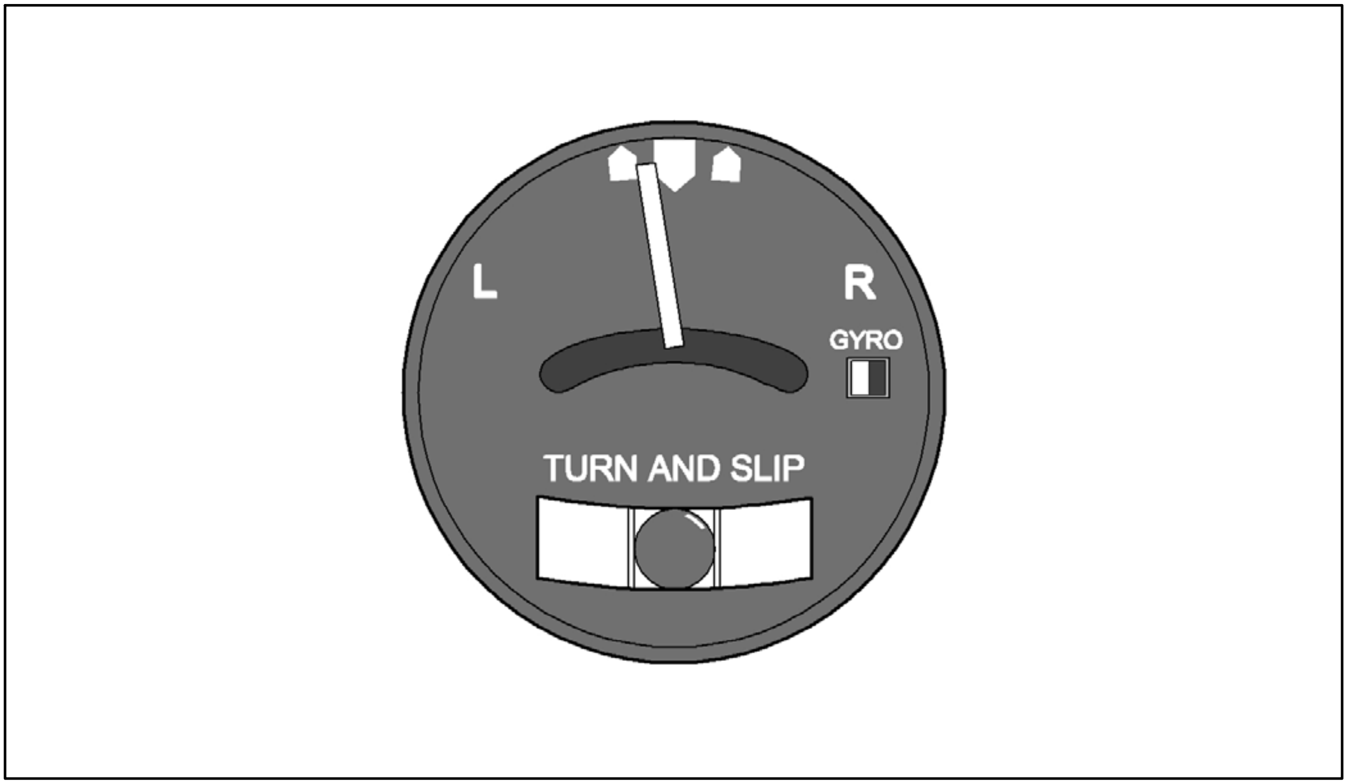


Figure 15-5. Coordinated Single Needle Width Turn Indicator

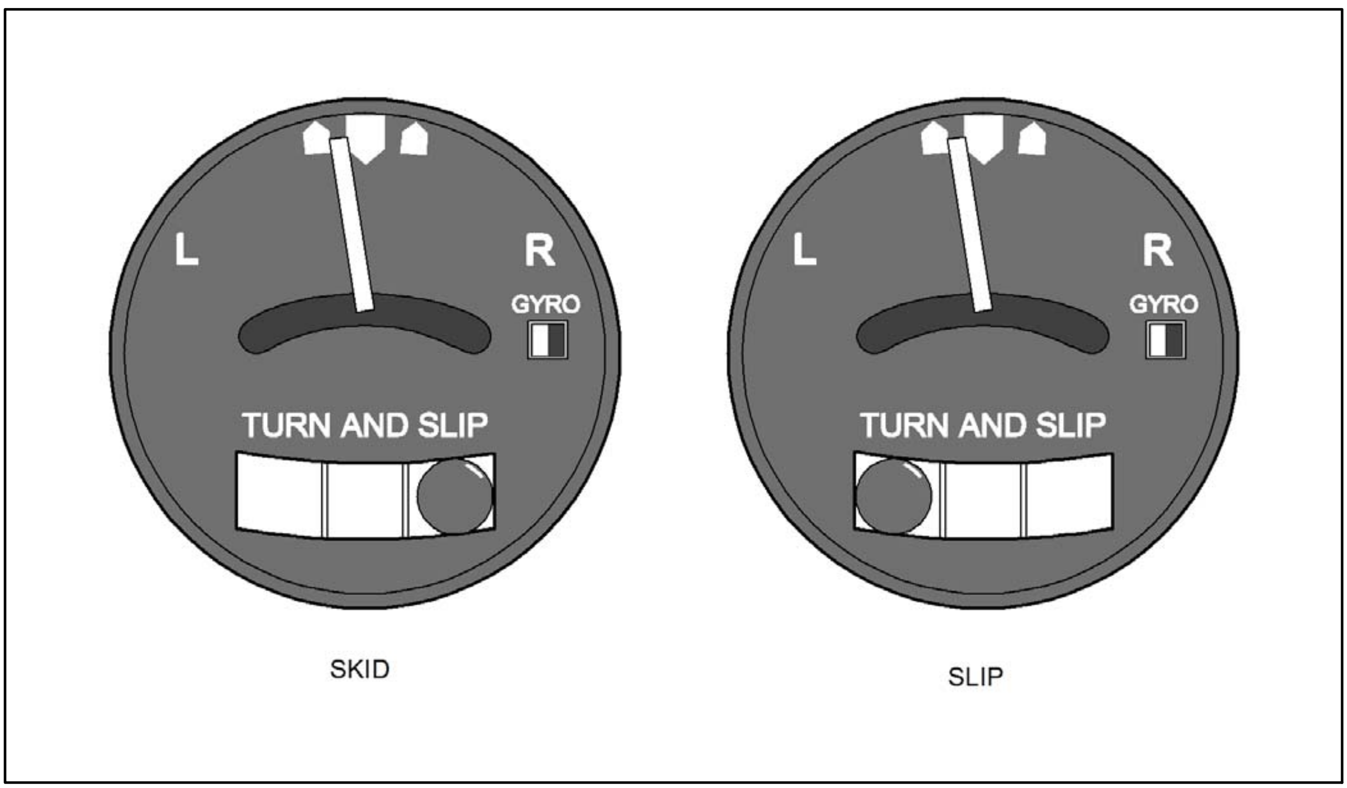


Figure 15-6. Unbalanced Flight

15.5 ANGLE OF ATTACK INDICATOR

Angle of attack is the angle between the mean aerodynamic chord of the wing of a moving aircraft and the relative wind. The angle of attack instrument is a visual indication of aircraft performance. If the angle of attack is used to set the aircraft up for a phase of flight (e.g., maximum range cruise, best rate of climb, optimum landing speed), many airspeed calculations can be saved. Optimum angle of attack for any phase of flight does not vary with gross weight, bank angle, or density altitude (as does airspeed).

Angle of attack is measured by a sensor on the outside of the aircraft. The sensor aligns itself with the relative wind and transmits an electric signal to the cockpit instrument (Figure 15-7), which is a pointer needle against a fixed dial. The instrument displays the angle of attack in numerical units, degrees, or symbols.

15.6 HOVER INDICATOR

The hover indicator (Figure 15-8) operates on information provided from a Doppler radar unit. The Doppler radar employs continuous wave Doppler radar to measure automatically, continuously, and accurately horizontal and vertical components of the helicopter velocity. Output of the Doppler radar is fed to the hover indicator and is displayed as deflection of horizontal and vertical bars as well as a vertical pointer. To indicate fore and aft flight, the horizontal bar will move opposite to the direction of flight; to indicate drift, the vertical bar will move in a direction opposite to the direction of drift; therefore, the pilot flies toward the bars for correction to a hover. The vertical pointer indicates vertical velocity in either direction and is centered in level flight. The hover indicator provides information in terms of Groundspeed (GS), drift, and rate of climb or descent. It is used by HS/HC aircraft for instrument takeoffs and to determine zero groundspeed for rescue or Antisubmarine Warfare (ASW) sonar operations.

15.7 CLOCK

A mechanical clock is installed in the instrument presentation, and hours, minutes, and seconds can be read from the dial. Some aircraft are equipped with clocks that have an elapsed time counter feature.

15.8 OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Outside Air Temperature (OAT) (free air temperature) is indicated in the cockpit of many aircraft. The temperature of the airmass surrounding the aircraft is shown in either degrees Celsius (°C) or Fahrenheit (°F). Regardless of the scale used, a conversion table will frequently be necessary as temperatures aloft are given in °C and surface temperatures are given in °F. This information is useful for, but not limited to, determining true airspeed, true altitude, power required, and power available.

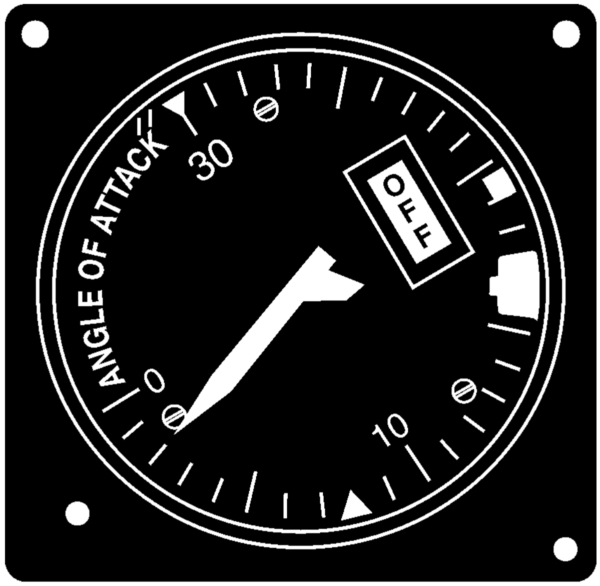


Figure 15-7. Angle of Attack Indicator

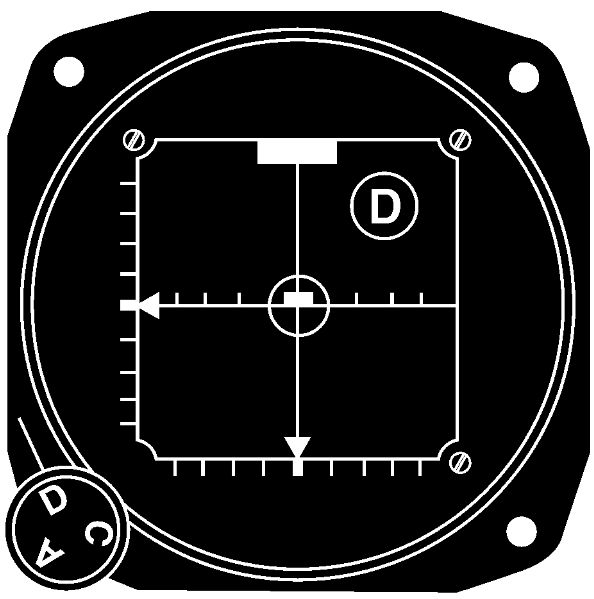


Figure 15-8. Hover Indicator

CHAPTER 16

Position Instruments

16.1 ALTIMETERS

An altimeter is a flight instrument that measures the height of the aircraft above a given reference and displays it on a calibrated dial (Figures 16-1 and 16-2). The reference may either be barometric (pressure altimeters) or absolute (radio/radar altimeters).

16.1.1 Pressure Altimeter

Atmospheric pressure decreases with altitude, causing the pressure altimeter (which is a simple barometer, measuring the weight of the air above it) to indicate altitude (in feet) above the preset reference (altimeter setting).

16.1.1.1 The Altimeter Setting

The altimeter setting is a correction for nonstandard surface pressure only. Atmospheric pressure is measured at each ground station and the value obtained is corrected to sea level according to the surveyed field elevation. The altimeter setting, then, is a computed sea level pressure and should be considered valid only in close proximity to the station and the surface. It does not reflect nonstandard temperatures (Figure 16-3) nor distortion of atmospheric pressure at higher altitudes; however, except for terrain clearance, the pilot should disregard nonstandard atmospheric effect for air traffic control purposes. All pressure altimeters within close proximity of one another react to these effects in the same way; thus, normal vertical separation is provided.

During instrument flight below the transition level (18,000 feet in Continental United States [CONUS]), the importance of obtaining the latest altimeter setting cannot be overemphasized, particularly when flying from an area of high pressure into a low-pressure area. Refer to Figure 16-4. Above the transition altitude (18,000 feet in CONUS), pressure altitude is used because it is not as important to maintain true altitude as it is indicated altitude. (Midair collision is a more serious problem than terrain clearance.) Therefore, for high-altitude flights, the altimeter shall be set at 29.92 inches of mercury climbing through 18,000 feet Mean Sea Level (MSL). The current local altimeter setting shall be set prior to descent through the lowest usable Flight Level (FL) as defined in the current Flight Information Publications (FLIP), Section II.

WARNING

Altimeters not equipped with mechanical stops near the barometric scale limits can inadvertently be set with a 10,000-foot error; therefore, when setting the altimeter, ensure the 10,000-foot pointer is reading correctly.

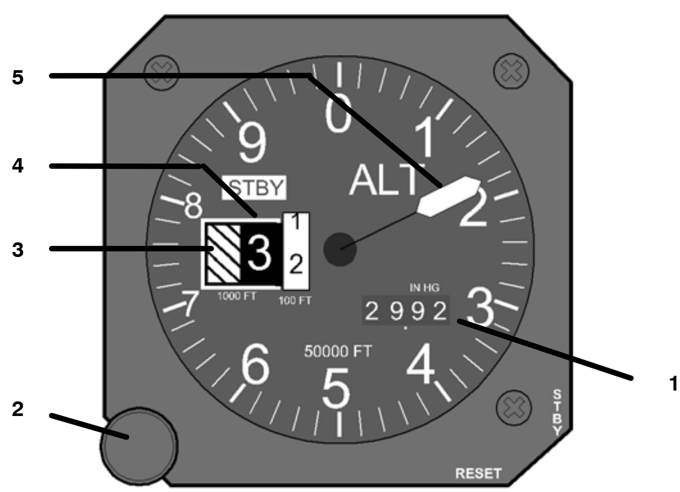
INDICATED ALTITUDE IS 9,570 FEET

1. 10,000-FOOT POINTER
2. BAROMETRIC SCALE
3. BAROMETER PRESSURE SET KNOB
4. 100-FOOT POINTER
5. LOW-ALTITUDE WARNING SYMBOL
6. 1,000-FOOT POINTER
7. WHITE STRIPE FOLLOWS 10,000-FOOT POINTER AROUND INNER PERIMETER OF THE ALTITUDE SCALE

IFM-F047

Figure 16-1. Three-Pointer Altimeter

INDICATED ALTITUDE IS 3,200 FEET



1. BAROMETRIC SCALE
2. BAROMETRIC PRESSURE SET KNOB
3. 10,000-FOOT COUNTER AND LOW ALTITUDE WARNING SYMBOL
4. 1,000-FOOT COUNTER
5. 100-FOOT COUNTER

Figure 16-2. Altimeter

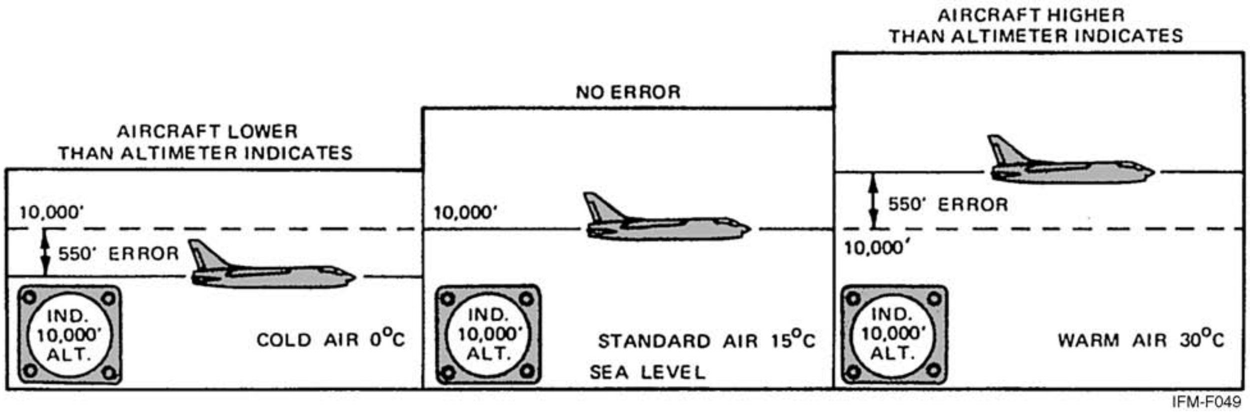


Figure 16-3. Effect of Temperature on Altitude

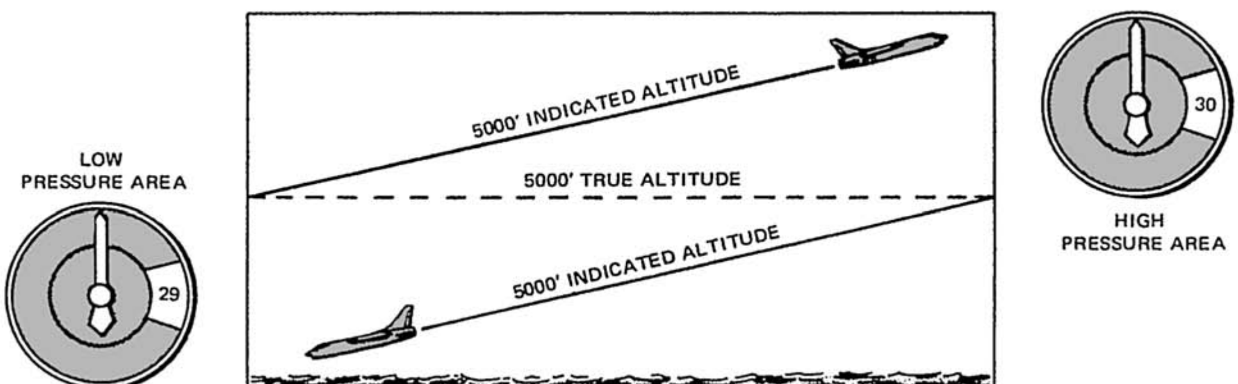


Figure 16-4. Inherent Altimeter Error Due to Pressure Changes

16.1.1.2 Setting the Pressure Altimeter

The barometric scale located on the face of the altimeter is calibrated in inches of mercury and is used to set a reference plane into the instrument. Setting the barometric scale to the altimeter setting causes the altimeter to read indicated altitude. If the altimeter setting is given in millibars, an appropriate conversion table must be used.

Each 0.01 change on the barometric scale is equivalent to 10 feet of indicated altitude.

The altimeter must be checked and set prior to each flight. This is accomplished thusly:

1. Dial the current altimeter setting into the barometric scale.

2. Note the difference between the indicated altitude and the known field elevation.

3. If the difference is greater than 75 feet, the altimeter is not acceptable for Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flight.

Note

IFR flight may be conducted if an aircraft has but one usable pressure altimeter.

16.1.1.3 Types of Altitude

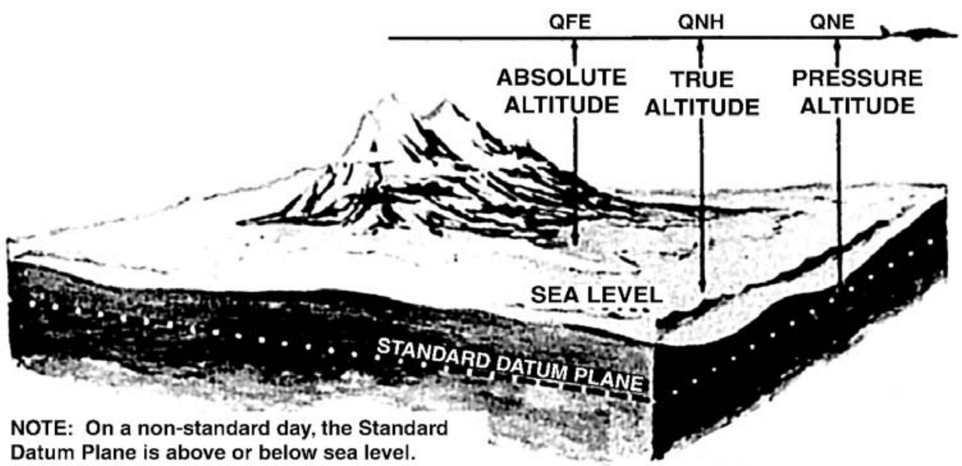
(Figure 16-5.)

16.1.2 Radio/Radar Altimeters

Basically, both the radio and radar altimeters (Figure 16-6) measure altitude electronically by determining how long it takes for a transmitted signal to be reflected back to a receiver antenna. Both types are similar in principle of operation and cockpit presentation and measure absolute altitude. Radio/radar altimeters are FM/CW (frequency modulation/continuous wave) type, and radar altimeters are of the pulse type. Both indicate terrain clearance with increments that vary from small scale at low levels through larger scales at higher levels. Pilots should refer to the appropriate NATOPS flight manual for the system used in their type aircraft.

16.2 RANGE INDICATOR

The range indicator (Figure 16-7), the Distance Measuring Equipment (DME) readout, displays slant range distance from the aircraft to a selected ground station in nautical miles. The presentation may be separate or integrated with a bearing instrument. The aircraft DME transmitter sends an interrogating pulse, which triggers a ground station response pulse. The distance measuring equipment of the aircraft measures round-trip time and converts it to a display representing nautical mileage on the range indicator. The interrogation/reply cycle is continuous, and the indicator constantly shows slant range. When the aircraft is overhead the ground station, altitude is shown in nautical miles. DME should be considered unusable unless it tests within one-half nautical mile (nm) or 3 percent of the distance to the station, whichever is greater. The appearance of the warning bar/flag signifies an unusable or unreliable signal and value.



TYPES OF ALTITUDE	
Altitude	The vertical distance of a level, a point, or an object considered as a point, measured from a given surface.
Absolute Altitude	The altitude above the terrain directly below the aircraft. (QFE)
Pressure Altitude	The altitude above the standard datum plane. This standard datum plane is where the air pressure is 29.92 inches of mercury (corrected to +15 °C). (QNE)
Density Altitude	Pressure altitude corrected for temperature. Pressure and density altitudes are the same when conditions are standard (refer to standard atmosphere table). As the temperature rises above standard, the density of the air decreases, hence an increase in density altitude.
Indicated Altitude	Altitude displayed on the altimeter.
Calibrated Altitude	Indicated altitude corrected for installation error. If an altimeter correction card is available, this definition may include scale error.
True Altitude	Calibrated altitude corrected for nonstandard atmospheric conditions. Actual height above mean sea level. (QNH)
Flight Level	A surface of constant atmospheric pressure related to the standard datum plane. In practice, a calibrated altitude maintained with a reference of 29.92 inches of mercury on the barometric scale. (QNE)

Figure 16-5. Types of Altitude

16.3 BEARING INDICATORS

Current typical navigational bearing displays are discussed in the following paragraph.

16.3.1 Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI)

The RMI displays aircraft heading with navigational bearing data. It consists of a rotating compass card and two bearing pointers. The compass card is actuated by the aircraft compass system so that it continually displays aircraft magnetic heading. The aircraft current magnetic heading is displayed on the compass card beneath the top index (Figure 16-8).

The bearing pointers display Automatic Direction Finder (ADF), VOR, or Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN) magnetic bearings to the selected navigational station. Radial position is displayed under the tail of the bearing pointers.

Note

Bearing pointers do not function in relation to ILS signals.

Unlike the ADF pointer, the VOR and TACAN bearing pointers do not "point" to an area of maximum signal strength. VOR and TACAN navigation receivers electronically measure the magnetic course/bearing for display by the bearing pointers; therefore, if there is a malfunction in the compass system or compass card, the ADF bearing pointer will continue to point to the station, but displays relative bearing only. In the same compass failure situation, the VOR or TACAN bearing pointers do not point to the station; however, they may still indicate proper magnetic bearings.

WARNING

When a compass malfunction is known or suspected to exist, the VOR and TACAN radial displays must be considered unreliable until verified by other means.

When navigating with TACAN, distance from the ground station is displayed on a range indicator (DME) (Figure 16-7).

16.3.2 Bearing-Distance-Heading Indicator (BDHI)

The BDHI displays aircraft heading with navigational bearing data and range information. Except for the range indicator, the BDHI is similar in appearance and function to the RMI described in paragraph 16.3.1.

The BDHI consists of a rotating compass card, two bearing pointers, a range indicator, and a range warning flag (Figure 16-8). Some BDHIs also have a heading marker, a heading set knob, and a power warning flag.

The compass card is activated by the aircraft master compass system, and it continually displays aircraft heading. The BDHI compass card can be operated in various slaved and nonslaved (DG) modes.

The heading marker, if incorporated, may be positioned on the compass card by use of the heading set knob. Once positioned, the marker remains fixed relative to the compass card. When the aircraft is on the selected heading, the heading marker is aligned beneath the top index.

Bearing pointer and range information function identically as described under range indicator and Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI) (Figure 16-9).

16.3.3 Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)

The HSI displays navigation information to the pilot as though the pilot were above the aircraft looking down. It is essentially a combination of a rotating compass card (actuated by the aircraft master compass system), a radio magnetic indicator, course indicator, and range indicator (Figure 16-10).

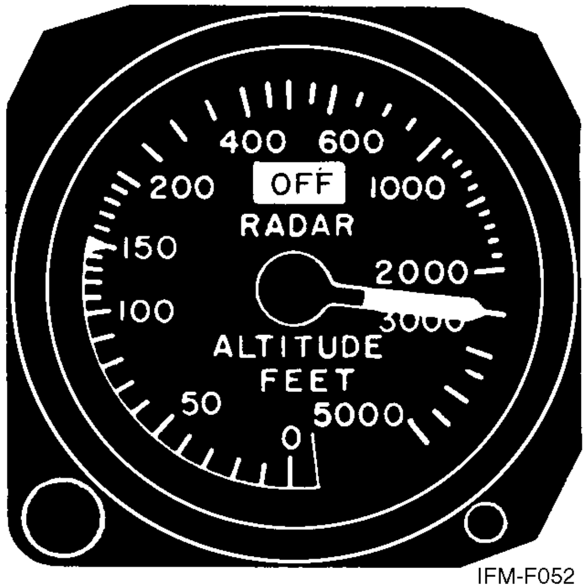


Figure 16-6. Typical Radar Altimeter

Figure 16-7. Range Indicator

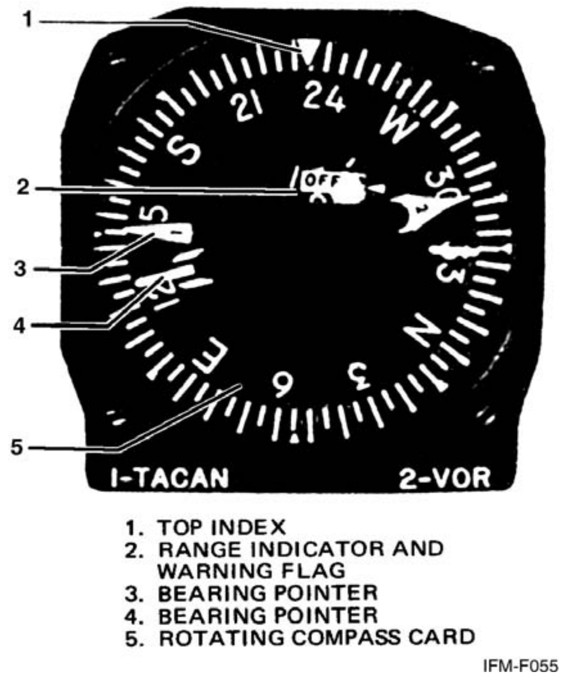


Figure 16-8. Bearing-Distance-Heading Indicator (BDHI)

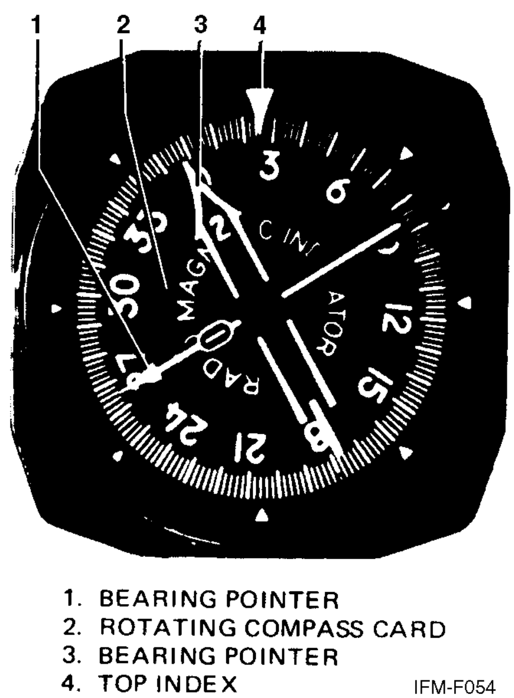


Figure 16-9. Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI)

Figure 16-10. Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI)

The aircraft heading is displayed on the rotating compass card under the top index lubber line.

The bearing pointer indicates the magnetic bearing from the aircraft to the navigation aid selected (VOR, TACAN, or ADF) while the radial position of the aircraft is indicated by the tail of the same bearing pointer. When selecting a course with the course selector knob, a digital display of the course selected will appear in the course selection window, while a graphic relationship between the course selected and the present heading will be shown by the course arrow. The TO-FROM indicator displays whether the course selected, when intercepted and flown, will direct the aircraft to or from the navigation station selected by the relationship of that station to the fixed aircraft symbol. The purpose of the course deviation indicator (bar) shows the relative position of the radial/course desired (selected in the course selector window) and the fixed aircraft symbol. The series of four dots in the gauge center are scaled to represent distance off course in degrees. The exact calibration varies between models of aircraft.

The function and use of the heading set and course set knobs are explained fully in applicable NATOPS flight manuals.

When range information is available through DME, the distance to the TACAN station or VOR-DME station is displayed in nautical miles.

If the aircraft is not receiving a usable DME signal, the range indicator will be obscured. Loss of bearing information will be indicated by an OFF flag appearing near the top of the rotating compass card.

The pilot may select the type of magnetic bearing information desired for display on the bearing pointer.

Note

The bearing pointer will not function in relation to ILS signals.

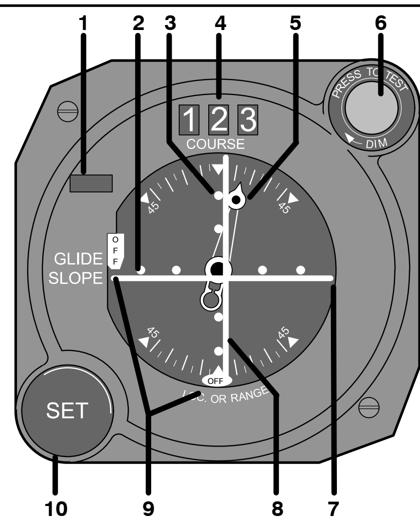
When ADF bearing information is displayed, the bearing pointer will point to the area of maximum signal strength; however, when either VOR or TACAN bearing information is displayed, the bearing pointer will not point to the area of maximum strength. VOR and TACAN navigation receivers electronically measure the magnetic course/bearing for display by the bearing pointer; therefore, if there is a malfunction in the compass system or compass card, and ADF bearing information is being displayed, the pointer will continue to point to the navigation aid but displays relative bearing only. In the same compass failure situation, when either VOR or TACAN bearing information is displayed, the bearing pointer will not point to the navigation aid; however, it may still indicate the proper magnetic bearing to that station.

WARNING

When a compass malfunction is known or suspected to exist, the VOR and TACAN bearing displays must be considered unreliable until verified by other equipment.

16.4 COURSE INDICATOR

The course indicator displays aircraft heading and position relative to a selected VOR/TACAN course. When used in conjunction with an Instrument Landing System (ILS) localizer and glideslope, the course indicator displays lateral (course) and vertical (glideslope) position relative to a desired instrument approach path (Figure 16-11). Aircraft heading has no relation to the Course Deviation Indicator (CDI). When the CDI is centered, the aircraft is on the selected course, either TO or FROM as indicated, regardless of aircraft heading.



1. TO-FROM INDICATOR
2. COURSE DEVIATION SCALE
3. GLIDESLOPE DEVIATION SCALE
4. COURSE SELECTOR WINDOW
5. HEADING POINTER
6. MARKER BEACON LIGHT
7. GLIDESLOPE INDICATOR
8. COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR (CDI)
9. COURSE AND GLIDESLOPE WARNING FLAGS
10. COURSE SET KNOB

Figure 16-11. Course Indicator

16.4.1 VOR/TACAN Display

When the course indicator is used to display VOR or TACAN information, the desired course is set in the course selector window with the course set knob. The heading pointer, connected to the course set knob and the compass system, displays aircraft heading relative to the selected course. When the aircraft heading is the same as the course selected, the heading pointer indicates 0° of heading deviation at the top of the course indicator. The heading deviation scales at the top and bottom of the course indicator are scaled in 5° increments up to 45°.

Airborne and ground VOR checkpoints and VOR test procedures are listed in FLIP Planning Section II. TACAN/DME checkpoints are normally established on the ground at most airfields. Should a position indication error exist in excess of ±4° through use of a ground check or ±6° using an airborne check, the gauge should not be considered as acceptable for IFR flight.

The TO-FROM indicator shows whether the course selected, if intercepted and flown, will lead the aircraft to or from the selected navigation system. The CDI bar displays the position of the selected course relative to the actual path of flight of the aircraft. Turning the aircraft until the heading pointer points toward the CDI will correct the aircraft heading toward the selected course. The four dots on the course deviation scale are used in conjunction with the course deviation indicator bar to signify a specific number of degrees right or left of the course. The exact calibration varies between models of aircraft. A course OFF flag will appear at the top of the gauge whenever the course information signal is too weak or unreliable to provide accurate course, or course deviation, information. Should the course deviation information presented on the course indicator vary from that course information presented by the bearing pointers on the RMI, BDHI, or HSI (whichever is in use), the bearing pointer should be considered to be more accurate.

16.4.2 ILS Display

When the course indicator is used to display ILS signals, the course indicator provides precise ILS localizer course and glideslope information for a specific approach. The following information pertains to course indicator functions and display when used on an ILS approach:

1. The TO-FROM indicator is blank.

2. Full-scale deflection on the course indication scale represents approximately 2-1/2° of localizer course deviation.

3. The course set knob and the course selected have no effect on CDI display. The CDI displays only whether the aircraft is on course or right or left of course, based upon signal information from a specific selected localizer transmitter; however, even though the course selected has no effect on the CDI, always set the published inbound front course of the ILS in the course selector window. This enables you to interpret aircraft position through use of the heading pointer in the same manner described for VOR/TACAN course and position determination.

The Glideslope Indicator (GSI) displays glideslope position in relation to the actual position of the aircraft. For example, if the GSI bar is above the center of the gauge, the glideslope is above the aircraft. Each of the four dots in the vertical row represents approximately 1/4° of deviation from the glideslope.

Note

ILS course and glideslope displays are reliable only if their warning (OFF) flags are not in view and the aural ILS identification is being received.

The marker beacon light(s) on the course indicator lights to indicate proximity to a 75-MHz marker beacon (e.g., ILS outer or middle marker). As the aircraft flies through the marker beacon signal pattern, the light flashes in Morse code, indicating the type of beacon being overflown. The marker beacon light is not used in conjunction with VOR or TACAN.

16.5 FLIGHT DIRECTOR SYSTEM

Flight Director Systems (FDS) are essentially practical arrangements or groupings of various flight instruments such as an attitude indicator (director), a position indicator, and a computer. The flight director computer receives position information from the navigation systems and attitude information from the attitude gyro. Depending upon the modes available and selected, the computer supplies pitch and/or bank commands to the pitch/bank steering bars of the attitude indicator. The functions of the computer vary with the systems used and the number of inputs provided (Navigation Aids [NAVAIDs], data link, Doppler) and may be processed electronically by the system. Refer to the appropriate NATOPS flight manual for the specific capabilities of the system installed in your aircraft.

16.6 OTHER POSITION INSTRUMENTS

Modern naval aircraft are tending toward more sophisticated instruments for determining aircraft position. Some of these systems include radar, inertial, and computerized visual displays. These systems are explained in appropriate NATOPS flight manuals.

PART V

Attitude Instrument Flight

CHAPTER 17

Attitude Instrument Flying

17.1 GENERAL

Attitude instrument flying (Figure 17-1), like visual flying, uses reference points to determine the attitude of the aircraft. When flying by visual reference to the Earth's surface, the attitude of the aircraft is determined by observing the relationship between the nose and wings of the aircraft and the natural horizon. When flying by reference to flight instruments, the attitude of the aircraft is determined by observing indications on the instruments. These indications give essentially the same information as obtained by visual reference to the Earth's surface. The same control techniques are employed during attitude instrument flying that are used in visual flying. The largest learning factor in attitude instrument flying is correctly interpreting the indications of the various instruments to determine the attitude of the aircraft.

17.2 AIRCRAFT CONTROL

Aircraft control consists of controlling the aircraft about its three axes (pitch, roll, and yaw) and maintaining the power (thrust) at the desired level. Pitch is the movement of the aircraft about its lateral axis. Roll is the movement of the aircraft about its longitudinal axis. Yaw is the movement of the aircraft about its vertical axis. Power control is the adjustment of engine or accessory controls to alter thrust and, therefore, the thrust/drag relationship. When necessary, the appropriate control is applied by reference to the power indicator(s) in the cockpit. Power is not generally affected by such factors as turbulence, improper trim, or inadvertent aircraft control pressures (Figure 17-2).

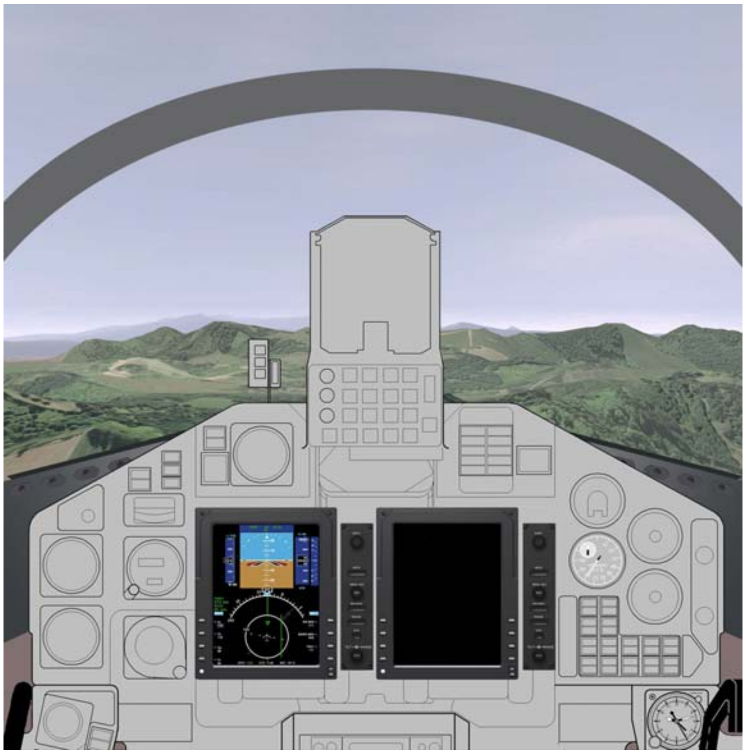


Figure 17-1. Attitude Instrument Flying

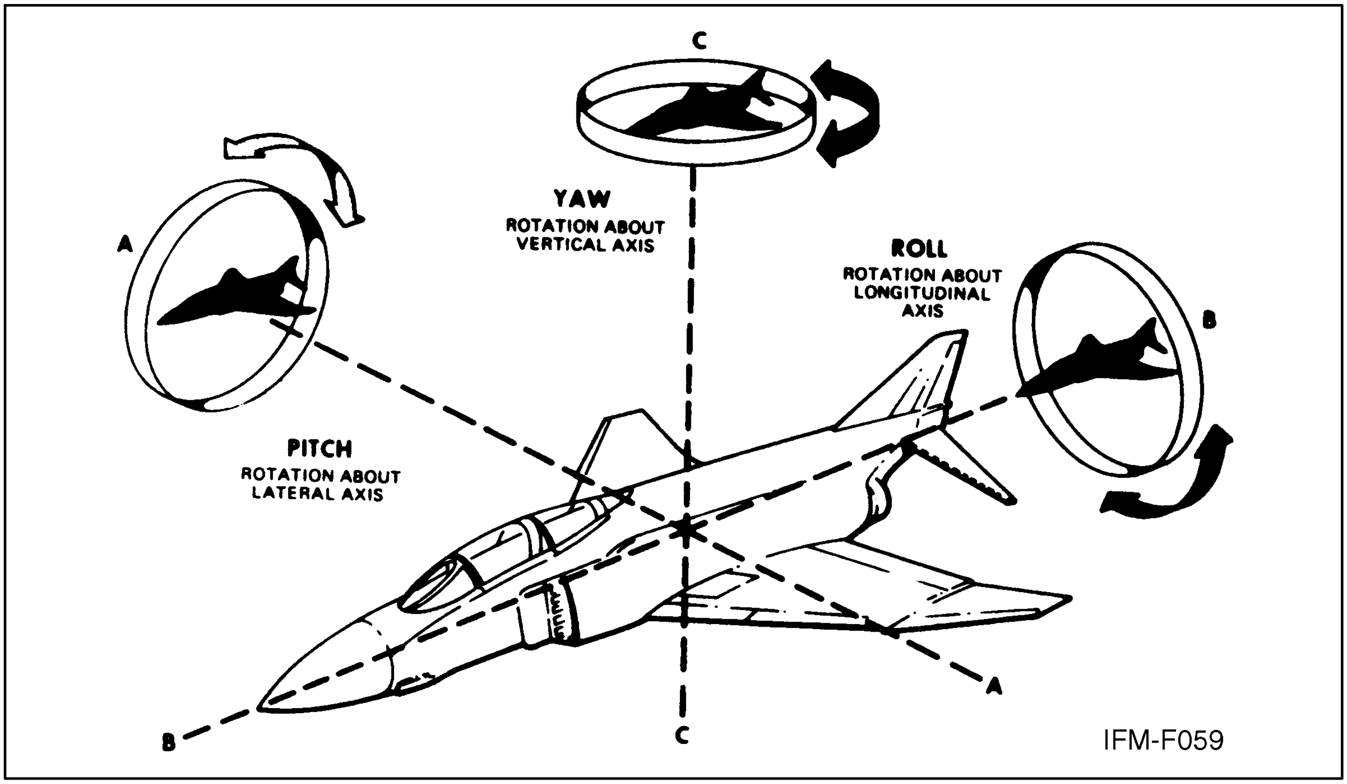


Figure 17-2. Control Axes of an Aircraft

After interpreting the pitch, bank, or yaw attitude from the applicable instruments, control pressures are exerted to attain the desired attitude.

17.2.1 Attitude Control

Proper control of aircraft attitude is the result of maintaining a constant attitude, smoothly changing the attitude a definite amount, and knowing when and how much to change the attitude. Aircraft attitude control is accomplished by proper use of the attitude indicator. The attitude indicator provides an immediate, direct, and corresponding indication of any change in aircraft pitch or bank attitude. In addition, by means of the attitude indicator, small pitch or bank changes are easily seen and changes of any magnitude can readily be accomplished.

17.2.1.1 Pitch Control

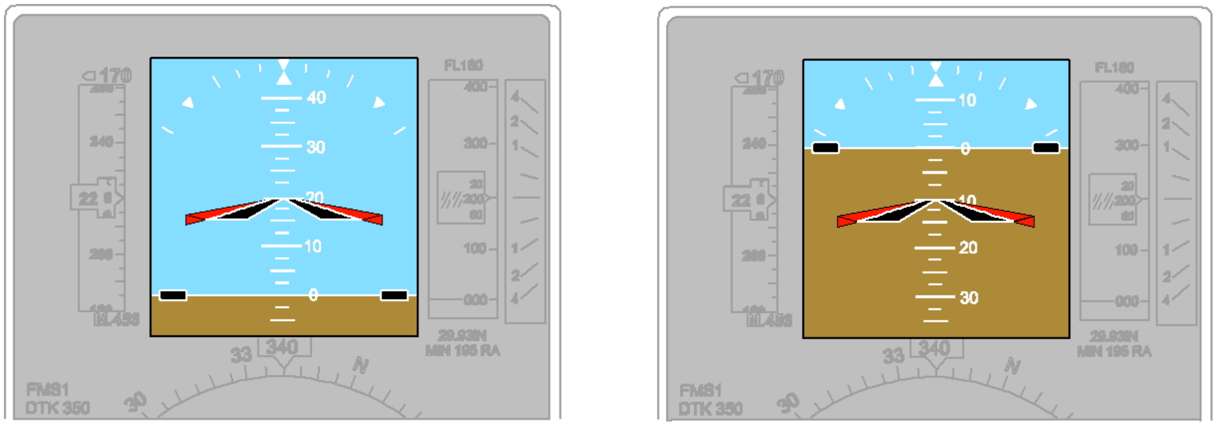
Pitch changes are accomplished by changing the pitch attitude of the miniature aircraft or fuselage dot definite amounts in relation to the horizon bar. The fuselage dot is generally referred to as the pipper, and pitch changes are referred to as pipper widths, or fractions thereof, and/or degrees depending upon the type of attitude indicator (Figure 17-3).

17.2.1.2 Bank Control

Bank changes are accomplished by changing the bank attitude or bank pointer(s) definite amounts in relation to the bank scale. The bank scale is graduated at 0°, 10°, 20°, 30°, 60°, and 90°. This scale is located at the bottom of some attitude director indicators (Figure 17-4).

17.2.1.3 Yaw Control

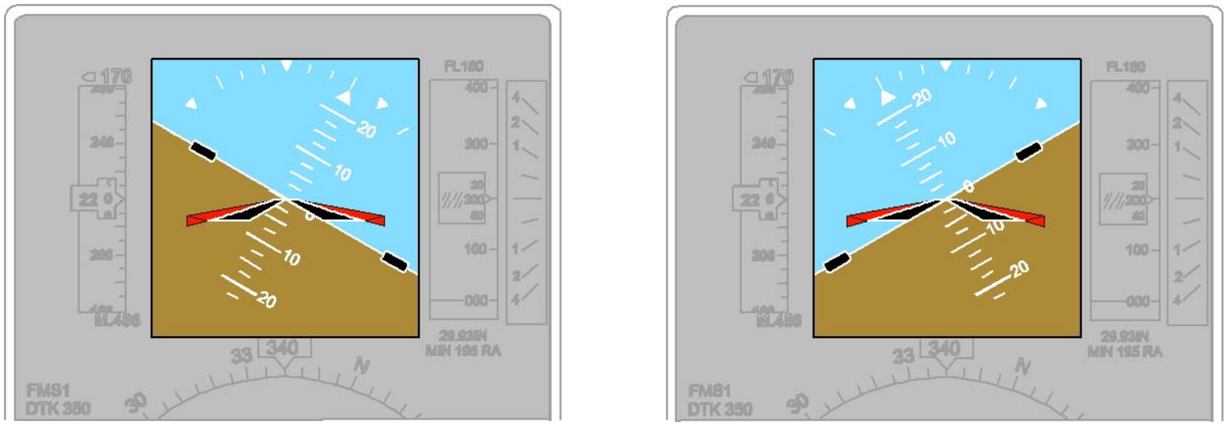
Yaw changes are made with the rudder pedals. Yaw control in conjunction with bank control is used to maintain the aircraft in balanced flight (centered ball on the turn and slip indicator).



20° CLIMB

10° DIVE

Figure 17-3. Pitch Attitude Indications



30° LEFT BANK

30° RIGHT BANK

Figure 17-4. Bank Attitude Indications

17.3 INSTRUMENT GROUPINGS

17.3.1 Control Instruments

Power and attitude indicators are termed control instruments. A proper combination of pitch, roll, yaw, and power control will achieve the desired aircraft performance (Figure 17-5).

17.3.2 Performance Instruments

The performance of the aircraft is determined by reference to the vertical speed indicator; heading indicator; airspeed/Mach indicator; Angle of Attack (AOA) indicator; clock, turn, and slip indicator (needle and ball indicator); and, in some cases, the altimeter. Although the altimeter is primarily a position instrument, in some maneuvers it can be used as a cross-check on aircraft performance. These instruments are termed performance instruments and indicate the aircraft performance, regardless of whether the pilot is referring to the Earth's horizon, the attitude indicator, or both, to control the aircraft attitude (Figure 17-5).

17.3.3 Position Instruments

The aircraft position is determined by a third group of instruments termed position instruments. These instruments include various types of course indicators, range indicators, glideslope indicators, and altimeter and bearing pointers. By knowing the aircraft position, the pilot can determine what control changes are required to achieve desired aircraft performance (Figure 17-5).

17.3.4 Instrument Scan

During instrument flight, the pilot's attention must be divided between the control, performance, and position instruments. Proper division of attention and the sequence of checking the instruments (scan) varies among pilots and throughout various phases of flight. There is no one set order for scanning the instruments, as it depends on the type of maneuver to be executed as to which instruments are of prime importance; however, the pilot should become familiar with the factors to be considered in dividing attention between instruments properly. The pilot should also know the symptoms that enable recognition of correct and incorrect scan technique. These factors and symptoms are discussed in the following paragraphs.

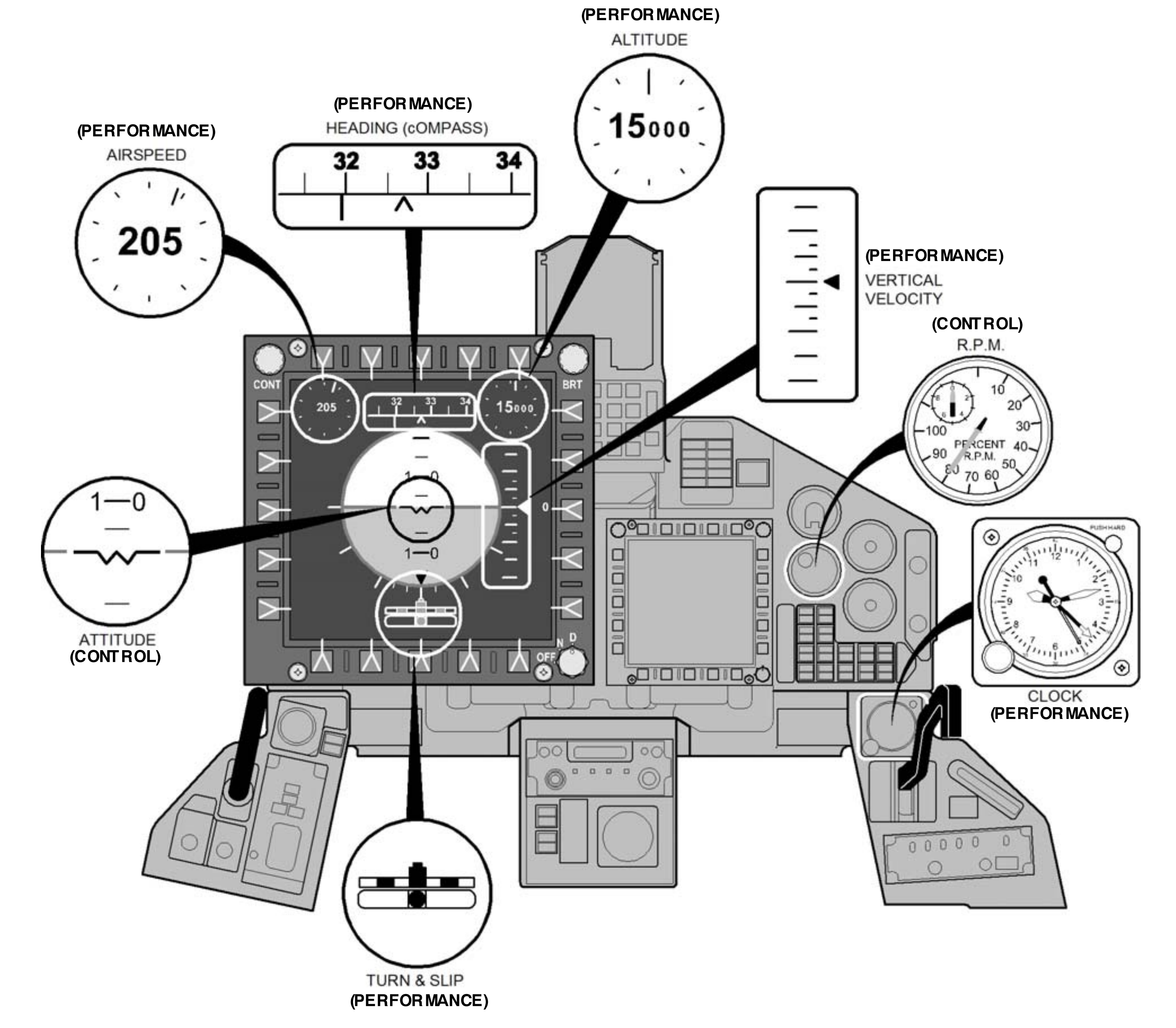
As an example of how improper scanning occurs, consider the case of a pilot attempting to reduce the airspeed and hold straight-and-level flight. As the power is reduced, the pilot observes the engine performance gauge so closely, in order to make the proper adjustments, that the pilot neglects to observe the additional instruments that would indicate a deviation from straight-and-level flight. This failure to maintain a systematic and effective instrument scan is one of the major causes of poorly executed flight maneuvers.

17.3.5 Functions of Instruments — Full Panel Scan

The combination of a particular power setting and aircraft attitude will deliver a specific performance. In simple terms:

Power + Attitude = Performance.

A thorough understanding of this principle is essential to building an efficient scan pattern. Although the Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI), altimeter, heading indicator, airspeed indicator, and turn needle ball are referred to as the position or performance instruments, depending on aircraft maneuver, it should be understood that the specific function of these instruments in a full panel scan depends on the maneuver being completed.



CONTROL AND PERFORMANCE CONCEPT

Procedural Steps:

1. Establish an attitude and/or power setting on the control instrument(s) which should result in the desired performance.
2. Trim until control pressures are neutralized.
3. Crosscheck the performance instruments to determine if the established attitude and/or power setting are providing the desired performance.
4. Adjust the attitude and power setting on the control instruments if a correction is necessary.

Figure 17-5. Position, Control, and Performance Instrument Groupings

For every full panel maneuver, the attitude gyro is the primary reference instrument for both nose and wing attitude; however, the instruments comprising the performance group are used to verify the desired attitude and performance of an aircraft and to detect any deviation from them. Thus, the performance instruments also function as attitude cross-checks; for example, in straight-and-level flight, the altimeter and VSI function as nose attitude cross-checks, and the heading indicator serves as the wing attitude cross-check (i.e., the altimeter and VSI are checked to verify a constant altitude, and the heading indicator is checked to verify constant heading). The airspeed indicator is the only one of the so-called performance instruments that is actually being scanned for performance (desired airspeed) during straight-and-level flight (Figure 17-6).

Maneuver	Basic Attitude Instrument	Nose Attitude Cross Check Instruments	Wing Attitude Cross Check Instruments	Performance Instruments	Supporting Instruments
Straight and level	Attitude gyro	Altimeter, VSI	Heading indicator, Needle ball	Airspeed indicator	Power, Angle of attack
Constant airspeed climbs and descents	Attitude gyro	Airspeed indicator	Heading indicator, Needle ball	Altimeter	Power, Angle of attack
Constant rate climbs and descents	Attitude gyro	Airspeed indicator	Heading indicator, Needle ball	Altimeter, Clock, VSI	Power, Angle of attack
Constant angle of bank turns (level)	Attitude gyro	Altimeter, VSI		Heading indicator, Airspeed indicator	Needle Ball, Power
Constant rate turns (level)	Attitude gyro	Altimeter, VSI	Needle ball	Heading indicator, Airspeed indicator	Power
Climbing or descending turns at a constant rate	Attitude gyro	Airspeed indicator	Needle ball	Heading indicator, Clock, VSI, Altimeter	Power, Angle of attack
Hovering	Attitude gyro	Hover indicator	Hover indicator, Needle ball	Radar altimeter, Heading indicator; See Note	Power

Note

The inherent lag and relatively large scaling of pressure-sensitive instruments precludes their use as performance instruments while hovering in close proximity to the surface.

Figure 17-6. Function of Instruments (Full Panel)

17.3.6 Scan Technique

A major factor influencing scan technique is the characteristic manner in which instruments respond to attitude and power changes. The control instruments provide a direct and immediate indication of attitude and power changes, but indications on the performance instruments lag and must be accepted as an inherent factor. Lag will not appreciably affect the tolerances within which the pilot controls the aircraft; however, at times, a slight, unavoidable delay in knowing the results of attitude and/or power changes will occur.

When the attitude and power are smoothly controlled, the lag factor is negligible and the indications on the performance instruments will stabilize or change smoothly. Do not make abrupt control movements in response to the lagging indications on the performance instruments without first checking the control instruments. Failure to do so leads to erratic aircraft maneuvers, which will cause additional fluctuations and lag in the performance instruments. Frequent scanning of the control instruments assists in maintaining smooth aircraft control.

The attitude indicator is the instrument that should be used to develop all maneuvering attitudes and should be scanned most frequently. This is shown by the following description of a normal scan: A pilot glances from the attitude indicator to a performance instrument; back to the attitude indicator; then a glance at another performance instrument; back to the attitude indicator; and so on.

It is often necessary to compare the indications of one performance instrument against another before knowing when or how much to change the attitude or power. An effective scan technique may require that the attitude indicator be scanned between glances at the performance instruments being compared (Figure 17-7).

17.3.7 Scan Analysis

An incorrect scan technique may be recognized by analyzing certain symptoms. If the correct attitude and power indications are not established and maintained, and other instrument indications fluctuate erratically, the pilot is probably fixating on a single instrument or not scanning the control instruments often enough. This is usually accompanied by lack of precise aircraft control.

Too much attention being devoted to the control instruments, although rarely encountered, is normally caused by a pilot's desire to maintain performance indications within close tolerances. If the pilot has a smooth, positive, and continuous control over the indications of the control instruments, but large deviations are observed to occur on the performance instruments, a more frequent scan of the performance instruments is required.

An incorrect scan can result in the omission of, or insufficient reference to, one or more instruments during the scanning process. For example, during a climb or descent, a pilot may become so engrossed with pitch attitude control that he/she fails to observe an error in the aircraft heading. A 4° heading change is not as eye-catching as a 300- to 400-fpm change on the vertical speed indicator.

Through deliberate effort and proper habit, the pilot must ensure all the instruments are included in his/her scan. Continuous analysis of a pilot's scan technique will assist in early recognition and correction of errors or omissions and will result in improved aircraft control.

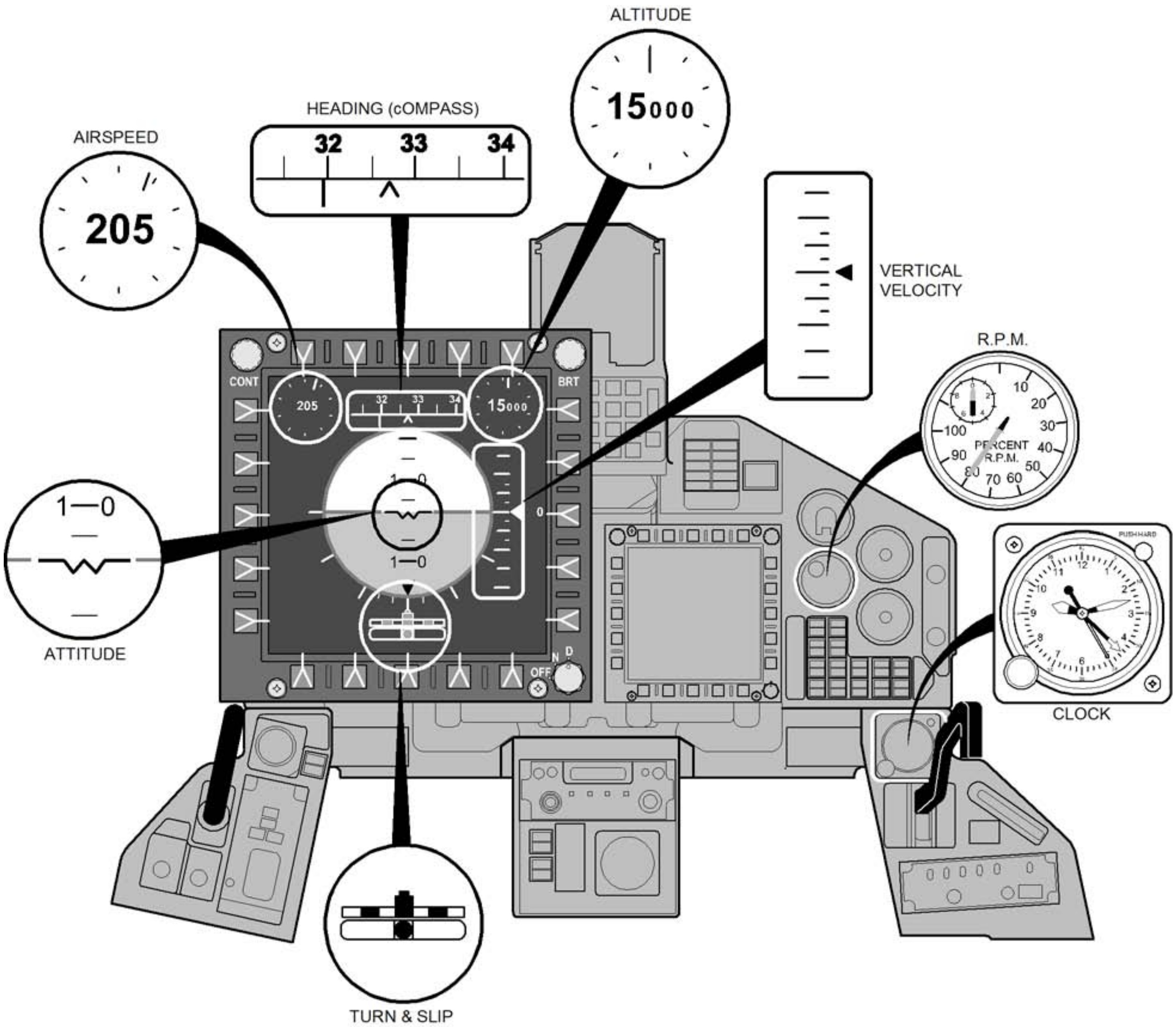
17.3.8 Use of Angle of Attack

Angle of attack information is most valuable during an instrument approach. In the event of airspeed indicator failure, angle of attack information can be used throughout a flight if equivalent values are known. As with the other flight instruments, the angle of attack indicator and components should be checked for proper alignment and calibration and freedom of movement prior to takeoff.

During takeoff, the airspeed indicator may be used to determine acceleration speed, takeoff speed, minimum control speed, etc.; however, the angle of attack indicator should be used in conjunction with the attitude indicator to establish the proper angle of attack for takeoff. Angle of attack information may also be used to varying degrees to establish best climb angles, maximum endurance, long-range cruise, glides, and other flight maneuvers. The final approach airspeed given in the NATOPS flight manual is based on a given constant angle of attack. Because the angle of attack during the approach phase of flight remains the same regardless of weight, it is a more direct indication of best final approach speed than indicated or Calibrated Airspeed (CAS).

During an approach, the landing configuration and approach angle of attack should be established prior to commencing the final approach descent. To establish the approach angle of attack, reduce airspeed and maintain altitude until the desired indications are established on the angle of attack indicator/indexer. The resulting airspeed will be the best final approach for that weight; thus, the airspeed and angle of attack indicators may be used to supplement one another.

Control of angle of attack and rate of descent require coordinated power and pitch changes. If the aircraft is above the glideslope with the desired angle of attack, the pilot should decrease power to increase rate of descent and adjust the nose to maintain the desired angle of attack, the pilot should increase power to decrease the rate of descent and adjust the nose to maintain the desired angle of attack.



Primary instrument scan should focus on the attitude indicator, with periodic scans to airspeed, heading, altitude, VVI, turn & slip, and engine indications.

Figure 17-7. Instrument Scan Technique

17.4 AIRCRAFT TRIM

The aircraft is correctly trimmed when it is maintaining a desired attitude with all control pressures neutralized. By relieving all control pressures, the pilot will find that it is much easier to hold a given attitude. Also, more attention can be devoted to the navigation instruments and additional cockpit duties. Proper trim technique is essential for smooth and precise aircraft control during all phases of flight.

An aircraft is placed in trim by applying control pressure(s) to establish a desired attitude and then adjusting the trim so that the aircraft will maintain that attitude when the flight controls are released. The aircraft should be trimmed for coordinated flight by first centering the ball on the turn and slip indicator, followed by trim corrections to the elevator and aileron controls. On multiengine aircraft, where differential power control is possible, balanced power/thrust will aid in maintaining coordinated flight. Changes in attitude, power, or configuration may require a trim adjustment. Use of trim to change the aircraft attitude will probably lead to erratic aircraft control. Smooth and precise attitude changes are best attained by a combination of control pressures and trim adjustments (Figure 17-8).

Note

The preceding concepts of attitude instrument flying apply to helicopters authorized for instrument flight; however, power changes are normally made with collective pitch, and attitude changes with cyclic stick.

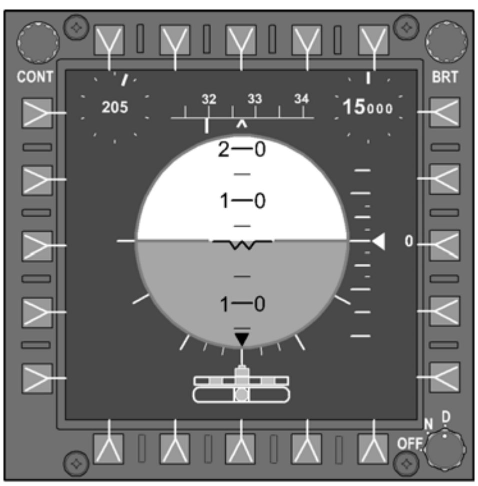


Figure 17-8. Trim Technique

17.5 INSTRUMENT HOVERING

Many Search and Rescue (SAR) and Antisubmarine Warfare (ASW) helicopters are equipped with Doppler radar hover instruments (as described in paragraph 15.6), which allows the pilots to accomplish a hover without visual reference to the surface. As with all instrument flight, this is a full panel maneuver and must include a scan of all flight instruments. The primary scan instrument should be the attitude gyro, while the hover indicator should be used as the nose and wing attitude cross-checks.

The demanding nature of this maneuver, particularly in an uncoupled environment, requires a very rapid scan. Every effort should be made to determine a stable hover reference position on the attitude gyro and all hover corrections should be made back to this position. The hover indicator is commonly mistaken for the primary scan instrument, but because of the inherent lag of this indicating system, it is better used as a cross-check instrument. For specific flight procedures, consult the applicable aircraft NATOPS manuals.

CHAPTER 18

Instrument Flight Maneuvers

18.1 APPLICATION

The maneuvers described in this chapter are those most commonly used during instrument flight. Additional maneuvers or some modification of these maneuvers may be required for specific unit training requirements. The degree of proficiency attained in accomplishing these maneuvers will assist the pilot in adapting to actual instrument flight.

An instrument flight, regardless of its length or complexity, is a series of connected basic instrument flight maneuvers (Figure 18-1). Failure to consider each portion of the flight as a basic instrument maneuver often leads to erratic aircraft control.

18.1.1 Planning

The information received from the navigational instruments or an air traffic controller should be considered as advising the pilot what maneuver to perform, when to perform it, or what adjustments, if any, are required. Terminal approach charts and similar publications should be considered as pictorial presentations of a series of connected instrument flight maneuvers. Keeping these considerations in mind and calling upon previous practice, the pilot will find that he/she is always performing a familiar maneuver. By visualizing the next maneuver, the pilot can plan ahead and know exactly what cross-check and aircraft control techniques to employ at the time of entry into the maneuver.

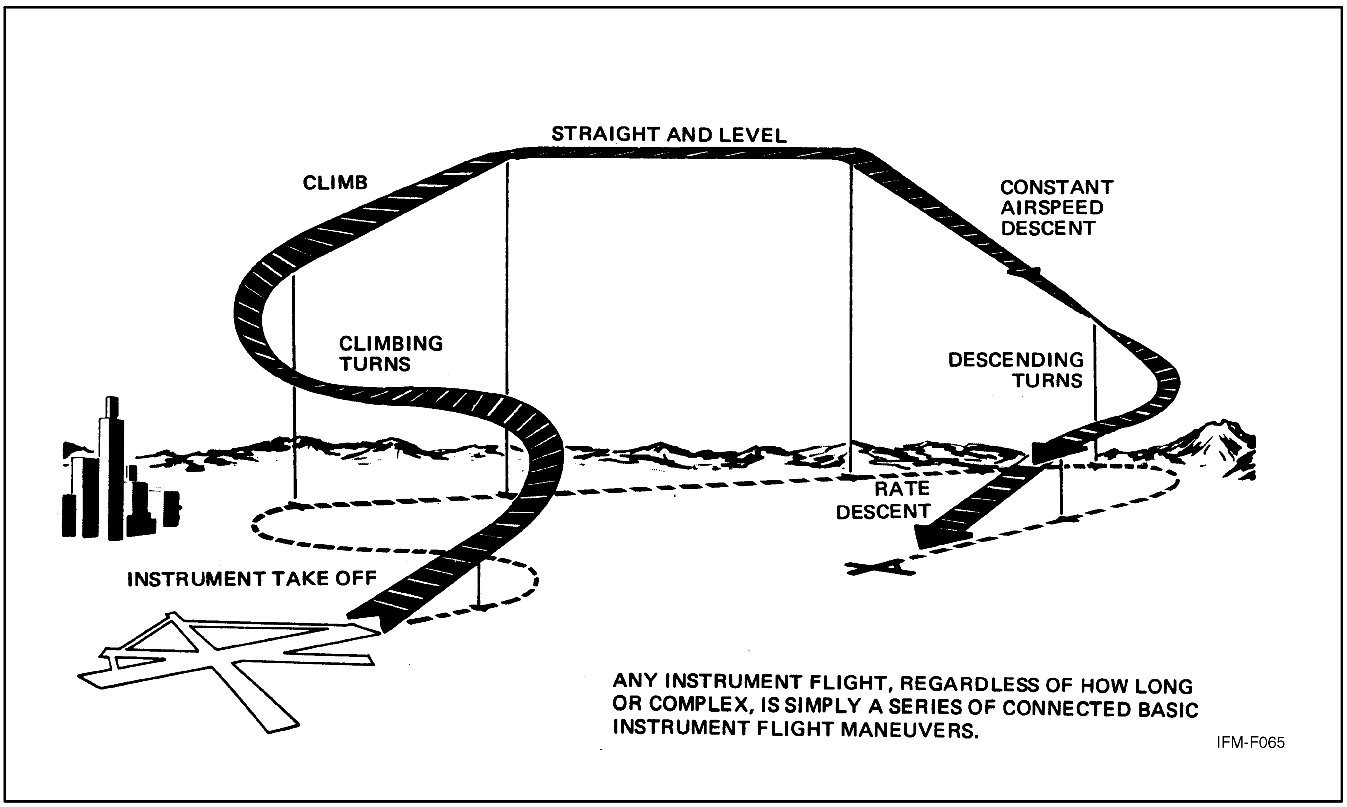


Figure 18-1. Typical Instrument Flight

18.2 INSTRUMENT TAKEOFF (ITO)

18.2.1 Pretakeoff Procedures

The ITO procedures and techniques are an invaluable aid during takeoffs at night, toward and over water or deserted areas, and during periods of reduced visibility. These takeoffs are accomplished by combined use of outside visual reference and the flight instruments. The amount of attention given to each ITO varies with the individual, the type of aircraft, and existing weather. As the ITO is a composite visual/instrument takeoff, it should not be confused nor used interchangeably with hooded takeoffs.

Prior to commencing an instrument flight, the pilot shall check the flight and navigation instruments and the required publications. This check will be made in accordance with the NATOPS flight manual and must include all control, performance, and position instruments. Many airdromes display navigational data on a sign near the end of the runway for checking the navigational equipment and altimeter. After this pretakeoff check is complete, select the navigational aids to be used for the departure and set the navigational instruments and switches as required.

The air traffic control clearance and departure procedures must be thoroughly understood prior to takeoff. The appropriate instrument approach charts shall be readily available in the event that an instrument approach becomes necessary immediately after takeoff.

18.2.1.1 ITO Procedures (Fixed Wing)

The ITO for specific aircraft is discussed in the applicable NATOPS flight manual. Use pitot heat and other anti-ice equipment as appropriate. When cleared, align the aircraft with the runway centerline and complete any remaining checklists. Pay special attention to the heading and attitude indicators for any errors induced by turning while taxiing. When directed, select the assigned departure frequency and monitor Guard frequency during takeoff.

When cleared for takeoff, release the brakes simultaneously to minimize initial directional control difficulties. Directional control immediately following brake release should be accomplished predominantly by outside visual references (Figure 18-2). As the takeoff progresses, the pilot's scan should transition from outside references to the heading, airspeed, angle of attack, and attitude indicators. The rate of transition is directly proportional to the rate at which the outside reference deteriorates. It is essential that the pilot establish his/her instrument scan prior to losing all visual reference.

The takeoff attitude will normally be established on the attitude indicator at rotation or just prior to reaching takeoff airspeeds. Pilots should know the takeoff attitude indicator picture required for their aircraft. The takeoff attitude should be maintained as the aircraft leaves the ground. If available, the angle of attack indicator should be used to cross-check the attitude indicator for optimum takeoff performance. Check the vertical speed indicator and altimeter for positive climb indications and comply with the applicable NATOPS flight manual for specific aircraft before retracting the gear and wing flaps. While the gear and flaps are being retracted, maintain or adjust the pitch attitude as necessary to ensure the desired climb.

Note

Some attitude indicators are susceptible to precession errors due to aircraft acceleration. This phenomenon causes the horizon bar to lower slightly and appears as an increased pitch attitude. To avoid lowering the nose prematurely, the pilot must cross-check the vertical speed, angle of attack indicator, and altimeter throughout this phase of flight to ensure proper climb performance.

After the gear and flaps are retracted, the pitch attitude should be controlled to provide an increase in airspeed while climbing until the normal climb schedule is reached.

Figure 18-2. Instrument Takeoff

18.2.1.2 Rotary Wing ITO

If visibility will permit, establish a normal hover to perform the safety checks of flight controls, engines, and automatic stabilization equipment. When a normal hover is not possible, the helicopter may be flown off the deck and into a normal climb without any outside reference. In the event of full instrument takeoff when outside visual reference cannot be maintained at hover altitudes, use the hover indicator, when available, to determine a positive rate of climb, indicate sideward drift, and indicate fore and aft groundspeed prior to reliable airspeed indications. Heading control may be maintained with the yaw stabilization channel of the automatic stabilization equipment. Steadily increase collective as the helicopter lifts off. Maintain level attitude on the attitude indicator.

Note

To maintain a stable hover with no sideward drift, it may be necessary in some helicopters to hover with a slight wing-down attitude.

As altitude increases through approximately 15 feet, use the radar altimeter and lower the nose to approximately 5° below hover attitude. (See applicable NATOPS flight manuals for variations.) Simultaneously increase the collective to the best climb setting and adjust the nose attitude to accelerate to the recommended climbing airspeed.

Note

When passing through translational lift, the nose attitude may require readjustment to maintain the attitude desired.

18.2.1.3 Night (Instrument) Catapult Launch

The night (instrument) launch from a carrier deck differs considerably from an ITO in that it is a demanding maneuver performed entirely on instruments. Prior to taxiing from a deck spot to the catapult, it is absolutely essential that all aircraft systems communication and navigation equipment be checked for proper operation and set on the desired frequency. At night, the exterior lights should be set up in accordance with the CV NATOPS manual. The aircraft should also be configured (flaps set) for catapult launch in accordance with the applicable NATOPS flight manual for the launch gross weight and Wind-Over-Deck (WOD).

En route to the catapult, performance and position instruments should be checked for proper operation (turn needle, Horizontal Situation Indicator [HSI], wet compass, Tactical Air Navigation [TACAN]). While being spotted on the catapult, pilot attention must necessarily be outside the cockpit; however, once the signal to “TAKE TENSION” is given, the pilot is from that time on instruments. The desired departure course should be checked and set in, the Bearing-Distance-Heading Indicator (BDHI) heading cross-checked with the Base Recovery Course (BRC), and the attitude instrument(s) should be checked for proper operation and alignment. When satisfied that you and the aircraft are ready for launch, the appropriate signal is given.

The primary instrument during the catapult stroke is the attitude gyro. At the end of the catapult stroke, the desired climb attitude is established on the attitude indicator and then cross-checked with the vertical speed indicator and altimeter for a positive climb indication while maintaining launch heading. Once comfortably established in a climb, the gear can be raised and an airborne radio transmission can be made. After accelerating to the airspeed/altitude prescribed for the type aircraft, a transition to a clean/cruise configuration can be effected. During the transition from launch to cruise configuration, the angle of attack should be checked to ensure optimum attitude performance is being maintained. Normal Case II or III departure procedures should be complied with during climb to en route operating altitude.

WARNING

The standby attitude gyro should be illuminated with a flashlight during catapult launch. Failure to do so could result in the loss of attitude information in the event of a generator failure and cause subsequent loss of the aircraft.

Radio frequency changes should not be attempted until above 2,500 feet unless level flight for an extended period of time is planned.

18.2.1.4 Rotary Wing Night (Instrument) Shipboard Takeoffs

During night shipboard operations, instrument takeoffs should be utilized any time weather is less than 1,000 feet ceiling and 3 miles visibility or there is no visible horizon. When flight deck conditions permit, takeoffs should be made utilizing available flight deck during transition to forward flight. Both pilots must closely monitor initial rate of climb utilizing both radar altimeter and Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI). Descent or lack of climb during takeoff requires immediate corrective action. Heading, radio frequency, and control changes should not be initiated prior to 200 feet.

18.3 STRAIGHT-AND-LEVEL FLIGHT

Straight-and-level unaccelerated flight consists of maintaining a constant altitude, heading, and airspeed. Bank is used with yaw to maintain balanced flight and to maintain or adjust the heading. Pitch and power control should not be considered independently because coordinated control of both is necessary to maintain or adjust altitude or airspeed.

18.3.1 Maintaining a Desired Altitude

Maintaining a desired altitude requires the ability to maintain a specific pitch attitude and, when necessary, to smoothly and precisely adjust this attitude. This ability is developed through proper use of the attitude indicator and is simplified by good trim techniques. The pilot must recognize and understand the application of these requirements. The pilot should also be thoroughly familiar with the procedures in attitude instrument flying.

After leveling off at cruise airspeed, adjust the pitch trim knob on the attitude indicator so that the miniature aircraft is aligned with the horizon bar. This will aid in observing small pitch changes. Subsequent readjustments may be required because of changes in aircraft gross weight and cruise airspeeds (Figure 18-3).

The first indication of altitude deviation normally appears on the vertical speed indicator. By observing the initial rate of movement, the pilot may estimate the amount of pitch change required on the attitude indicator and prevent large altitude deviations. If the estimated pitch change was correct, the vertical speed will return to zero with a negligible change of indicated altitude on the altimeter.

The small pitch corrections required to maintain a desired altitude are made in fractions of pippers or in degrees. The pilot should become familiar with the vertical speed changes that result when specific pitch adjustments are made at various airspeeds and configurations; thus, the pilot can determine what nose attitude adjustment is required to produce the desired rate of correction when an altitude deviation is observed.

When the pilot makes these pitch adjustments, the altimeter and vertical speed indications will lag behind changes of pitch attitude on the attitude indicator. This lag should be recognized and accepted as an inherent error in the differential pressure instruments. The error is even more pronounced at supersonic airspeeds. Because of this error, the pilot must maintain the adjusted pitch attitude on the attitude indicator while waiting for changes on the altimeter and vertical speed to occur. The pilot must not make a snap decision that the adjusted pitch change is ineffective and be lured into overcontrolling the nose attitude.

With experience, the pilot can usually estimate the suitability of a pitch adjustment by noting the initial rate of movement of the vertical speed indicator. For example, assume a pitch adjustment has been made that is expected to result in a 200- to 300-feet-per-minute rate of climb. If the initial rate of movement on the vertical speed indicator is rapid and obviously will stabilize at a rate greater than desired, the pitch change was too large. Readjust the pitch attitude rather than wait for a stabilized indication on the vertical speed indicator.

Figure 18-3. Adjusting the Attitude Indicator

When a deviation from the desired altitude occurs, exercise good judgment in determining a rate of correction. The correction must not be too large and cause the aircraft to overshoot the desired altitude, nor should it be so small that it is unnecessarily prolonged. As a guide, the pitch attitude change on the attitude indicator should produce a rate of vertical speed approximately twice the size of the altitude deviation. Usually pitch changes are made in fractions (1/4, 1/2, 3/4, etc.) of pippers or degrees. For example, if the aircraft is 100 feet off the desired altitude, a 200-feet-per-minute rate of correction would be a suitable amount. By knowing the present rate of climb or descent and the results to be expected from a pitch change, the pilot can closely estimate how much to change the pitch attitude. Initially, this pitch change is an estimated amount; therefore, the adjusted pitch attitude must be held constant until the rate of correction is observed on the vertical speed indicator. If it differs from that desired, further adjustment of the nose attitude is required (Figure 18-4).

When approaching the desired altitude, determine a lead point on the altimeter for initiating a level-off pitch attitude change. A suitable lead point prevents overshooting and permits a smooth transition to level flight. The amount of lead required varies with pilot technique and rate of correction. As a guide, the lead point on the altimeter should be approximately 10 percent of the vertical speed. For example, if the rate of correction to the desired altitude is 300 feet per minute, initiate the level-off approximately 30 feet before reaching the desired altitude (Figure 18-5).

Devoting too much attention to the vertical speed indicator can lead to “chasing” its indications and result in erratic nose attitude control; although the vertical speed indicator is an important performance instrument, limitation such as oscillation in rough air, lag, etc. should be thoroughly understood to prevent overcontrolling the pitch attitude. For this reason, the pilot must recognize and understand that sufficient reference to the attitude indicator is necessary to ensure smooth and precise pitch adjustments for effective altitude control.

18.3.1.1 Maintaining a Desired Heading

Maintaining a desired heading is accomplished by maintaining a wings-level attitude in balanced flight. By observing the heading indicator, the pilot determines if the desired heading is being maintained. Heading deviations are not normally as eye-catching as altitude deviations; therefore, be aware of this characteristic and develop a habit of cross-checking the heading indicator frequently to prevent significant heading deviations.

When a deviation from the desired heading occurs, refer to the attitude indicator and smoothly establish a definite angle of bank that will produce a suitable rate of return. As a guide, the angle-of-bank change on the attitude indicator should equal the heading deviation in degrees. For example, if the heading deviation is 10°, then 10° of bank on the attitude indicator would produce a suitable rate of correction (Figure 18-6). This guide is particularly helpful during instrument approaches at relatively slow airspeeds. At higher true airspeeds, a larger angle of bank may be required to prevent a prolonged correction. Proper pitch and bank attitude control requires the pilot to recognize the effects of gyroscopic precession on attitude indicators. This precession is most noticeable following a turn or change of airspeed. As a result, small altitude and heading deviations may occur when a wings-level attitude is established on the attitude indicator following these maneuvers; therefore, the pilot may have to establish temporarily a pitch or bank attitude other than that ordinarily expected. For example, to maintain straight-and-level flight on the performance instruments after completing a normal turn, the attitude indicator may depict a slight turn, climb or descent, or a combination of both. The attitude indicator will gradually resume its normal indications as the erection mechanism automatically corrects these errors. When these errors occur, apply the basic cross-check procedure (Figure 18-7).

18.3.1.2 Establishing and Maintaining Airspeed

Establishing or maintaining an airspeed is accomplished by referring to the airspeed and/or Mach indicator and adjusting the power and/or aircraft attitude. A knowledge of the approximate power required to establish a desired airspeed will aid in making power adjustments. After the approximate power setting is established, a cross-check of the airspeed indicator will indicate if subsequent power adjustments are required. The pilot should make it a point to learn and remember the approximate power settings and attitudes for the aircraft at various airspeeds and configurations used throughout a normal mission.

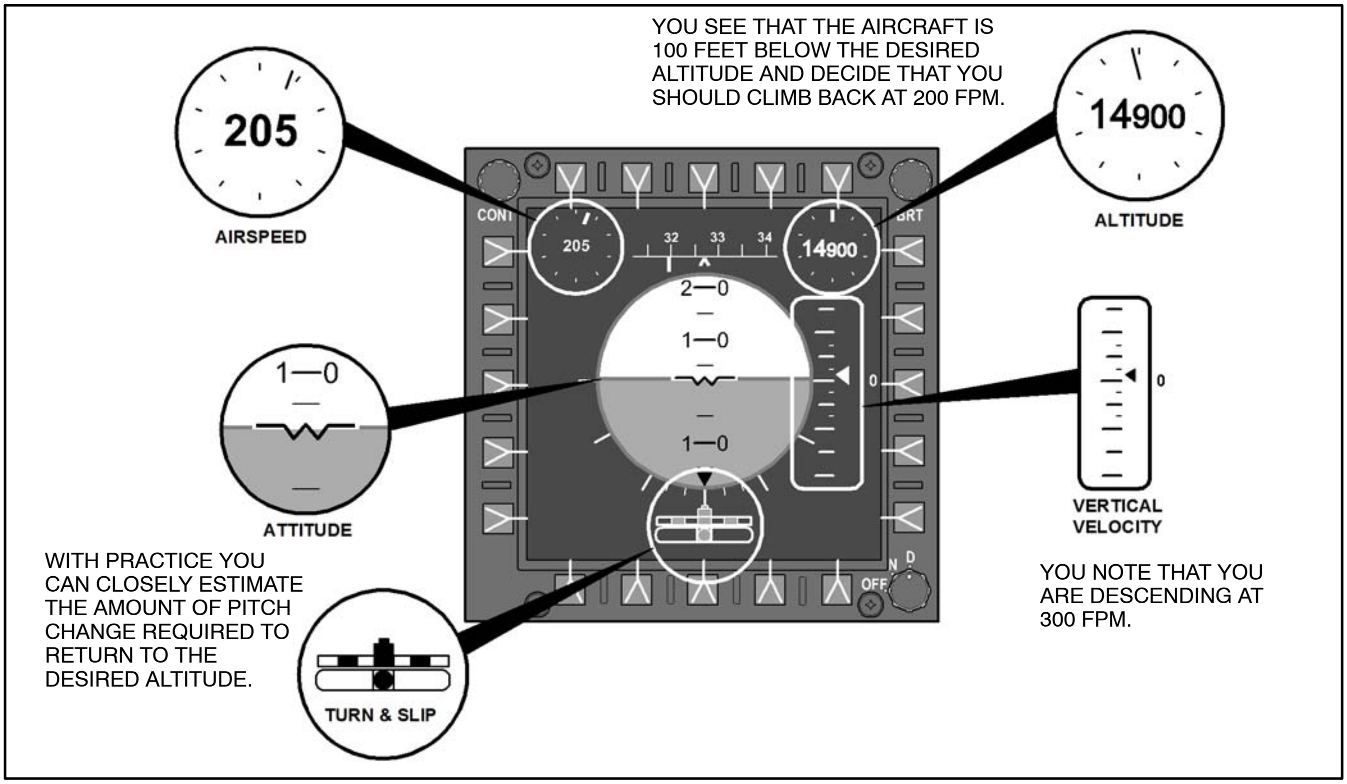


Figure 18-4. Correcting to the Desired Altitude

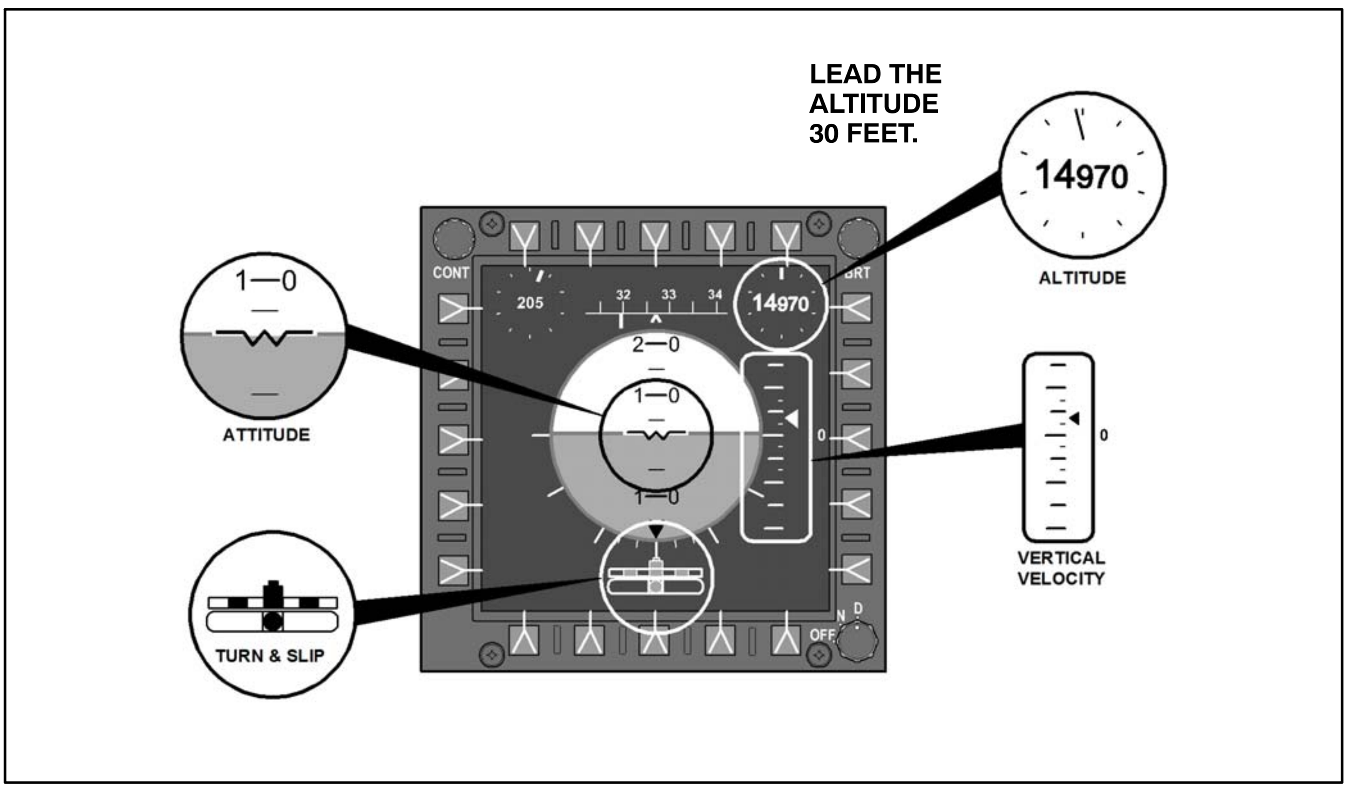


Figure 18-5. Leading the Level-Off

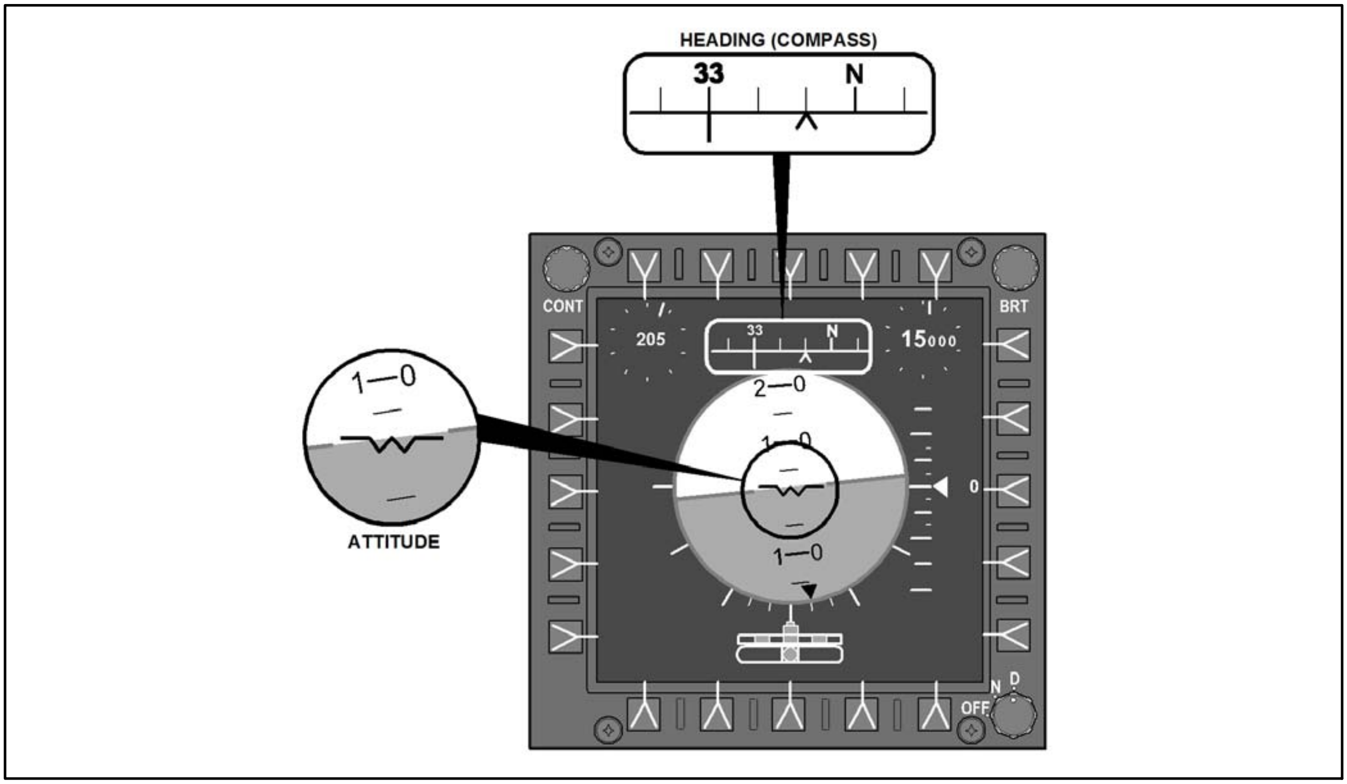


Figure 18-6. For Turns 30° or Less, Limit the Angle of Bank to the Number of Degrees to be Turned

When an airspeed deviation is observed, a power or pitch adjustment, or a combination of both, may be required to correct back to the desired airspeed; however, check the altimeter and vertical speed before making a power adjustment. If below the desired altitude with a higher-than-desired airspeed, a small pitch adjustment may regain both the desired airspeed and altitude. Conversely, when maintaining the desired airspeed, a pitch adjustment will induce the need for a power adjustment.

Changes of airspeed in straight-and-level flight are accomplished by adjusting the power and/or drag devices. To increase the airspeed, advance the power beyond the setting required to maintain the new desired airspeed. As the airspeed increases, the aircraft gains lift and will have a tendency to climb. Adjust the nose attitude as required to maintain altitude. When the airspeed approaches the desired indication, reduce the power to an estimated setting that will maintain the new airspeed. To reduce the airspeed, reduce the power below the setting estimated for maintaining the new desired airspeed. As the airspeed decreases, the aircraft loses lift and will have a tendency to descend. Adjust the nose attitude as required to maintain altitude. When the airspeed approaches the desired indication, advance the power to an estimated setting that will maintain the new airspeed (Figure 18-8). If available, drag devices may be used for relatively large or rapid airspeed reductions. If used, it is normally best to reduce the power to the estimated setting that will maintain altitude at the new airspeed and then extend the drag device(s). Extending or retracting the drag devices may induce a pitch change. To overcome this tendency, note the nose attitude on the attitude indicator just before operating the drag devices and then maintain that attitude constant as they are extended or retracted. When approaching the new airspeed, retract the drag devices and adjust power if required.

18.3.2 Level Turns

Many of the pitch, bank, and power principles discussed in maintaining straight-and-level flight apply while performing level turns. Performing a level turn requires an understanding of several factors: how to enter the turn; how to maintain bank, altitude, and airspeed during the turn; and how to recover from the turn.

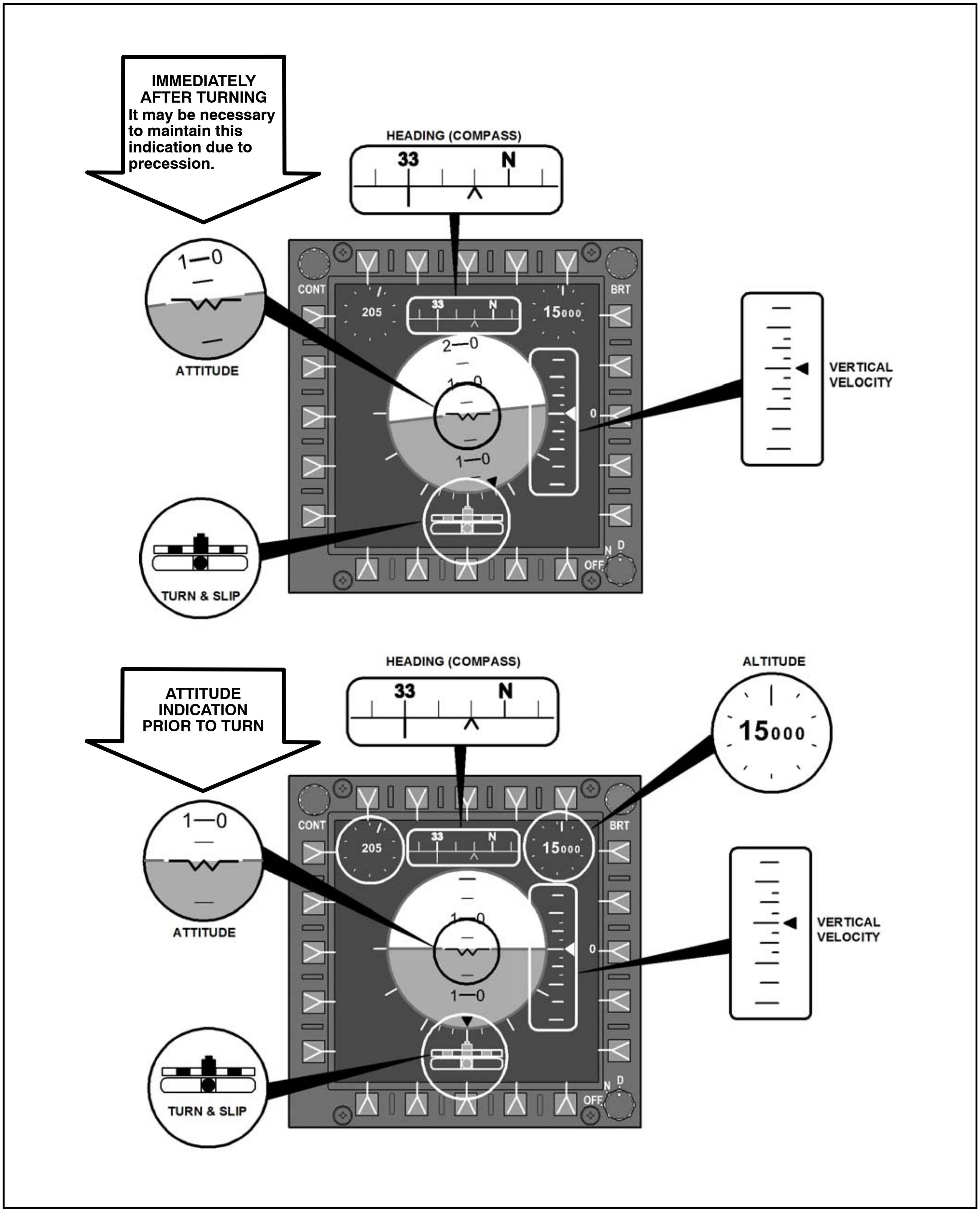


Figure 18-7. Effects of Precession on Attitude Indicators

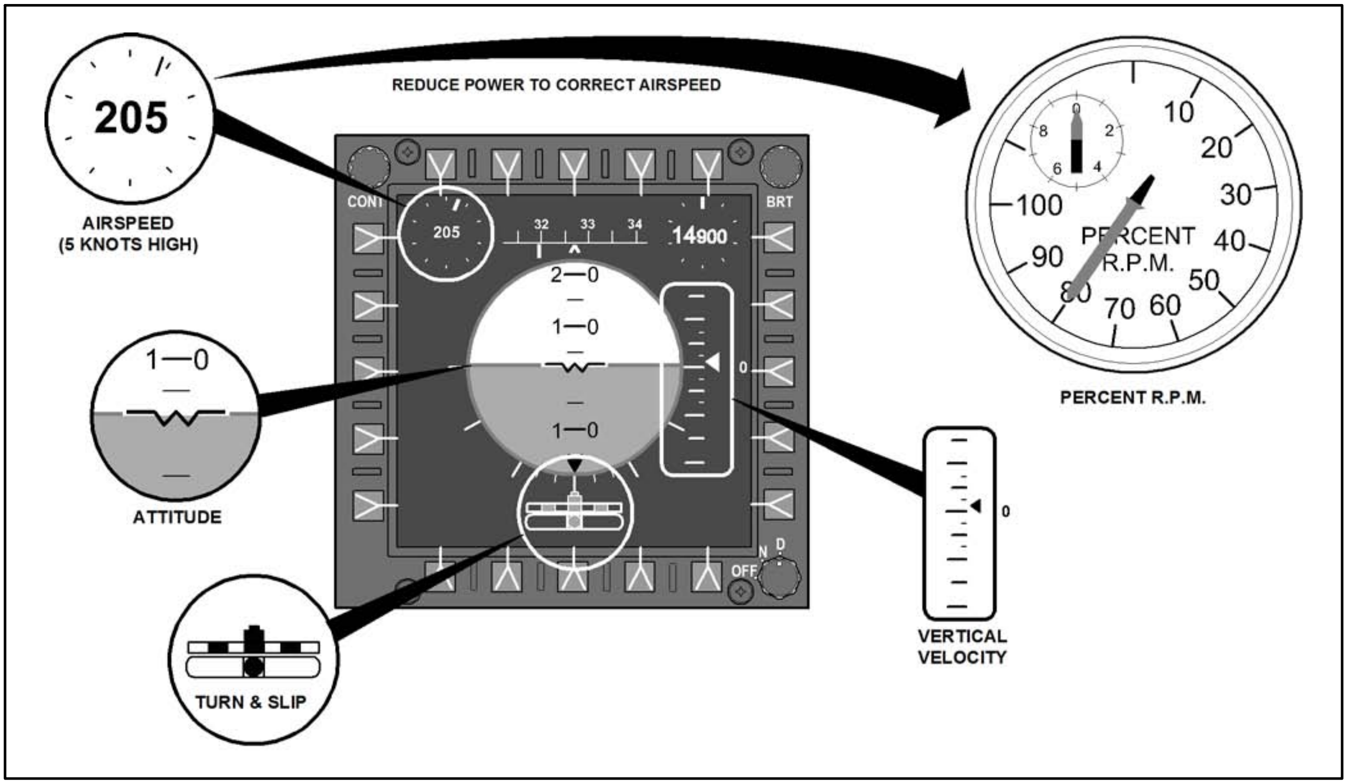


Figure 18-8. Use of Power

18.3.2.1 Bank Control

Prior to entering a turn, the pilot should decide upon an angle of bank to be used. Factors to consider are True Airspeed (TAS) and the desired rate of turn. A slow turn rate may unnecessarily prolong the turn, whereas a high rate of turn may cause overshooting of the heading and difficulty with nose attitude control. As a guide for small turns (30° or less), the angle of bank used should approximate the number of degrees to be turned. For turns of more than 30°, a bank angle of 30° is normally used. High true airspeed and/or flight manual procedures for the equipment being used may require other angles of bank.

To enter a turn, the pilot should refer to the attitude indicator while applying smooth and coordinated control pressures to establish the desired angle of bank. Bank control should then be maintained throughout the turn by reference to the attitude indicator. Cross-check the heading indicator and/or turn needle to determine if the angle of bank is satisfactory. Trim may be helpful during prolonged turns to assist in aircraft control. To enter a turn, the pilot should refer to the attitude indicator while applying smooth and coordinated control pressures to establish the desired angle of bank. Bank control should then be maintained throughout the turn by reference to the attitude indicator. Cross-check the heading indicator and/or turn needle to determine if the angle of bank is satisfactory. Trim may be helpful during prolonged turns to assist in aircraft control.

To roll out of a turn on a desired heading, a lead point must be used. The amount of lead required depends upon the amount of bank used for the turn, the rate the aircraft is turning, and the rate at which the pilot rolls out. As a guide, a lead point on the heading indicator equal to approximately one-third the angle of bank may be used. With experience and practice, a consistent rate of rollout can be developed. A lead point can then accurately be estimated for any combination of angle of bank and rate of turn. Make a note of the rate of movement of the heading indicator during the turn. Estimate the lead required by comparing this rate of movement with angle of bank being used and the rate of rollout (Figure 18-9).

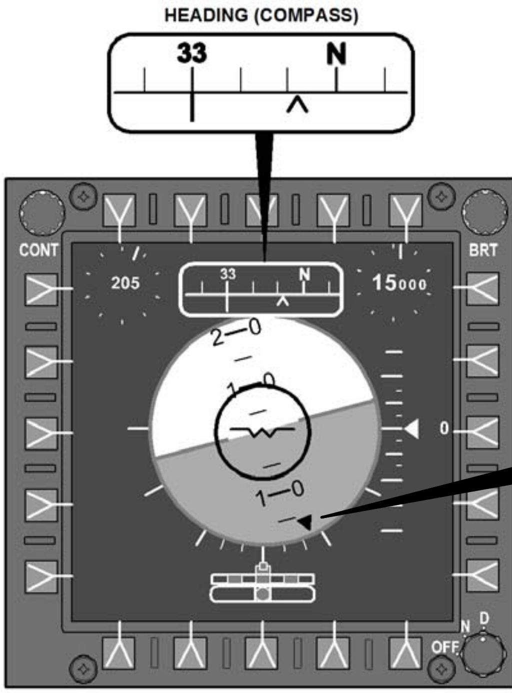


Figure 18-9. Leading the Rollout

18.3.2.2 Altitude Control

The techniques for maintaining a constant altitude during a turn are similar to those used in maintaining straight-and-level flight. During the initial part of the roll-in, hold the same pitch attitude as was used to maintain altitude with the wings level. As the bank is increased, the pilot should anticipate a tendency for the aircraft to lose altitude because of the loss of vertical lift. Adjust the nose attitude as necessary by reference to the pipper of the miniature aircraft relative to the horizon bar. After the turn is established, small pitch adjustments may be required to maintain the desired altitude because of pitch errors in the attitude indicator as a result of precession.

When rolling out of a turn, anticipate a tendency for the aircraft to gain altitude. This results from a combination of an increase in the vertical component of lift and a failure to compensate for trim or backpressure used during the turn; therefore, be aware of these factors, anticipate their effects, and monitor the pitch attitude during the rollout in the same manner as during the roll-in.

18.3.2.3 Airspeed Control

The power control techniques for maintaining airspeed during a turn are similar to those used during straight-and-level flight. Anticipate a tendency for the aircraft to lose airspeed in a turn. This is caused by induced drag resulting from the increased nose attitude required to compensate for loss of vertical lift. The increased drag will require additional power to maintain airspeed during a turn. The additional power required will be less at high true airspeeds than at low true airspeeds. At low airspeeds, particularly in jet aircraft, a large power change may be required. If pilot response to this power change is slow, the airspeed may decrease rapidly to the point where a descent is required to regain the desired airspeeds; therefore, at low airspeeds, it may be desirable to add an estimated amount of power as the turn is established rather than waiting for the first indication of a loss in airspeed. Accomplish changes of airspeed during a turn as described under straight-and-level flight, paragraph 18.3.

18.3.2.4 Turning Performance

When an aircraft is flown in a steady, coordinated turn at specific values of bank angle and velocity, the turn rate and turn radius are fixed and independent of aircraft type. As an example, an aircraft in a steady, coordinated turn at a bank angle of 30° and a velocity of 300 knots TAS would have a rate of turn of 2.10° per second and a turn radius of 13,800 feet, or approximately 2-1/4 nm.

It is desirable for pilots to learn the approximate turning performance for the normal operating airspeeds and angles of bank of their aircraft. A desired rate of turn is best flown by establishing a specific angle of bank on the attitude indicator; therefore, it is desirable to know the approximate angle of bank required. Also, a knowledge of turn radius will aid in planning turns requiring accurate aircraft positioning (Figure 18-10).

18.4 CLIMBS AND DESCENT

Climbing and descending maneuvers are classified into two general types: constant airspeed or constant rate. The constant airspeed maneuver is accomplished by maintaining a constant power indication and varying the nose attitude as required to maintain a specific airspeed (Figure 18-11). The constant-rate maneuver is accomplished by varying power as required to maintain constant vertical speed and nose attitude to maintain a constant airspeed. Either type of climb or descent may be performed while maintaining a constant heading or while turning. These maneuvers should be practiced using airspeeds, configurations, and altitudes corresponding to those that will be used in actual instrument flight.

18.4.1 Constant Airspeed Climbs and Descents

Before entering the climb or descent, decide what power setting is to be established and estimate the amount of pitch attitude change required to maintain the airspeed. Normally, the pitch and power changes are made simultaneously.

The power change should be smooth, uninterrupted, and at a rate commensurate with the rate of pitch change. In some aircraft, even though a constant throttle setting is maintained, the power may change with altitude; therefore, it may be necessary to cross-check the power indicator(s) occasionally.

While the power is being changed, refer to the attitude indicator and smoothly accomplish the estimated pitch change. As smooth, slow power applications will also produce pitch changes, only slight control pressures are needed to establish the pitch change. Also, very little trim change is required, as the airspeed is constant. With a moderate amount of practice, the pitch and power changes can be properly coordinated so the airspeed will remain within close limits as the climb or descent is entered.

Remember, the initial nose attitude change was an estimated amount to maintain the airspeed constant at the new power setting. The airspeed indicator must be cross-checked to determine the need for subsequent pitch adjustments.

When making a pitch adjustment to correct for an airspeed deviation, the airspeed indicator will not reflect an immediate change. The results of pitch attitude changes can often be determined more quickly by referring to the vertical speed indicator. For example, while climbing, a pilot notes that the airspeed is remaining slightly high and realizes that a small pitch adjustment is required. If the pitch adjustment results in a small increase of vertical speed, the pilot knows, even though the airspeed may not yet show a change, that the pitch correction was approximately correct.

In a similar manner, the vertical speed indication will help a pilot note that an inadvertent change in pitch attitude has been made. For example, assume that the desired airspeed and the vertical speed have been remaining constant, but then, inadvertently, the pitch attitude is allowed to change. The vertical speed indicator will generally show the result of this inadvertent pitch change more quickly than the airspeed indicator; therefore, the vertical speed indicator is an excellent aid in maintaining the airspeed constant.

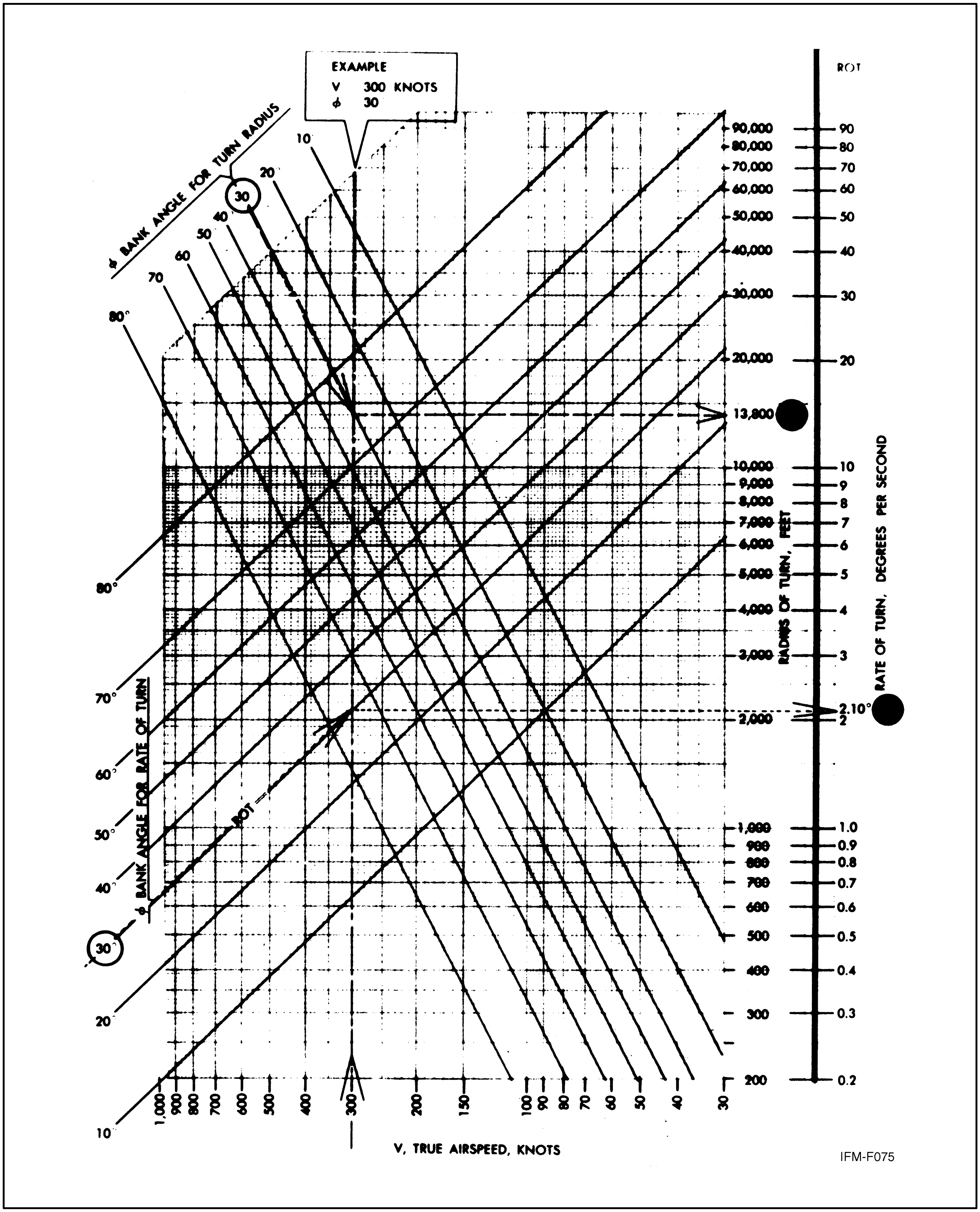


Figure 18-10. General Turning Performance (Constant Altitude, Steady Turn)

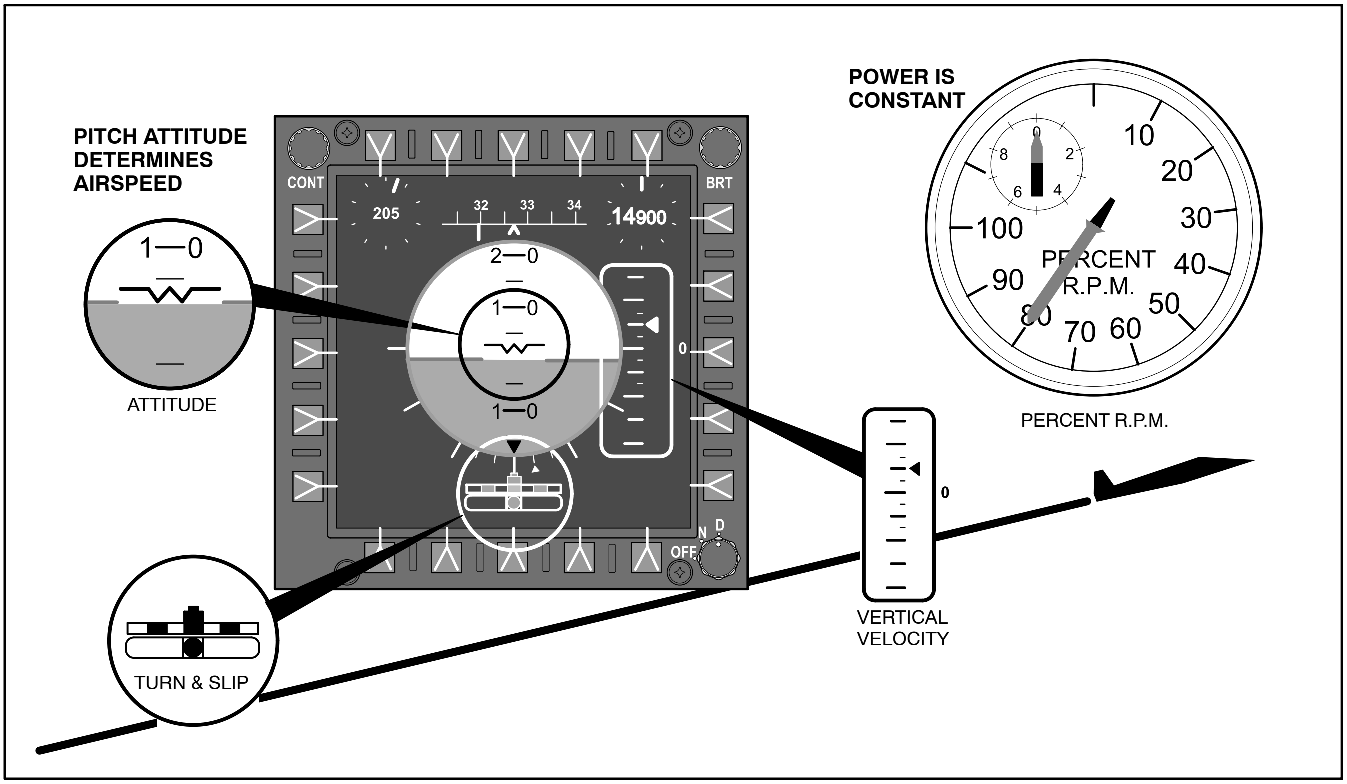


Figure 18-11. Constant Airspeed Maneuver

Upon approaching the desired altitude, select a predetermined level-off lead point on the altimeter. As a guide, use 10 percent of the vertical speed. Smoothly adjust the power to an approximate setting required for level flight, and simultaneously change the nose attitude to the level flight attitude.

18.4.2 Constant-Rate Climbs and Descents

Constant-rate climbs and descents are accomplished by maintaining a constant vertical speed as well as constant airspeed. They are proficiency maneuvers for practicing the techniques involved during precision instrument approaches. Nose attitude control is coordinated with power changes or adjustments to establish and maintain the desired vertical speed and airspeed. The relationship between airspeed and pitch control in high-performance aircraft is especially important at relatively low airspeeds such as when operating at normal final approach airspeed and near stall or minimum control speeds. The resulting high angle of attack and low airspeeds may reach a point where pitch and power changes will not produce the desired vertical speed changes. This condition is termed the region of reverse command, commonly known as being behind the power curve.

Prior to initiating a climb or descent, estimate the amount of power required to produce the desired vertical speed and the amount of pitch change required to maintain a constant airspeed. Enter the climb or descent by adjusting the pitch and power. Scan the performance instruments to determine the resultant changes (Figure 18-12).

Cross-check the vertical speed indicator to determine if there is a need for power adjustments. A cross-check of the airspeed will indicate the need for pitch adjustments. The climb or descent is terminated by using normal level-off procedures when approaching the desired altitude.

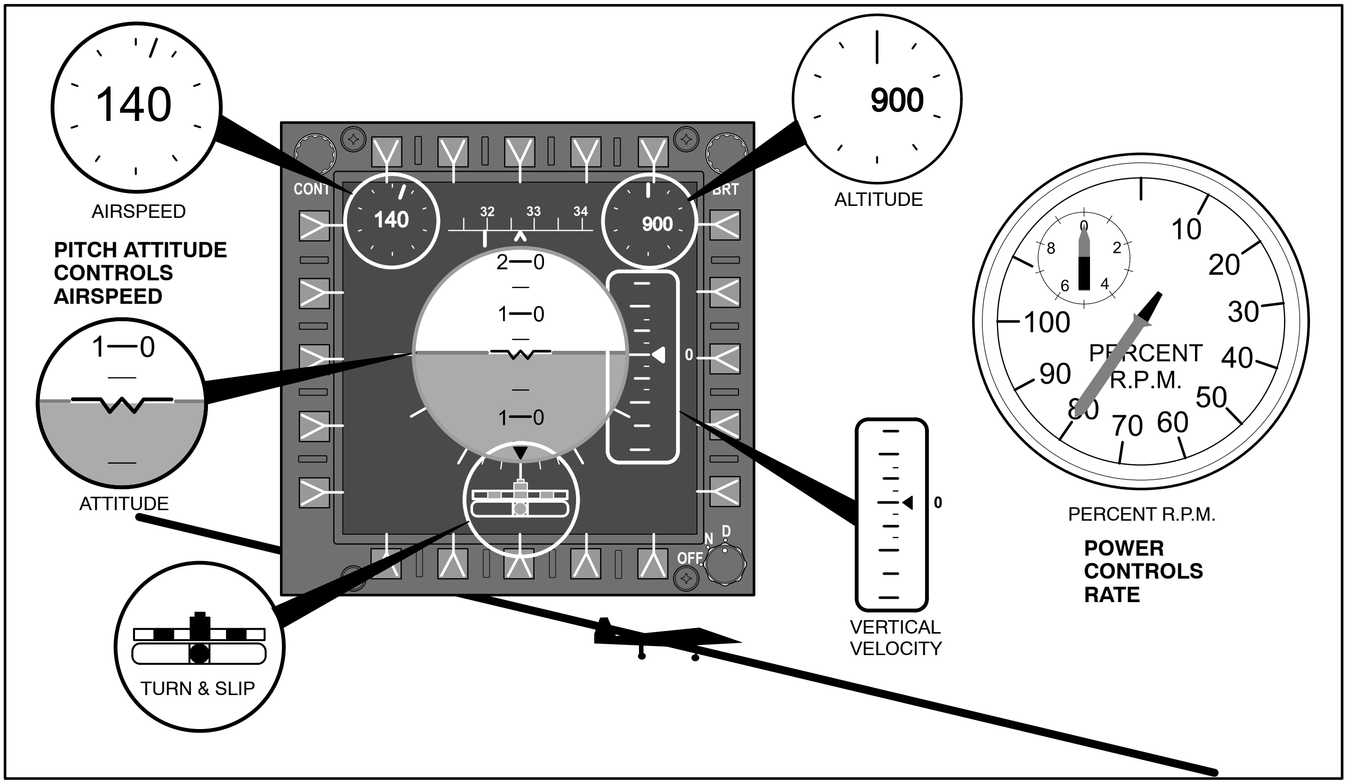


Figure 18-12. Constant-Rate Maneuver

18.4.2.1 Climbing and Descending Turns

When constant-rate climbs and descents are accomplished during a turn, a decrease in the aircraft vertical lift component affects nose attitude control. For example, when entering a turn after a constant airspeed climb has already been established, the nose attitude will have to be decreased slightly to maintain constant airspeed. When entering a turn while performing a constant-rate descent, be prepared to raise the nose of the aircraft slightly to maintain the airspeed and add power to maintain the vertical speed.

18.5 ROTARY-WING INSTRUMENT FLYING

The principles of fixed-wing aircraft basic instrument maneuvers generally apply to rotary-wing aircraft as well; however the basic differences in the aerodynamics of the two types require some consideration. Most helicopters are equipped with Automatic Stabilization Equipment (ASE)/Automatic Flight Control System (AFCS) and artificial cyclic stick trim to compensate for their inherent instability. The ASE/AFCS provides stabilization in the pitch, roll, and yaw axis. Altitude retention may also be incorporated.

18.5.1 Attitude Stabilization

The ASE/AFCS receives pitch and roll information from the vertical gyro. Corrections are automatically applied to maintain the attitude selected by the pilot with the cyclic stick. Electrical trim is provided to give an artificial feel similar to that experienced in fixed-wing aircraft trimmed for a condition of flight. Any neutral cyclic stick position can be selected with the electrical trim and that attitude will be maintained by the ASE without control pressure. The electrical trim can be overcome with slight control pressure and will return to the original position when the pressure is released.

18.5.2 Yaw Stabilization

The yaw channel on the ASE/AFCS receives information from the compass system and provides corrections to the rotary rudder to maintain heading. Balanced flight is achieved through coordinated use of the cyclic stick and rudder pedals.

18.5.3 Altitude Stabilization

The altitude channel of the ASE/AFCS receives information from the barometric altitude controller. The altitude channel may be engaged or disengaged at will, whenever the ASE/AFCS is engaged, and will maintain or correct to the altitude at which it was engaged. During climbs or descents, the altitude channel must momentarily be disengaged until reaching the desired altitude and then engaged.

18.5.4 Attitude Control

Attitude control is achieved through control of the tip path plane by cyclic control over the pitch of the individual blades. Aircraft reactions to pitch and roll movements of the cyclic stick are similar to those experienced in fixed-wing aircraft and manifest themselves in the same way on the attitude indicator and performance instruments.

18.5.5 Power Control

The amount of lift produced by the rotor system is dependent on two controllable factors: rotary wing rpm and pitch of the blades. Since the rotary wing operates efficiently only in a narrow range of rpm, power must be supplied in sufficient quantities to drive the rotor within the normal range. The second controllable factor is the collective pitch of the blades. This is controlled from the cockpit with the collective pitch lever. Any change in the collective pitch of the blades will change the requirement for power to maintain rotor rpm. Mechanical or electrical linkages between the collective pitch lever and the power plant(s) compensate, at least in part, for these changes. Adjustments, if required, may be made manually. For purposes of this manual, power control is defined as collective pitch control.

For simplicity, consider the force generated by the rotor disc to be exerted perpendicular to the plane of rotation. This is the result of the thrust and lift components. In effect, horizontal velocity is achieved by tilting the rotor disc in the desired direction and creating a thrust component. The magnitude of the thrust component (airspeed) is controlled by the degree of tilt (pitch attitude). Adjustment of pitch attitude has an immediate effect on airspeed equilibrium. It also has an immediate, but much less pronounced, effect on altitude equilibrium. The effect of forces in forward flight is nearly vertical; therefore, change in its magnitude (collective pitch) has a pronounced effect on the lift component (altitude). The effect on thrust (airspeed) is much less significant.

18.5.6 Altitude Control

Minor corrections to maintain a desired altitude at a constant airspeed are accomplished with adjustments of collective pitch.

Any change in nose attitude will result in a change of airspeed. Climbs and descents may be accomplished by increasing or decreasing the collective pitch. Airspeed changes to achieve the recommended climbing or descending airspeed should be initiated as the maneuver is commenced. Constant-rate climbs and descents are accomplished at a constant nose attitude by varying the collective pitch setting.

18.5.7 Airspeed Control

Airspeed control is achieved by control of nose attitude. Except for minor airspeed corrections, an adjustment of collective pitch will be necessary to maintain altitude, rate of climb, or descent during the change.

18.6 PARTIAL PANEL FLIGHT

18.6.1 Heading Indicator Failure

Heading indicator failure may require use of the magnetic compass for heading information. Remember that this instrument provides reliable information only during straight-and-level unaccelerated flight. Due to this limitation, timed turns are recommended when making heading changes by reference to the magnetic compass. This is an emergency condition and should be treated as such.

A timed turn is accomplished by establishing a bank attitude on the attitude indicator that will result in a desired rate of turn as shown by the turn needle. If the attitude indicator has failed (following paragraph), the rate of turn should be maintained by proper positioning of the turn needle. In order to turn to a particular heading, divide the number of degrees to turn by the rate of turn (1-1/2° per second [1/2 standard rate turn] or 3° per second [standard rate turn]) and turn for the required number of seconds. Roll-in and rollout should be commenced on time.

In this case, 30 seconds should lapse from the time control pressures were applied to enter the turn until control pressures are applied when rolling out of the turn (Figure 18-13).

Although timed turns are preferred when using the magnetic compass as a heading reference, an alternate method may be used. Turns to headings can be made by applying control pressures to roll out of a turn when reaching a predetermined lead point on the magnetic compass. When using the magnetic compass in this manner, the aircraft angle of bank should not exceed 15° in order to minimize dip error. Dip error must also be considered in computing the lead point at which to begin rolling out of a turn. This is particularly noticeable when turning to a heading of north or south. For example, turns to north require a normal lead point plus a number of degrees equal to the flight latitude. Turns to south require turning past the desired heading by a number of degrees equal to the flight latitude minus the normal lead. This error is negligible when turning to east or west; therefore, use the normal amount of lead when turning to either of these headings.

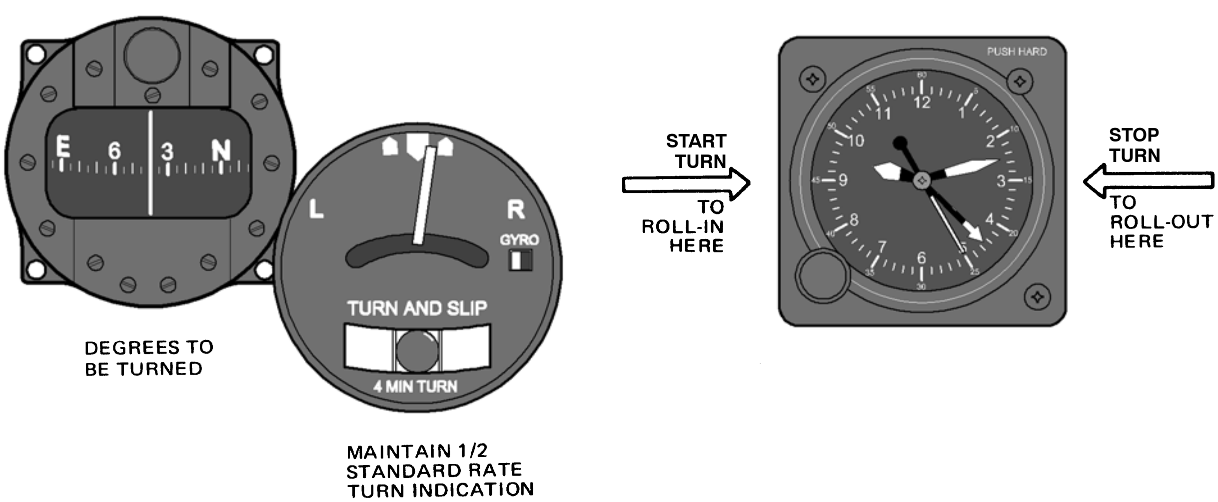


Figure 18-13. Performing the Timed Turn

18.6.2 Attitude Indicator Failure

The attitude indicator is the single most important instrument required for instrument flight. Since failures of the attitude gyro do occur, all pilots must be proficient at controlling the aircraft under instrument conditions without the use of this instrument. The primary attitude control (nose and wing) in partial panel will consist of one instrument for the primary nose attitude indication and another for wing attitude. Figure 18-14 shows the function of the instruments in a scan pattern with the attitude gyro inoperative. The table is applicable to all Navy aircraft for general instrumentation. When flying under partial panel conditions, the pilot should anticipate the desired indications on the performance instruments due to the slight lag inherent in these instruments. Failure to do so will usually result in overcontrol of the aircraft.

Maneuver	Attitude	Primary Attitude Instrument	Attitude Cross-Check Instrument	Performance Instruments	Supporting Instruments
Straight and level	Nose	Altimeter, VSI		Airspeed	Power, Magnetic Compass
	Wing	Needle-ball	Heading indicator		
Level turns	Nose	Altimeter, VSI		Airspeed, Heading indicator, Clock	Power, Magnetic Compass
	Wing	Needle-ball			
Straight climbs and descents	Nose	Airspeed		Altimeter, VSI	Power, Magnetic Compass
	Wing	Needle-ball	Heading indicator		
Climbing or descending turns	Nose	Airspeed		Altimeter, VSI, Heading indicator	Power, Magnetic Compass
	Wing	Needle-ball			

Figure 18-14. Function of Instruments — Partial Panel

CHAPTER 19

Instrument Patterns and Confidence Maneuvers

19.1 PURPOSE

Present missions require some aircraft to be flown at all attitudes under instrument conditions. Instrument patterns incorporate fundamental airwork into a sequence wherein the pilot is faced with continuous changes of attitude and speed. Confidence maneuvers are basic aerobatic maneuvers developed for increasing confidence in the use of attitude indicators in attitudes of extreme pitch and bank. Practice of these maneuvers develops good timing precision and smoothness in aircraft control and increases the speed of scanning. Mastery of these maneuvers also will aid the pilot in recovery from unusual attitudes. Prior to flight, the pilot should consult the NATOPS flight manual for additional maneuvers, performance characteristics, and limitations.

19.2 INSTRUMENT PATTERNS

19.2.1 Vertical S-1, S-2, S-3, S-4

The vertical S maneuvers are proficiency maneuvers designed to improve a pilot's cross-check and aircraft control. There are four types: the 1, 2, 3, and 4.

19.2.1.1 Vertical S-1

The vertical S-1 maneuver (Figure 19-1) is a continuous series of rate climbs and descents flown on a constant heading. The altitude flown between changes of vertical direction and rate of vertical speed must be compatible with aircraft performance.

The vertical S-1 should be flown at a constant airspeed.

19.2.1.2 Vertical S-2

The vertical S-2 is the same as a vertical S-1 except that a 1/2 Standard Rate Turn (SRT) is maintained during the climb and descent.

The turn is established simultaneously with the initial climb or descent (Figure 19-2).

19.2.1.3 Vertical S-3

The vertical S-3 (Figure 19-3) is the same as a vertical S-2 except that the direction of turn is reversed at the beginning of each descent. Enter the vertical S-3 in the same manner as the vertical S-2 (Figure 19-2).

19.2.1.4 Vertical S-4

The vertical S-4 (Figure 19-3) is the same as the vertical S-3 except that the direction of turn is reversed simultaneously with each change of vertical direction. Enter the vertical S-4 in the same manner as the vertical S-2 or S-3.

Any of the vertical S maneuvers may be initiated with a climb or descent. Conscientious practice of these maneuvers will greatly improve the pilot's familiarity with the aircraft, instrument scan, and overall aircraft control during precision instrument approaches. For this reason, the maneuvers should be practiced at approach speeds and configurations, and at low altitudes, as well as at cruise speeds, clean, and at higher altitudes.

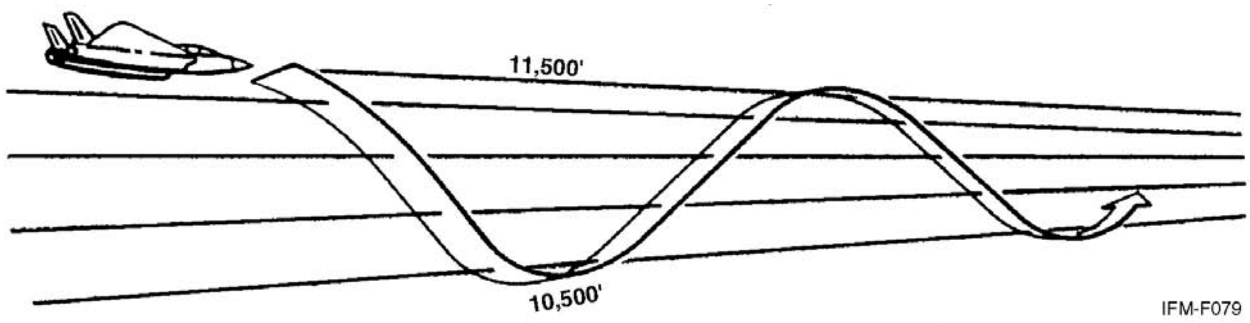


Figure 19-1. Vertical S-1

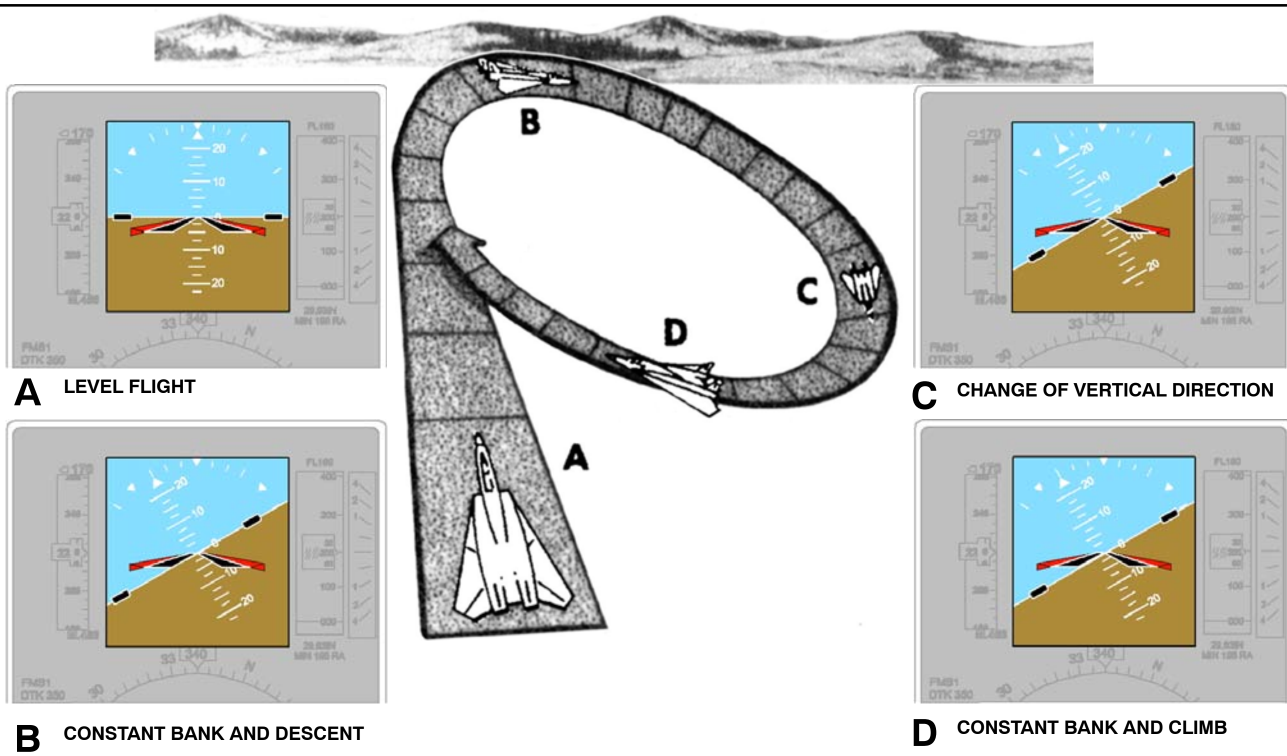


Figure 19-2. Vertical S-2

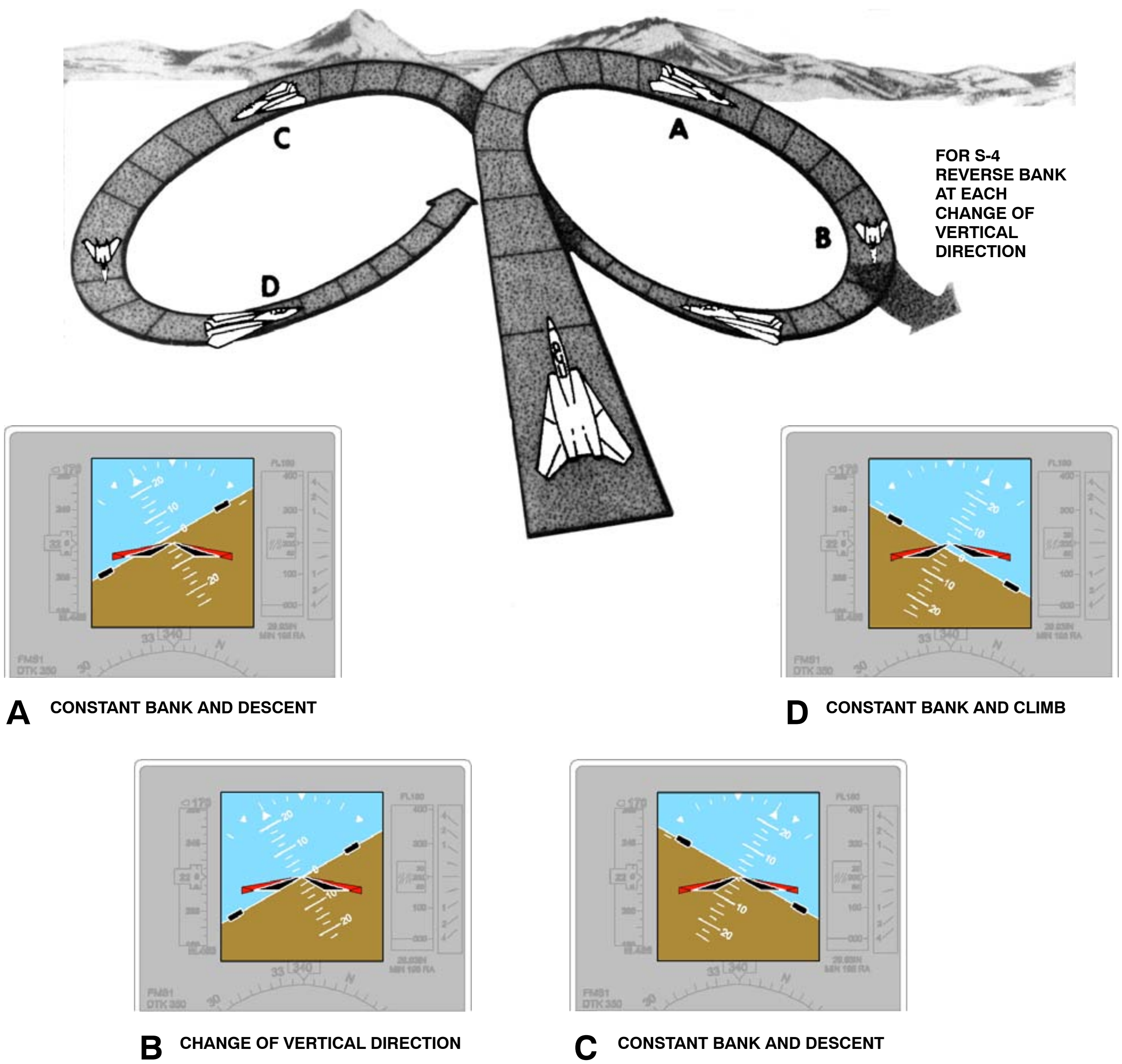


Figure 19-3. Vertical S-3 and S-4

19.2.2 Steep Turns

A steep turn is one in which the angle of bank used is larger than that required for normal instrument flying. In most aircraft, 30° is the normal maximum angle of bank used because of the ease of control and precision afforded.

Entry into a steep turn is accomplished the same as for a normal turn. As the bank is increased past normal, greater loss of vertical lift occurs, requiring more pitch adjustment. The use of trim in steep turns varies with individual aircraft characteristics and pilot technique. Additional power will be required to maintain airspeed as the bank is increased.

Bank should be held constant because varying the angle of bank during the turn contributes significantly to difficulty in pitch control. Precession error in the attitude indicator is more pronounced during steep turns. If altitude deviation becomes excessive, reduce the angle of bank as necessary to regain positive pitch control.

When rolling out of a steep turn, be alert to correct for the higher-than-normal pitch attitude and power used during the turn. Roll out at the same rate used with normal turns. The performance instruments should be scanned closely during rollout, as the attitude indicator may have considerable precession error (Figure 19-4).

19.2.3 OSCAR Pattern

OSCAR pattern (Figure 19-5) is entered in the following sequence:

1. Enter pattern on base altitude at normal cruise.

2. Climbing left SRT, gain 1,000 feet.

3. 1 to 2 minutes straight and level at slow cruise.

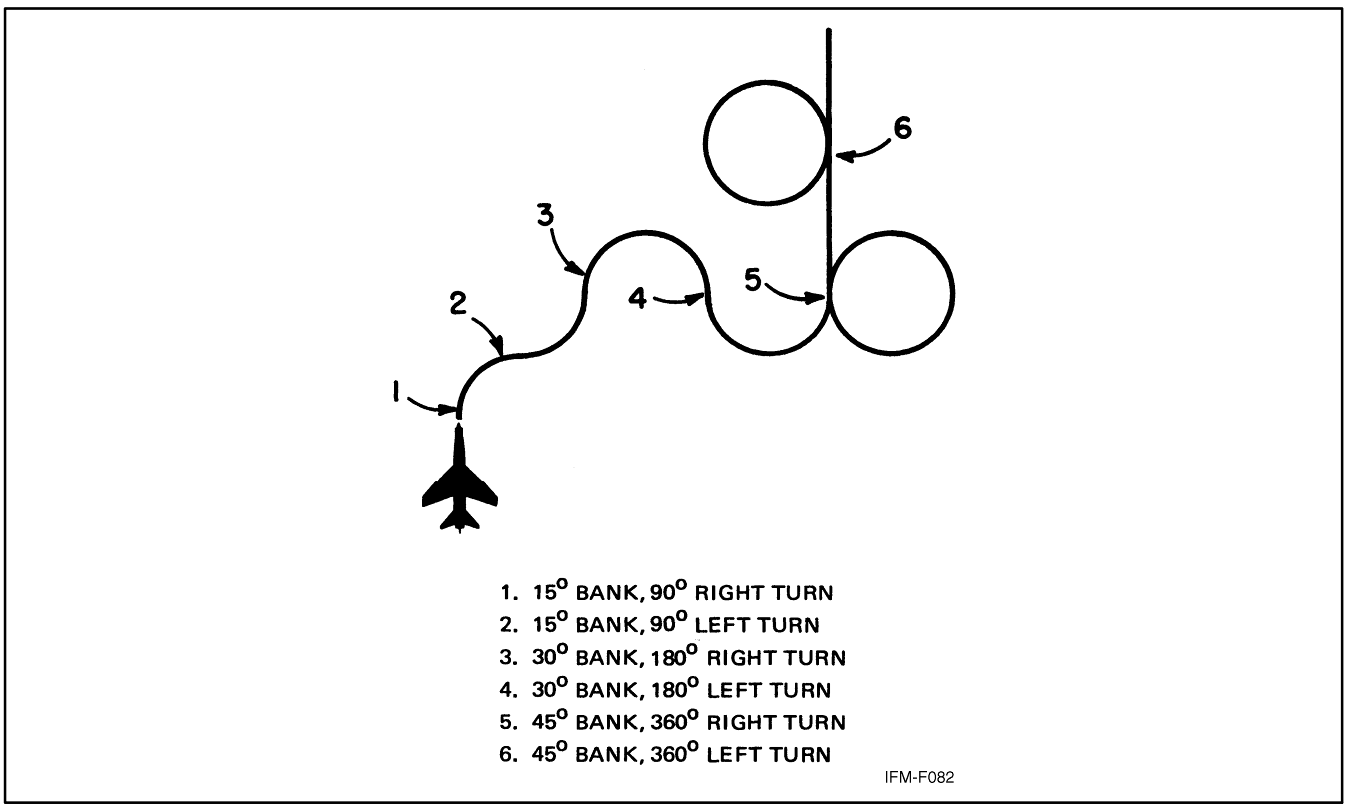


Figure 19-4. Steep Turn Pattern

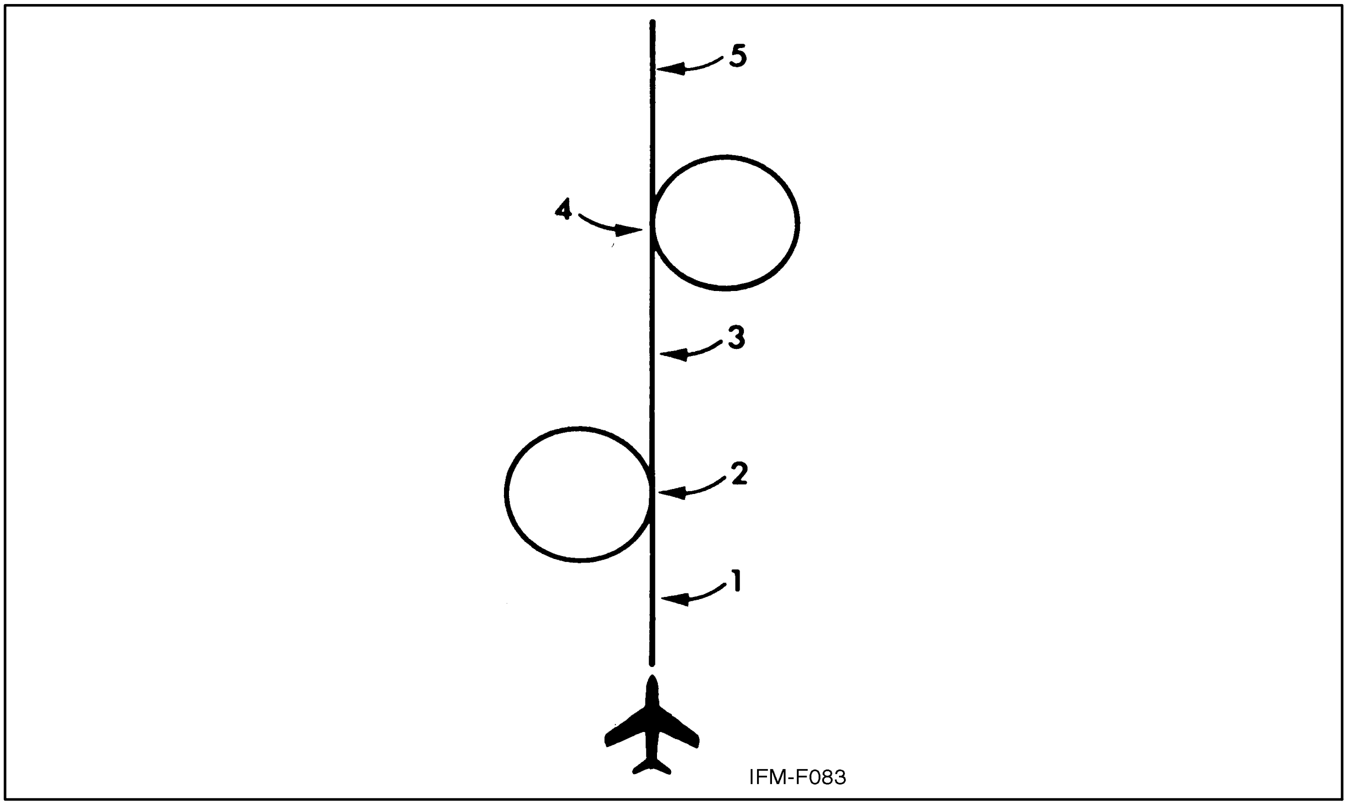


Figure 19-5. OSCAR Pattern

4. Descending right SRT, lose 1,000 feet.

5. Recover straight and level; return to normal cruise.

19.2.4 CHARLIE Pattern

CHARLIE pattern (Figure 19-6) is entered in the following sequence:

1. Start straight and level 2 minutes normal cruise.

2. Climb 667 feet per minute, SRT for 270°, gain 1,000 feet.

3. Fast cruise 2 minutes, straight and level.

4. Reduce power and slow first 90° of turn, then descend standard rate 360°.

5. Commence standard rate climb; 2 minutes gain 1,000 feet.

6. Level off, left SRT for 270°, accelerate to normal cruise.

7. Climb standard rate, straight, for 2 minutes.

8. Lower wheels going into right SRT, descend 800 fpm.

9. Recover at starting altitude, at normal cruise.

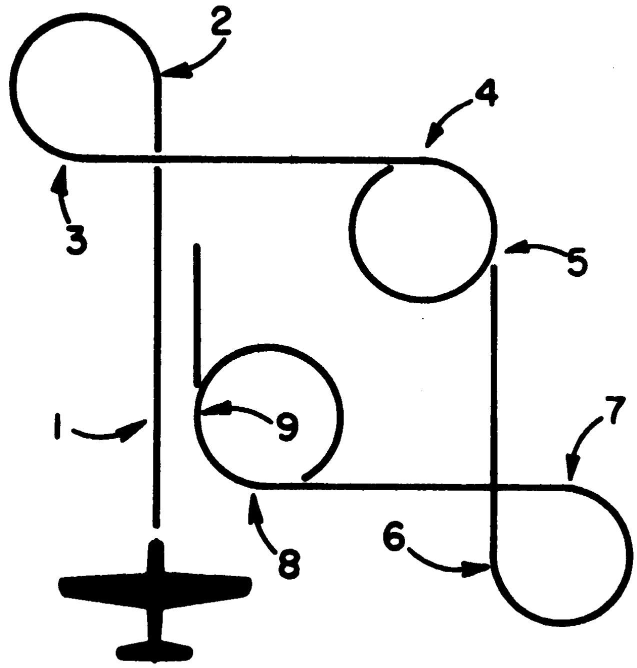


Figure 19-6. BRAVO/CHARLIE Pattern

19.2.5 BRAVO Pattern

A BRAVO pattern is the same as the CHARLIE pattern with the following exceptions:

1. Maintain a constant altitude and normal cruise.
2. All legs 1 minute.

19.2.6 YANKEE Pattern

YANKEE pattern (Figure 19-7) is entered in the following sequence:

1. Start 4,000 to 6,000 feet per minute descent, speed brakes out, 1 minute.
2. Commence 1/2 SRT for 180°.
3. Level off at one-half starting altitude.
4. Straight and level 1 minute.
5. Commence 1/2 SRT, 45°.
6. Assume landing configuration straight and level 1 minute.
7. Commence SRT 180°.
8. Transition to desired approach speed straight and level 30 seconds.
9. Commence recommended rate of descent 2 minutes.
10. Wave off.

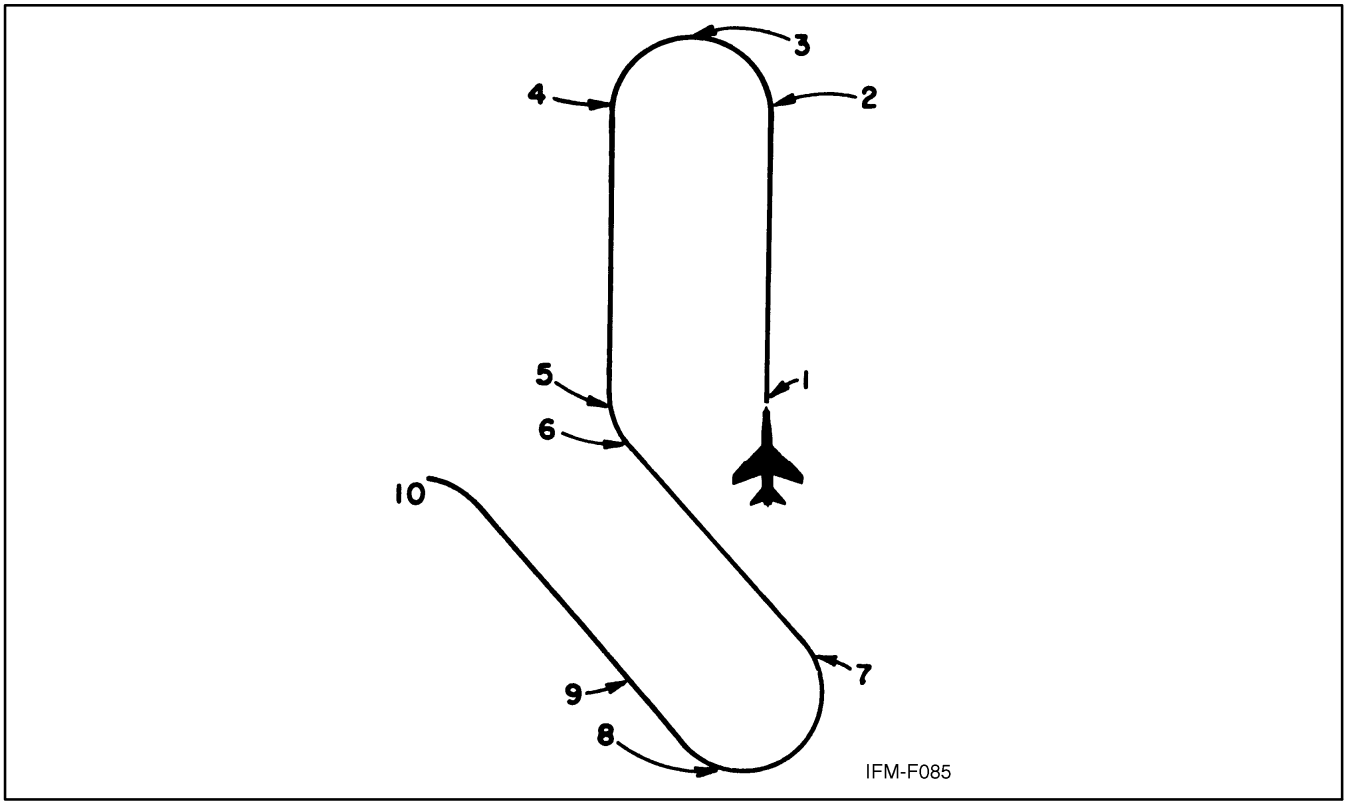


Figure 19-7. YANKEE Pattern (High-Performance Aircraft)

19.3 CONFIDENCE MANEUVERS

Note

The following maneuvers are not applicable to rotary-wing aircraft.

19.3.1 Wingover

The wingover is a combination climbing and diving turn with approximately 180° of heading change (Figure 19-8). The maneuver is commenced from straight-and-level flight after obtaining the desired airspeed. Start a steep climbing turn in either direction so that the heading of the aircraft has changed approximately 90° as the aircraft approaches 90° angle of bank. When the angle of bank reaches 90°, allow the nose of the aircraft to start down. As the nose of the aircraft passes through the horizon, smoothly decrease the angle of bank to a wings-level attitude. The rate of roll during the recovery should be the same as the rate of roll used during the entry.

19.3.2 Barrel Roll

The barrel roll is a combination climbing and diving maneuver that is accomplished by smoothly rolling the aircraft about a point 45° off the aircraft heading on the horizon. The maneuver is accomplished by commencing a simultaneous climb and roll at a rate that will achieve a 90° change of heading as the aircraft completes 180° of roll (inverted flight). The nose should reach a point about 45° above the horizon as 90° of roll is completed. As the nose drops below the horizon, the roll should be continued and backpressure increased as necessary to place the aircraft straight and level at the completion of the roll (Figure 19-9).

Note

This maneuver should be attempted only in aircraft equipped with the three-axis Attitude Direction Indicator (ADI).

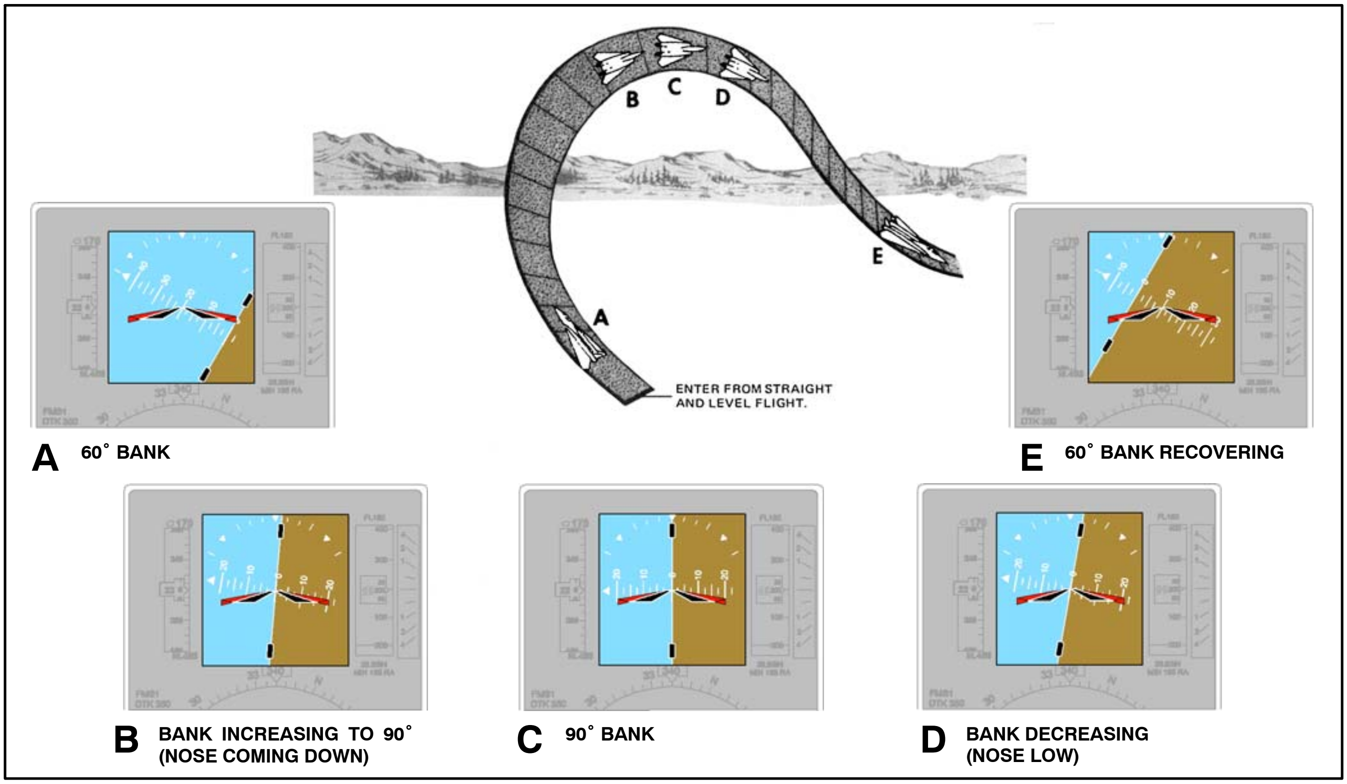


Figure 19-8. Wingover

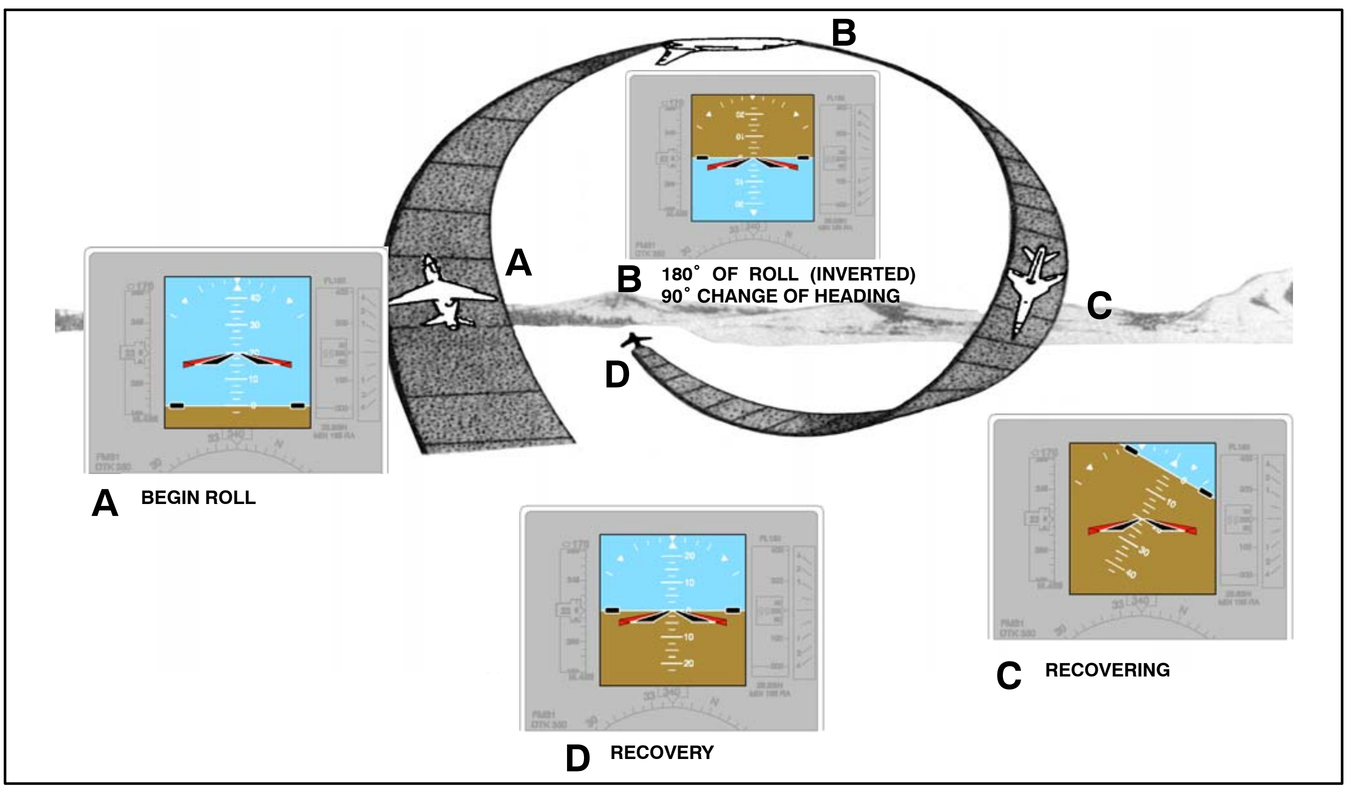


Figure 19-9. Barrel Roll

19.3.3 Aileron Roll

Begin the maneuver from straight-and-level flight after obtaining the desired airspeed. Smoothly increase the pitch attitude with the wings level and as directed by the applicable NATOPS flight manual. Start a roll in either direction and adjust the rate of roll so that, when inverted, the wings will be level as the fuselage dot of the miniature aircraft passes through the horizon bar. Continue the roll and recover in a nose-low, wings-level attitude (Figure 19-10). The entire maneuver should be accomplished by reference to the attitude indicator. The rate of roll should be constant and continuous throughout the maneuver.

19.3.4 Loops

Advance the power and lower the nose to attain a desired entry airspeed compatible with aircraft performance. Refer to the attitude indicator and smoothly raise the nose to the horizon with the wings level. Upon reaching the horizon, increase back-pressure, ensuring sufficient g's are applied to pull the aircraft up through the vertical and over the top of the loop without exceeding aircraft limitations (Figure 19-11).

Bear in mind that some attitude indicators reverse themselves by controlled precession as the aircraft passes through a vertical attitude. It is essential that the aircraft wings are level prior to and after this reversal. An easy method of keeping the wings level is to keep the bank pointer centered at the top of the attitude indicator prior to reversal and then keeping it centered at the bottom after reversal. Be alert to recognize and then disregard the attitude indications during this short period of controlled precession.

As the airspeed decreases in the pullup, pitch control may become less effective and further backpressure may be required to maintain constant g force. As the airspeed drops to the point where the g can no longer be maintained in the control region without stalling, release some backpressure.

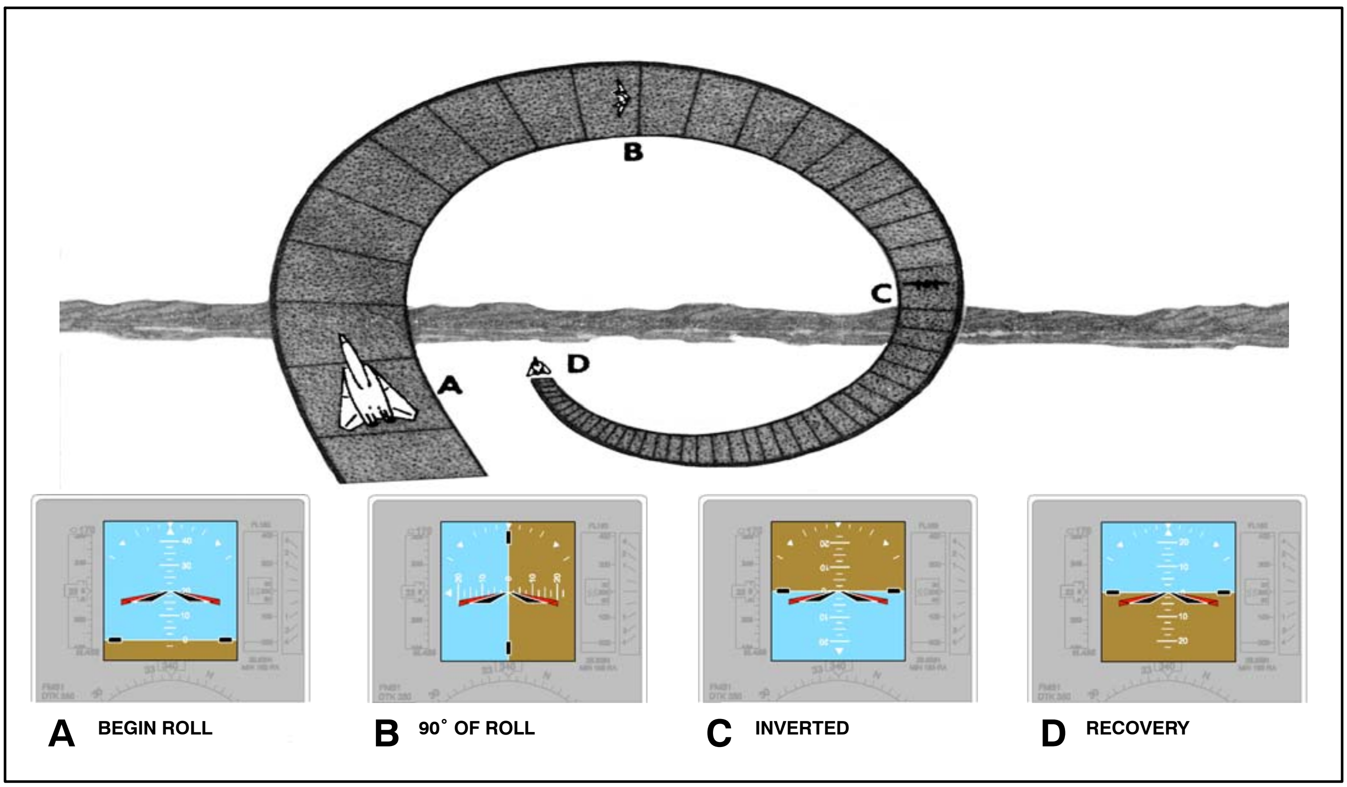


Figure 19-10. Aileron Roll

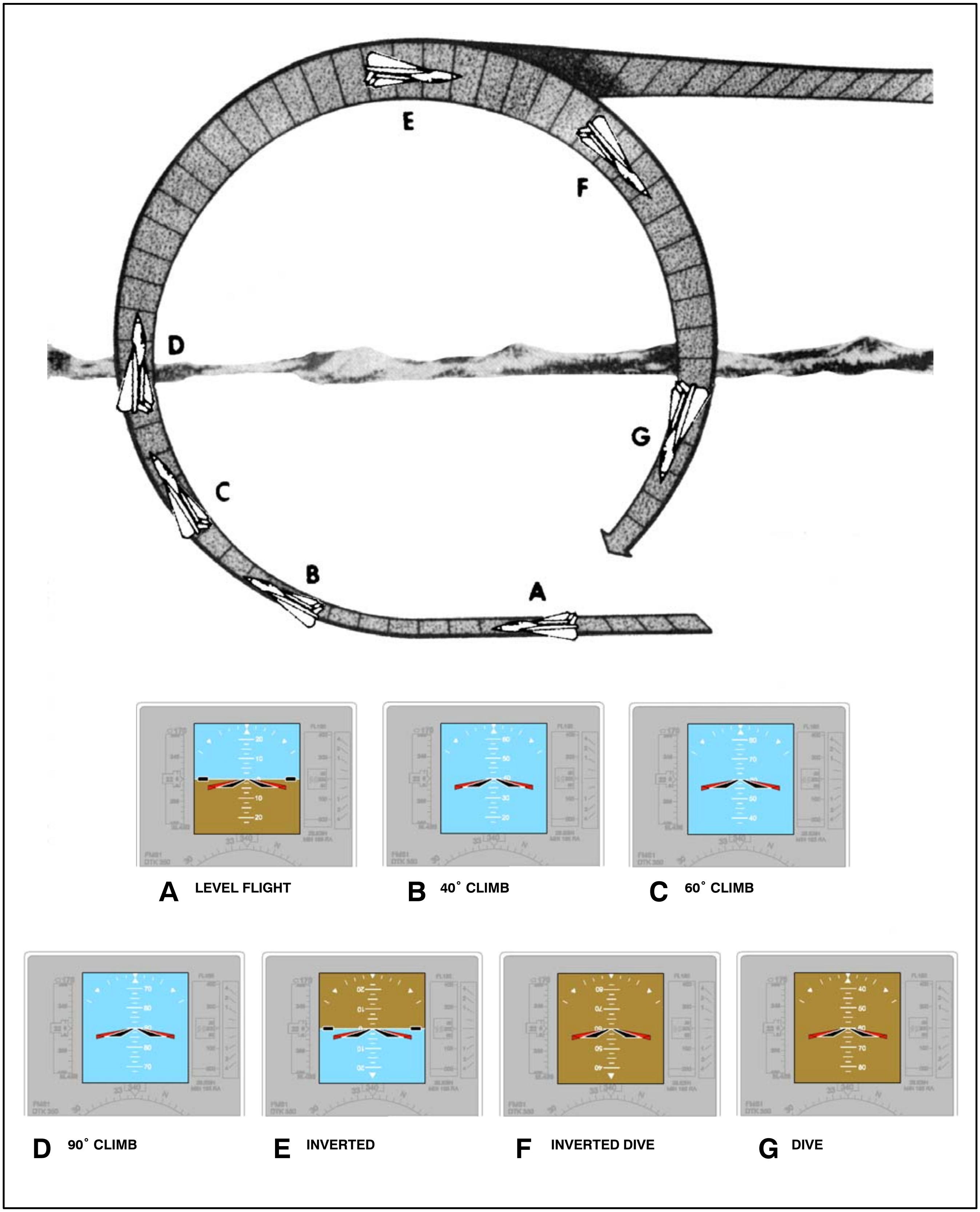


Figure 19-11. Loop

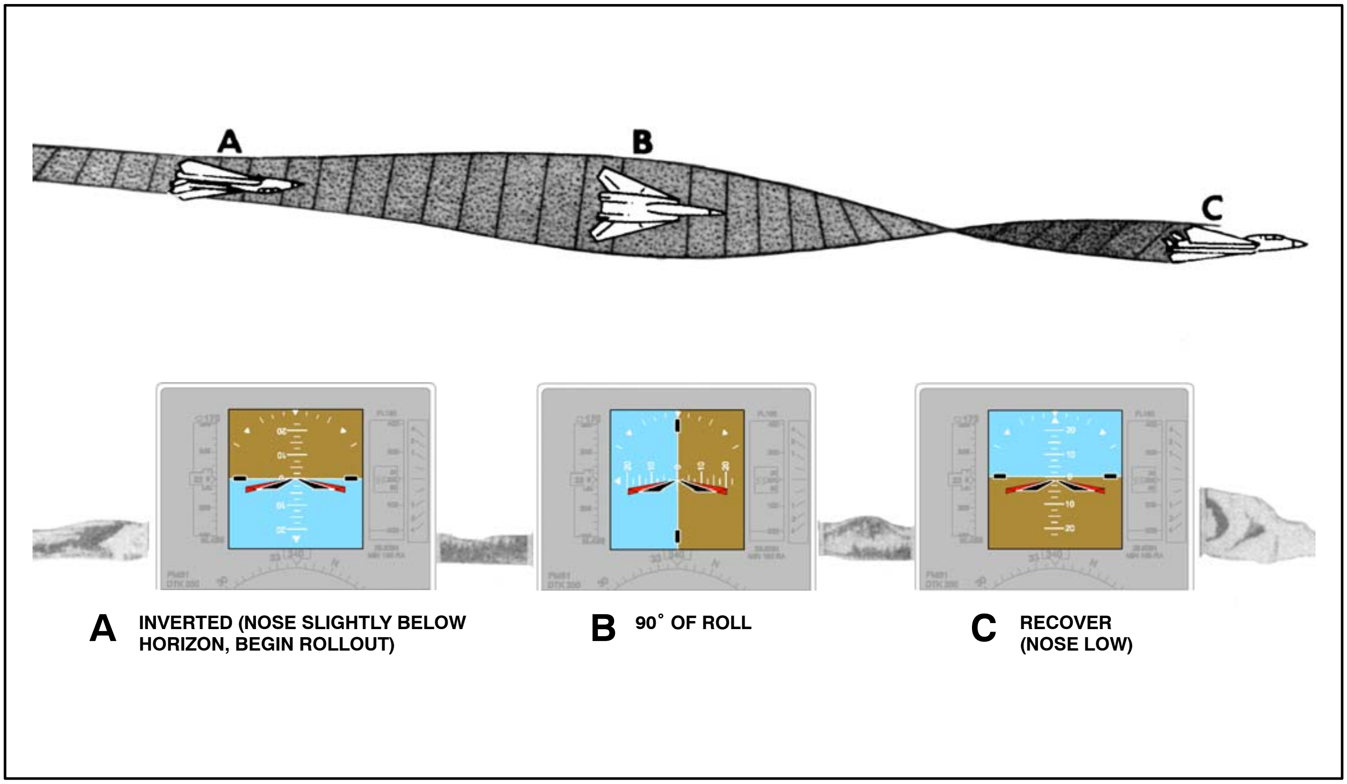


Figure 19-12. Immelmann Recovery

Ensure sufficient backpressure remains to fly the aircraft through the top of the loop with a safe margin of airspeed above the stall. In some aircraft, rudder application may be necessary to maintain balanced flight throughout the maneuver.

After passing through the inverted attitude at the top of the loop, gradually increase the backpressure as the airspeed increases. Recover from the resultant dive, being alert for controlled precession on the attitude indicator as the aircraft passes through the vertical attitude. Keep the aircraft wings level throughout the maneuver, being careful not to exceed any aircraft limitations.

Note

Considering varying load conditions with resultant accelerated stall speeds and feel/buffet changes, reference to the angle of attack indicator in aircraft so equipped is recommended during critical segments of the loop.

19.3.5 Immelmann

The Immelmann (Figure 19-12) is executed in the same manner as the first half of a loop followed by a half roll to an upright attitude. Maintain inverted flight through the top of the maneuver until just before the fuselage dot of the miniature aircraft passes through the horizon bar. Release backpressure upon approaching the horizon and roll to an upright level attitude. Do not reduce power until the maneuver is completed.

19.3.6 Half Cuban Eight

The Half Cuban Eight is the first half of a loop with a rollout from the inverted nosedown attitude, resulting in a 180° heading change. It differs from the Immelmann turn in that the rollout is in a nose-low attitude rather than a level attitude. This maneuver is practiced to develop the pilot’s confidence in the attitude indicator (Figure 19-13).

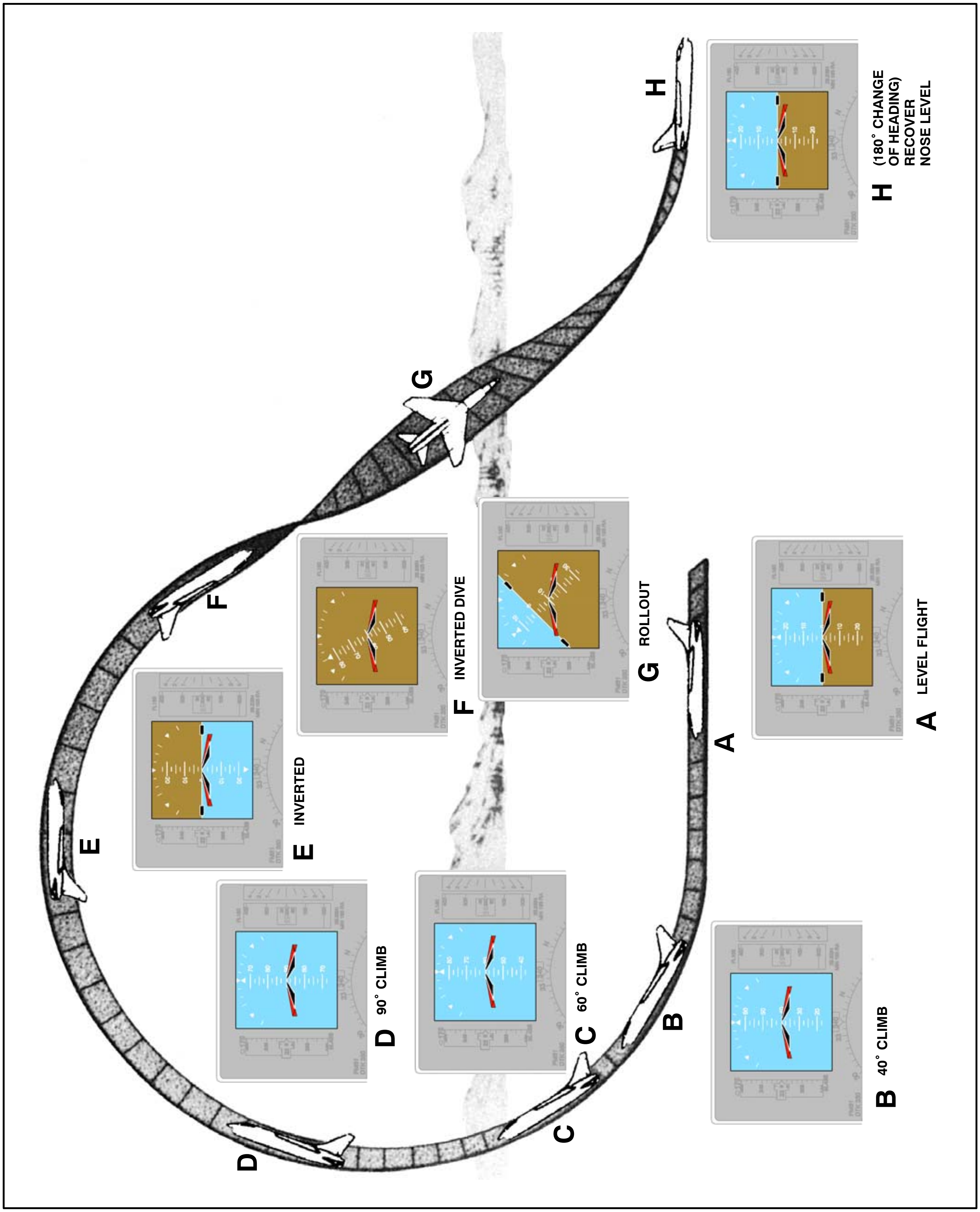


Figure 19-13. Half Cuban Eight

CHAPTER 20

Unusual Attitudes

20.1 INTRODUCTION

An unusual attitude is an aircraft attitude occurring inadvertently (Figure 20-1). It may result from one factor or a combination of several factors such as turbulence, distraction of cockpit duties, instrument failure, inattention, spatial disorientation, etc. In most instances, these attitudes are mild enough for the pilot to recover by reestablishing the proper attitude for the desired flight condition and resuming a normal cross-check.

Techniques of recovery should be compatible with the severity of the unusual attitude, the characteristics of the aircraft, and the altitude available for the recovery. The procedures outlined in this chapter are not designed to recover from controlled tactical maneuvers. They are applicable to unusual attitudes wherein recovery can be accomplished before entering areas of critical aerodynamics peculiar to a specific type of aircraft.

1. Decreasing the angle of bank in a dive should assist pitch control.
2. Increasing the angle of bank in a climb may assist pitch control.
3. In most aircraft, a decrease of angle of attack is an acceptable recovery technique (near zero g), and in some aircraft this is the only acceptable technique, as an increase of bank will aggravate the recovery (refer to applicable NATOPS flight manual).
4. Power and drag devices used properly will assist airspeed control.

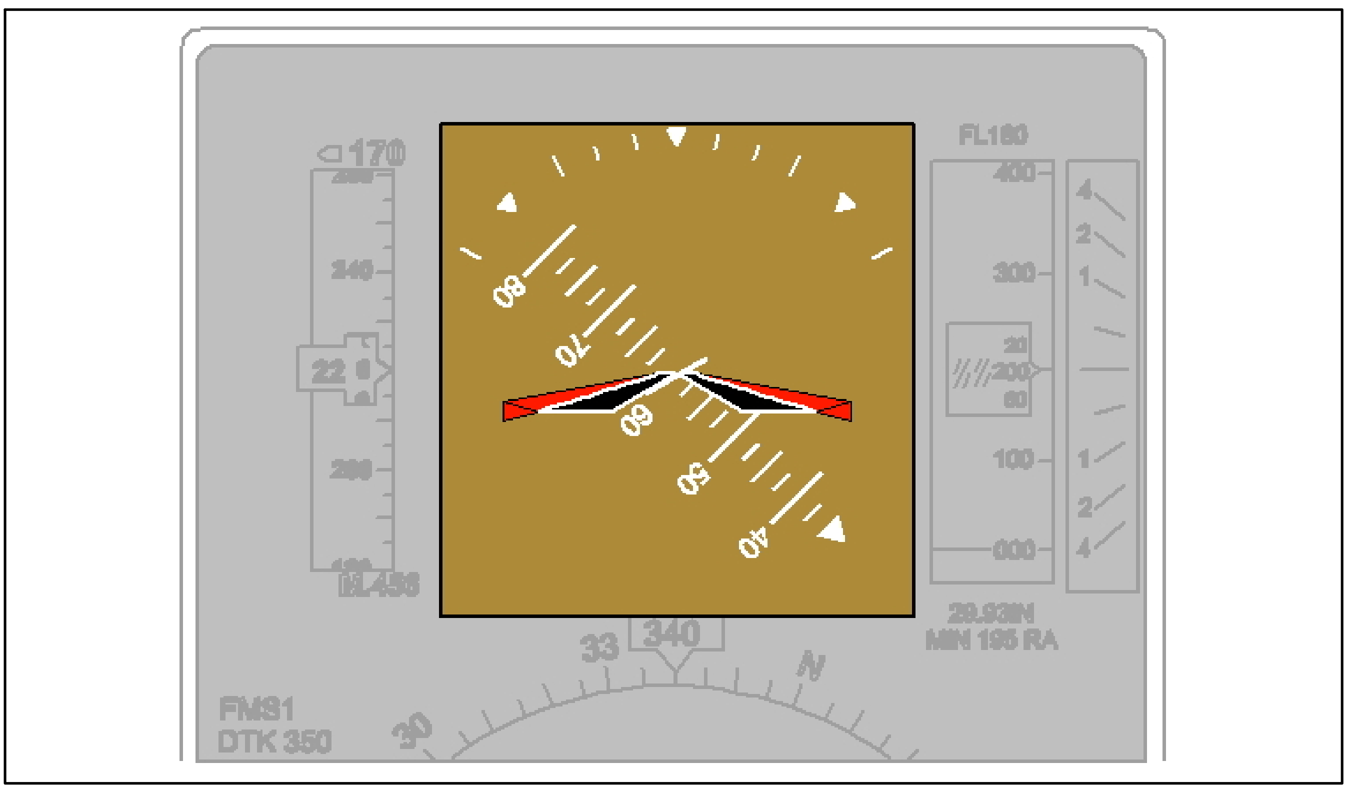


Figure 20-1. Unusual Attitude

20.2 ATTITUDE INTERPRETATION

Normally, an unusual attitude is recognized in one of two ways: an unusual attitude picture on the attitude indicator or unusual performance on the performance instruments. Regardless of how the attitude is recognized, verify an unusual attitude exists by comparing control and performance instrument indications prior to initiating recovery on the attitude indicator. This precludes entering an unusual attitude as a result of making control movements to correct for erroneous instrument indications. During this process, the attitude must correctly be interpreted. Additional attitude indicating sources (standby attitude indicator, copilot attitude indicator, etc.) should be used. If there is any doubt as to proper attitude indicator operation, recovery should be made using attitude indicator inoperative procedures.

The following techniques will aid aircraft attitude interpretation on the attitude indicator:

1. For attitude indicators with a single bank pointer and bank scale at the top, the bank pointer can be considered a sky pointer. It always points up and should be in the upper half of the case. Rolling toward the bank pointer to place it in the upper half of the case will correct an inverted attitude.

2. For those attitude indicators with the bank scale at the bottom, rolling in the direction that will place the pitch reference scale right-side up will correct an inverted attitude (Figure 20-2).

Ease of pitch interpretation varies with the type of attitude indicator installed. Attitude indicators having pitch reference scales in degrees and grey/black attitude spheres can easily be interpreted for climb or dive indications. For those aircraft not so equipped, the airspeed indicator, altimeter, or vertical speed indicator generally present the most easily interpreted indications of a climb or a dive. Attitude interpretation is a skill that must be highly developed by practice in flight or on the ground in simulators or with mockups.

20.3 RECOVERY PROCEDURES

Unusual attitudes are generally classified as nose high or nose low. Each has distinct recovery techniques that are generally applicable to all aircraft. Refer to the NATOPS flight manual for specific recovery procedures.

20.3.1 Nose-High Recovery

Factors to consider in nose-high recoveries are pitch attitude and airspeed. If the pitch attitude is not extreme and airspeed is not approaching the stall ranges, recovery can be considered to be a normal nose-high attitude.

To recover from a normal nose-high unusual attitude, use power as necessary, and smoothly lower the nose toward the level flight attitude. As the nose approaches the level flight attitude, level the wings and readjust power as necessary.

If the pitch attitude is extreme or airspeed is approaching the stall range, recovery can be considered to be for an extreme nose-high attitude.

To recover from an extreme nose-high unusual attitude, roll the aircraft in the shortest direction toward the wingover position. As the nose falls through the horizon, level the wings and raise the nose to the level flight attitude. Use power as necessary throughout the recovery.

Note

For swept-wing aircraft, the wingover recovery method is not acceptable. Instead, a decrease in angle of attack (zero g) is used until sufficient airspeed is gained to prevent an accelerated stall or spin condition. For further information, consult the applicable NATOPS flight manual.

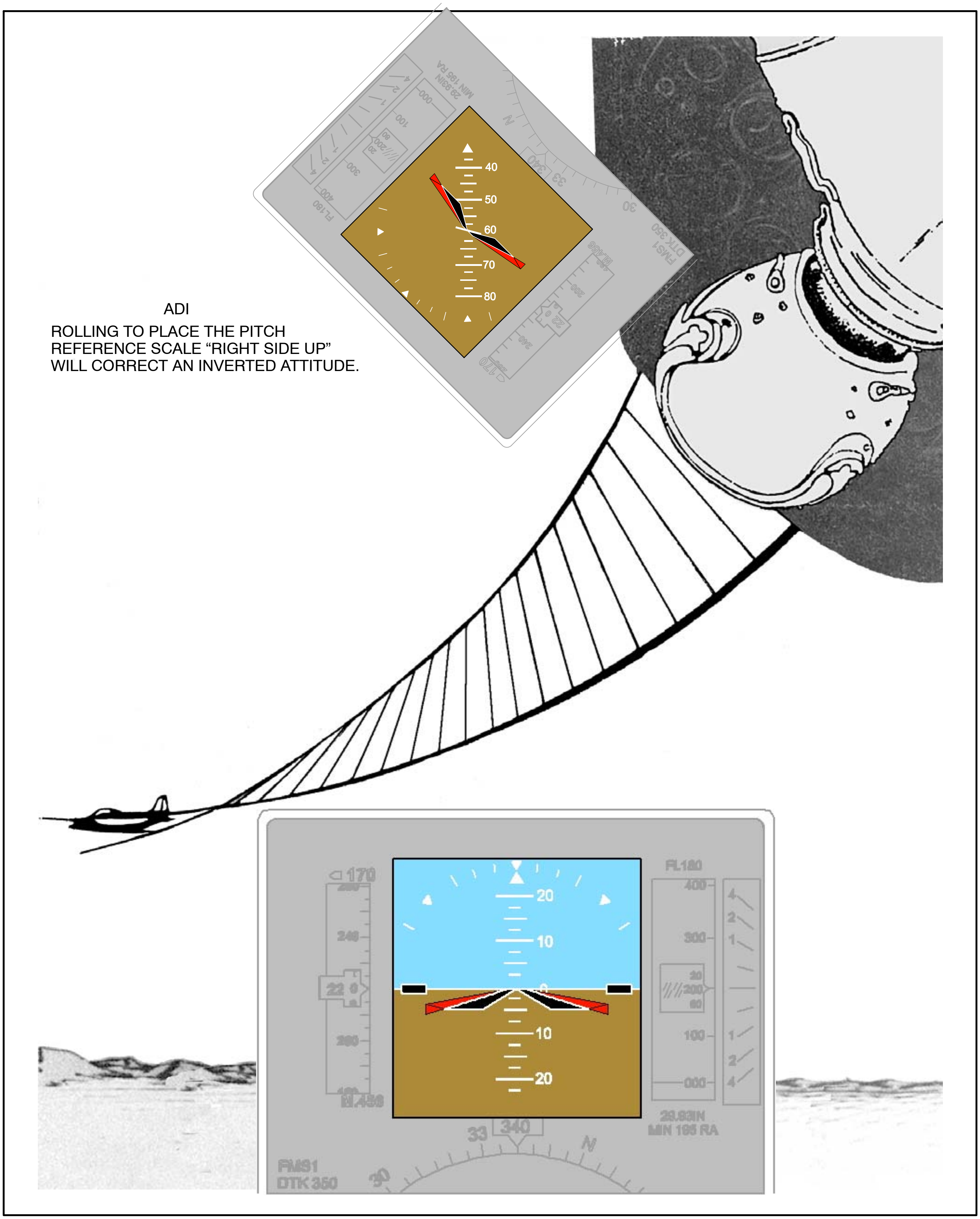


Figure 20-2. Bank Attitude Interpretation

20.3.2 Nose-Low Recovery

Factors to be considered in recovering from nose-low unusual attitudes are altitude and g loading during pullout. If altitude permits, avoid rolling pullouts, as allowable stresses in an angle of bank are considerably lower than those allowed in a wings-level pullout.

To recover from a nose-low unusual attitude, roll to a wings-level upright position, then raise the nose to the level flight attitude. Adjust power and/or drag devices as appropriate.

During unusual attitude recoveries, the pilot should coordinate the amount of bank and power used with the rate at which airspeed and pitch are being controlled. Bank and power used must be compatible with aircraft and engine characteristics.

Note

For helicopters encountering blade stall, in a nose-high attitude, collective pitch (power) must be reduced before applying attitude corrections. To avoid blade stall when recovering from steep diving attitudes, reduce collective pitch and bank attitude before initiating a pitch change. In all cases, avoid abnormal positive g loads; prevent negative g loads and inverted flight.

20.3.3 Partial Panel Unusual Attitudes

With an inoperative attitude indicator, successful recovery from unusual attitudes depends greatly on pilot proficiency and early recognition of attitude indicator failure. For example, attitude indicator failure should immediately be suspected if control pressures were applied for a turn without corresponding attitude indicator changes. Another example would be satisfactory performance instrument indications that contradict the picture on the attitude indicator.

20.3.3.1 Recovery Procedures — Partial Panel

Should an unusual attitude be encountered with an inoperative attitude indicator, determine whether the aircraft is in a climb or a dive by reference to the airspeed, altimeter, and vertical speed indicators.

If nose low, roll to center the turn needle and recover from the dive. Adjust power and/or drag devices as appropriate.

If nose high, use power as required. Apply controls as necessary to decrease the aircraft g to not less than zero g. After reaching level flight and if the aircraft is in a turn, smoothly roll to center the turn needle; reversal of the altimeter and vertical speeds tends to indicate passage of a level flight attitude. (Refer to the appropriate NATOPS flight manual for detailed aircraft limitations.)

As the level flight attitude is approached, as indicated by the decrease in rate of change of airspeed and altitude, a correction will be required to prevent chasing the vertical speed indicator. For example, in recovery from a nose-low unusual attitude, once the turn needle has been centered, back stick pressure is applied until the performance indicators show the approach of level flight. Because of the slight lag inherent in these instruments, the pilot should anticipate the performance instruments and apply opposite pressure as the indicators show the approach of the level flight attitude. Failure to do so will usually result in the progressing from one unusual attitude to another (in this example, from nose low to nose high).

WARNING

Spatial disorientation may become severe during the recovery from unusual attitudes with an inoperative attitude indicator. Extreme attitudes may result in an excessive loss of altitude and possible loss of aircraft control; therefore, the pilot should decide upon an altitude at which recovery attempts will be discontinued and the aircraft abandoned.

PART VI

Navigational Aids/Facilities and Procedures

CHAPTER 21

VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR)

21.1 INTRODUCTION

The VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) is a radio facility that eliminated many of the difficulties previously encountered when navigating with the radio compass. VOR course information is not affected by weather or other factors common to ADF. With a course indicator, it is possible to select and precisely fly any 1 of 360 courses to or from a VOR.

21.2 EQUIPMENT AND OPERATION

21.2.1 Equipment

The VOR provides 360 courses that radiate from the station like spokes from the hub of a wheel. These courses, known as radials, are identified by their magnetic bearing from the station; thus, regardless of heading, an aircraft on the 90° radial is physically located due east of the station. Flying to the station on this radial, the magnetic course is 270°. As the transmitting equipment is in the VHF band, the signals are free of atmospheric disturbances but subject to line-of-sight reception. Reception range varies according to the altitude of the aircraft (Figure 21-1).

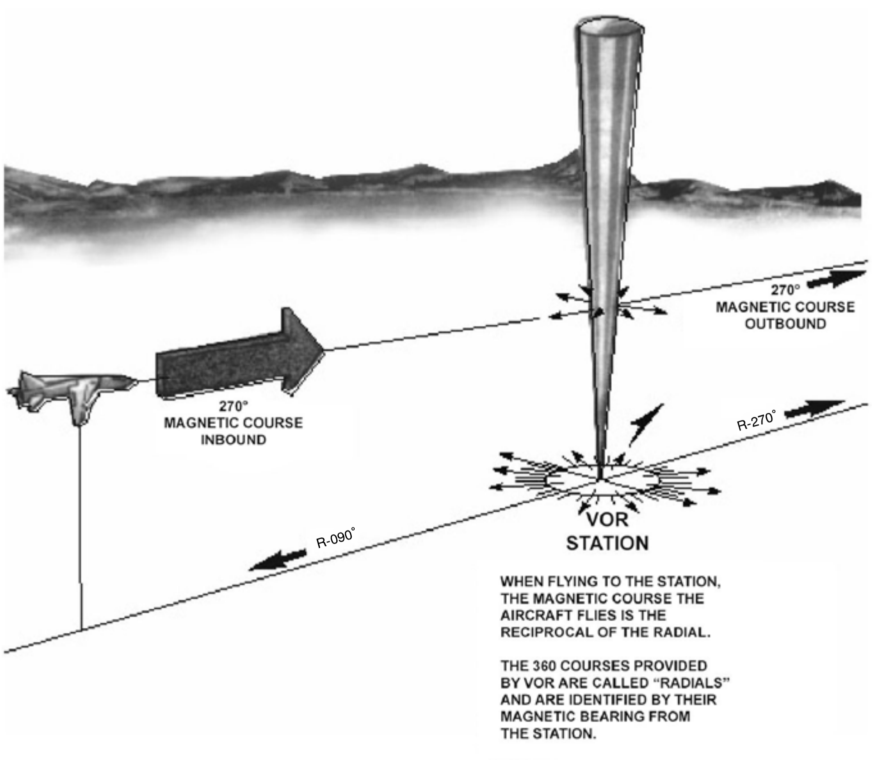


Figure 21-1. Radials

21.2.1.1 Principle of Operation

The transmission principle of the VOR is based on the creation of a phase difference between two signals. One of these signals, the reference phase, is omnidirectional and radiates from the station in a circular pattern. The phase of this signal is constant throughout 360°. The other signal, the variable phase, rotates uniformly at 1,800 rpm, which causes its phase to vary at a constant rate.

Magnetic north is used as the baseline for electronically measuring the phase relationship between the reference and variable phase signals. At magnetic north, the signals are exactly in phase; however, a phase difference exists at any other point around the station. This phase difference is measured electronically by the aircraft receiver and displayed on the navigation instruments (Radio Magnetic Indicator [RMI], course indicator, etc.) (Figure 21-2).

21.2.1.2 Control Panel

Typical VOR control panels contain a power switch, frequency selector knobs, a frequency window, and a volume control (Figure 21-3).

The VHF navigation frequency band is as follows:

1. ILS — 108.1 to 111.9 MHz (odd tenths).

2. VOR — 108.0 to 117.95 MHz.

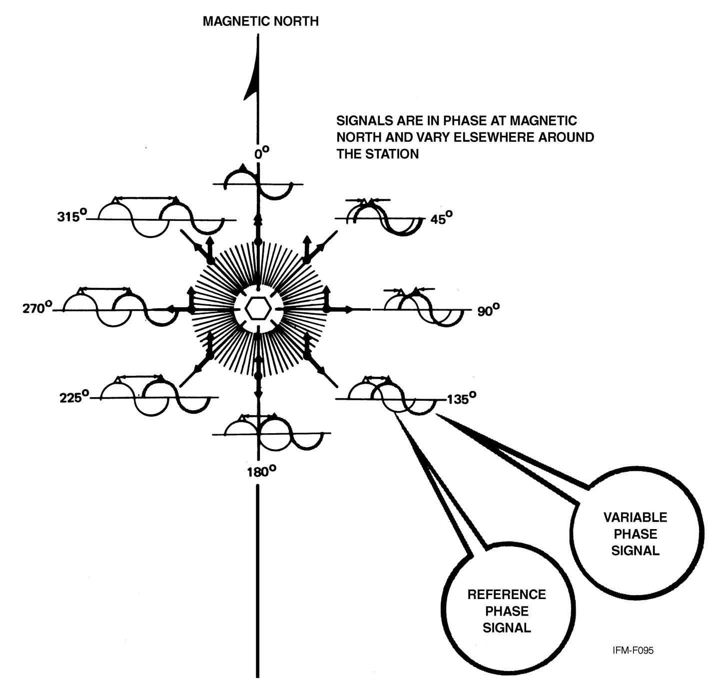


Figure 21-2. Signal Phase Angle Relationship

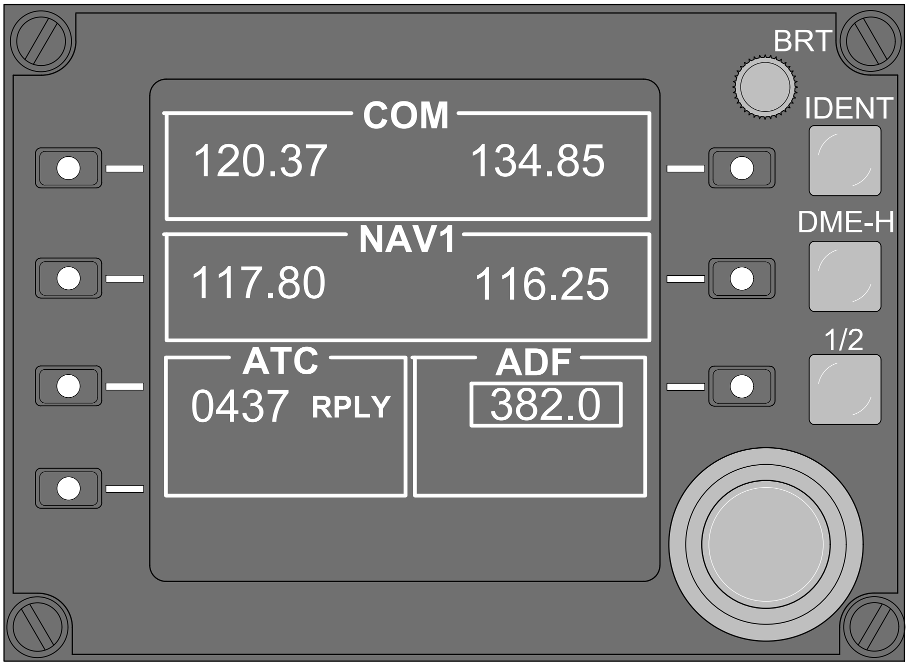


Figure 21-3. Control Panel

Since a large portion of the frequency band overlaps into the VHF communication band (108.0 to 135.9 MHz), the VOR receiver may be used as a secondary VHF communication receiver.

The volume control knob controls the level of the signals going into the headset only. It has no effect on the signal reception of the VOR receiver.

21.2.2 Operation

21.2.2.1 Tuning

To tune the VOR equipment, flip the power switch ON, select the desired frequency, and identify the station. The station identification may be a three-letter Morse code, a recorded voice, or a combination of both. The voice announcement alternates with the usual Morse code identification. If no air/ground communications facility is associated with the VOR, the phrase “UNATTENDED VOR” (VORTAC) precedes the station name. Positively identify the selected station. Through human error or equipment malfunction, it is possible that the station intended to be selected is not the one being received. This may occur as the result of failing to select the correct frequency or failure of the receiver to channel to the new frequency.

After identifying the VOR station, an unreliable signal can be identified on the instrument (refer to specific aircraft NATOPS). Some VOR stations transmit Transcribed Weather Broadcasts (TWEBs), Hazardous In-Flight Weather Advisory Service (HIWAS), Airmen’s Meteorological Information (AIRMETs), Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMETs), and possibly communications from air traffic control.

Note

During periods of maintenance, the coded identification is removed.

After the set is tuned, check the bearing pointer, Course Deviation Indicator (CDI), and TO-FROM indicator for proper operation. The bearing pointer should point to the magnetic bearing to the station. The CDI should center when this bearing is set in the course selector window, and the TO-FROM indicator should indicate TO.

Note

Although the RMI is used with the course indicator in the accompanying text and illustrations, the Bearing-Distance-Heading Indicator (BDHI) display of bearing information is identical.

21.2.2.2 VOR/DME Paired Frequencies

Distance Measuring Equipment (DME) consists of airborne and ground equipment, usually co-located. The DME provides distance (and in some systems groundspeed) information only from the ground facility. DME operates in the Ultrahigh Frequency (UHF) band; however, its frequency can be “paired” with VOR or Instrument Landing System (ILS) or Localizer (LOC) frequencies. The receiving equipment in most aircraft provide for automatic DME selection through a coupled VOR/ILS receiver. Selection of the appropriate VOR or ILS frequency automatically tunes the DME. Some equipment then allows the user to manually tune another VOR/ILS frequency and keep the DME paired to the previously selected VOR/ILS frequency. The UHF/VHF paired frequency chart can be found in the Flight Information Handbook.

21.3 PROCEDURES

21.3.1 Proceeding Direct to Station

To proceed directly to the station, turn the aircraft in the shorter direction to place the bearing pointer under the top index of the RMI. Set the bearing read under the head of the bearing pointer into the course selector window. If this does not center the CDI exactly, rotate the course set knob until the CDI does center. Maintain this course to the station. If either the compass card or the bearing pointer is inoperative, the course indicator may be used to determine the bearing to the station by rotating the course set knob until the CDI centers and TO is read in the TO-FROM indicator. The magnetic bearing from the aircraft to the station then appears in the course selector window (Figure 21-4).

21.3.2 Course Interceptions

Course interceptions are performed in most phases of instrument navigation. The equipment used varies, but an intercept heading must be flown that results in an angle or rate of intercept sufficient to solve a particular problem.

Rate of intercept, seen by the pilot as bearing pointer or CDI movement, is a result of the following factors:

1. The angle at which the aircraft is flown toward a desired course (angle of intercept).
2. True airspeed and wind (groundspeed).
3. Distance from the station.

The angle of intercept is the angle between the heading of the aircraft (intercept heading) and the desired course. Controlling this angle by selection and/or adjustment of the intercept heading is the easiest and most effective way to control course interceptions. Angle of intercept must be greater than the degrees from course, but should not exceed 90°. At 90°, rate of intercept is the maximum possible. Within this limit, adjust to achieve the most desirable rate of intercept.

When selecting an intercept heading, the key factor is the relationship between distance from the station and degrees from the course. Each degree, or radial, is 1 nm wide at a distance of 60 nm from the station. Width increases or decreases in proportion to the 60 nm distance. For example, 1° is 2 nm wide at 120 nm and 1/2 nm wide at 30 nm. For a given groundspeed and angle of intercept, the resultant rate of intercept varies according to the distance from the station.

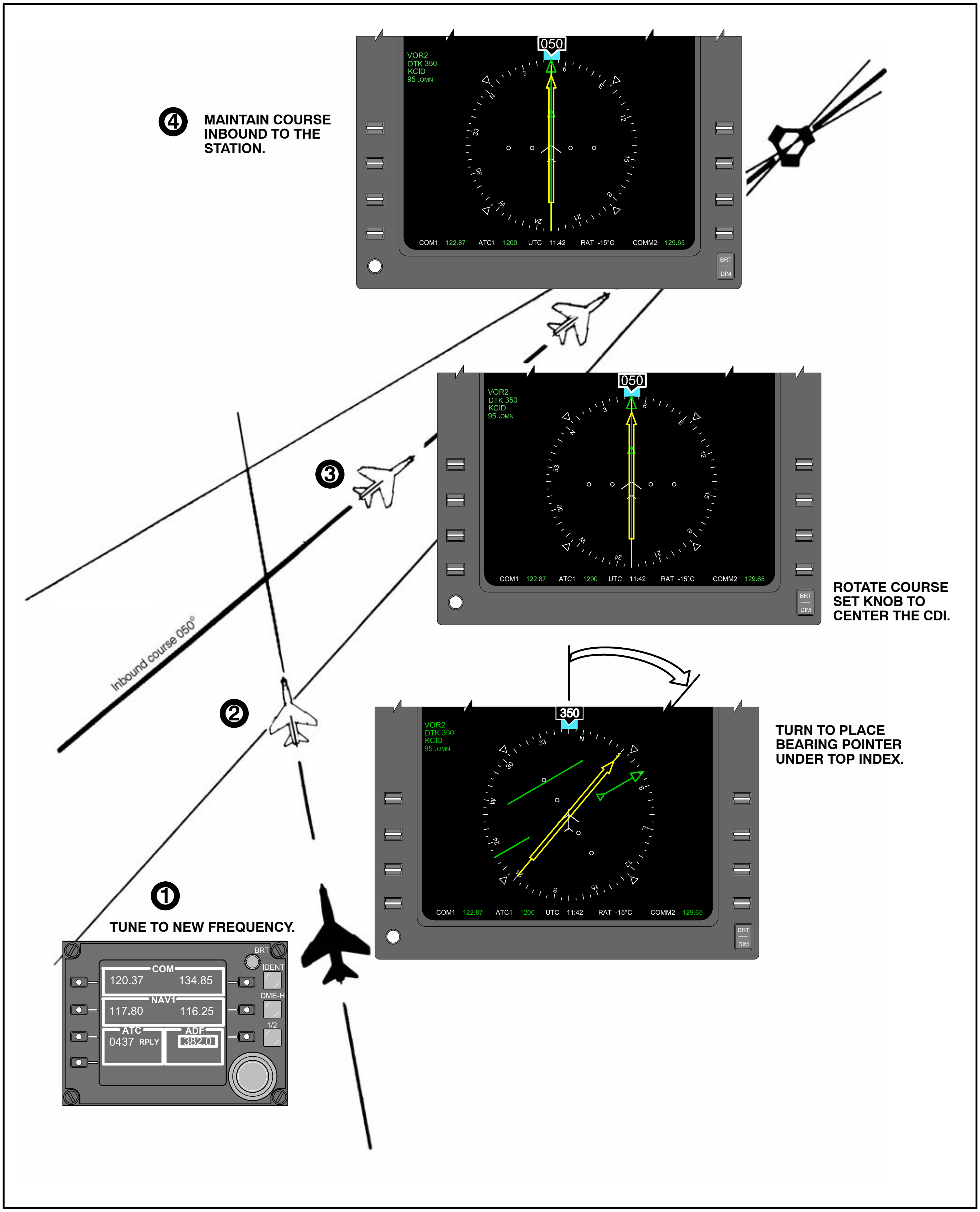


Figure 21-4. Proceeding Direct to Station

When selecting an intercept heading to form an angle of intercept, consider the following factors:

1. Degrees from course.

2. Distance from the station.

3. True airspeed and wind (groundspeed).

21.3.3 Inbound Procedures

To intercept a radial while flying to a station, a number of varying methods may be employed. Generally, setting up a 45° angle of intercept is recommended; 30° angle of intercept is equally correct, as is the double the angle off the bow method if the number of radials to be crossed is not in excess of 45. The double-the-angle-off-the-bow method is described in detail in Chapter 22, as is the timed distance method for radial changes in excess of 45°.

21.3.3.1 RMI Only

Inbound course interceptions utilizing only the RMI are described in detail in Figure 21-5. The essential element is to visualize the problem utilizing the RMI center as the station and the tail of the bearing pointer as the present aircraft position. Then a pilot can visualize the new radial that the pilot wants to intercept as is done in Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN) point to point. As distances are not known, a standard 45° angle of intercept is recommended. It is important to disregard aircraft heading until the intercept heading is computed. Then, turn in the shortest direction to that heading.

21.3.3.2 RMI and CDI

Inbound course interceptions utilizing RMI and CDI are described in detail in Figure 21-6. Essentially these can be accomplished exactly as under RMI only with the additional aid of using the CDI in the final phase.

21.3.3.3 CDI Only

Inbound course interceptions utilizing the CDI only are described in detail in Figure 21-7. The essential element is to visualize the problem on an RMI or on any compass card and then proceed as under RMI and CDI. Some CDIs do not have heading pointers and some VOR sets do not employ a bearing pointer. In these cases, it is essential to disregard aircraft heading until the intercept heading is determined. Then, turn in the shortest direction to that heading (utilizing a timed turn if all compass cards are inoperative).

21.3.4 Outbound Procedures — Immediately After Station Passage

Intercepting courses immediately after station passage does not require large intercept angles. Because of radial convergence, actual aircraft displacement from course is relatively small compared to bearing pointer or CDI indications. For example, a 30° off-course indication when 2 nm from the station represents approximately 1 nm off course.

Paralleling the desired outbound course while allowing the bearing pointer or CDI to stabilize is acceptable. If this method is utilized, proceed as outlined below for outboard course interceptions.

Continuing to turn to intercept the outbound course may be preferred in order to expedite the intercept. This method is described in Figure 21-8.

Utilize the RMI or CDI as available. Use an angle or intercept equal to the number of degrees of radial change desired; however, to prevent overshooting, do not turn more than 45° beyond the heading required to parallel course.

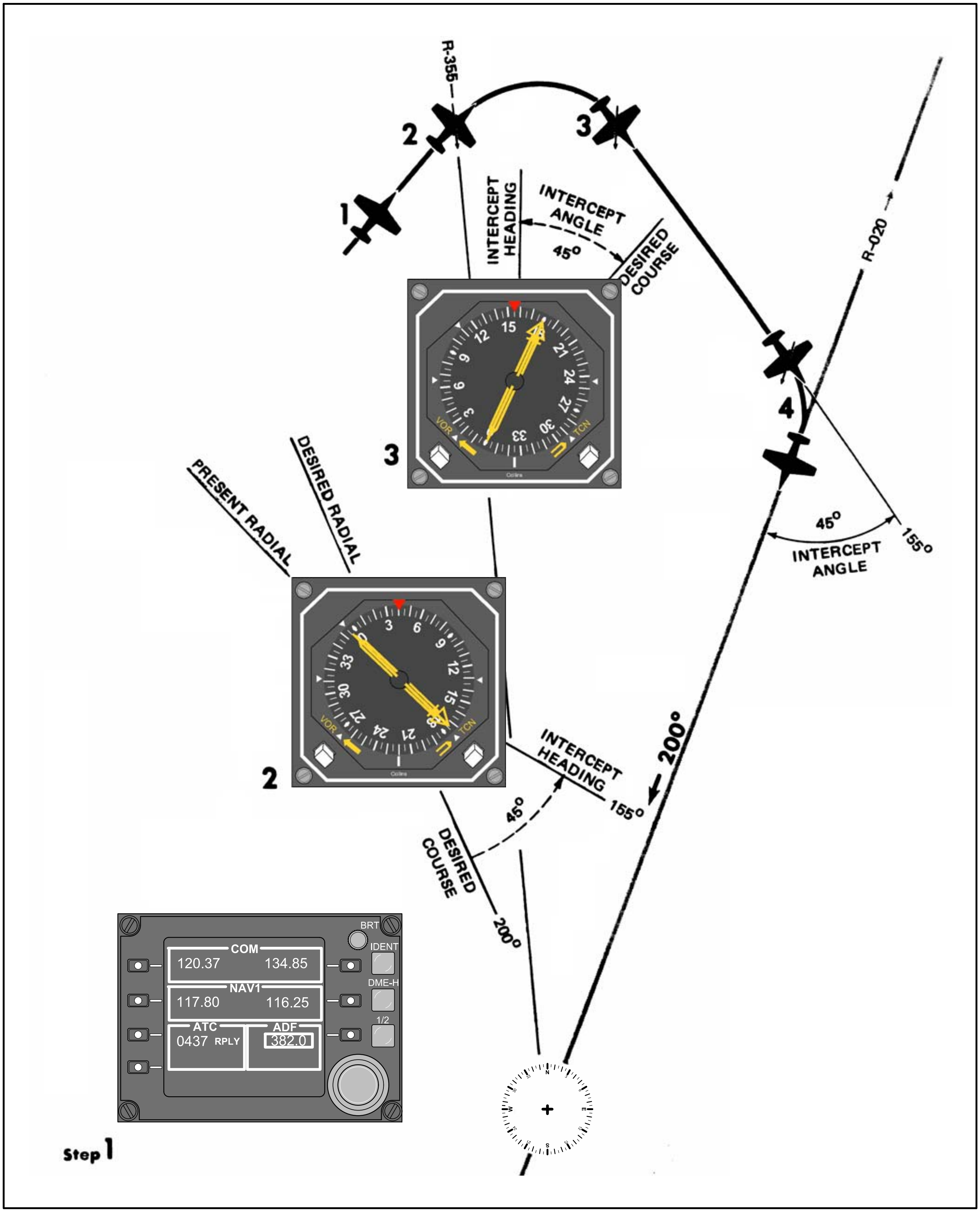
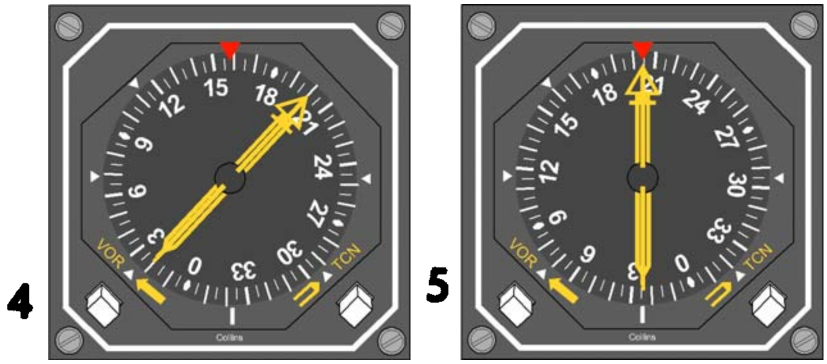


Figure 21-5. Inbound Course Interception (RMI Only) (Sheet 1 of 2)



INTERCEPT COMPLETED

Inbound Procedural Steps — RMI Only

1. Tune and identify the VOR station.

   The bearing pointer will then point to the magnetic course to the station as it appears on the RMI; heading has nothing to do with the radial the aircraft is on. The aircraft can be visualized on the tail of the bearing pointer with the station at the center of the RMI.

2. Determine intercept heading.

   Determine which radial the aircraft is on by noting the tail of the bearing pointer. Determine the required direction of turn to the new radial. An intercept angle is formed when the head of the bearing pointer is between the desired course and the top index of the RMI.

3. Determine and set in the new course.

4. Turn in the shortest direction to the intercept heading.

   Set up a 45-degree, 30-degree, or double-the-angle-off-the-bow intercept.

5. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead point depends on bearing pointer rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 21-5. Inbound Course Interception (RMI Only) (Sheet 2 of 2)

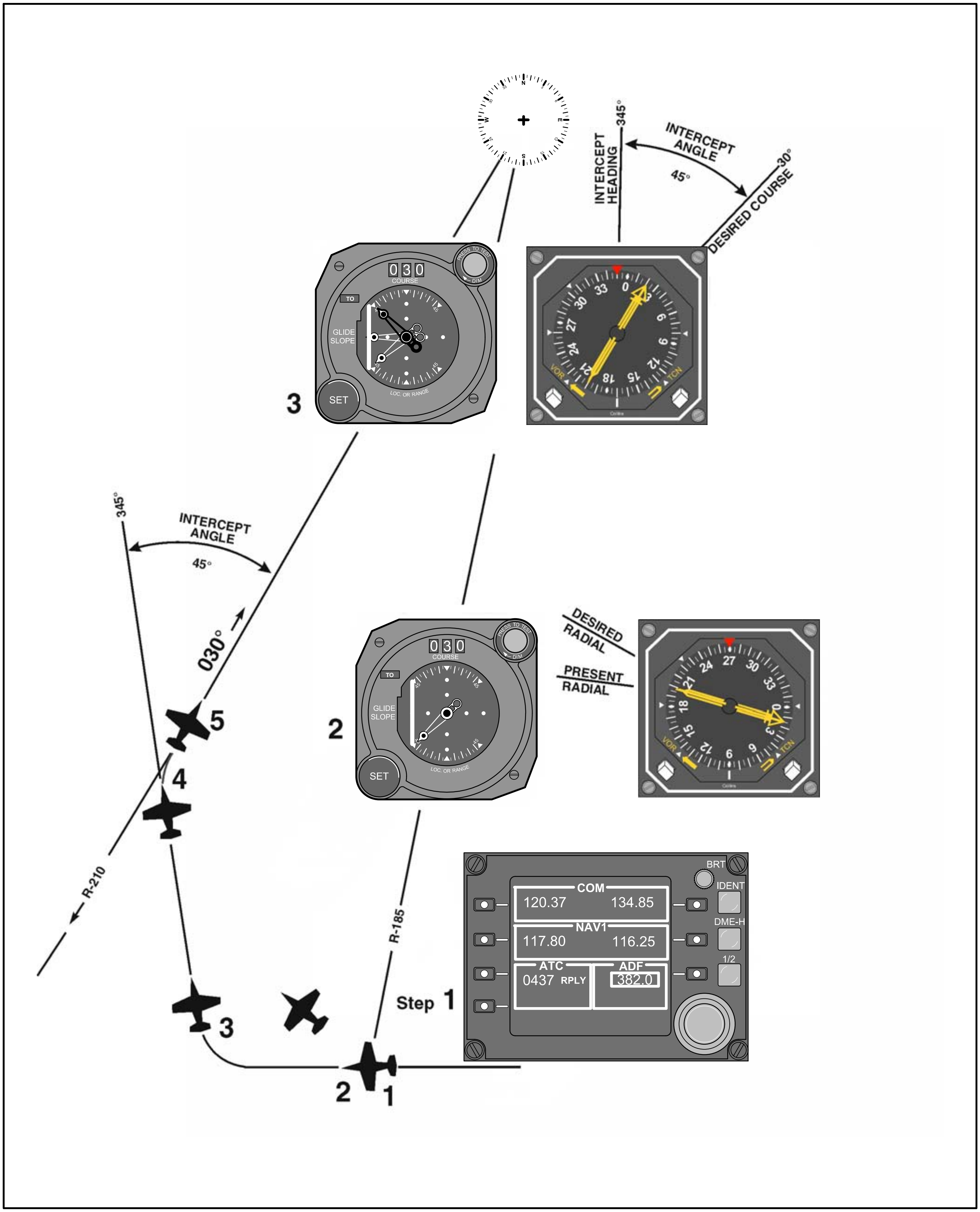
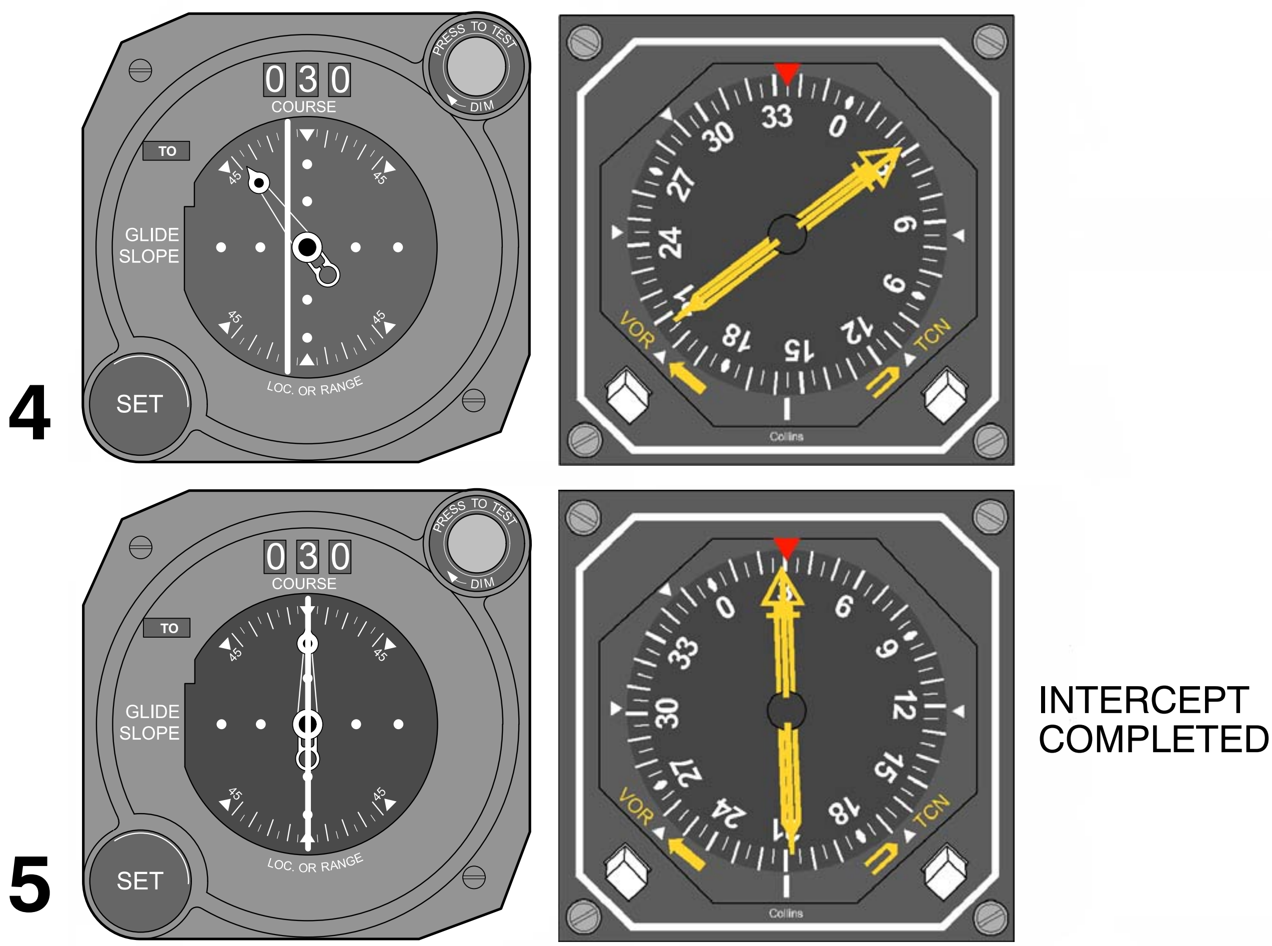


Figure 21-6. Inbound Course Interception (Course Indicator and RMI) (Sheet 1 of 2)



Inbound Procedural Steps — Course Indicator and RMI

1. Tune and identify the VOR station.

   The bearing pointer will function as described in Figure 21-5.

2. Set the desired inbound course in the course selector window and check for a TO indication.

3. Determine intercept heading as described in Figure 21-5.

4. Turn in the shortest direction to the intercept heading.

   The CDI heading pointer should be positioned on the upper half of the CDI when established in the intercept heading. Both the heading pointer and course bar must be on the same side of the CDI while intercepting the desired course. The CDI heading pointer should be deflected in a manner that corresponds to the angle of intercept.

5. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead point depends on bearing pointer/CDI rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 21-6. Inbound Course Interception (Course Indicator and RMI) (Sheet 2 of 2)

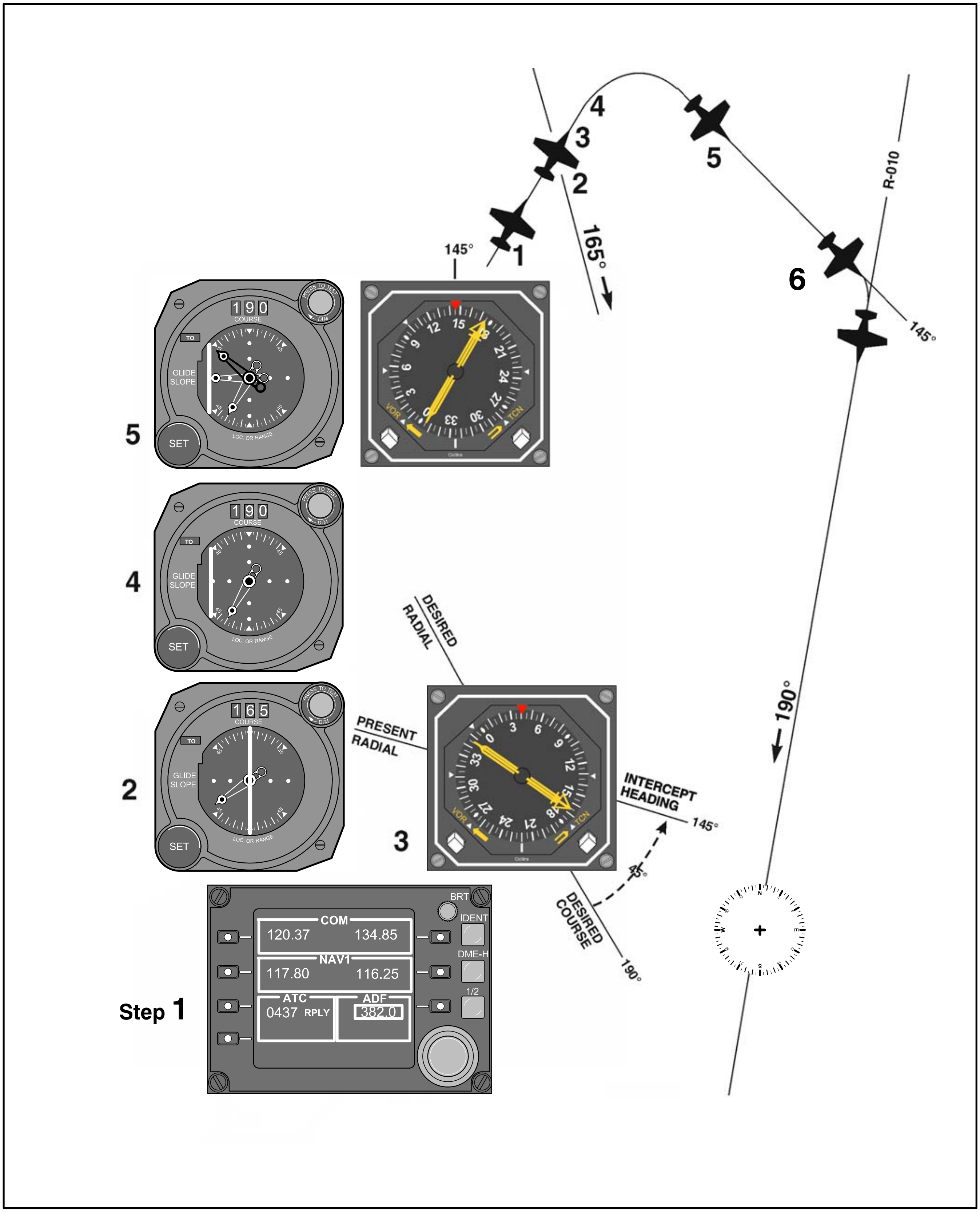
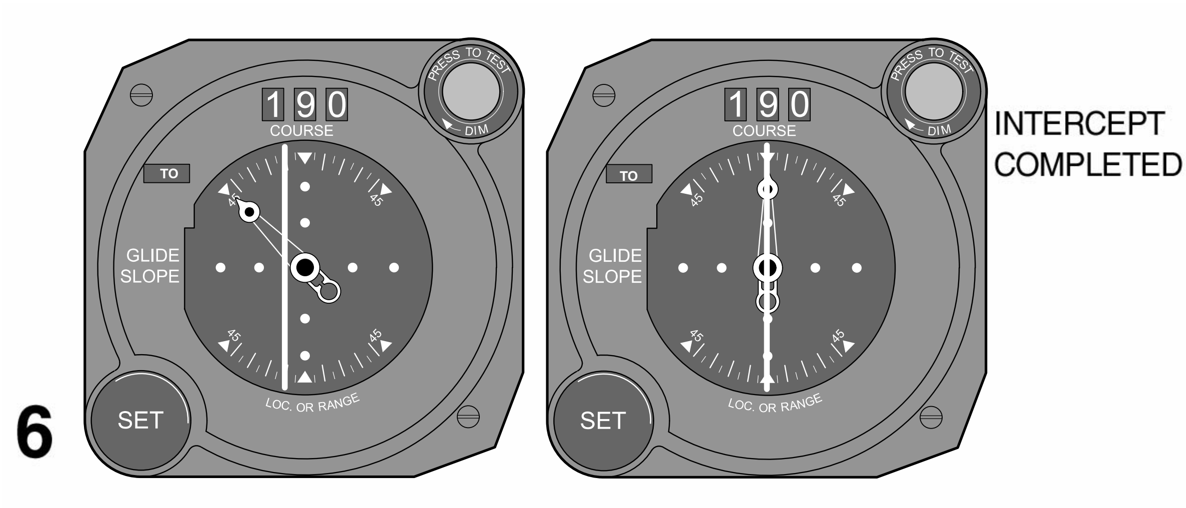


Figure 21-7. Inbound Course Interception (CDI Only) (Sheet 1 of 2)



Inbound Procedural Steps — Course Indicator Only

1. Tune and identify the VOR station.
2. Center the CDI with TO in the TO-FROM indicator.

   Note the course displayed in the course selector window and visualize on any compass card a bearing pointer pointing to the course displayed and the desired inbound radial.
3. Determine an intercept heading using RMI only procedures.
4. Set the desired inbound course in the course selector window and check for a TO indication.
5. Turn to the intercept heading.

   Turn in the shortest direction to the intercept heading. If a CDI heading pointer is installed, ensure the pointer is positioned in the upper half of the CDI when established on the intercept heading.

   Note

   If all compass cards are inoperative, make a timed turn to the intercept heading using the magnetic compass.
6. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead point depends on the CDI rate of movement and the same required to turn on course.

Figure 21-7. Inbound Course Interception (CDI Only) (Sheet 2 of 2)

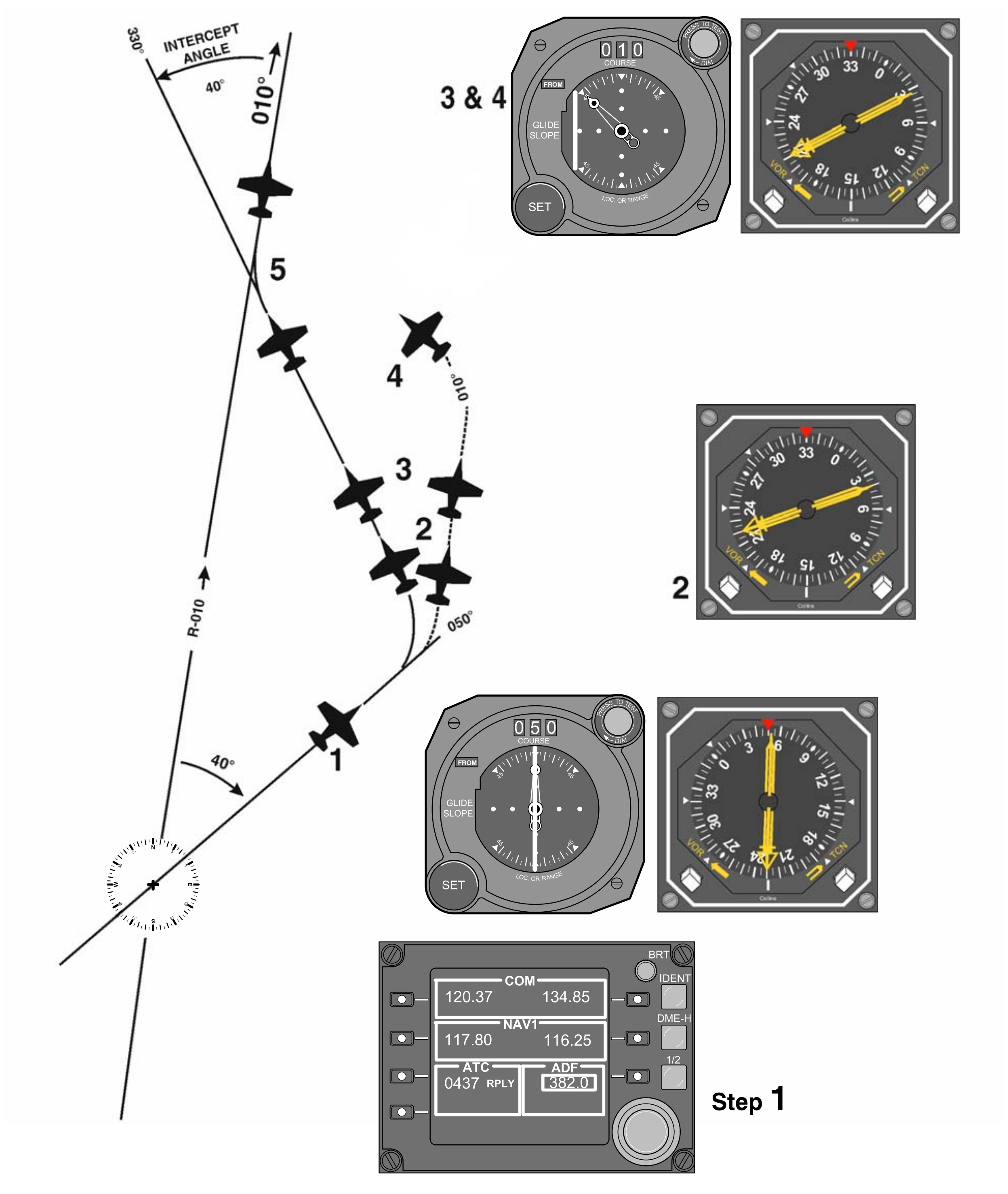
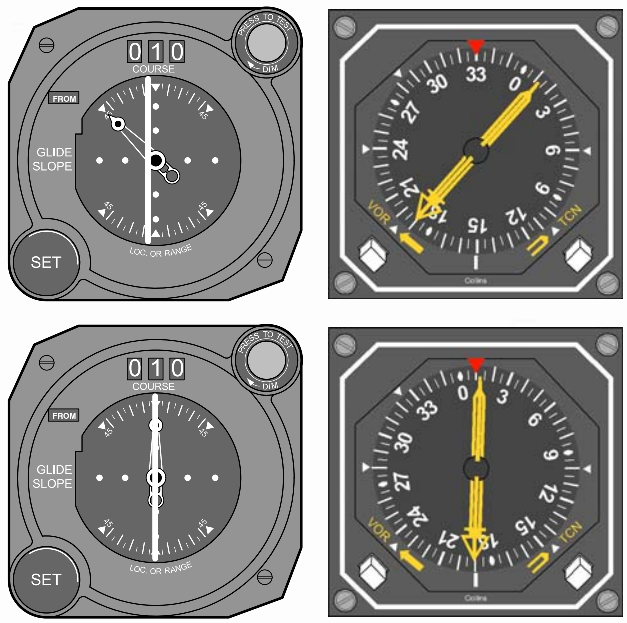


Figure 21-8. Course Interception Immediately After Station Passage (Course Indicator and RMI) (Sheet 1 of 2)

5



INTERCEPT
COMPLETED

Outbound Procedural Steps Immediately After Station Passage — Course Indicator and RMI

1. Tune and identify the VOR station.

   This should already be accomplished.

2. Turn in the shortest direction to a heading that will parallel or intercept the outbound course.

   Turning to parallel the desired outbound course is acceptable. Continuing the turn to an intercept heading may be preferable to expedite the intercept. If turning immediately to intercept, utilize an angle of intercept equal to the number of degrees or radial desired, not to exceed 45 degrees.

3. Set the desired course in the course selector window and check for FROM indication.

4. Turn to an intercept heading, if not previously accomplished.

5. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead point depends on bearing pointer/CDI rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 21-8. Course Interception Immediately After Station Passage (Course Indicator and RMI) (Sheet 2 of 2)

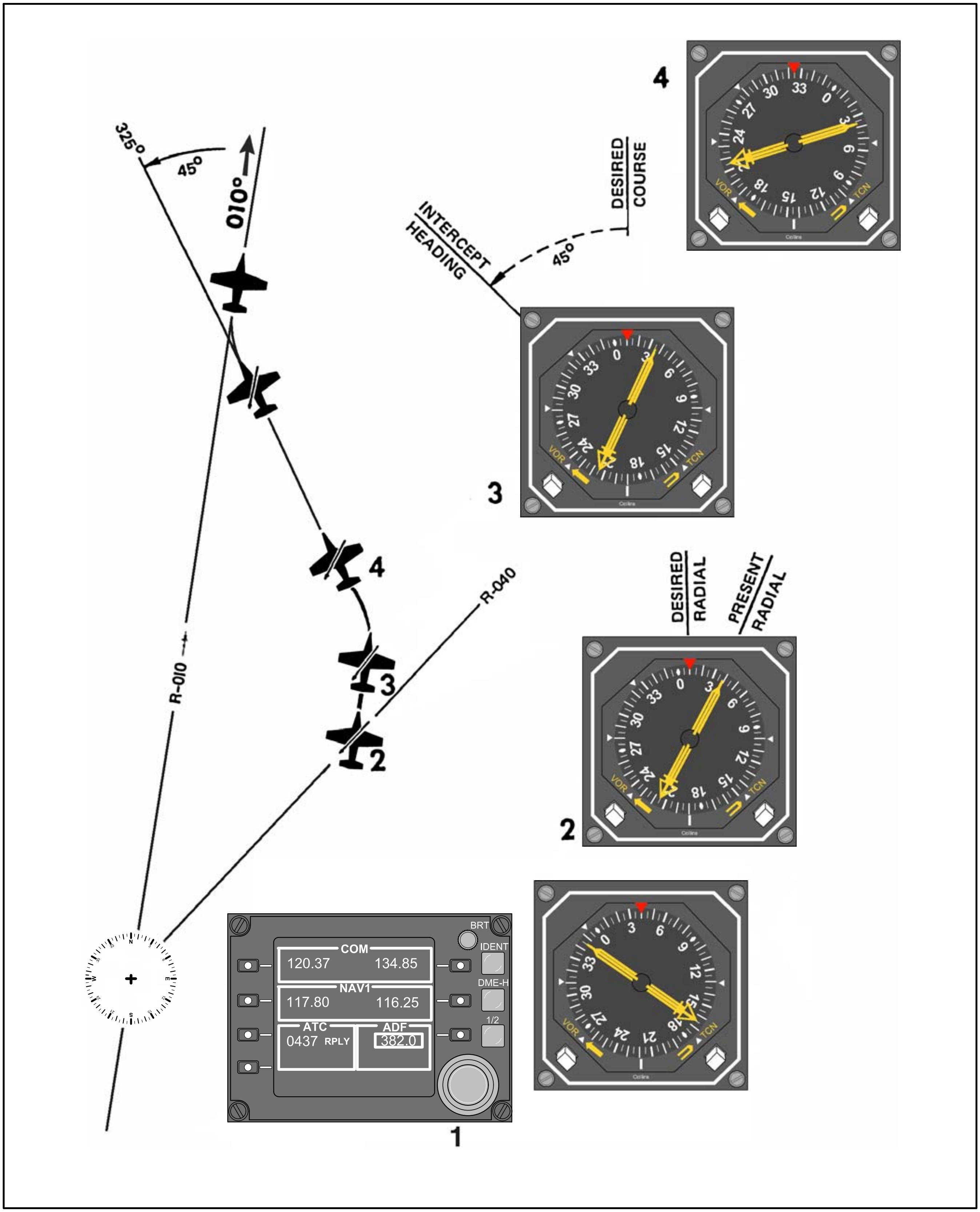
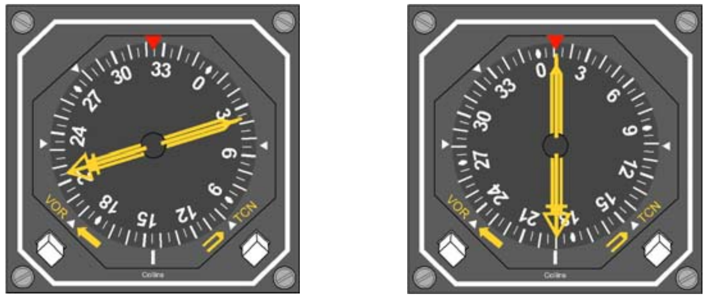


Figure 21-9. Outbound Course Interception — Away from the Station (RMI Only) (Sheet 1 of 2)

5



INTERCEPT COMPLETED

Outbound Procedural Steps — RMI Only
1. Tune and identify the VOR station.
2. Determine which radial the aircraft is on by noting the tail of the bearing pointer. Determine the direction of turn to the new radial.
3. Determine and set in the new course.
4. Turn to the intercept heading in the direction determined in step 2. Set up a 45-degree, 30-degree, or double-the-angle-off-the-bow intercept.
5. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept. Lead point depends on bearing pointer rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 21-9. Outbound Course Interception — Away from the Station (RMI Only) (Sheet 2 of 2)

21.3.5 Outbound Procedures

To intercept a radial while flying from a station, several methods may be employed. Whereas a 45° angle of intercept is recommended, a 30° angle of intercept or the double the angle off the bow (as described in Figure 21-16) may be used.

21.3.5.1 RMI Only

Outbound radial interceptions utilizing only the RMI are described in detail in Figure 21-9. The essential element is to visualize the problem utilizing the RMI center as the station and the tail of the bearing pointer as the present aircraft position. Then a pilot can visualize the new radial that the pilot wants to intercept as is done in TACAN point to point. As distances are not known, the pilot can picture the aircraft at the middle of the bearing pointer with the desired point of interception at the outer edge of the compass card.

21.3.5.2 RMI and CDI

Outbound radial interception utilizing RMI and CDI are described in detail in Figure 21-10. Essentially, these can be accomplished exactly as described in paragraph 21.3.5.1 with the additional aid of using the CDI in the final phase.

21.3.5.3 CDI Only

Outbound radial interceptions utilizing the CDI only are described in detail in Figure 21-11. The essential element is to visualize the problem on an RMI or on any compass card and then proceed as under RMI and CDI. Some CDIs do not have a heading pointer, and some VOR sets do not employ a bearing pointer. In these cases, it is essential to disregard aircraft heading until the intercept heading is determined. Then turn in the shortest direction to that heading (utilizing a timed turn if all compass cards are inoperative).

21.3.6 Completing the Intercept

After the intercept heading has been established, adjustments may be required to achieve a more desirable angle or rate of intercept. As the aircraft approaches course, determine a lead point for turning because of turn radius. A properly selected lead point will result in the turn being completed as the course is intercepted. Lead point is determined by comparing bearing pointer/CDI movement (rate of intercept) to the time required to turn to course. Whenever the CDI is fully deflected, monitor the bearing pointer to detect unusually slow or fast rates of intercept. Remember that the CDI remains fully deflected until the aircraft is within 10° of course. As CDI movement can be accurately compared with angle of intercept displayed by the heading pointer, use the course indicator for completing intercepts whenever possible. If it is obvious that the lead point selected will result in undershooting the desired course, reduce the angle of bank or roll out of the turn and resume the intercept. If the lead point selected results in an overshoot, continue the turn and roll out with an intercept heading. Aircraft is on course when CDI is centered and/or the bearing pointer points to the desired course. Complete turn to course with a correction applied for known wind.

21.3.7 Estimating Drift Correction

After completing the turn to course with the CDI centered, maintain heading until the CDI indicates deviation from the selected course. At the first indication of course deviation, turn toward the CDI to reintercept course. Follow the same procedure used for a normal course interception and consider the same factors (i.e., degrees from course, distance from the station, True Airspeed [TAS], and wind). After returning to course from a deviation caused by wind, reestimate the drift correction and increase or decrease the one previously held. To keep the CDI centered, make further corrections from this new heading. When close to the station, the CDI may show a rapid movement from the on-course indication because of radial convergence; however, actual course deviation is probably small, especially if wind drift has been solved. Avoid overcorrecting in this situation.

To maintain a course to the station using only the RMI, maintain heading until the bearing pointer shows a deviation from the desired course. To return to course, use normal course interception procedures. The aircraft is back on course when the desired course is again shown under the head of the bearing pointer. If you have applied the correct wind drift, the pointer should continue to point to the desired course. If the pointer moves toward the top index, the drift correction is too small; if it moves away from the top index, it is too large.

To maintain an outbound course, use outbound course interception procedures. Apply corrections to keep the desired course under the tail of the bearing pointer. After applying a wind drift correction outbound and the tail of the pointer moves toward the top index, the drift correction is too large; if it moves away from the top index, the drift correction is too small (Figure 21-12).

21.3.8 Homing

After the VOR station is tuned, the VOR bearing pointer will point to the magnetic bearing of the selected station. To home to the station, turn the aircraft to place the head of the bearing pointer under the top index. By keeping the bearing pointer under the index, the station will always be directly ahead of the aircraft. As homing does not incorporate wind drift correction, in a crosswind, the aircraft follows a curved path to the station. Homing is not an approved IFR procedure and, therefore, should be used only when close to the station (Figure 21-13).

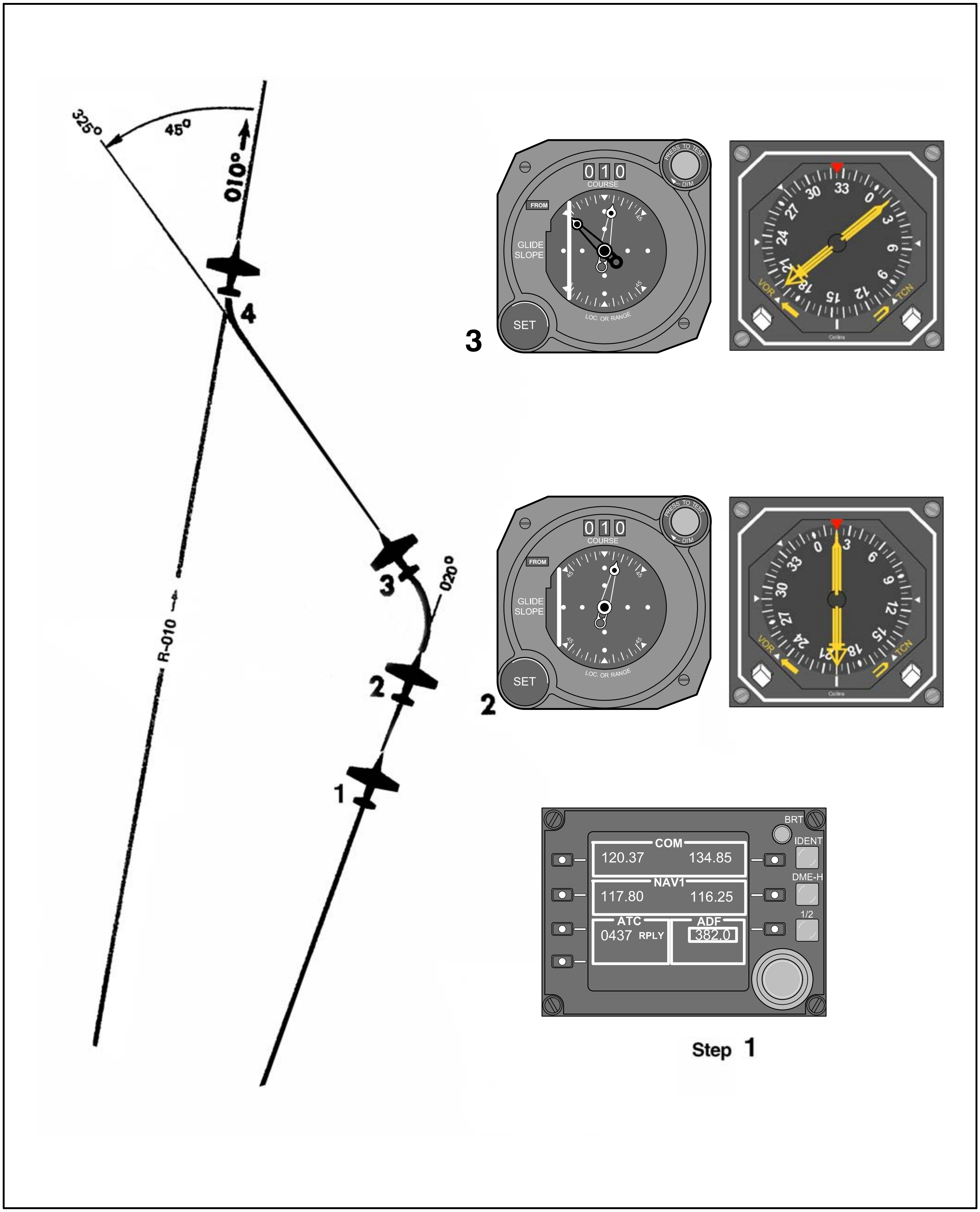
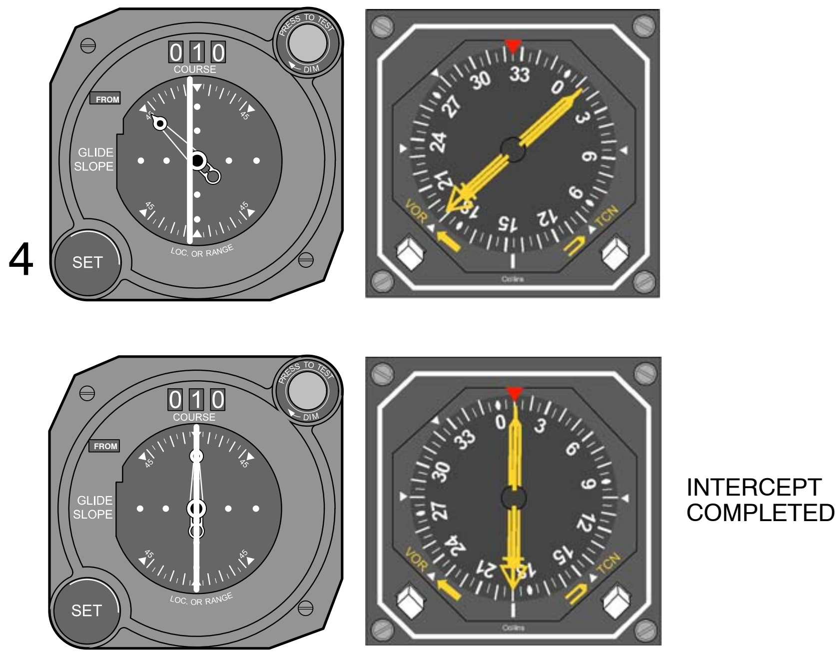


Figure 21-10. Outbound Course Interception — Away from the Station (Course Indicator and RMI) (Sheet 1 of 2)



Outbound Procedural Steps — RMI Only

1. Tune and identify the VOR station.
2. Set the desired outbound course in the course selector window.

   Determine the direction of turn as in RMI only.
3. Turn to an intercept heading.

   Set up a 45-degree, 30-degree, or double-the-angle-off-the-bow intercept.
4. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead point depends on bearing pointer/CDI rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 21-10. Outbound Course Interception — Away from the Station (Course Indicator and RMI) (Sheet 2 of 2)

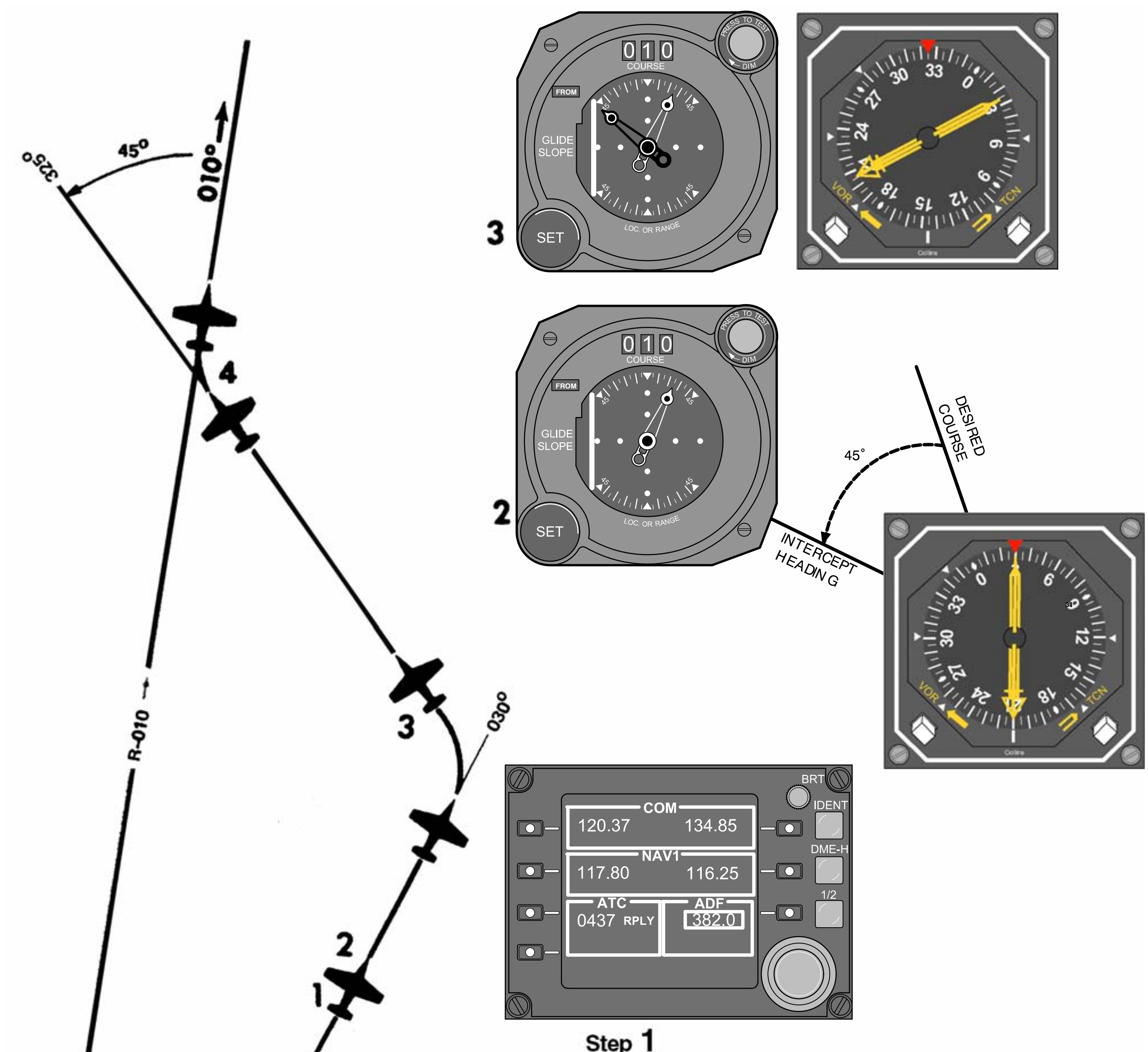
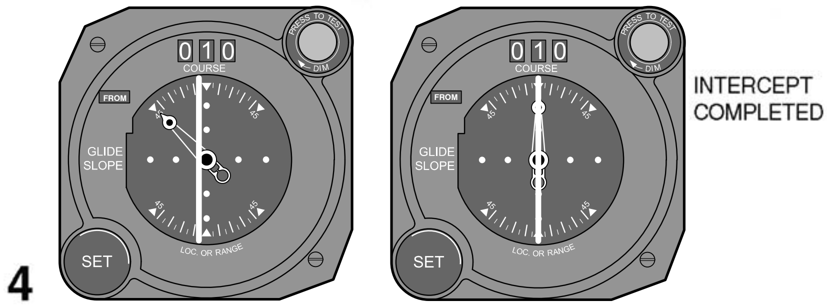


Figure 21-11. Outbound Course Interception (CDI Only) (Sheet 1 of 2)



Outbound Procedural Steps — Course Indicator Only
1. Tune and identify the VOR station. 2. Set the desired outbound course in the course selector window. 3. Turn to an intercept heading. Determine direction of turn as in RMI only by visualizing the intercept on any compass card. 4. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept. Lead point depends on the CDI rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 21-11. Outbound Course Interception (CDI Only) (Sheet 2 of 2)

21.3.9 Time-Distance Check

To compute time and distance from an omnirange, first turn the aircraft to place the bearing pointer on the nearest 90° index. Set the bearing read under the head of the bearing pointer into the course selector window. If this does not center the CDI exactly, rotate the course set knob until the CDI does center. Note the time and maintain heading. When the CDI shows a definite displacement from center, set a 10° bearing change in the course window by rotating the course set knob in the direction of CDI movement. Check that the CDI has moved over the heading pointer. Maintain heading until the CDI recenters. Note elapsed time, and apply the following formulas:

$$\frac{\text{Time in seconds between bearings}}{\text{Degrees of bearing change}} = \text{Minutes to station.}$$

TAS or groundspeed in nm per minute times minutes from the station will give distance. Expressed as a formula, this is:

$$\frac{*\ \text{TAS}}{60} \times \text{minutes from the station = nm from the station.}$$

*If known, groundspeed should be substituted for TAS.

For example, if it requires 2 minutes to fly a 10° bearing change at a TAS of 360 knots, you are:

$$\frac{120\ \text{seconds}}{10\ \text{degrees}} = 12\ \text{minutes from the station.}$$

$$\frac{360\ \text{knots}}{60} \times 12 = 72\ \text{nm from the station.}$$

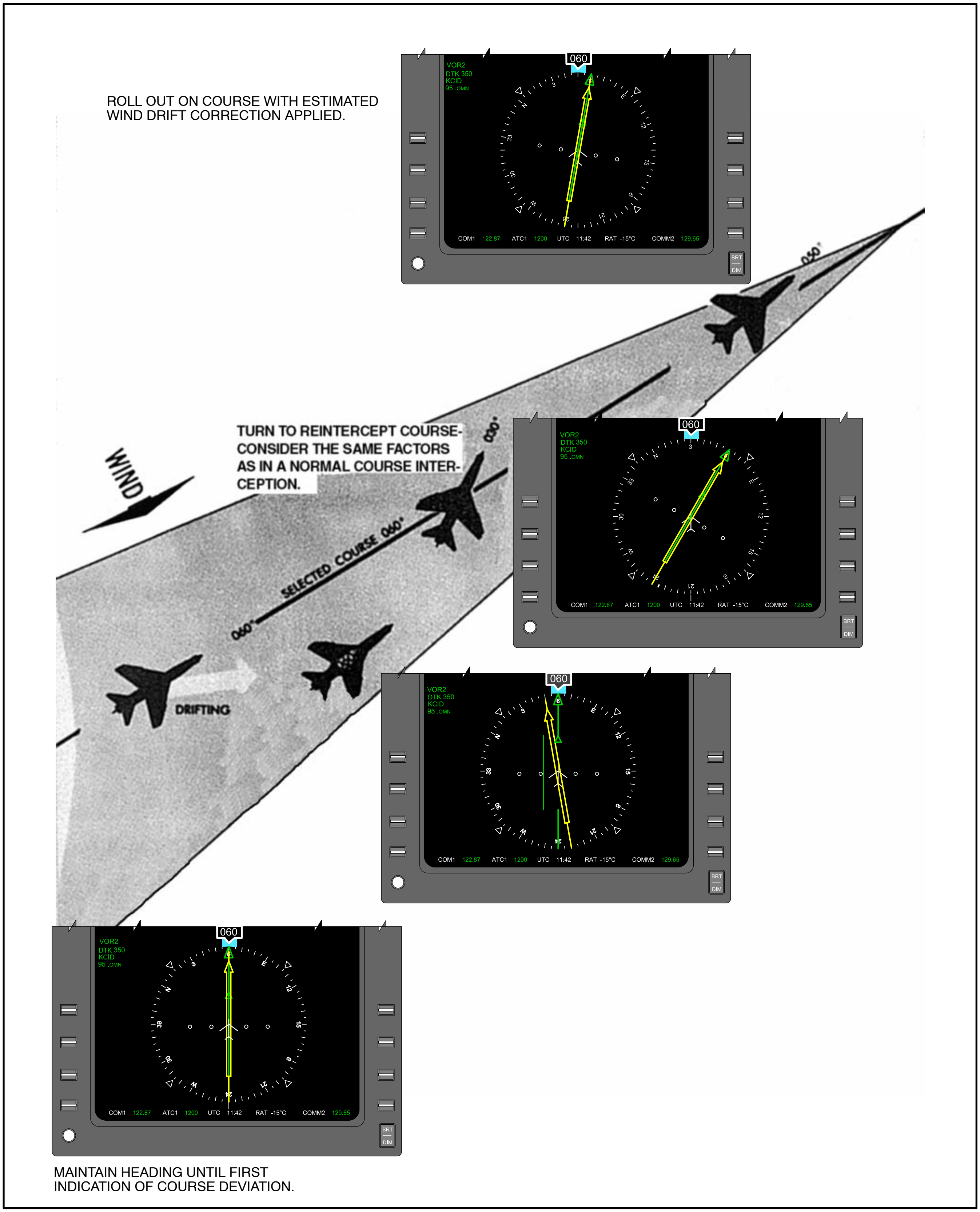


Figure 21-12. Maintaining Course

The time from the station is easily calculated provided a 10° bearing change is flown and the elapsed time for the bearing change is noted in seconds. The time from the station in minutes is determined by counting off 1 decimal point from the elapsed time for the bearing change; thus, if it requires 75 seconds to fly a 10° bearing change, the aircraft is 7.5 minutes from the station.

Determining the TAS in nm per minute can be easily approximated by referring to indicated Mach, if available. For example, Mach 0.6 equals approximately 6 nm per minute; Mach 0.7 equals 7 nm per minute, etc. (Figure 21-14).

There are several other methods for determining time and distance from a radio station. If it is a station to be passed abeam, the conventional bow and beam bearing method utilized for visible bearings in navigation may be used (Figure 21-15). The double the angle on the bow method, similar to the same system discussed for intercepting a bearing, may also be used (Figure 21-16). More often, however, the pilot will be in a situation where the pilot desires time/distance from a station that is the destination. If no specific course or bearing is required for the approach, it is suggested one be selected suitable for the double-the-angle-on-the-bow interception, or one 10° off your inbound track for the 30° turn method (explained in paragraph 21.3.10), and request clearance to approach on that bearing. The 30° turn method of time/distance check is preferable because it requires very little alteration of heading; however, it may or may not be accurate in an unknown wind situation.

21.3.10 30° Method

This method (Figure 21-17) is begun when tracking toward station. To start the check, turn 30° right or left and note the time (to 1 second). Hold this new heading. If the VOR had read zero before the turn, it should now read 330° or 30° relative. If drift correction was being held, it should now read 330° or 30° relative, plus or minus that correction. This heading should be maintained on the remote compass or RMI until the needle of the VOR has moved 10° toward the wingtip position. Note the exact time, turn toward the station, and track to the station. The time from this second turn to the station will be three times the time between turns.

The distance to the station is also three times the distance between turns. (Compute the time/distance at groundspeed if groundspeed is known, or at the TAS if groundspeed is not known.)

There are two minor precautions to observe in connection with the 30° turn method. First, determine drift before starting. If the pattern is flown under conditions of no wind and there is a wind blowing the aircraft off course, the results obtained will not be accurate. In fact, if the needle does not progress toward the wingtip at all, the aircraft is drifting to the other side of the station entirely.

The accuracy of time and distance checks is governed by the existing wind, the degree of bearing change, and the accuracy of timing. The number of variables involved causes the result to be an approximation; however, by flying an accurate heading and checking the time and bearing closely, you can get a reasonable estimate of time and distance from the station.

Time and distance checks using only the course indicator employ the same principles. First, rotate the course set knob until the CDI centers, then turn to a heading 90° from the bearing in the course window. After completing this turn, rotate the course set knob to recenter the CDI and accomplish the time and distance check as previously described. For VOR time-distance checks using the RMI only, refer to ADF time-distance check in Chapter 23.

21.3.11 Station Passage

The cone of confusion is encountered just before passing over the VOR station. As the width of the cone varies with altitude, the actual time spent in the cone varies according to altitude and groundspeed. As the aircraft enters the cone of confusion, the bearing pointer may swing from side to side, the CDI will reflect the bearing pointer movement, the TO-FROM indicator may fluctuate between TO and FROM, and the course warning flag may appear. For timing purposes, station passage occurs when the TO-FROM indicator makes the first positive change to FROM. After the bearing pointer stabilizes, the CDI resumes its normal indications.

When making course changes over a VORTAC and range is available, the pilot may begin the turn just before station passage so as to roll out on the desired outbound course.

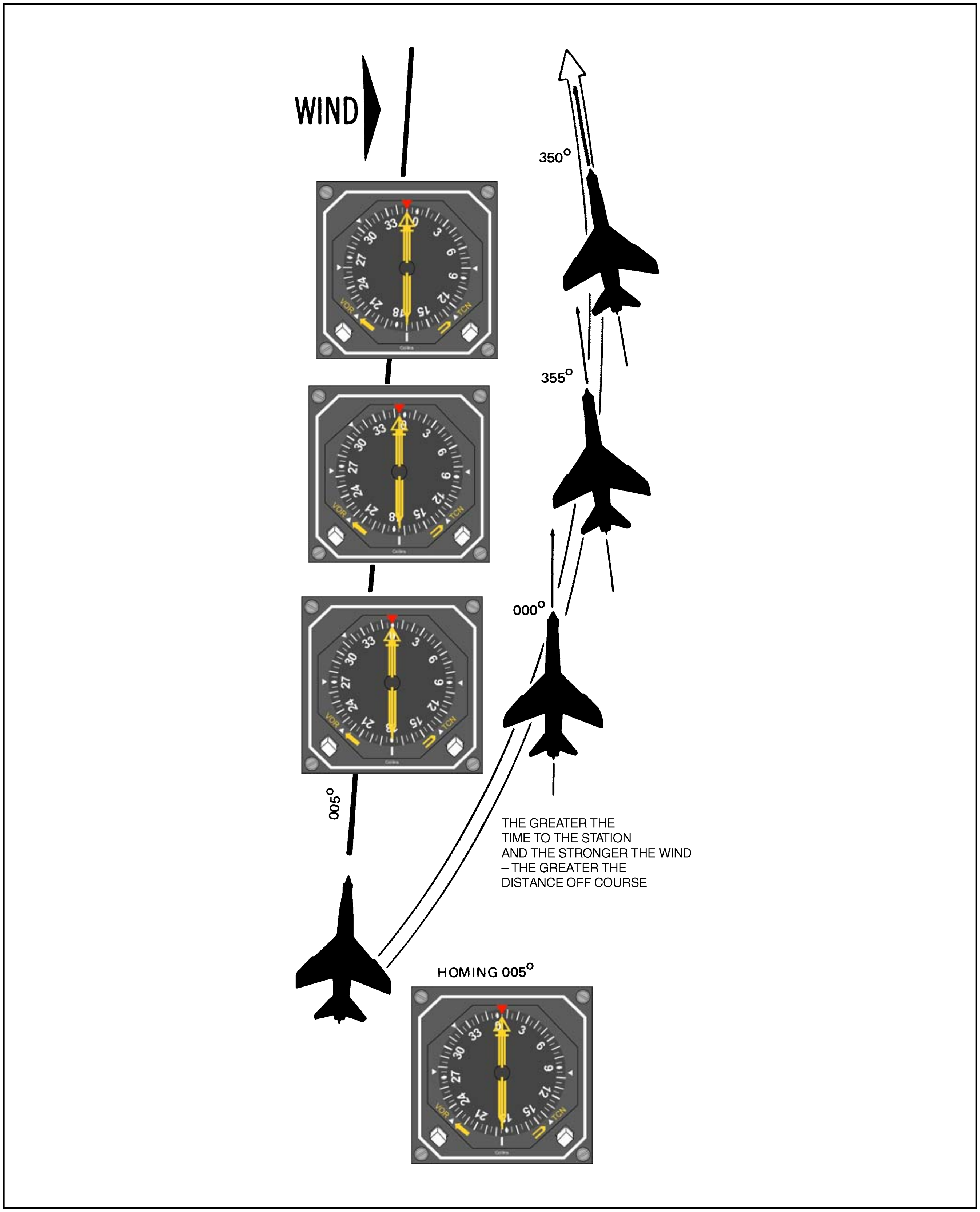


Figure 21-13. Curved Flightpath as a Result of Homing with a Crosswind Condition

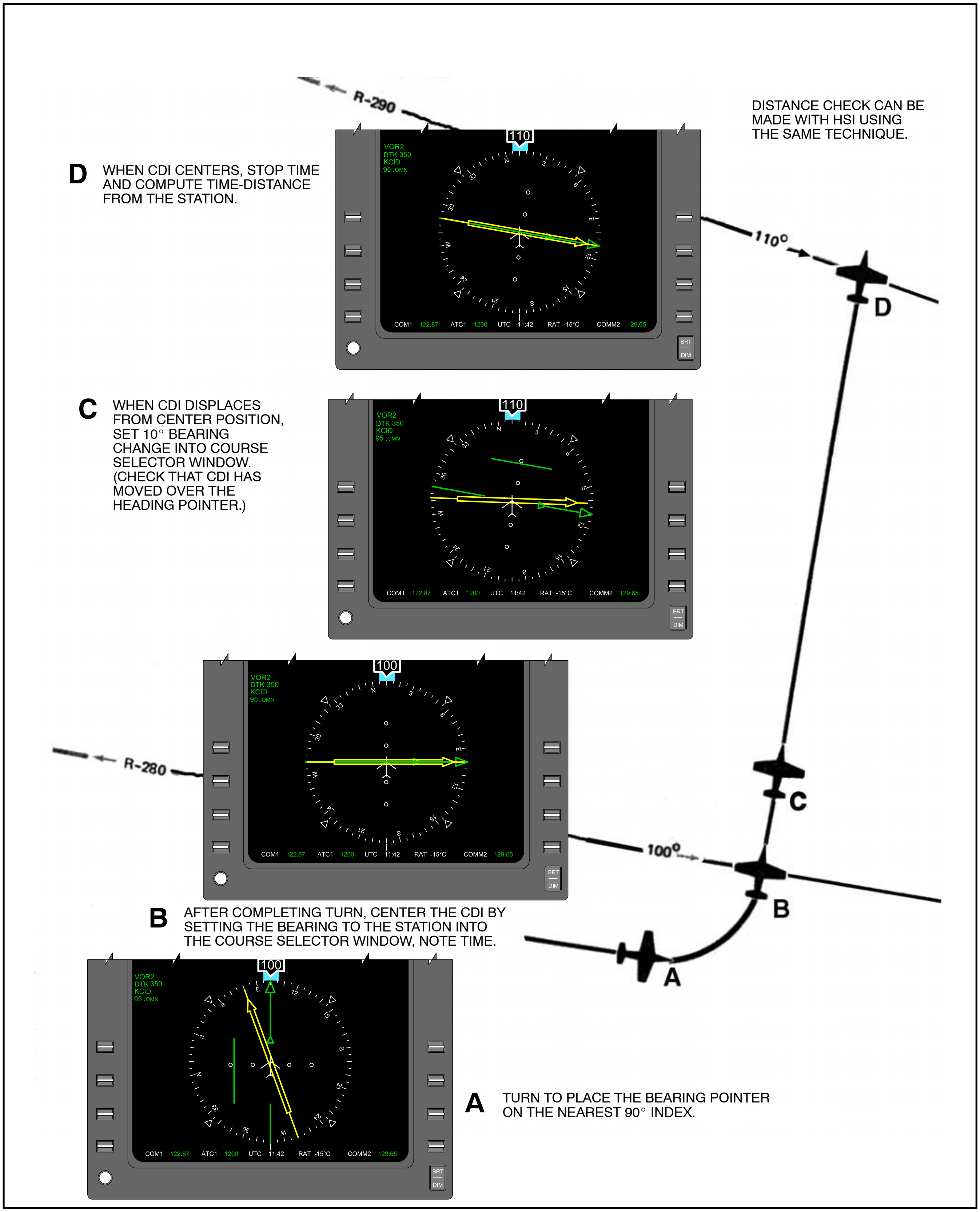


Figure 21-14. Time — Distance Check

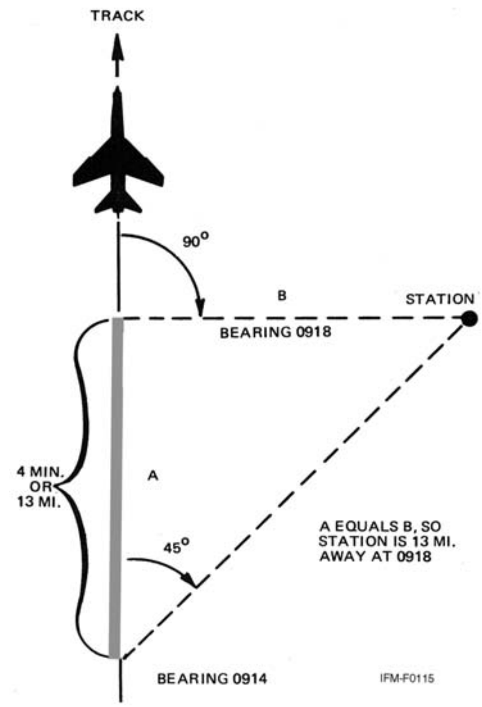


Figure 21-15. Bow-to-Beam Bearing Time/Distance Check

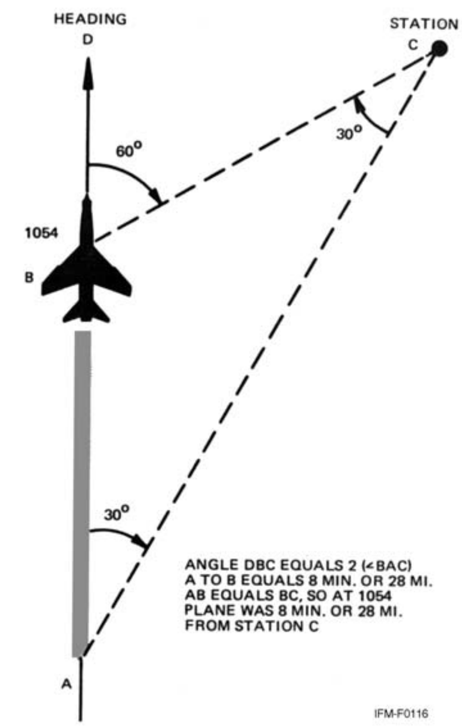


Figure 21-16. Double-the-Angle-on-Bow Time/Distance Check

21.3.12 Holding

(Figures 21-18, 21-19, 21-20, 21-21, 21-22, 21-23, and 21-24.)

1. When holding at a VOR station, pilots should begin the turn to the outbound leg at the time of the first complete reversal of the TO-FROM indicator.

2. Patterns at the most generally used holding fixes are depicted on appropriate charts. Pilots are expected to hold in the pattern depicted unless specifically advised otherwise by Air Traffic Control (ATC).

3. ATC clearance requiring that an aircraft be held at a holding point where the pattern is not depicted will include the following information:

   a. General holding instructions.

      (1) The direction to hold from holding point. (The direction to hold with relation to the holding fix will be specified as one of eight general points of the compass [i.e., north, northeast, east, etc.].)

      (2) Holding fix.

      (3) On (specified) radial course, magnetic bearing airway number of jet route.

      (4) Outbound leg length in nm, if DME is to be used.

      (5) Left turns, if nonstandard pattern is to be used.

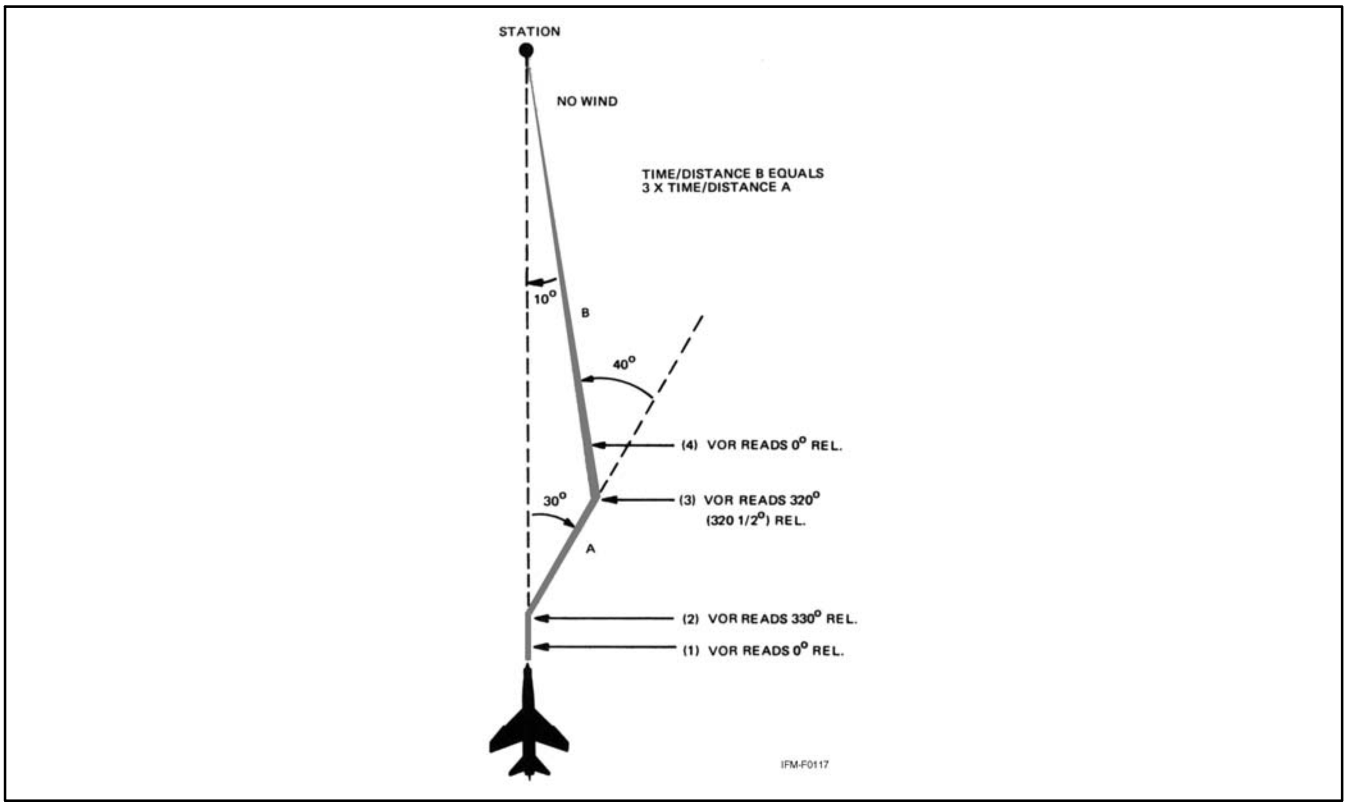


Figure 21-17. 30° Turn Method of Time/Distance Check

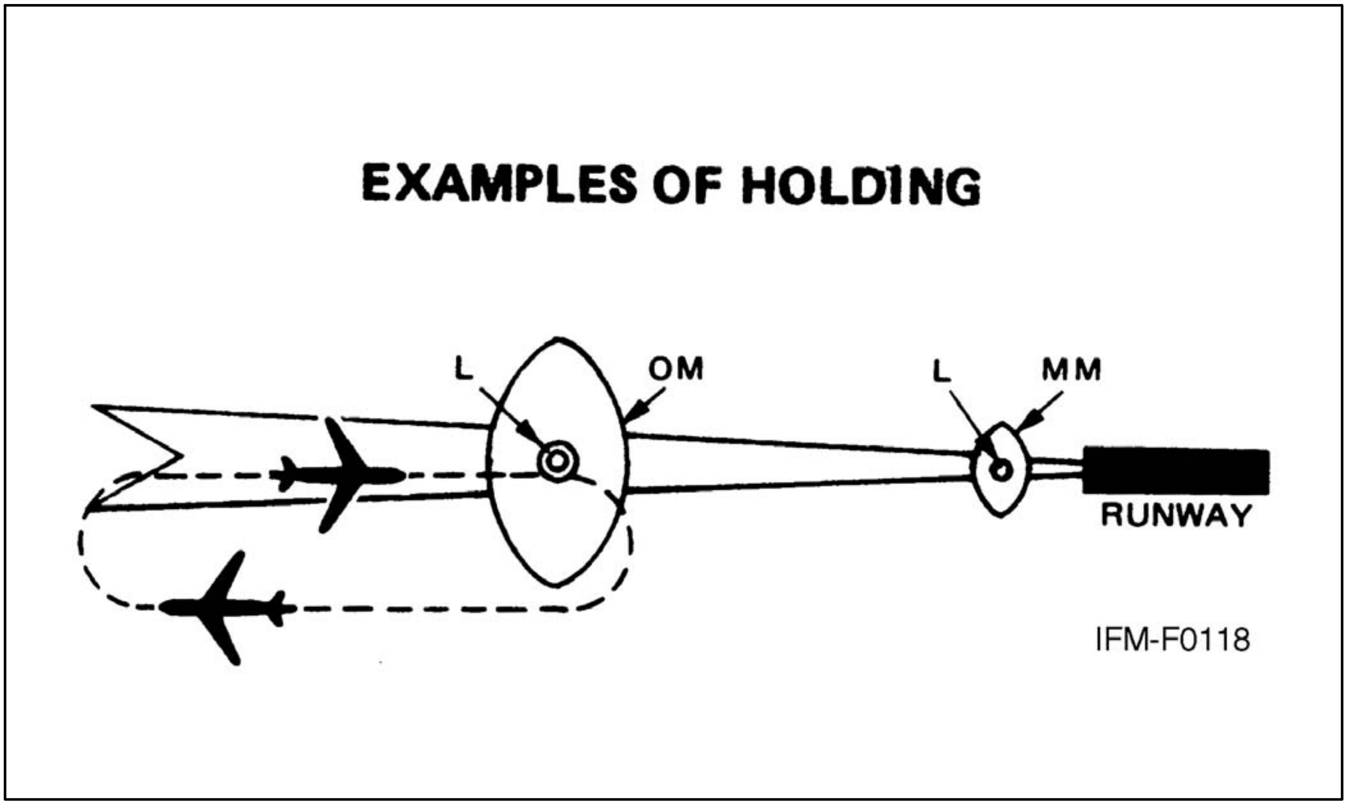


Figure 21-18. Typical Procedure on an ILS Outer Marker

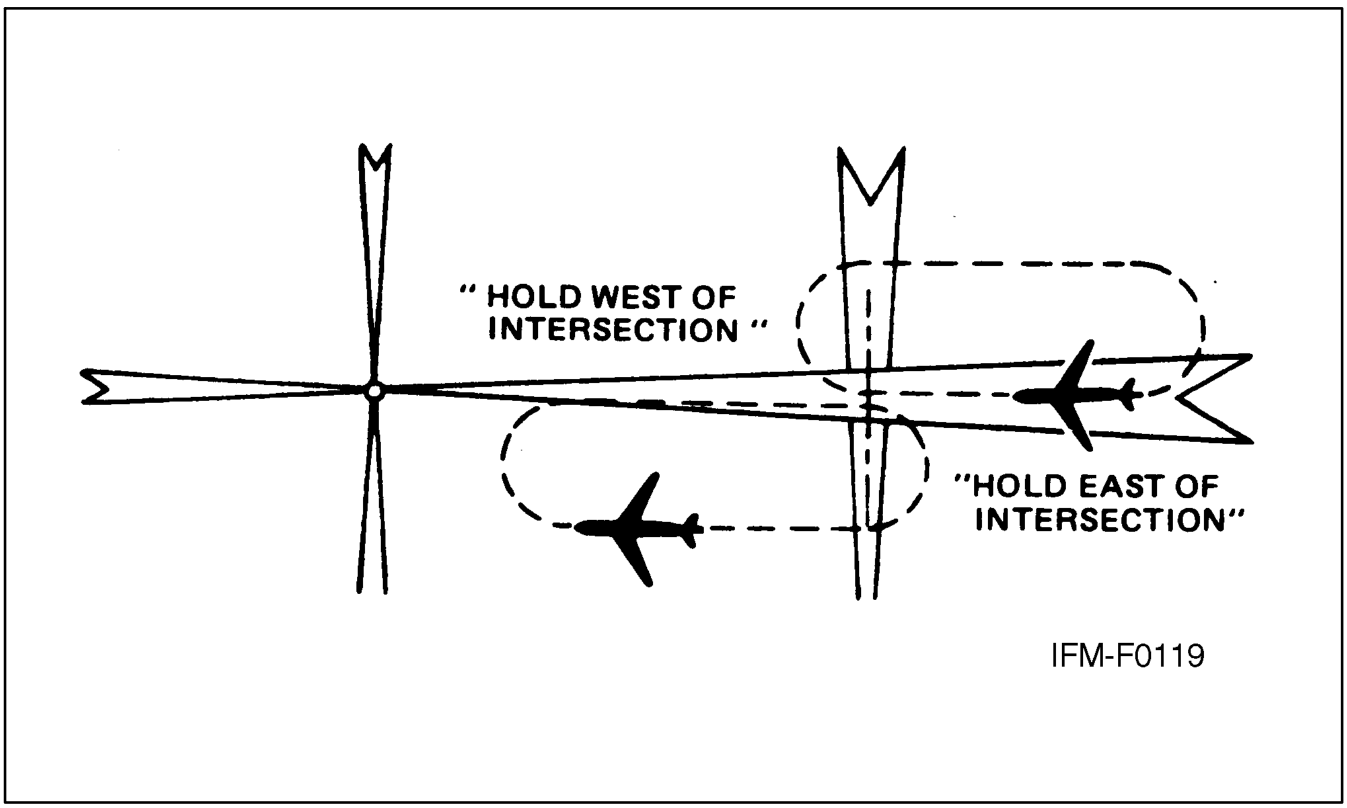


Figure 21-19. Typical Procedure at Intersection of Radio Range Courses

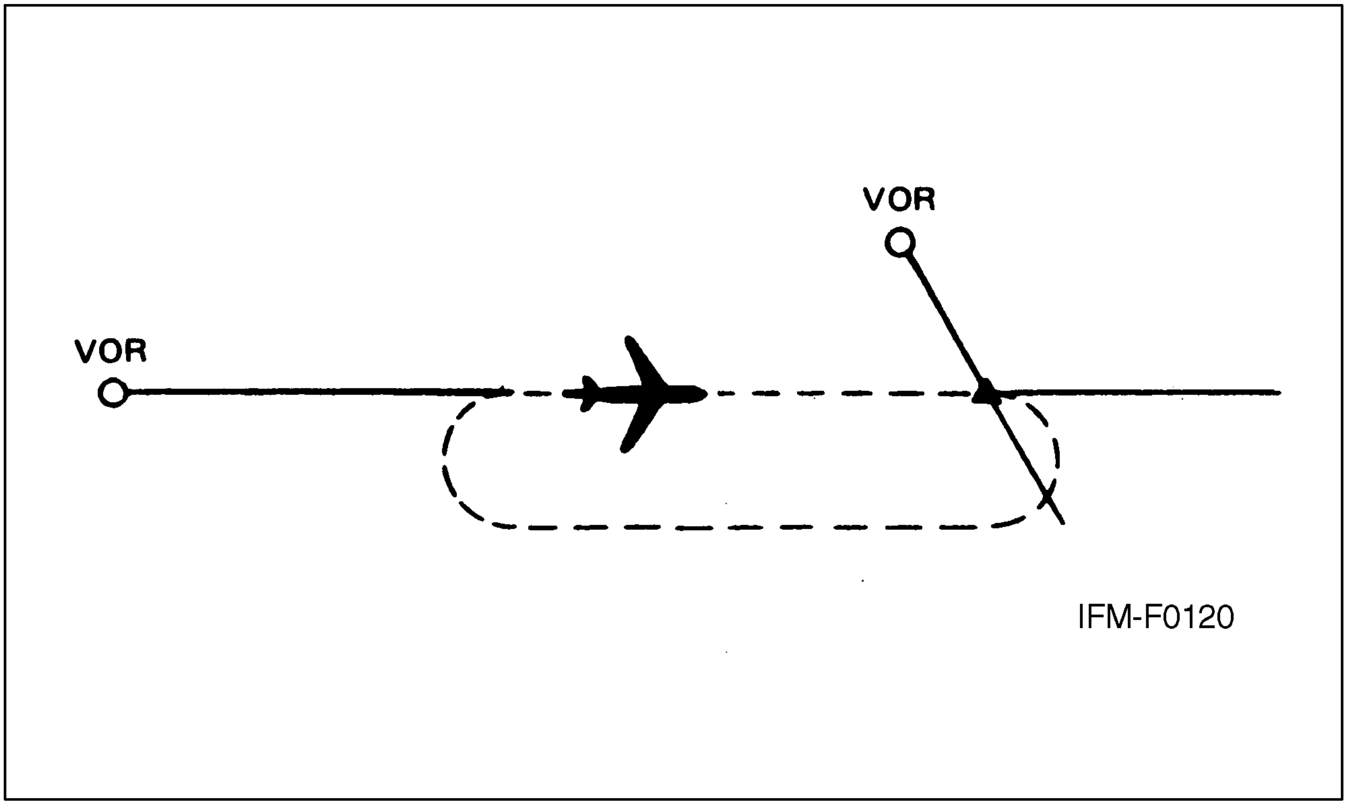


Figure 21-20. Typical Procedure at Intersection of VOR Radials

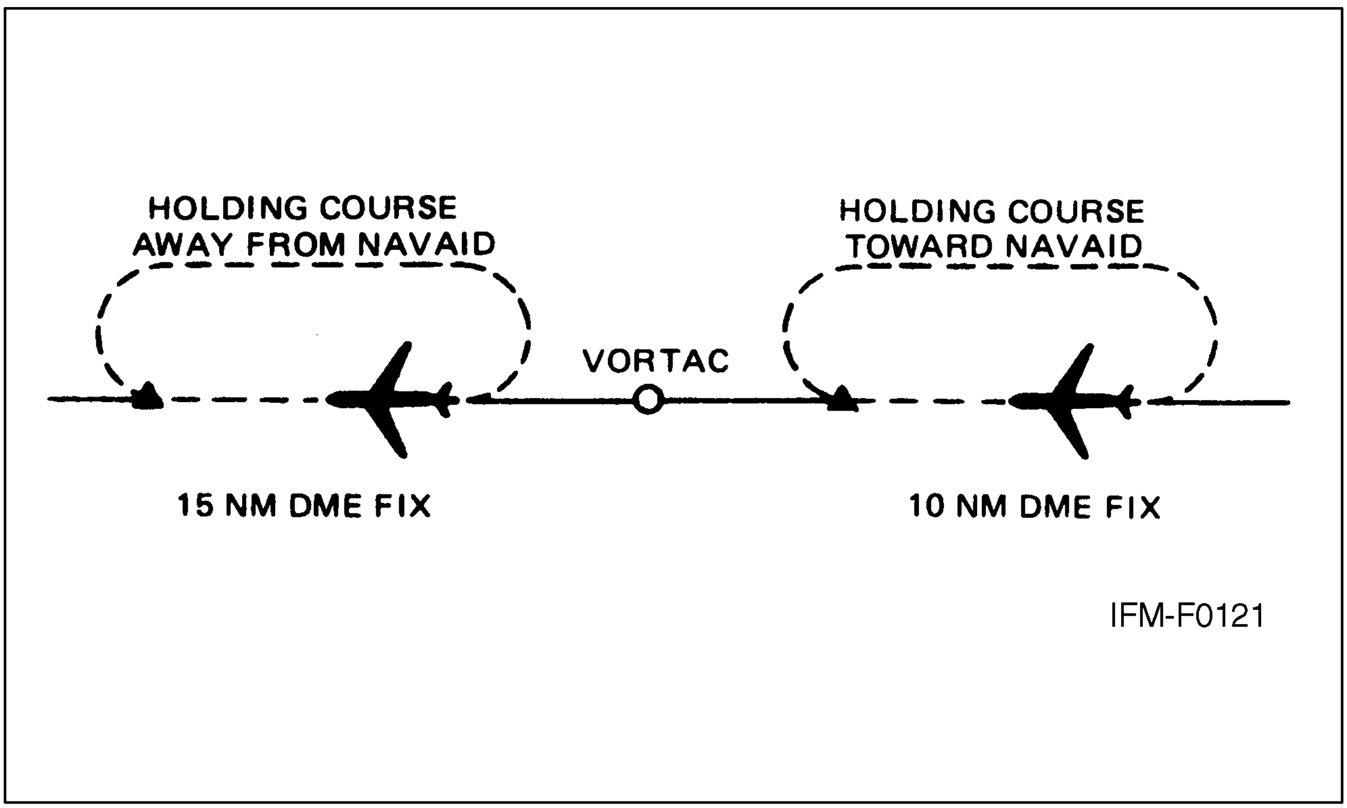


Figure 21-21. Typical Procedure at DME Fix

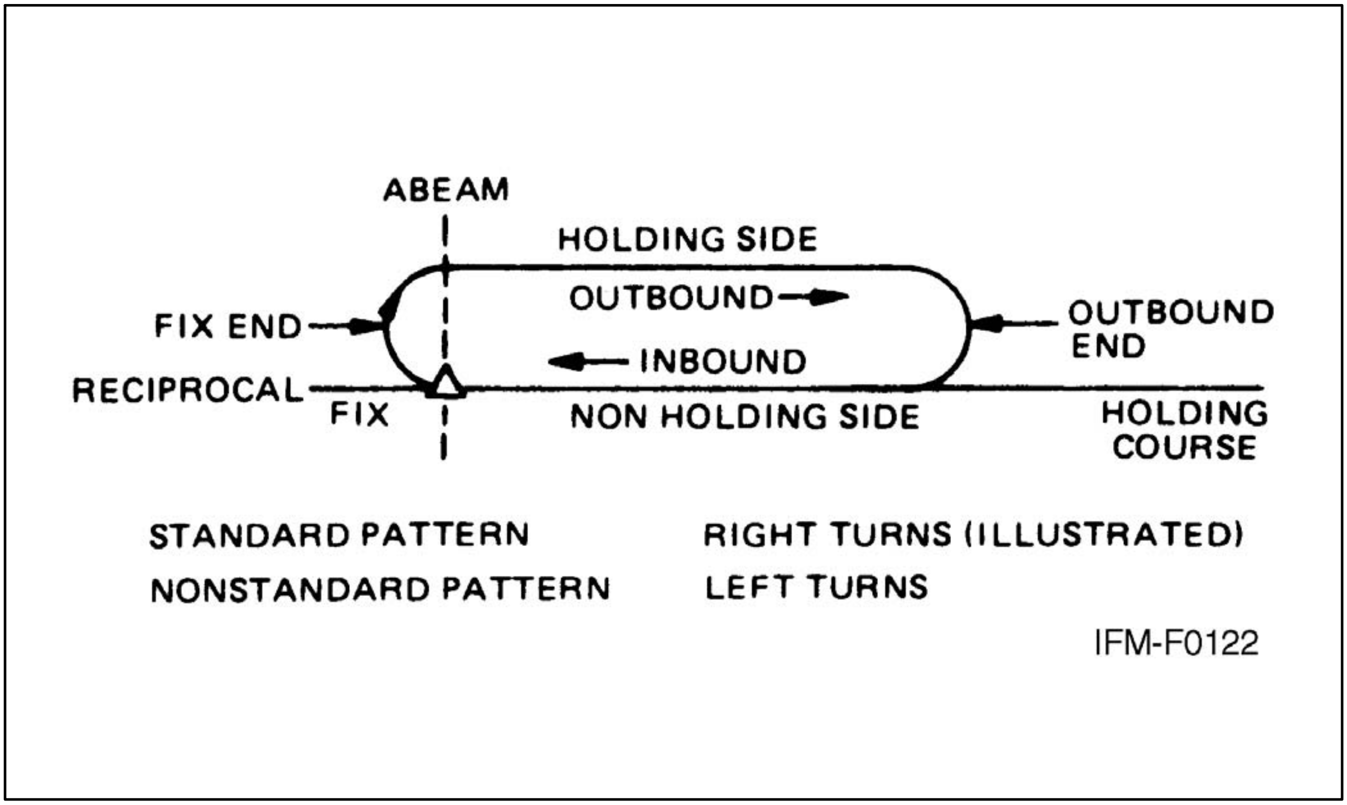


Figure 21-22. Descriptive Terms

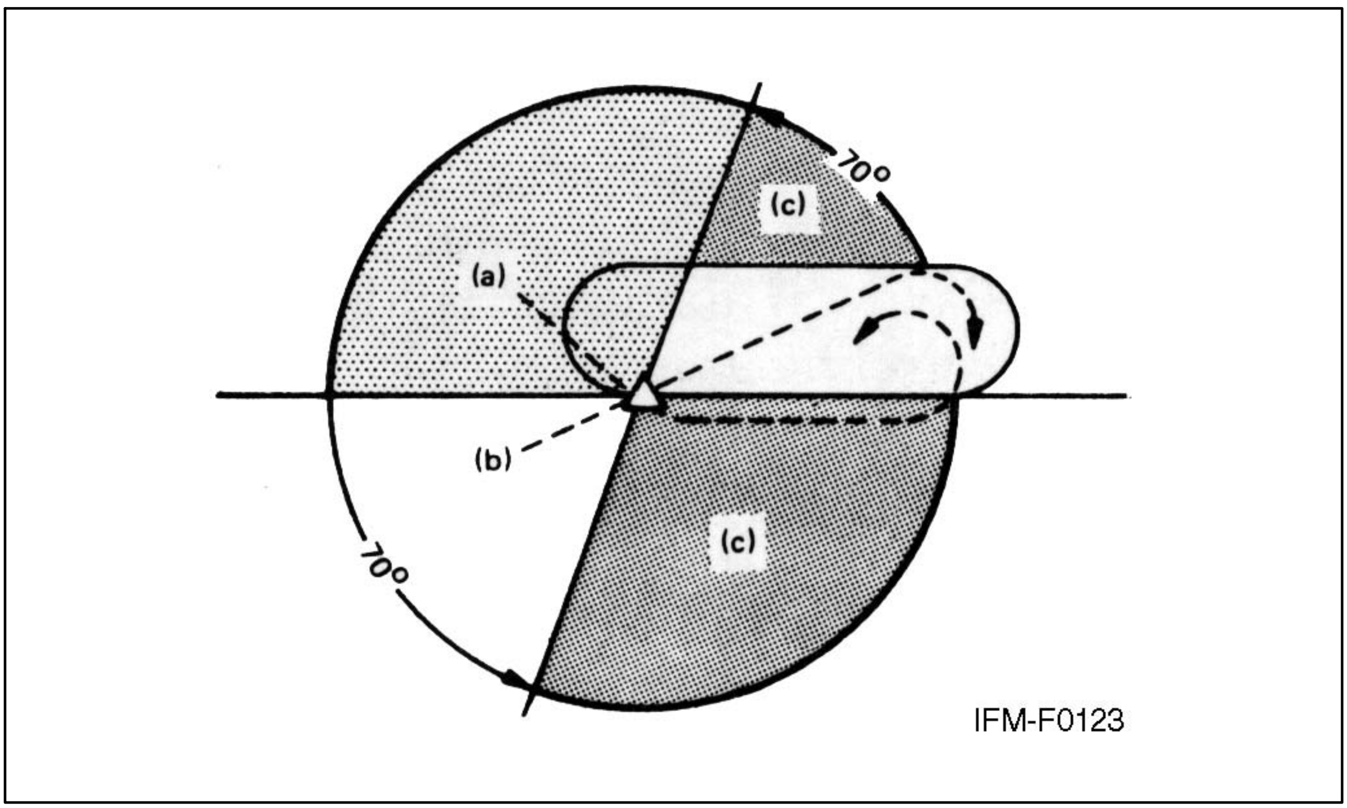


Figure 21-23. Standard Pattern

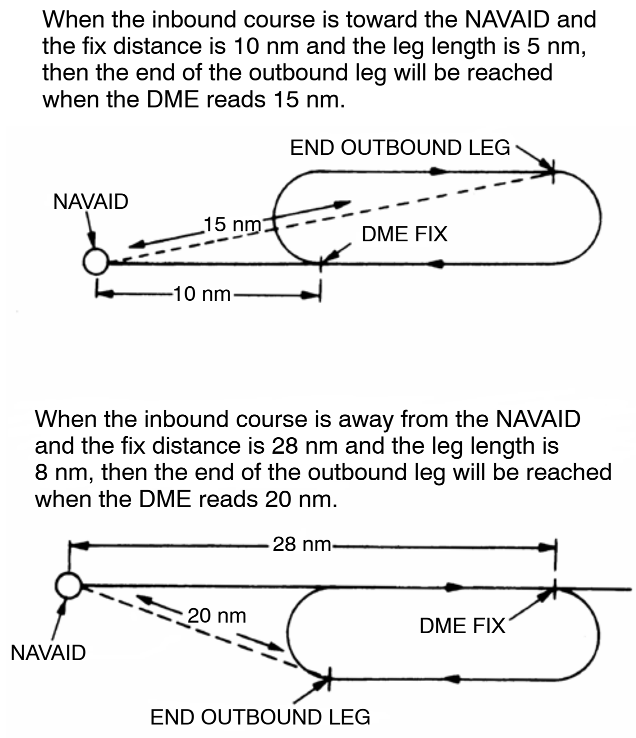


Figure 21-24. DME Holding

(6) Time to expect further clearance.

b. Detailed holding instructions: Same as a (1), (2), and (3) above with following additions to (4) and (5):

(1) or minute(s) if DME is not to be used.

(2) or right turns if standard pattern is to be used.

4. Holding pattern airspace protection is based on the following procedures. They are the only procedures for entry and holding recommended by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).

a. Entry procedures.

(1) Descriptive terms.

(2) Airspeed (maximum) — Refer to Flight Information Publications (FLIP) general planning.

(3) Entry.

(a) Parallel Procedure — Parallel holding course, turn left, and return to holding fix or intercept holding course. (Also called left turn.)

(b) Teardrop procedure — Proceed on outbound track of 30° (or less) to holding course, turn right to intercept holding course.

(c) Direct entry procedure — Turn right and fly the pattern. (Also called right turn.)

Note

Text and illustration are standard pattern, turns are opposite for nonstandard pattern.

(4) Timing.

Note

The initial outbound leg should be flown for 1 minute or 1-1/2 minutes (appropriate to altitude). Timing for subsequent outbound legs should be adjusted as necessary to achieve proper inbound leg time.

(a) Outbound timing begins over or abeam the fix, whichever occurs later. If the abeam position cannot be determined, start timing when turn to outbound is completed.

(5) Distance Measuring Equipment (DME).

(a) DME holding is subject to the same entry and holding procedures except that distances (nm) are used in lieu of time values. The outbound course of a DME holding pattern is called the outbound leg of the pattern. The length of the outbound leg will be specified by the controller. The end of the outbound leg is determined by the DME reading.

(6) Pilot action.

(a) Cross holding fix initially at or below maximum holding airspeed. Effect speed reduction within 3 minutes prior to estimated initial time over the holding fix.

(b) Make all turns during entry and while holding at: (1) 3° per second, (2) 30° bank angle, or (3) 25° bank angle (provided a flight director system is used), whichever requires the least bank angle.

(c) Compensate for known effect of wind, except when turning.

(d) Determine entry turn from aircraft heading upon arrival at the holding fix. Plus or minus 5° in heading is considered to be within allowable good operating limits for determining entry.

(e) Advise ATC immediately if any increased airspeed is necessary due to turbulence, icing, etc., or if unable to accomplish any part of the holding procedures. After such higher speeds are no longer necessary, operate according to the appropriate published holding speed and notify ATC.

Note

Airspace protection for turbulent air holding is based on a maximum of 280 Knots Indicated Airspeed (KIAS) or Mach 0.8, whichever is lower. Considerable impact on traffic flow will result when turbulent air holding patterns are used; thus, pilot discretion will ensure their use is limited to bona fide conditions/requirements.

(7) Nonstandard holding pattern — Fix end and outbound end turns are made to the left. Entry procedures to a nonstandard pattern are oriented in relation to the 70° line on the holding side just as in the standard pattern.

5. When holding at a fix, and instructions are received specifying the time of departure from the fix, the pilot should adjust the flightpath within the limits of the established holding pattern in order to leave the fix at the exact time specified. After departing the holding fix, normal speed is to be resumed with respect to other governing speed requirements, such as terminal area speed limits, specific ATC requests, etc. Where the fix is associated with an instrument approach, and timed approaches are in effect, a procedure turn shall not be executed unless the pilot advises ATC, as aircraft holding is expected to proceed inbound on final approach directly from the holding pattern when approach clearance is received.

6. Radar surveillance of outer fix holding pattern airspace areas.

   a. Whenever aircraft are holding at an outer fix, ATC will usually provide radar surveillance of the outer fix holding pattern airspace area, or any portion of it, if it is shown on the controller's radarscope.

   b. The controller will attempt to detect any holding aircraft that stray outside the holding pattern airspace area and will assist any detected aircraft to return to the assigned airspace area.

   c. Many factors could prevent ATC from providing this additional service, such as workload, number of targets, precipitation, ground clutter, and radar system capability. These circumstances may make it unfeasible to maintain radar identification of aircraft or to detect aircraft straying from the holding pattern. The provision of this service depends entirely upon whether the controller believes to be in a position to provide it and does not relieve a pilot of the pilot's responsibility to adhere to an accepted ATC clearance.

21.3.12.1 Wind Correction Techniques

21.3.12.1.1 Crosswind Correction

After entering the holding pattern, the pilot should compensate for wind in order to arrive at an outbound position from which a turn inbound will place the aircraft on the holding course.

This is normally accomplished by utilizing a larger drift correction on the outbound leg.

21.3.12.1.2 Headwind or Tailwind Corrections

After completing the first circuit of the holding pattern, adjust the time outbound as necessary to provide the desired inbound time. For example, if the inbound leg was 30 seconds too long, subtract 30 seconds from the outbound leg. In extreme wind conditions, even though the turn inbound is initiated when abeam the station, the inbound leg may exceed the 1 or 1-1/2 minute limit. In this case only is the pilot authorized to exceed the time limit inbound.

21.3.12.1.3 Meeting an Expected Further Clearance Time (EFC)

The holding pattern may be shortened (never lengthened) as required to meet the Expected Further Clearance Time (EFC). Planning to meet the EFC should be based on the point of departure from the holding pattern. Two factors to consider in planning are the length of time required to make the two turns and the inbound leg time compared to the outbound leg.

21.3.12.2 Approaches

A limited number of VOR instrument approaches utilizing a VORTAC facility have been approved for use for TACAN equipped aircraft. These procedures are identified by the phrase "or TACAN" printed adjacent to the name of the procedure (e.g., VOR or TACAN Rwy 17). Approaches designated as VORTAC may be executed by aircraft using either TACAN or VOR with DME; DME is required. Approaches designated VOR/DME shall be executed by aircraft utilizing VOR with DME, and both the VOR and DME are required.

WARNING

> The approach procedures discussed in this section are for basic instruction only. Consult the latest Aeronautical Information Manual/Federal Aviation Regulation (AIM/FAR) for detailed procedures.

21.3.12.3 Transition to the Initial Approach Fix (IAF)

Published routes on the terminal chart provide a course and distance from the en route structure to the Initial Approach Fix (IAF). If other than a published routing is used, ensure it does not exceed the operational limitation of the Navigation Aid (NAVAID). Limitations according to type NAVAID, aircraft altitude, and range from the facility are published in FLIP.

Before reaching the IAF, review the approach chart, recheck the weather at destination and alternate, and obtain clearance for the approach.

An IAF may be approached from directions not favorable to intercepting the initial approach course upon arrival at the fix. When this occurs, and prior approach clearance has been received, the pilot must maneuver to intercept the initial approach course. Preapproach intercept maneuvers should be accomplished as follows:

1. Turn at the IAF in the shortest direction to intercept the initial approach course.

2. Begin descent from the Initial Penetration Altitude (IPA) when established on a segment of the published approach.

3. If holding is not required, reduce to penetration airspeed or below before crossing the IAF.

21.3.12.4 High-Altitude Approach Procedures

21.3.12.4.1 Non-DME Teardrop Approach

After crossing the IAF, turn in the shorter direction toward the penetration course. Set the altimeter in accordance with FLIP procedures. Start descent when the aircraft is over or abeam the fix, headed in the direction of the penetration course. Correct to course using "immediately after station passage interception" procedures described in paragraph 21.3.4. Some penetrations include altitude restrictions for a specified number of miles. In these cases, intercept the outbound course and descend as depicted on the approach chart. Before reaching the penetration turn altitude, set the inbound course in the course selector window. Recheck the altimeter and the minimum altitude for completion of the penetration turn.

Perform the penetration turn as published. If it appears the course will not be intercepted upon completion of the penetration turn, roll out with an intercept to the inbound course. Normally, a 30° to 45° intercept angle is sufficient; however, vary the angle as necessary depending upon groundspeed, displacement from course, and range from the station.

Descend from the altitude specified for completion of penetration turn when on the inbound course. Before reaching the Final Approach Fix (FAF), configure the aircraft for landing in accordance with the flight manual. Cross the FAF at the published altitude, start timing, intercept the final approach course, and report to the controlling agency.

Note

The time-distance tables published in the approach charts are based on groundspeed; therefore, TAS and the existing wind must be considered in order to accurately determine the time from the final approach fix to the missed approach point.

Descend to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) so that visual references for landing may be acquired as soon as practical. Comply with any published altitude restrictions between the final approach fix and Missed Approach Point (MAP). The descent to the MDA should be completed before reaching the missed approach point. Descent below MDA is authorized when visual reference with the runway environment is sufficient to complete the landing. Part VII discusses landing from a straight-in or circling approach.

The MDA should not be confused with the weather minimums for the approach being flown. The weather minimums indicate the ceiling and visibility required before the approach may be started (reference OPNAV 3710.7 series, Chapter 5, Approach Criteria for Multipiloted Aircraft). The MDA indicates the minimum altitude Mean Sea Level (MSL) to which the aircraft may be flown. Use Runway Visual Range (RVR) for the visibility minimum when available. The RVR is found in the landing minimums block next to the MDA (Figure 21-25).

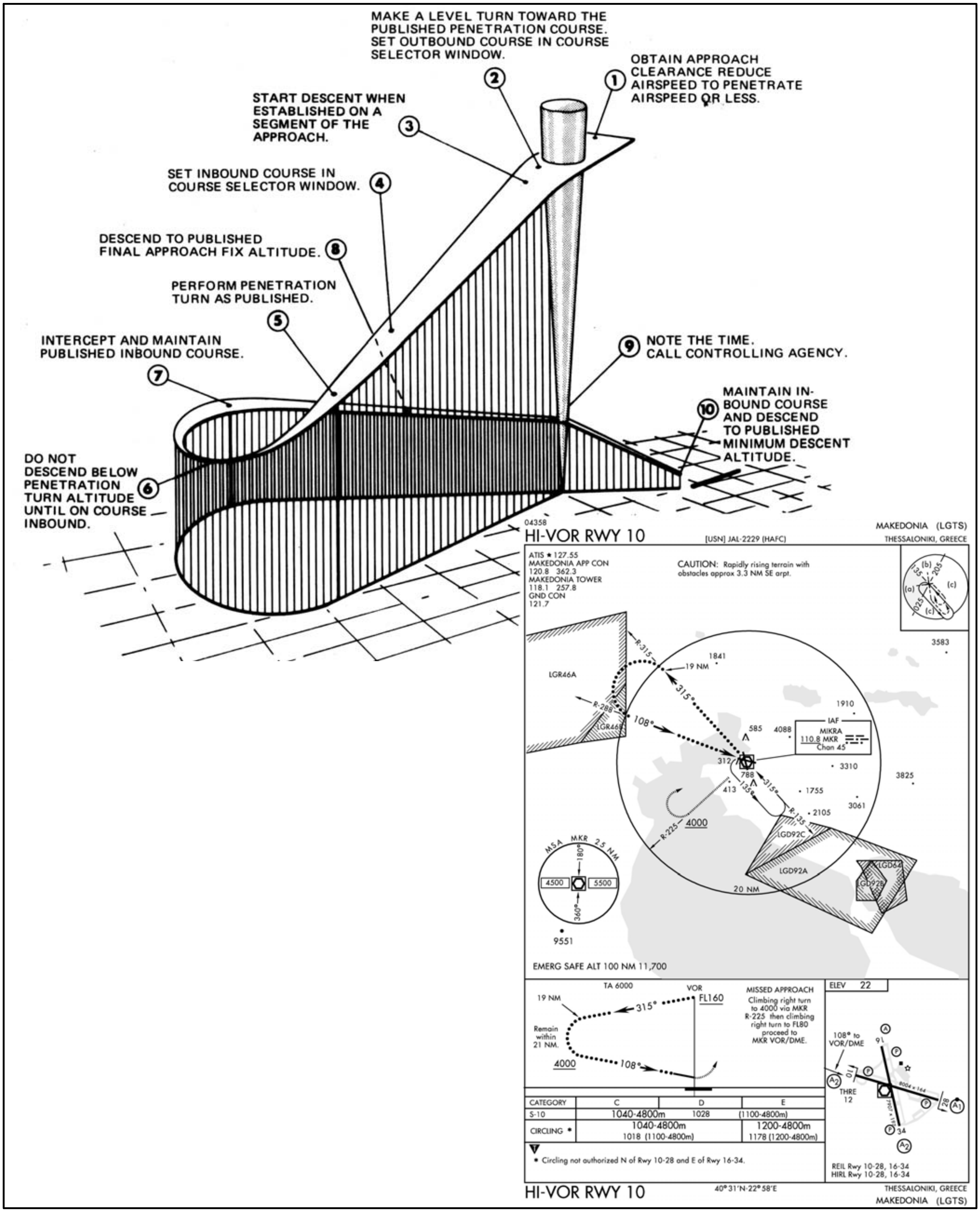


Figure 21-25. VOR Non-DME Teardrop High-Altitude Approach

Perform the missed approach when:

1. Visual reference with the runway environment at the missed approach point is insufficient to complete the landing.

2. Instructed by the controlling agency.

3. A safe landing is not possible.

21.3.12.4.2 Dual-Facility Approaches

This type of approach may use dual VOR, ADF, or a combination of the two facilities. Figure 21-26 illustrates one type of dual-facility approach. With dual navigational receivers, this type of approach offers a few advantages over the non-DME teardrop approach. The pilot can maintain course on one facility and monitor his progress by reference to the second facility. Normally, the distance between the IAF and FAF is published in the profile view of the approach chart. If the pilot is position oriented, the pilot can better approximate the time available to configure the aircraft for the final approach.

With only a single VOR (or ADF) receiver, this type of approach may require a high degree of pilot proficiency. In the illustration, a pilot flying this approach would have to retune the VOR several times in order to intercept and maintain course and, at the same time, determine the aircraft position in relation to the intersection(s). Consider weather, aircraft equipment, and pilot proficiency when planning a dual-facility approach.

Note

Dual receivers are required when an intersection (formed by a radial from another facility) is used as a step-down fix between the final approach fix and missed approach point.

21.3.12.5 Low-Altitude Approach Procedures

The reduction of airspace and the predominant use of the procedure turn are two factors that distinguish the Low- (AL) from the High-Altitude Approach (JAL). Pilots of high-performance aircraft that have an operational requirement to use the low-altitude charts (AL) should maneuver at airspeeds compatible with the depicted procedure. Category E will be depicted on low-altitude (AL) procedures only where an operational requirement exists. Procedure turns are discussed under paragraph 21.3.12.6. Some low-altitude VOR (or ADF) approaches do not use the procedure turn (Figure 21-27). The guidance concerning transition found preceding high-altitude approach procedures also applies to low-altitude approach procedures.

21.3.12.5.1 Straight-In Approaches

A straight-in approach is an instrument approach conducted by proceeding over the FAF at the prescribed altitude and continuing inbound on the final approach course to the airport without making a Procedure Turn (PT). When issued a clearance for a straight-in approach while conducting a timed approach from a holding fix, when the initial approach published on the Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) is designated NoPT (procedure turn not required), or when ATC radar vectors to a final approach position are provided, the pilot shall not make a procedure turn unless the pilot so advises ATC and an appropriate clearance is received. Some instrument approach procedures specifically prohibit use of a procedure turn (Figure 21-27).

An aircraft cleared to a holding fix, other than the IAF, then subsequently cleared for a straight-in approach (even if the aircraft has not yet entered holding) is expected by ATC to proceed to the IAF via the holding fix to commence the approach. If route of flight directly to the IAF is desired, it should be so stated by the controller. If doubt exists, contact ATC to determine the correct route of flight.

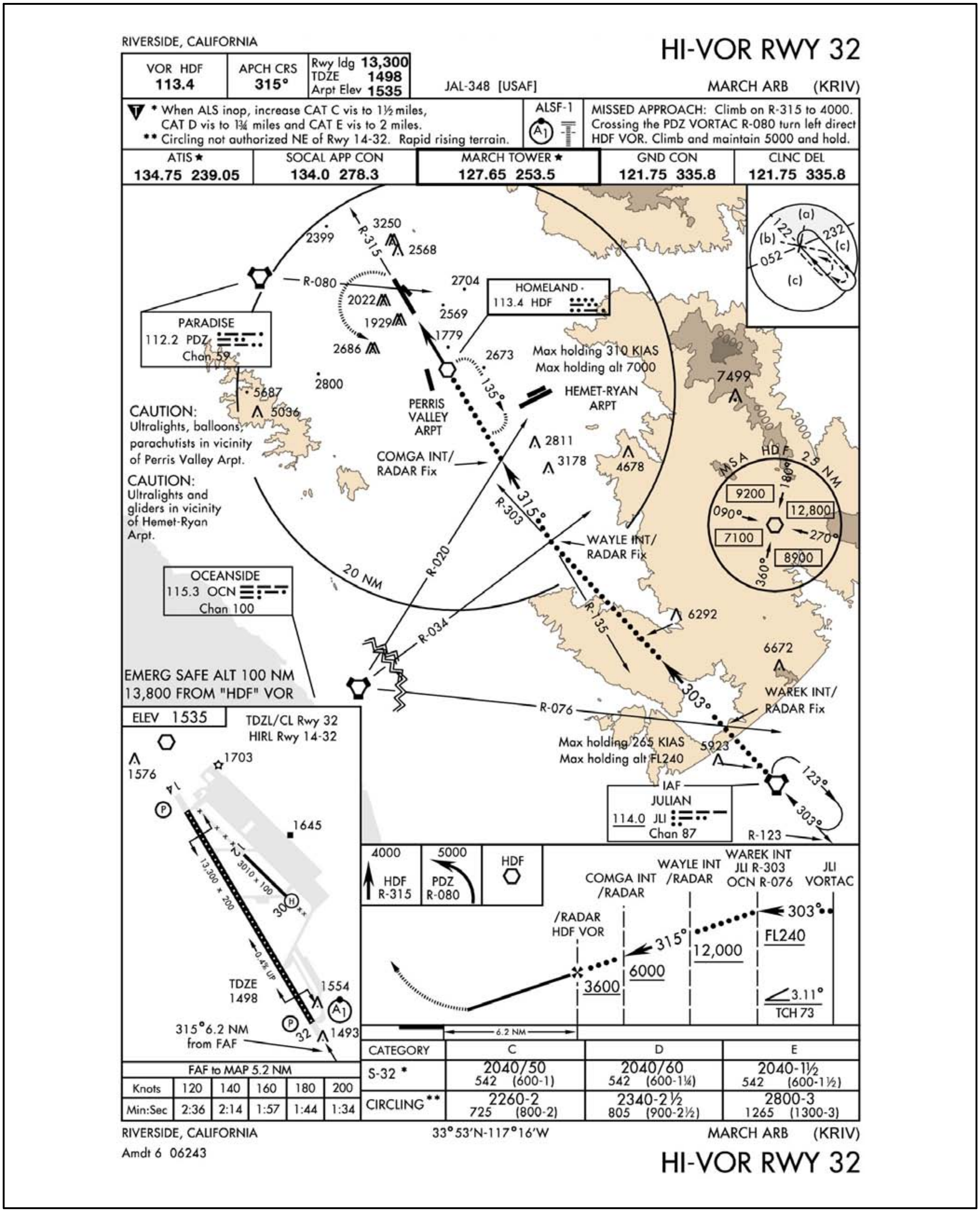


Figure 21-26. Dual VOR High-Altitude Approach

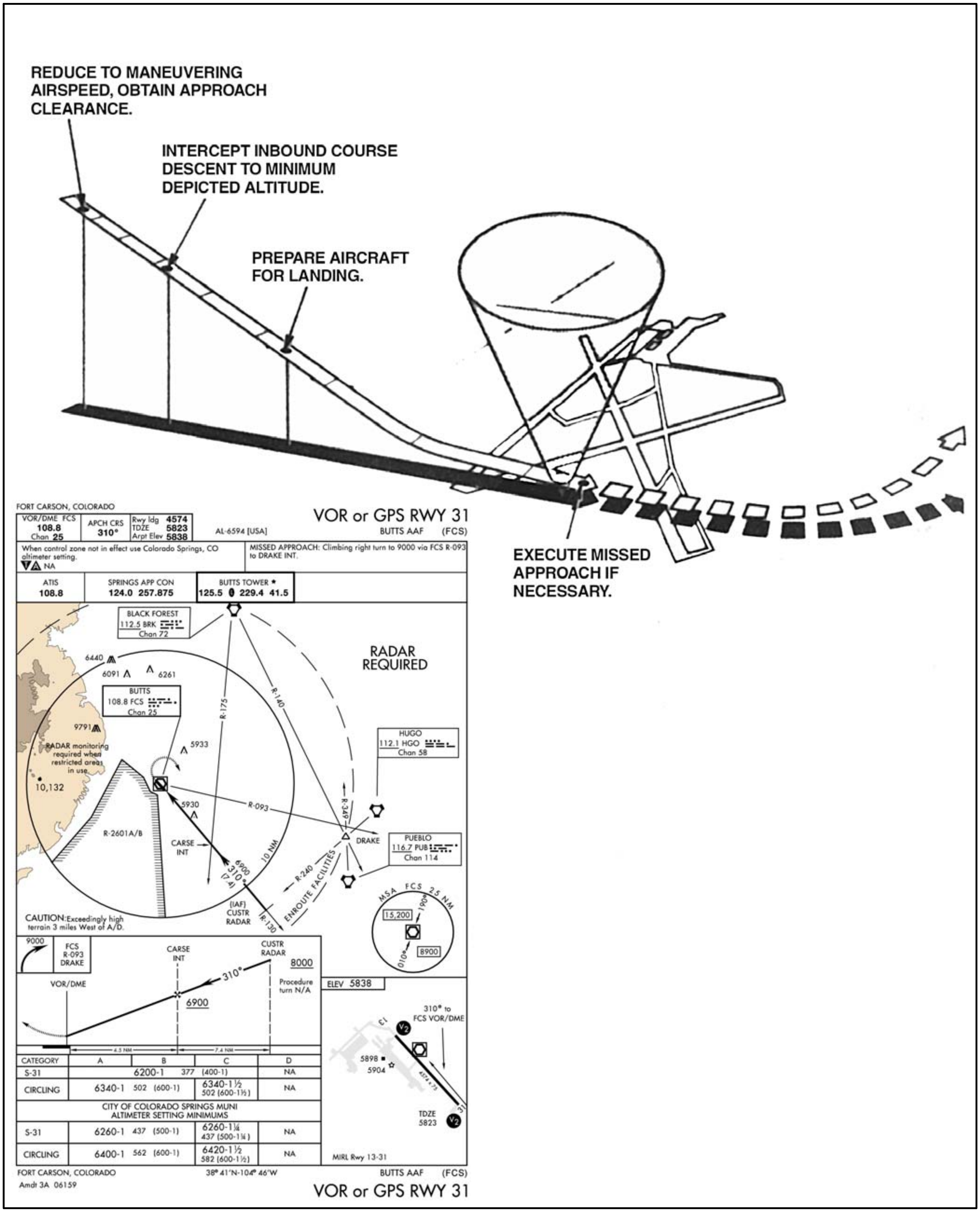


Figure 21-27. VOR Low-Altitude Straight-in Approach

When operating on an unpublished route or while being radar vectored when an approach clearance is received, the pilot shall maintain the last assigned altitude: unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC or until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. Descend from the initial approach altitude to the next altitude depicted after established on the initial approach course. If there is insufficient time to intercept course and comply with the first altitude restriction, before starting the approach, request ATC clearance to maneuver for a favorable alignment with the initial approach course. Before reaching the FAF, configure the aircraft for landing in accordance with the applicable NATOPS flight manual. At the FAF, start the time, intercept the final approach course, and call the controlling agency, if required.

If no FAF is depicted, treat the point of interception of the final approach course as the FAF.

Note

The time-distance tables published in the approach charts are based on groundspeed; therefore, TAS and the existing wind must be considered to determine accurately the time from the final approach fix to the missed approach point.

Descend to the MDA so that visual references for landing may be acquired as soon as practical. Comply with any published altitude restriction between the FAF and missed approach point. Descent below MDA is authorized when visual reference with the runway environment is sufficient to complete the landing. Perform the missed approach when:

1. Visual reference with the runway environment at the missed approach point is insufficient to complete the landing.

2. Instructed by the controlling agency.

3. A safe landing is not possible.

21.3.12.6 Procedure Turns (PT)

A Procedure Turn (PT) is a maneuver that is designed to place the aircraft on an inbound course to the FAF. Further, it provides for descent to the FAF altitude and affords the pilot time to establish the final approach configuration. A procedure turn is normally associated with the low-altitude approach (AL); however, it may be included as a part of the High-Altitude Approach (JAL) procedure (Figures 21-28 and 21-29).

21.3.12.6.1 Entry

Initial entry for a procedure turn may be accomplished as described under paragraph 21.3.12, or may be made by the aircraft turning in the shortest direction to proceed outbound. On U.S. Government charts, a barbed arrow indicates the direction or side of the outbound course on which procedure turn is made. Headings are provided for course reversal using the 45 degree type procedure turn; however, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn is left to the discretion of the aircrew. Some of the options are the 45 degree procedure turn, the racetrack pattern, the teardrop procedure turn, or the 80/260 degree course reversal. Some procedure turns are specified by procedural track. These turns must be flown exactly as depicted.

When the approach procedure involves a procedure turn, a maximum speed of not greater than 200 knots Indicated Airspeed (IAS) should be observed from first overheading the course reversal IAF through the procedure turn maneuver to ensure containment within the obstruction clearance area.

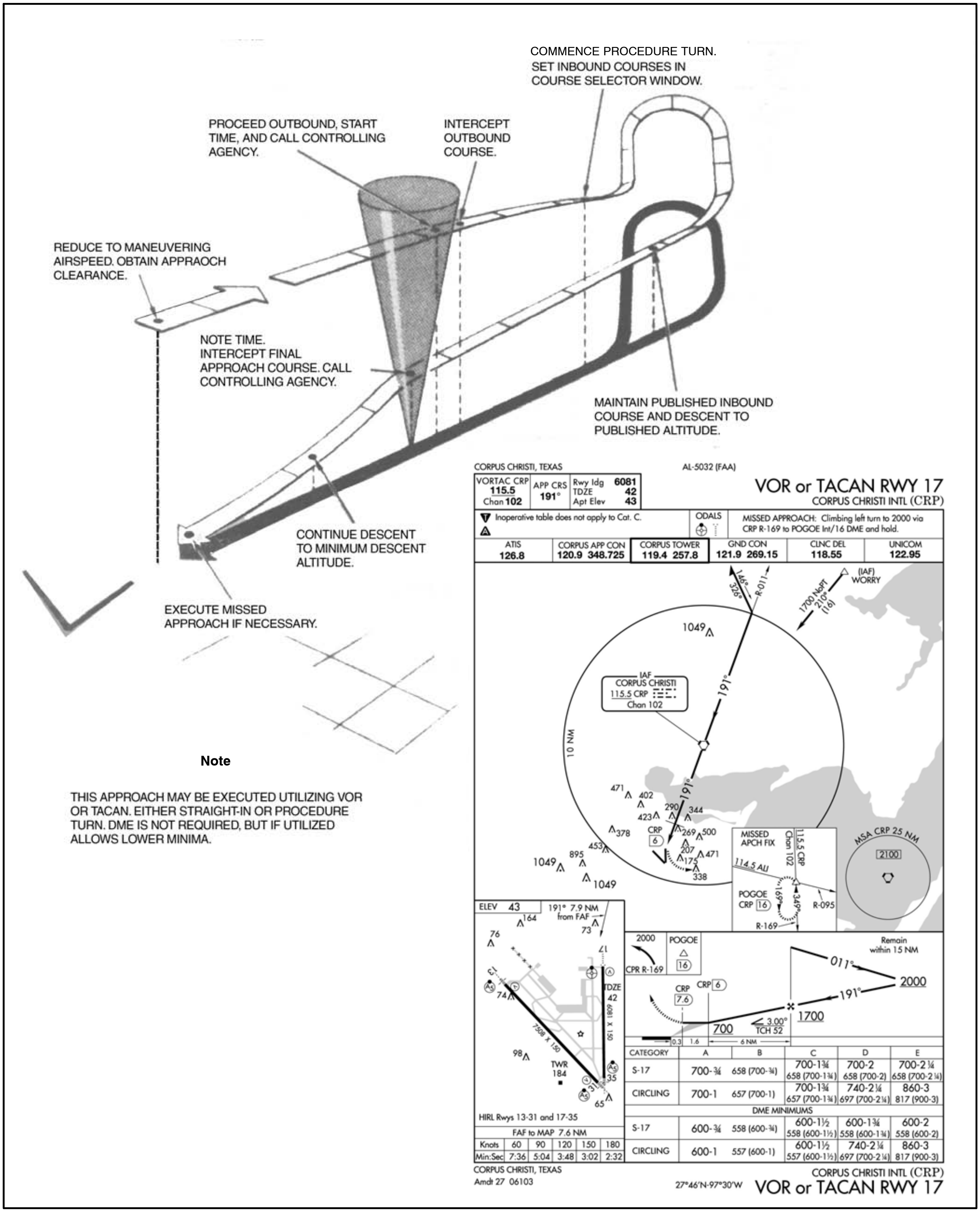


Figure 21-28. VOR Low-Altitude Approach, Procedure Turn Type

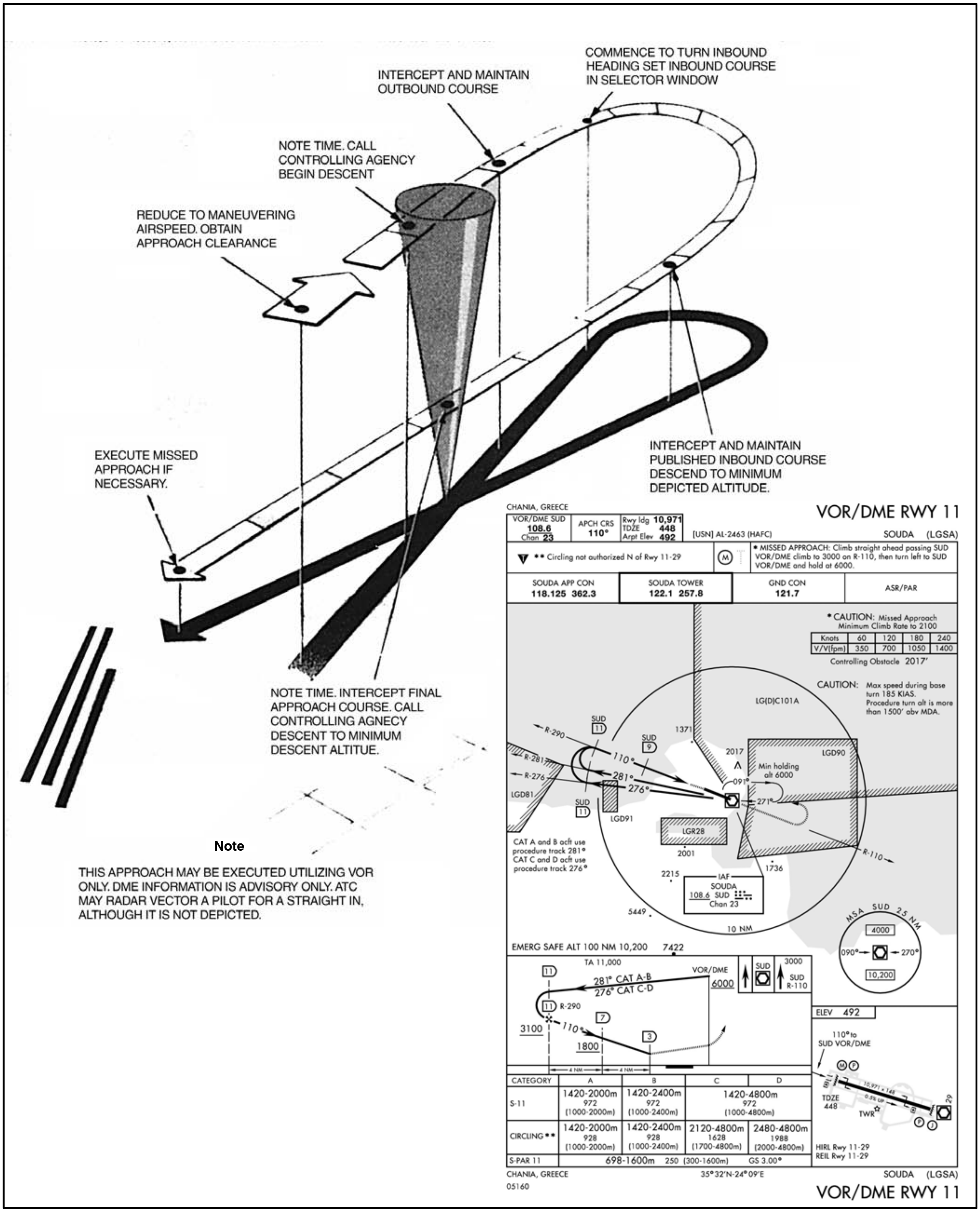


Figure 21-29. VOR Low-Altitude Approach, Teardrop Required

On the outbound leg, the aircraft shall not exceed the protected airspace depicted. At the completion of the outbound leg, course reversal may be accomplished by utilizing the 90-270 method, the depicted procedure turn headings, or any other method that safely reverses course and keeps the aircraft on the Procedure Turn (PT) side of the approach course within the protected airspace. If on a teardrop approach, at the completion of outbound timing, turn in the shortest direction toward the inbound course.

When nonstandard distances are specified, adjust timing in order to comply with the depicted procedure. The standard procedure turn length is 10 nm (15 nm on terminal charts where Category E minimums are published). For those procedure turns prescribed from a DME fix, adhere to published distance restrictions in lieu of timing.

21.3.12.6.2 Descent

Initiate descent from the initial approach altitude to the published procedure turn altitude when the aircraft is abeam the fix or wings level outbound, whichever occurs last. Start descent from procedure turn altitude to final approach fix altitude when the aircraft is headed inbound on the inbound course. If a teardrop is performed from a fix without outbound course guidance, descend from procedure turn altitude when the aircraft is on course inbound.

Before reaching the final approach fix, configure the aircraft for landing in accordance with the NATOPS flight manual. At the final approach fix, note the time, make the mandatory position report, and intercept the final approach course to the airfield. If no FAF is depicted, treat the point at which the aircraft has intercepted the inbound course as the FAF.

Note

The time-distance tables published on the approach charts are based on groundspeed; therefore, TAS and the existing wind must be considered in order to determine accurately the time from the final approach fix to the missed approach point.

Descend to the MDA so that visual references for landing may be acquired as soon as practical. Comply with any published altitude restriction between the FAF and missed approach point. Descent below MDA is authorized when visual reference with the runway environment is sufficient to complete the landing and the Visual Descent Point (VDP) has been reached.

Perform the missed approach when:

1. Visual reference with the runway environment at the missed approach point is insufficient to complete the landing.
2. Instructed by the controlling agency.
3. A safe landing is not possible.

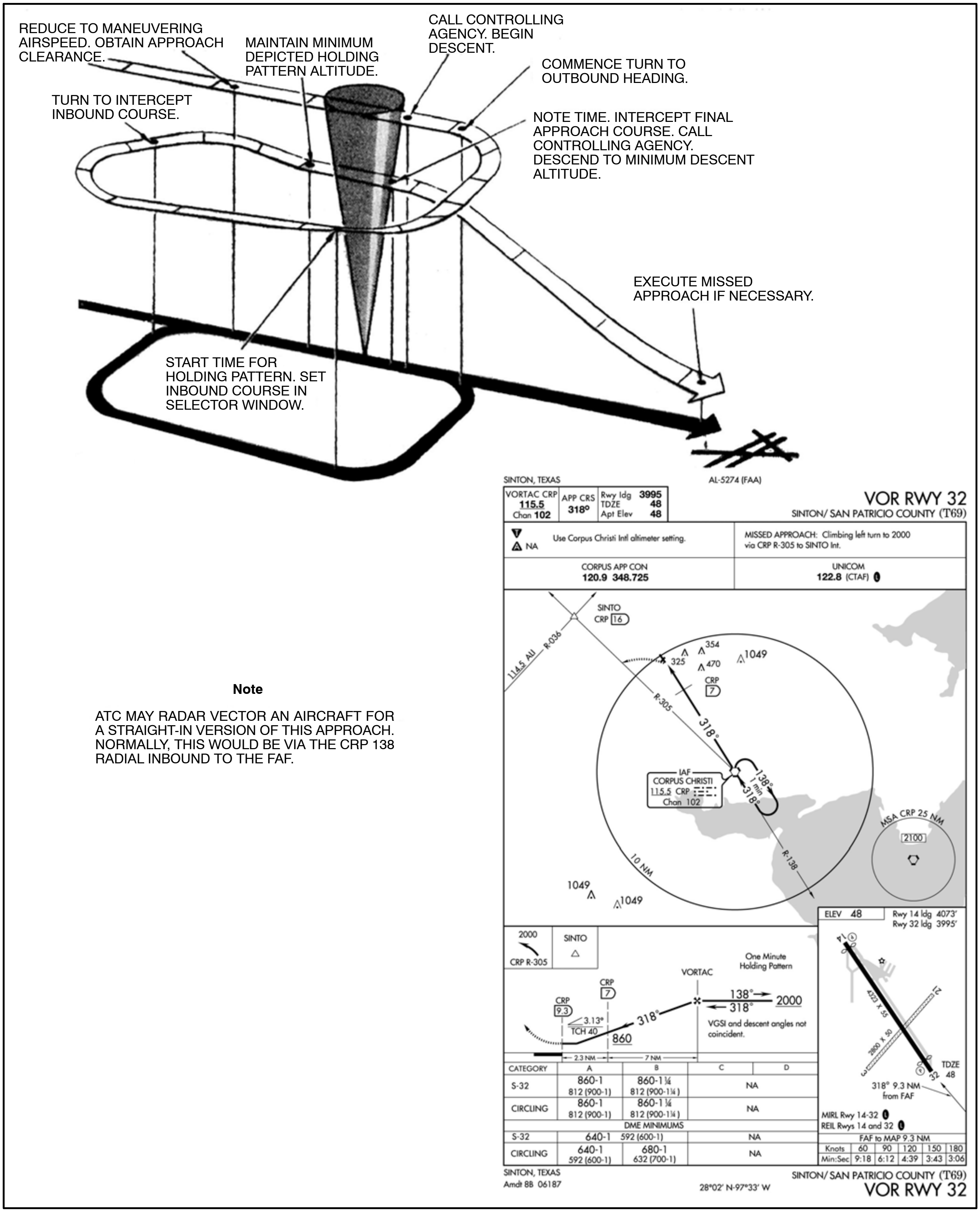
21.3.12.7 Approaches from Holding

21.3.12.7.1 Holding Type Approach

When executing an approach that specifies a holding pattern in lieu of a procedure turn, the pilot must fly the holding pattern and does not retain the option of executing a procedure turn or teardrop (Figure 21-30). When established in holding and cleared for the approach, the pilot may start the descent from any position in the pattern. The aircraft will be configured for landing prior to reaching the FAF.

21.3.12.7.2 Holding Pattern Located on the Initial Approach Course

When cleared to hold in a pattern depicted on the approach plate on the initial approach course, and subsequently cleared for the approach, the pilot may depart holding from any position and need not return to the holding fix. Pilots may intercept the teardrop or procedure turn course directly and commence descent from IAF altitude immediately. They may also remain in the holding pattern to dissipate excessive altitude power to proceeding outbound on the procedure turn or teardrop course (Figure 21-29).



CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
S-32	860-1 812 (900-1)	860-1¼ 812 (900-1¼)	NA	
CIRCLING	860-1 812 (900-1)	860-1¼ 812 (900-1¼)	NA	
DME MINIMUMS				
S-32	640-1 592 (600-1)		NA	
CIRCLING	640-1 592 (600-1)	680-1 632 (700-1)	NA	

FAF to MAP 9.3 NM					
Knots	60	90	120	150	180
Min:Sec	9:18	6:12	4:39	3:43	3:06

Figure 21-30. VOR Low-Altitude Approach, Holding Type

CHAPTER 22

Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN)

22.1 INTRODUCTION

Although VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) was a great improvement over earlier navigation systems, a gap still existed in information presented to the pilot. The Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN) system was developed to fill this gap by providing the pilot with information needed for precise, geographical orientation within TACAN range. TACAN added a continuous display of range information to the course information already available. Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), an integral part of TACAN, provides continuous slant range distance information. Like VOR, TACAN provides 360 courses radiating from the station. In addition, because TACAN ground equipment is compact and relatively easy to transport, it provides for greater versatility in beacon installation and mobility than the VOR system (Figure 22-1).

22.2 EQUIPMENT AND TRANSMISSION PRINCIPLES

TACAN operates in the Ultrahigh Frequency (UHF) (1000 MHz) band. The TACAN system has a total of 126 two-way channels. Suffixes X or Y are used for discrimination between the sets, totaling 252 possible channels. Air-to-ground frequencies (DME) for these channels are in the 1025 to 1150 MHz range; associated ground-to-air frequencies are in the 962 to 1024 MHz and 1151 to 1213 MHz ranges. Channels are spaced at 1-MHz intervals in these bands.

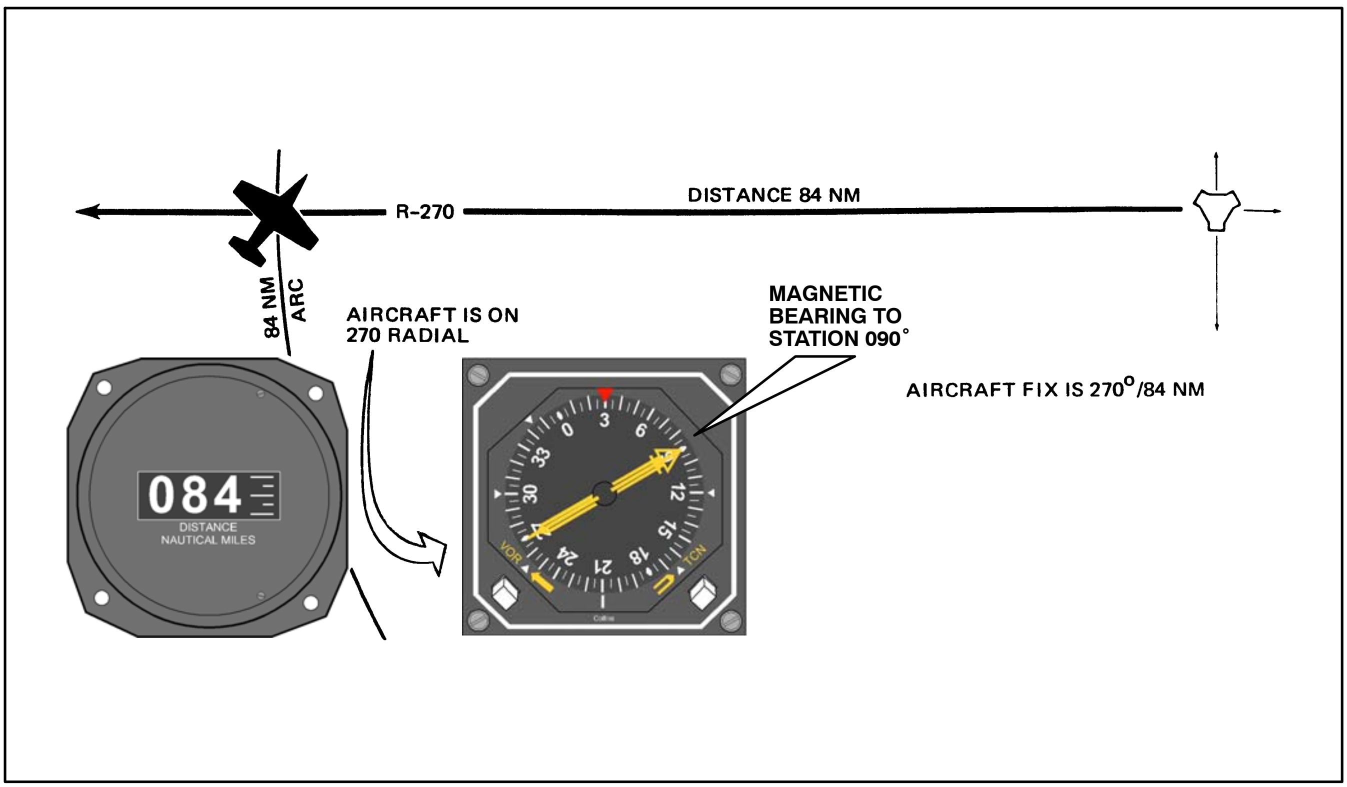


Figure 22-1. Determining Aircraft Position by TACAN

22.2.1 Ground Equipment

The ground equipment consists of a rotating type antenna for transmitting bearing information and a receiver-transmitter (transponder) for transmitting distance information. The TACAN identifies itself aurally through international Morse code every 35 seconds. Permanent TACAN ground stations are usually dual-transmitter equipped (one operating and one on standby), fully monitored installations that automatically switch to the standby transmitter when a malfunction occurs. The ground monitor (set to alarm at any radial shift of ±1°) is usually located in the base control tower or approach control and sets off a light and buzzer to warn the groundcrew when an out-of-tolerance condition exists. Anytime TACAN reception is suspected or bearing/distance unlock conditions are encountered in flight, a pilot can check on the status of the ground equipment by calling Air Traffic Control (ATC). When ground equipment is undergoing repairs that might cause it to transmit erroneous signals, its identification must be silenced; therefore, always listen for identification signals during flight (Figure 22-2).

22.2.1.1 TACAN Signal Pattern

The signal pattern for bearing information is formed by varying the nondirectional pattern sent from the stationary central element of the antenna. This is done by rotating a cylinder around the central element of the antenna at 15 revolutions per second (rps) (Figure 22-3, part A). A metal wire embedded vertically in the plastic cylinder distorts the radiated signal into a cardioid (heart-shaped) pattern, and its rotation causes the cardioid pattern to also revolve at 15 rps. This resulting rotating pattern is referred to as the course pattern. From this, the aircraft receives a 15 cycles-per-second (cps) amplitude modulation. This means that the strength of the signal goes from maximum to minimum and back to a maximum at the rate of 15 cps.

Another larger cylinder, with nine wires in it, is mounted around the central element and the smaller cylinder and also rotates at 15 rps. This is the fine antenna that superimposes nine lobes on the already-formed course pattern. This forms a 135 cps signal (Figure 22-3, part B).

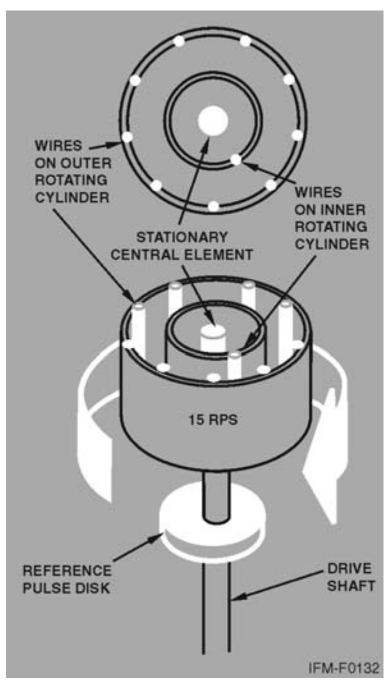


Figure 22-2. TACAN Ground Beacon Antenna

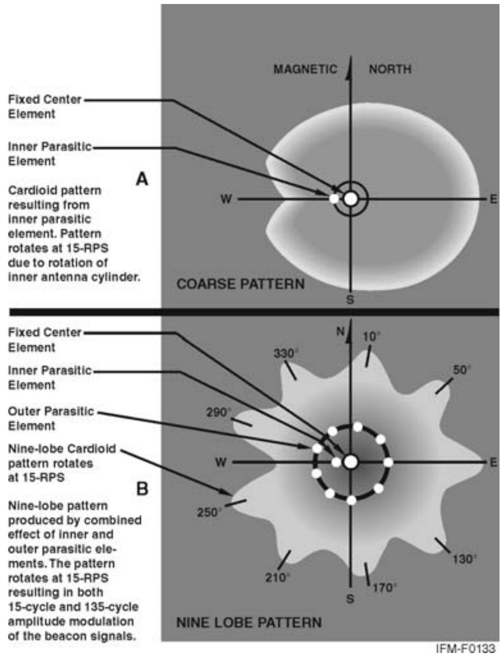


Figure 22-3. TACAN Antenna Pattern

To determine the aircraft position in bearing from the station, a phase angle must be measured electronically. To measure the phase angle, a fixed reference is established. This fixed reference is a 15-cps nondirectional pulse signal normally referred to as the main reference bearing pulse. One main reference pulse occurs with each revolution of the antenna. In addition to the main reference pulse, eight auxiliary reference pulses also occur during one revolution of the ground beacon antenna; therefore, a reference pulse occurs each 40° of antenna rotation (360° = 9 pulses).

The airborne equipment electronically measures the time lapse between the main reference pulse and the maximum amplitude (signal strength) of the 15-cps rotating signal pattern. This determines the aircraft bearing from the station within a 40° sector. Then, the time lapse between the auxiliary reference pulses and the maximum amplitude of the 135-cps signal is measured to determine the aircraft position within the 40° sector. The accuracy of this measurement determines the position of the aircraft relative to the station within ±1° (Figure 22-4).

22.2.1.2 Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)

Distance is determined with TACAN equipment by measuring the elapsed time between transmission of interrogating pulses of the airborne set and reception of corresponding reply pulses of the ground station. The aircraft transmitter starts the process by sending out the distance interrogation pulse signals. Receipt of these signals by the ground station receiver triggers its transmitter, which sends out the distance reply pulse signals. These pulses require approximately 12 microseconds round trip travel time per nm of distance from the ground beacon. The range indicator displays distance to the TACAN beacon in nm (Figure 22-5).

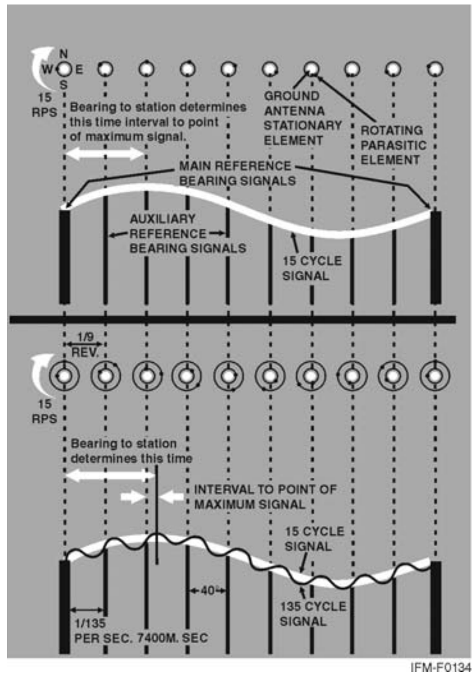


Figure 22-4. Combined Course and Fine Bearing Signals

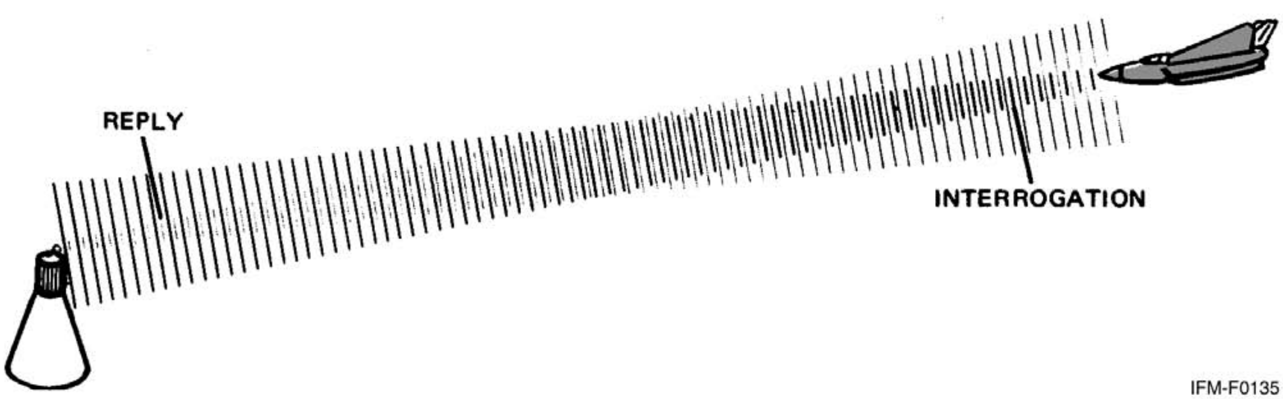


Figure 22-5. Interrogation and Reply Pulses for DME

As a large number of aircraft could be interrogating the same beacon, the airborne set must sort out only the pulses that are replies to its own interrogations. Interrogation pulses are transmitted on an irregular, random basis by the airborne set, which then searches for replies synchronized to its own interrogations. If the signals are interrupted, a memory circuit maintains the last distance indication on the range indicator for approximately 10 seconds to prevent the search operation from recurring. The searching process starts automatically whenever the airborne set is tuned to a new beacon or when there is a major interruption in beacon signals. Depending upon the aircraft actual distance from the beacon at the time, the searching process may require up to 22 seconds (Figure 22-6).

22.2.2 TACAN Characteristics

22.2.2.1 Bearing/Distance Unlock

TACAN bearing and distance signals are subject to line-of-sight restrictions. Because of the transmission/reception principles, unlock (rotating of bearing pointer and/or range indicator) will occur if these signals are obstructed. Temporary obstruction of TACAN signals can occur in flight when aircraft fuselage, wing, gear, external stores, or wingmen get between the ground and aircraft antenna. Aircraft receiver memory circuits prevent unlock when signals are obstructed for short periods (approximately 10 seconds for DME and 2 seconds for azimuth), but beyond this, unlock occurs and will persist until the obstruction is removed and search cycles are completed. Unlock may occur during procedure or penetration turns, or during maneuvers that cause the aircraft antenna to be obstructed for longer than 2 to 10 seconds.

Figure 22-6. Slant Range Distance

22.2.2.2 Azimuth Cone of Confusion

The structure of the cone of confusion over a TACAN station is considerably different from other navigational aids. The azimuth cone can be up to 100° or more in width (approximately 15 nm wide at 40,000 feet). Indications on the aircraft instruments make it appear even wider to the pilot. Approaching the TACAN station, usable azimuth information is lost before the actual cone is reached, although actual azimuth unlock is prevented by the memory circuit until after the aircraft is into the cone. After the cone is crossed and usable signals are regained, the search cycle function (22 seconds for a full cycle) prior to regaining lock-on extends the unusable area beyond the actual cone.

22.2.2.3 DME Cone of Confusion

The DME cone is much narrower and is actually insignificant to TACAN operation as DME unlock should never occur when crossing the station except for hovering or very slow aircraft. Faster aircraft should get through the DME cone area regardless of altitude before unlock occurs. On crossing a TACAN station, the DME should decrease until the center of the cone is reached, stop, then begin to show an increase as the signal is regained.

22.2.2.4 Range Indicator Fluctuations

Slight oscillations up to approximately 1/4 nm are normal for range indicator operation due to the pulses generated by the transmit/receive function. When a usable signal is lost, the memory circuit maintains the indicated range for approximately 10 seconds, after which unlock will occur unless usable signals are regained.

22.2.2.5 Erroneous TACAN Indications

Several forms of malfunction of airborne equipment or interference between ground stations can give false or erroneous TACAN information to a pilot. These discrepancies are easier to recognize and guard against if the pilot is aware they can occur.

22.2.2.5.1 40° Azimuth Error Lock-On

As previously explained, the construction of the TACAN ground antenna is such that it transmits a series of nine signal lobes (eight auxiliary and one main reference pulse) 40° apart. With the airborne receiver working correctly, these pulses lock on the airborne equipment with the main reference at 90°. With a weak airborne receiver, the main reference pulse may slide over or miss the 90° slot and lock on at one of the auxiliary positions. When this occurs, azimuth indications will be 40° or some multiple of 40° in error. Rechanneling the airborne receiver to deliberately cause unlock gives the set another chance to lock on properly. When VOR or ADF bearing information is available, use it to verify the existence of suspected TACAN errors.

22.2.2.5.2 Adjacent Channel Interference

Adjacent channel interference occurs when an aircraft is in a position to receive TACAN signals from more than one ground station on the same frequency. Normally, this occurs only at high altitudes when distance separation between like frequencies is inadequate. DME, azimuth, or identification from either ground station may be received. This is not a malfunction of either air or ground equipment, but a result of ground equipment location and aircraft position.

22.2.2.5.3 False or Incorrect Lock-On

False or incorrect lock-on indications in the aircraft can be caused by misalignment or excessive wear of the airborne crystal selector assembly. Selection of a numbered TACAN channel activates a drum and wiper arrangement in the aircraft black box, which rotates until the wiper contacts the proper crystal on the drum. These crystal contact points are very small (pinhead size) and close together. Wear of this assembly or misalignment can cause the wiper to miss the proper crystal and contact the wrong one, resulting in the wrong TACAN being tuned in, or the wiper can miss contact entirely, resulting in constant unlock. When this occurs, rechanneling from the selected channel number and back (preferably from the opposite direction than the original setting) sometimes results in proper channelization. This is an airborne equipment malfunction.

22.2.2.5.4 Precautionary Actions

Several precautionary actions should be taken by pilots to guard against in-flight use of erroneous navigation signals:

1. Always check the identification of any navigational aid station and monitor it during flight. Always utilize all suitable navigation equipment aboard the aircraft and cross-check heading and bearing information.

2. Never overfly preplanned Estimated Times of Arrival (ETAs) without careful cross-check of navigational aids and ground checkpoints.

3. Check Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs) and Flight Information Publications (FLIP) before flight for possible malfunctions or limitations on navigational aids to be used.

4. Discontinue use of any suspected navigational aid and, if necessary, confirm aircraft position with radar or other equipment.

Note

If there is a malfunction of the compass system or card, consider the TACAN bearing information unreliable and merely advisory until verified by radar or other navigational equipment.

22.2.3 TACAN Procedures

As TACAN presents bearing information in the same manner as VOR, use the same homing, proceeding direct, course interception, and maintaining course procedures explained in Part 1 (VOR Navigation); however, with the addition of range information, additional procedures have been devised to use TACAN to its full advantage. The remainder of this chapter is devoted to those procedures that differ from VOR.

22.2.3.1 Tuning

The TACAN control panel (Figure 22-7) consists of a power switch, volume control, and channel selector. The power switch has four positions: OFF, REC, T/R, and A/A. Selecting either the REC or T/R position turns on the set. (As some TACAN sets require a warmup period in the REC position, before selecting the T/R position, refer to the appropriate aircraft flight manual for instructions.) In the REC position, only bearing information and station identification are available. In the T/R position, bearing/distance information and station identification are available. After turning on the equipment, select the desired channel, adjust the volume, and identify the station. After identifying the TACAN station, an unreliable signal can be identified on the instrument (refer to specific aircraft NATOPS).

Tune and check the set before takeoff. After tuning, check the bearing pointer, Course Deviation Indicator/Horizontal Situation Indicator (CDI/HSI) TO-FROM indicator, and range indicator for proper operation. The bearing pointer should point to magnetic bearing to the station. The CDI/HSI should center when this bearing is set in the course selector window, and the TO-FROM indicator should indicate TO. The range indicator should indicate the distance to the station.

22.2.3.2 Groundspeed Check

A groundspeed check can be made while maintaining a course to or from a TACAN station; however, as a guide, groundspeed checks should be performed only when the aircraft slant range distance is more than the aircraft altitude divided by 1,000. For example, if the aircraft is at Flight Level (FL) 200, groundspeed checks should be performed when beyond 20 nm. Checks made below 5,000 feet are accurate at any distance.

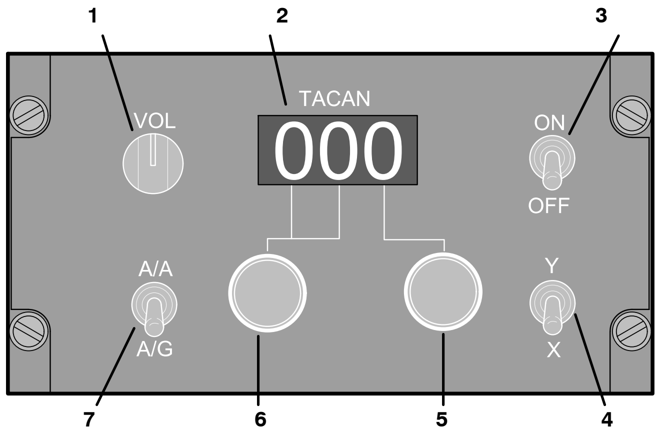


Figure 22-7. TACAN Control Panel

To perform the groundspeed check, begin timing when the range indicator shows a whole number. After the predetermined time has elapsed, check the range indicator and note the distance flown. Apply this information to the following formula to determine groundspeed:

Distance flown $\times$ 60 = Groundspeed elapsed time in minutes.

For precise computation, time for longer periods and solve the problem on a computer. To simplify computations, use a 2-minute time check and multiply the distance traveled by 30; for a 3-minute time check, multiply distance by 20; for a 6-minute time check, multiply distance by 10 (Figure 22-8).

22.2.3.3 Station Passage

Because of the azimuth cone of confusion over the TACAN station, station passage is determined when the range indicator stops decreasing. Flying directly over the station, the range indicator will stop decreasing when it indicates the approximate aircraft altitude above the station in nm. One nm is equal to approximately 6,000 feet. For example, an aircraft cruising at FL 300 is at an altitude of approximately 5 nm; therefore, the range indicator should stop decreasing at approximately 5 nm when directly over a station at sea level. If the station elevation is 6,000 feet, the indicated range over the station would be approximately 4 nm (Figure 22-9).

22.2.3.4 TACAN Arcs

Sometimes used during approaches and departures, a TACAN arc is flown around the station at a specific distance. Some approaches require the entire final approach to be flown along an arc, using radials to determine the Final Approach Fix (FAF) and the Missed Approach Point (MAP). On the other hand, an arc may be used to transition to the FAF and the MAP. During departures, it may be necessary to fly an arc soon after takeoff to transition to a departure radial. Arc instructions are given as “VIA (NUMBER OF MILES) MILE ARC (DIRECTION) OF (NAME OF NAVAID).” Direction will be given as “ARC SOUTH” or “ARC EAST,” etc.

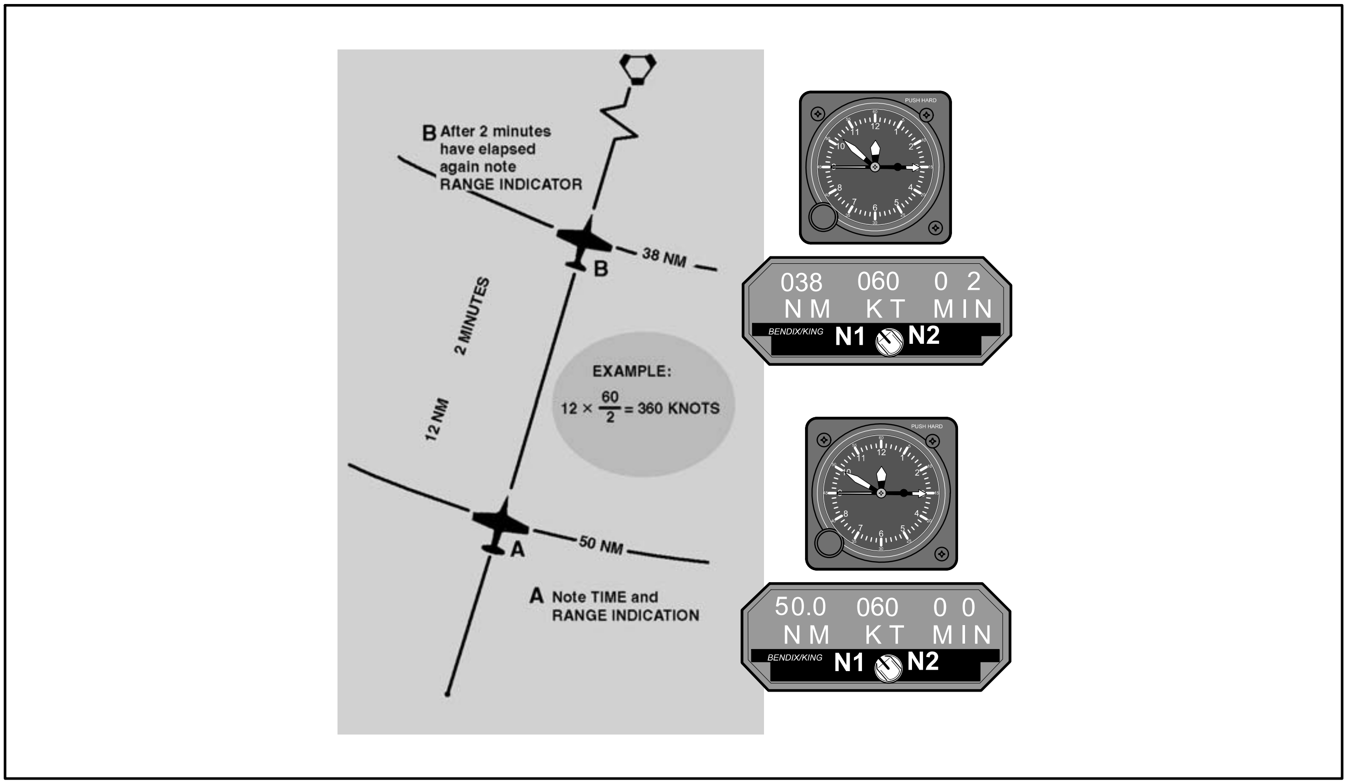


Figure 22-8. Groundspeed Check

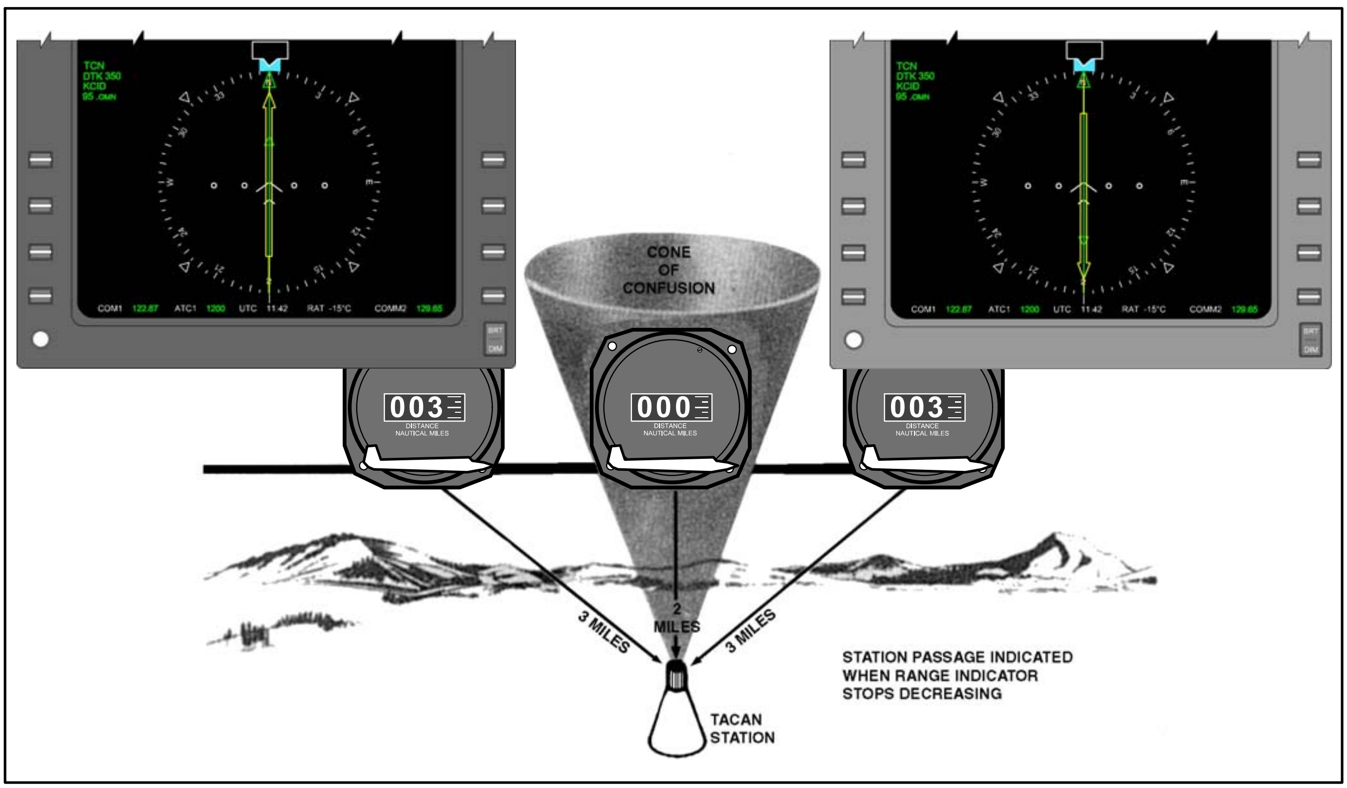


Figure 22-9. Indication of Station Passage

22.2.3.5 Arc Interceptions

To intercept an arc from a radial, a turn of approximately 90° is required to place the bearing pointer on the wingtip with a range indication equal to the desired arc. Determine the direction to turn and the desired lead point. Lead point will equal 0.5 percent of groundspeed (200 knots × .005 = 1 nm). Rollout heading is based on determining if the aircraft is inside or outside of desired arc track. Detailed techniques for correcting to the arc are discussed under paragraph 22.2.3.6.

22.2.3.5.1 Techniques for Determining Lead

When using 30° of bank, an approximate lead point for the arc may be determined from the aircraft Groundspeed (GS) or Mach. Groundspeed in nm per minute minus 2 represents the approximate lead (e.g., 6 nm per minute, use 4 nm lead). A Mach indicator may be used in the same manner to determine a no-wind lead point because 0.5 Mach is approximately 5 nm per minute, 0.6 Mach is 6 nm per minute, etc. Lead points based on aircraft turn radius may be approximated as follows: 1 percent × GS = nm lead for 1-1/2° per second rate of turn, 1/2 percent × GS = nm lead for 3° per second rate of turn. For groundspeeds below 150 knots, 1/2 nm lead point is satisfactory (Figure 22-10).

22.2.3.6 Maintaining Arcs

In theory, it is a simple matter to maintain an arc. Under no-wind conditions, the aircraft will fly in an exact circle around the station by maintaining a relative bearing of 90° or 270°. In practice, a method for maintaining an arc is to fly a series of short legs, keeping the bearing pointer on or near the wingtip position while maintaining the desired range. With the bearing pointer on the wingtip and the aircraft at the desired range, maintain heading and allow the bearing pointer to move 5° to 10° behind the wingtip position. This will cause the range to increase slightly. Next, turn toward the station to place the bearing pointer 5° to 10° ahead of the wingtip, and maintain this heading until the bearing pointer is again behind the wingtip.

During crosswind conditions, the reference point (wingtip) will change. If the wind is blowing the aircraft away from the station, the reference point is ahead of the wingtip. If the wind is blowing the aircraft toward the station, the reference point is behind the wingtip. While proceeding around the arc, the drift correction will constantly be changing for a constant wind direction and velocity. As a guide, correct approximately 10° to 20° for each 1/2 mile deviation from the desired arc. For example, under no-wind conditions, if the aircraft is 1/2 mile outside the arc and the bearing pointer is on the wingtip, the aircraft should be turned approximately 20° toward the station to return to the arc. The actual amount of correction required for a given error varies. Factors to consider are the size of the arc, groundspeed of the aircraft, whether the aircraft is inside or outside of the arc, etc. These variables are seen by the pilot as rates of deviation. Establish a correction according to the rate of deviation and adjust as necessary according to the rate of correction. Remember that the curve of small arcs is relatively sharp, and corrections from the inside are assisted by the arc curving toward the aircraft. Conversely, the aircraft outside small arc requires larger corrections because of the curvature away from the aircraft. Large arcs are easier to fly because of their flatter curve. High groundspeeds require more pilot attention to maintain an arc because of higher rates of deviation and correction (Figure 22-11).

22.2.3.7 Intercepting a Radial from an Arc

To intercept a radial from an arc, set the desired course in the course selector window as soon as practical. Monitor the rate of bearing pointer movement while flying the arc, and remember that the interception angle will be approximately 90°. Changing the lead point used for the arc interception from nautical miles to degrees is a technique that can be used to determine an approximate lead point. Use the relationship that 1° is 1 nm wide at 60 nm from the station and its width increases or decreases in proportion to the distance. For example, with a 200-knot groundspeed (using a 3° per second rate of turn), a 1-nm lead point was used to intercept the 10-nm arc. Because 1° of travel along the 10 nm arc represents 1/6 nm, the lead point when intercepting a radial from the arc (no wind) would be 6° (Figure 22-12).

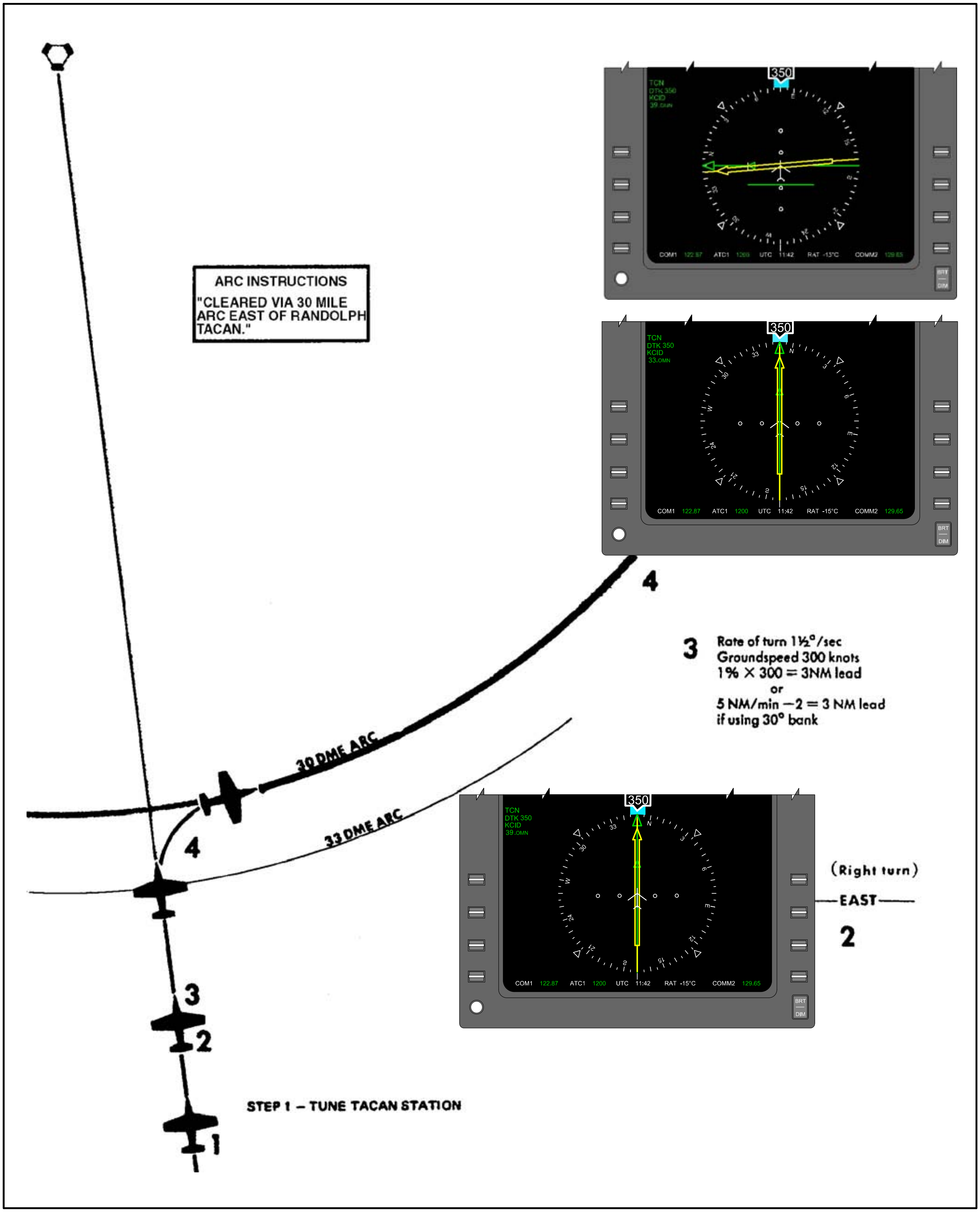


Figure 22-10. Intercepting an Arc from a Radial

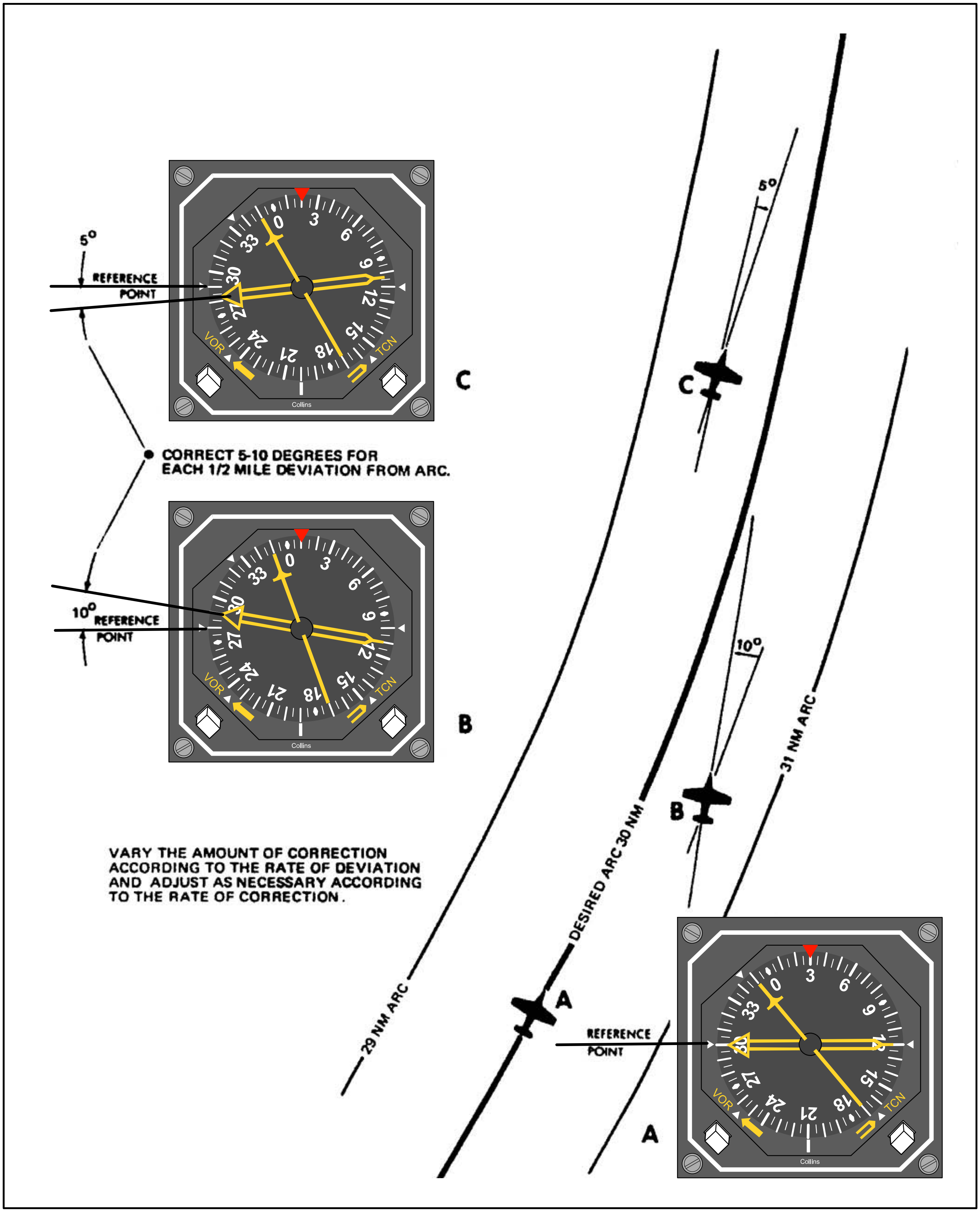


Figure 22-11. Correcting to Maintain the Arc

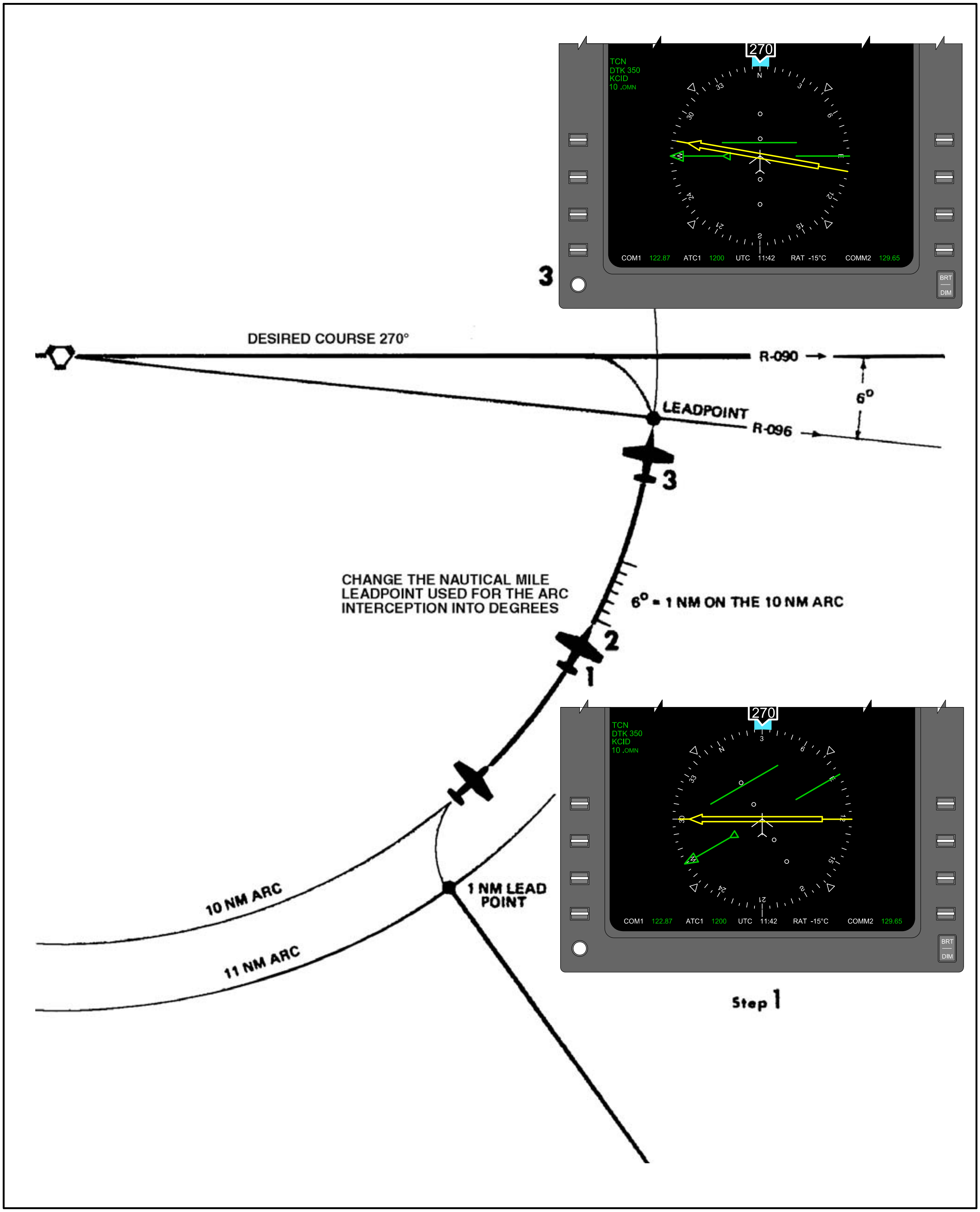


Figure 22-12. Intercepting a Radial from an Arc (No Wind)

22.2.3.8 Technique of Navigating Point to Point

When an aircraft approaches a terminal area, air traffic control normally clears it to the holding fix or the initial approach fix. This clearance may be to the station and out the radial, along an arc to a radial, or direct to the fix. If cleared direct to the fix, the pilot may use a radar vector or point-to-point navigation.

A single TACAN providing bearing and distance information is sufficient for navigating directly to any fix (radial and distance) within reception range of the station.

Basic navigation principles are used and include:

1. Establishing two fixes (aircraft and desired).

2. Connecting the fixes with a line.

3. Reading the heading to the desired fix.

The technique of applying these principles in the aircraft without cumbersome charts is simple. The key to this technique is in learning to visually establish the aircraft and the desired fix on the compass card of a Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI) or similar type instrument (Figure 22-13). The following factors will aid in developing this ability:

1. The TACAN station is always at the center of the compass card. The compass card is merely a compass rose around the station.

2. The fix having the greater distance is always established on its radial at the outer edge of the compass card.

3. The remaining fix is established along its radial at a point whose distance from the center of the card is proportional to the distance represented by the outer edge of the compass card.

For example, assume an aircraft to be on the 180° radial (indicated by the tail of the bearing pointer) at 60 nm. The pilot desires to proceed direct to a fix located on the 90° radial at 30 nm.

If not proceeding in the general direction of the fix, turn to a heading approximately halfway between the head of the bearing pointer and the desired fix radial, then:

1. Establish the fix with the greater distance (60 nm) on the edge of the card at its radial (180°). The distance represented from the center to the edge of the compass card is now 60 nm.

2. Establish the remaining fix (90°/30°) along the 90° radial at a proportionate distance from the center (i.e., halfway).

3. Connect the two fixes with an imaginary line or with the aid of a pencil or other straight edge. Move the line to the center of the compass card so that it is parallel to the original line.

4. Read the no-wind heading at the point where the second line crosses the compass card (30°). Always read direction from the aircraft position to the desired fix. Turn to this heading and apply wind correction.

As the distance from the center to the edge of the compass card represents 60 nm, the diameter of the card provides a 120-nm scale. The distance between the aircraft fix and the desired fix may be determined using this scale (approximately 65 miles in the example). The Estimated Time En Route (ETE) to the desired fix may then be determined by applying aircraft groundspeed. For better accuracy, repeat the entire technique occasionally while en route (Figure 22-14).

22.2.3.9 TACAN Holding

Holding is maneuvering an aircraft in relation to a navigational fix while awaiting further clearance. Initial entry for TACAN holding is identical to that described earlier for VOR, except a TACAN DME fix is substituted for a VOR as the holding fix. The standard no-wind holding pattern is flown by following a specified holding course inbound to the holding fix, making a 180° turn to the right, flying a heading outbound to parallel the holding course, and making another 180° turn to the right to intercept and follow the holding course to the fix. The length of the legs while using TACAN is usually specified in nautical miles. Pilots should not confuse TACAN holding fix (radial/distance) with the TACAN station when considering the direction of holding. As illustrated in Figure 22-15, the direction of holding is relative to the 30-nm fix rather than the TACAN station. The direction of turn is not included for standard holding patterns. While in the holding pattern, turns are initiated at the indicated range as published or issued by the controller. To meet the expected approach time, the pattern may be shortened, but never lengthened. The inbound course to the holding fix should be set in the course selector window. As the holding pattern may be a considerable distance from the TACAN station, course corrections to intercept course prior to reaching the holding fix will be larger than those normally used in VOR or ADF holding. For example, 6° off course at 30 miles is a 3-mile course error, whereas 6° off course at 10 miles is only a 1-mile course error.

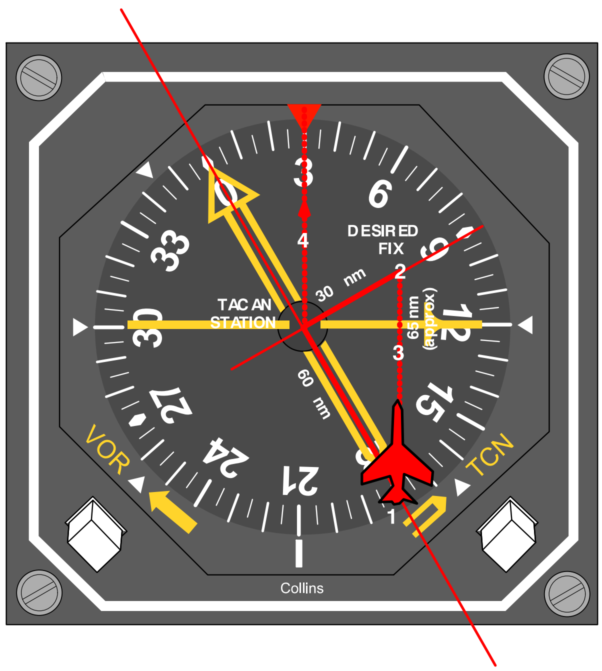


Figure 22-13. Visualize Problem after Turning to Computed Heading

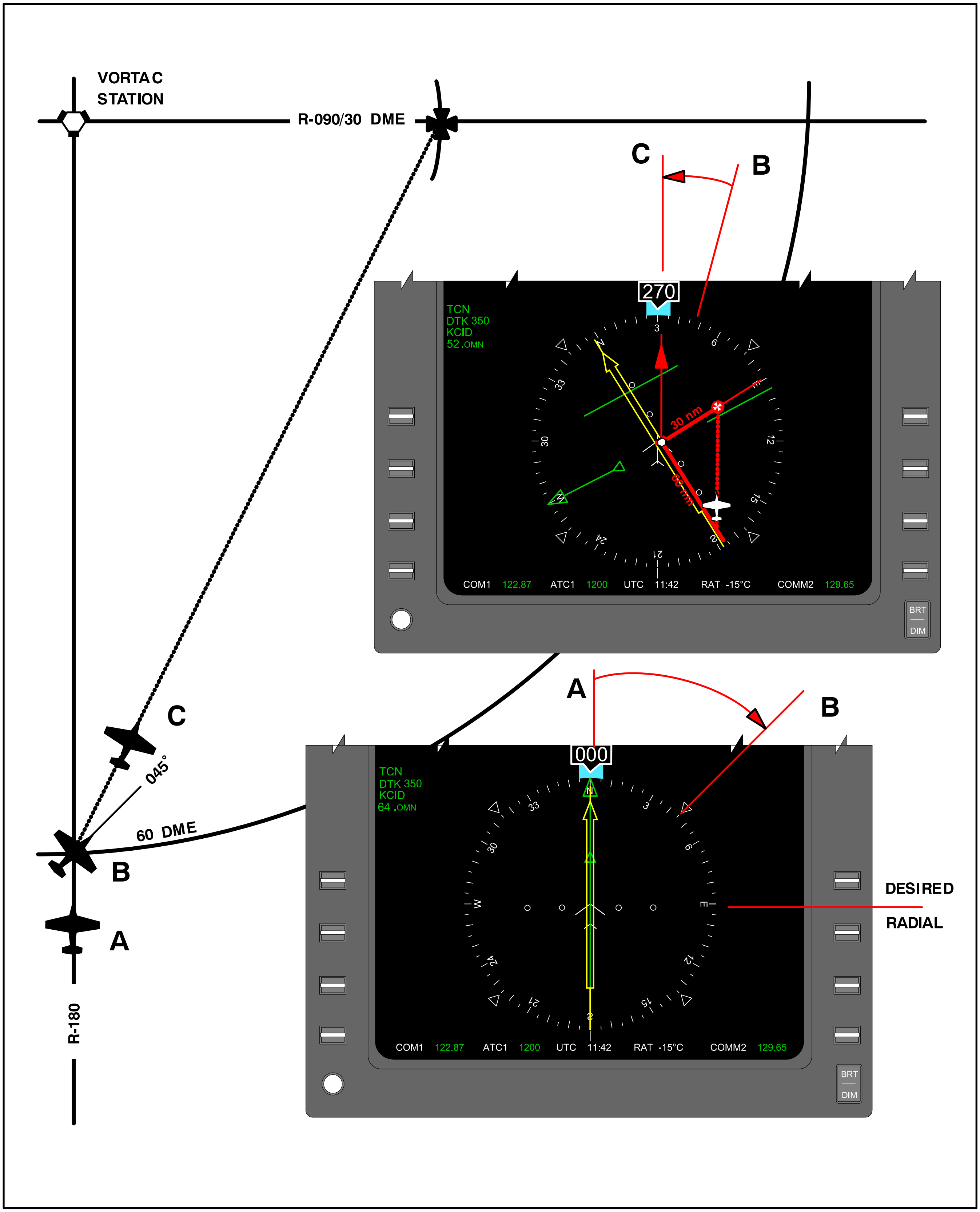


Figure 22-14. The Technique of Proceeding Direct Between TACAN Fixes

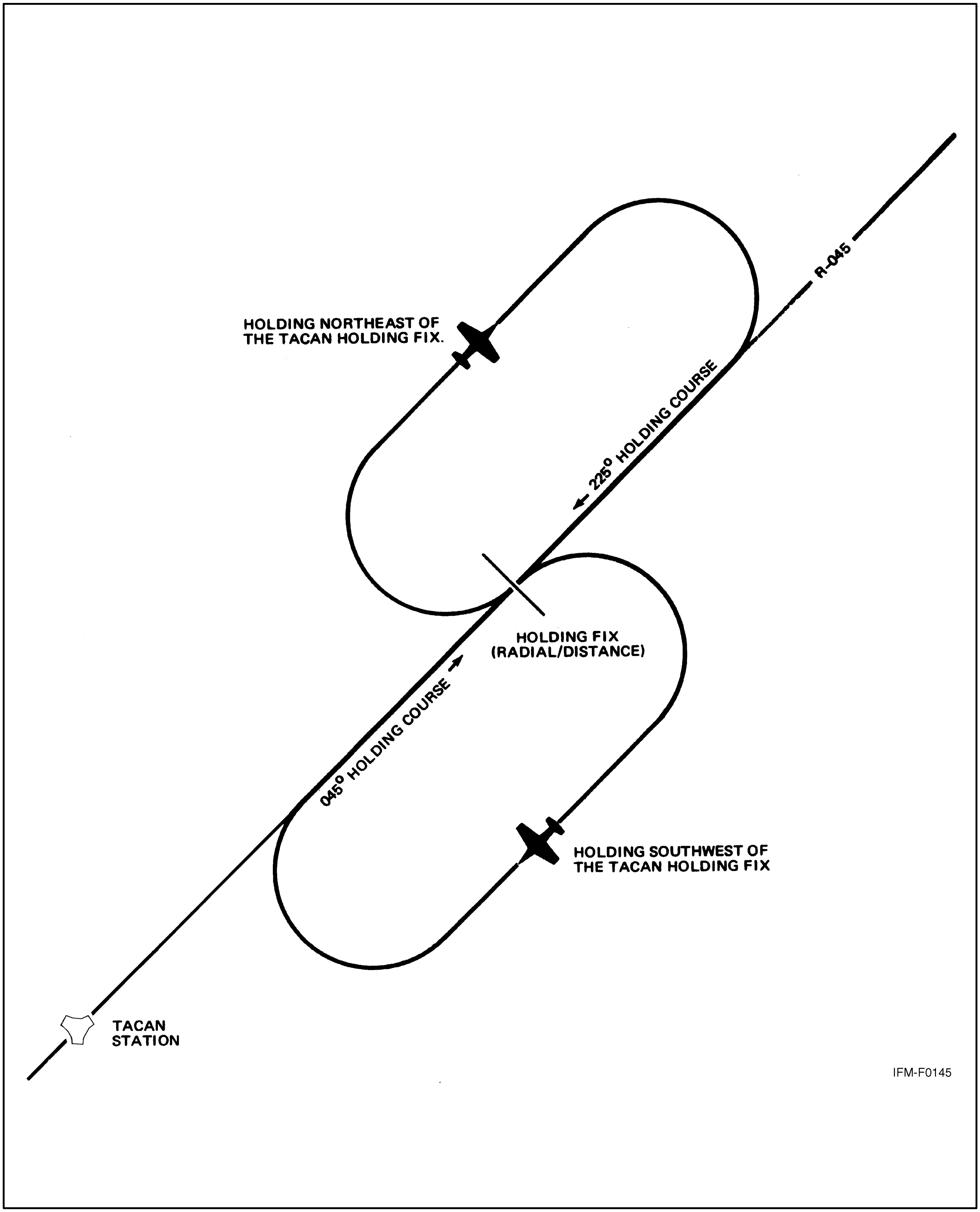


Figure 22-15. The Direction of TACAN Holding is Relative to the Holding Fix, Not the Station

22.2.4 TACAN Approach Procedures

With range information available, many different types of penetrations are depicted on the approach charts. Some TACAN approaches are relatively simple and involve only a straight-in flightpath along a radial. Others require extensive planning and may involve intercepting an arc from a radial, a radial from an arc, or any combination of the above to arrive at the final approach fix (Figure 22-16).

A limited number of VOR instrument approaches based on a VORTAC facility have been approved for use by TACAN-equipped aircraft. These procedures are identified by the phrase “or TACAN” printed adjacent to the name of the procedure (e.g., VOR TACAN Rwy 17). Approaches designated VORTAC may be executed by aircraft using either TACAN or VOR with DME, but DME is required. Approaches designated VOR/DME may be executed by aircraft utilizing VOR with DME, and the DME is required.

22.2.4.1 Transition to the Initial Approach Fix

Published routes on the terminal chart may provide a course and range from the en route structure to the Initial Approach Fix (IAF). If a routing other than one published is used, ensure it does not exceed the operational limitation of the Navigation Aid (NAVAID) being used. Limitations according to type NAVAID, aircraft altitude, and range from the facility are published in FLIP. Before reaching the IAF, recheck the weather, review the approach chart, and obtain clearance for the approach.

An IAF may be approached from directions not favorable to intercepting the initial approach course upon arrival at the fix. When this occurs, and prior approach clearance has been received, the pilot must maneuver to intercept the initial approach course. Preapproach intercept maneuvers should be accomplished as follows:

1. Turn at the IAF in the shortest direction to intercept the initial approach course.

2. Begin descent from the Initial Penetration Altitude (IPA) when established on a segment of the published approach.

3. If holding is not required, reduce to penetration airspeed or below before crossing the IAF.

22.2.4.2 High-Altitude Penetration and Approach

When over the IAF, turn in the shorter direction toward the penetration course. Descent may be started when established on a segment of the published approach. Crossing the arc forming the IAF is considered abeam. Intercept the initial penetration course and fly the approach as depicted.

At or before reaching the FAF, configure the aircraft for landing in accordance with the NATOPS flight manual. At the FAF, report to the controlling agency. Descend to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) to acquire visual references for landing as soon as practical. Comply with any published altitude restriction between the FAF and missed approach point. The descent to the MDA should be completed before reaching the missed approach point. Descent below MDA is authorized when visual reference with the runway environment is sufficient to complete the landing and the Visual Descent Point (VDP) has been reached.

There are a few approaches that have the final approach course along an arc. On these approaches, the FAF and missed approach point are designated by radials rather than range.

Perform the missed approach when:

1. Visual reference with the runway environment at the missed approach point is insufficient to complete the landing.

2. Instructed by the controlling agency.

3. A safe landing is not possible.

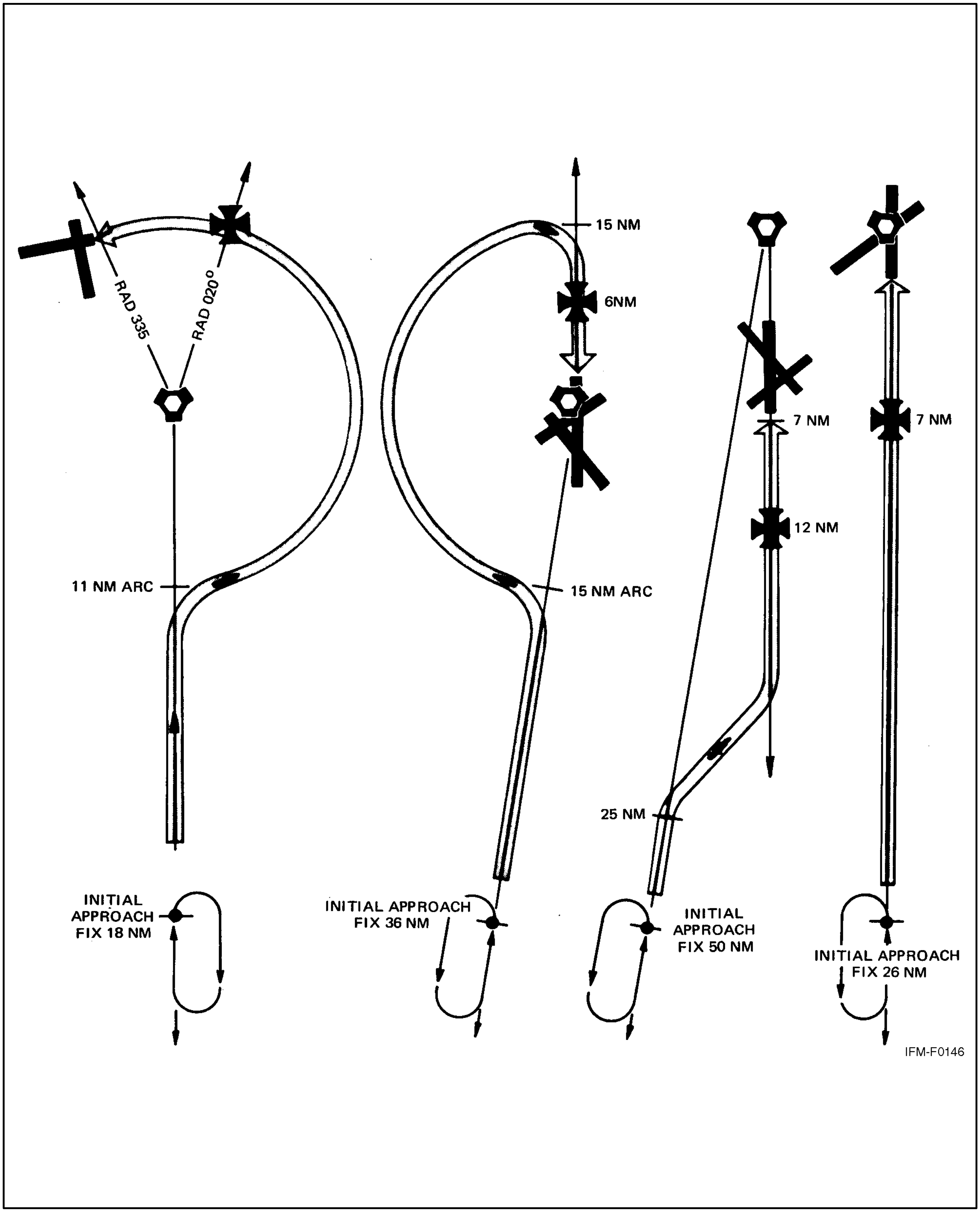


Figure 22-16. Typical TACAN Approaches

Example: Figure 22-17 illustrates a straight-in TACAN approach to RWY 34R (S-TAC-34R) that combines arc and radial segments to arrive at the missed approach point. The published weather approach minimums are 300 feet and 3/4 of a mile.

Approach control will assign an initial approach fix altitude. After passing the initial approach fix, call “DEPARTING THE INITIAL APPROACH FIX.” Also call “LEAVING THE ASSIGNED ALTITUDE,” unless you will be maintaining altitude until the 130° radial. Use a lead point based on aircraft turn radius to intercept the 23-nm arc and the 157° radial. Before the 5-nm final approach fix, reduce airspeed and establish the landing configuration.

Note the altitude restrictions. After intercepting the 157° radial inbound, you have approximately 17.5 nm to descend from 8,000 feet to the 680-foot MDA at the 1.5-nm missed approach point. Although the altitudes published on the 157° radial at 9 nm, 5 nm, and 3.3 nm are minimum rather than mandatory altitudes, it is advantageous to be near this altitude. The altitude loss in relation to the distance to travel is significant and may require a continual descent; therefore, control airspeed so that the final approach configuration may be established not later than the FAF.

Call the controlling agency at the final approach fix (e.g., “EL TORO APPROACH CONTROL, BEEFEATER 301, FINAL APPROACH FIX WITH GEAR”). You may add intentions as to landing or low approach to this call. Descend to the 680-foot MDA. If a safe landing is not possible after reaching the missed approach point (1.5 nm), perform the missed approach.

22.2.4.3 Low-Altitude Approach

The primary differences between the TACAN low-altitude approach (Figure 22-18) and the high-altitude penetration and approach are the altitude loss and the length of the approach. Before crossing the IAF, establish the airspeed and the configuration specified in the NATOPS flight manual for low-altitude maneuvering. Category E will be depicted on low-altitude (AL) charts only when an operational requirement exists. The relatively short length of many low-altitude approaches may require you to establish the final approach configuration during the transition to the IAF.

When operating on an unpublished route or while being radar vectored when an approach clearance is received, the pilot shall maintain the last assigned altitude unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC or until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. If in holding, commence descent as described previously under VOR. Descend from the IAF altitude when established on the initial approach course. If there is insufficient time to intercept course and comply with the first altitude restriction before starting the approach, request ATC clearance to maneuver for a favorable alignment with the initial approach course. At or before reaching the final approach fix, configure the aircraft for landing in accordance with the NATOPS flight manual. Descend to the MDA on the approach chart to acquire visual reference for landing as soon as practical. Comply with any published altitude restriction between the FAF and missed approach point. Descent below MDA is authorized when visual reference with the runway environment is sufficient to complete the landing and the Visual Descent Point (VDP) has been reached. Perform the missed approach when:

1. Visual reference with runway environment at missed approach is insufficient to complete the landing.

2. Instructed by the controlling agency.

3. A safe landing is not possible.

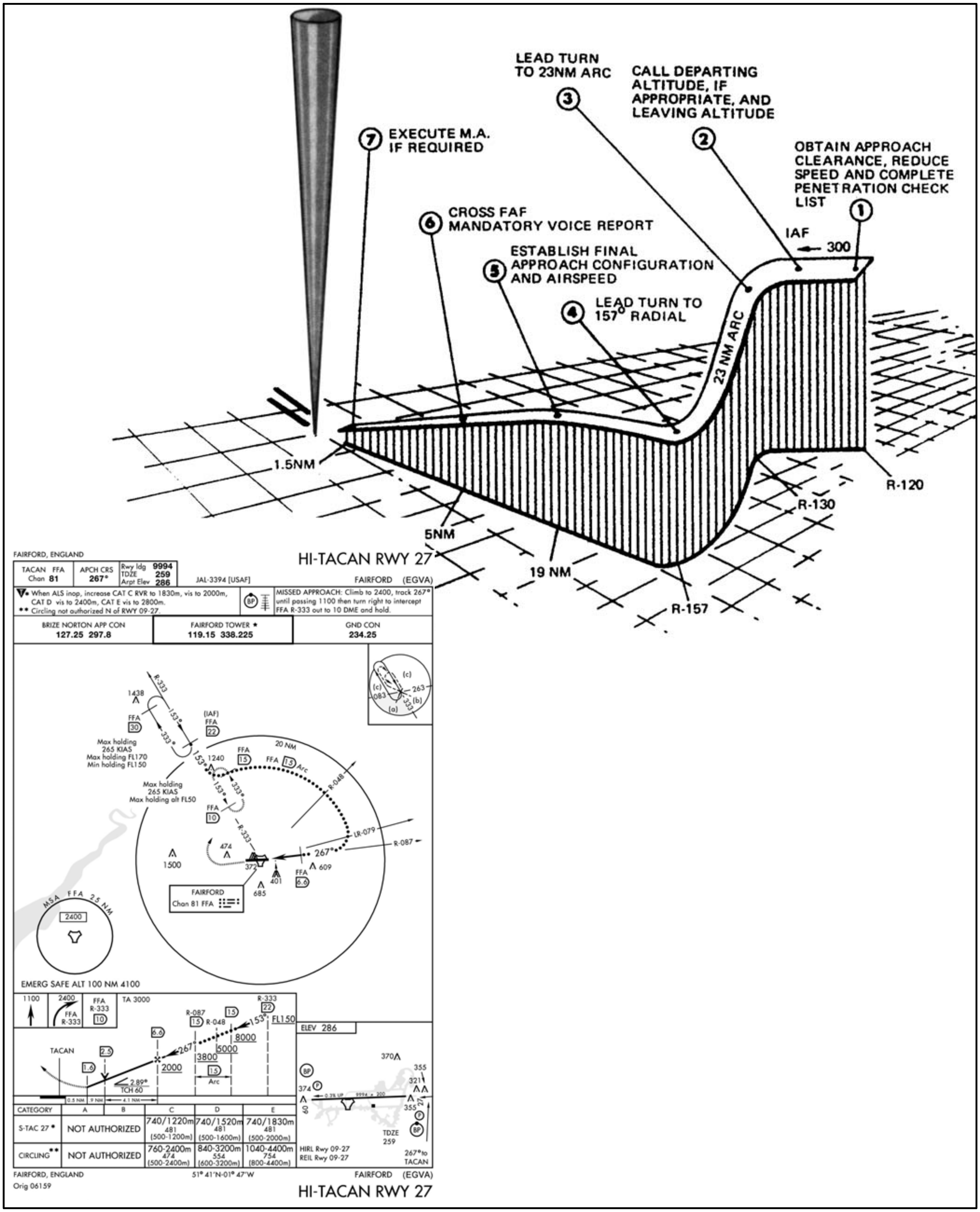
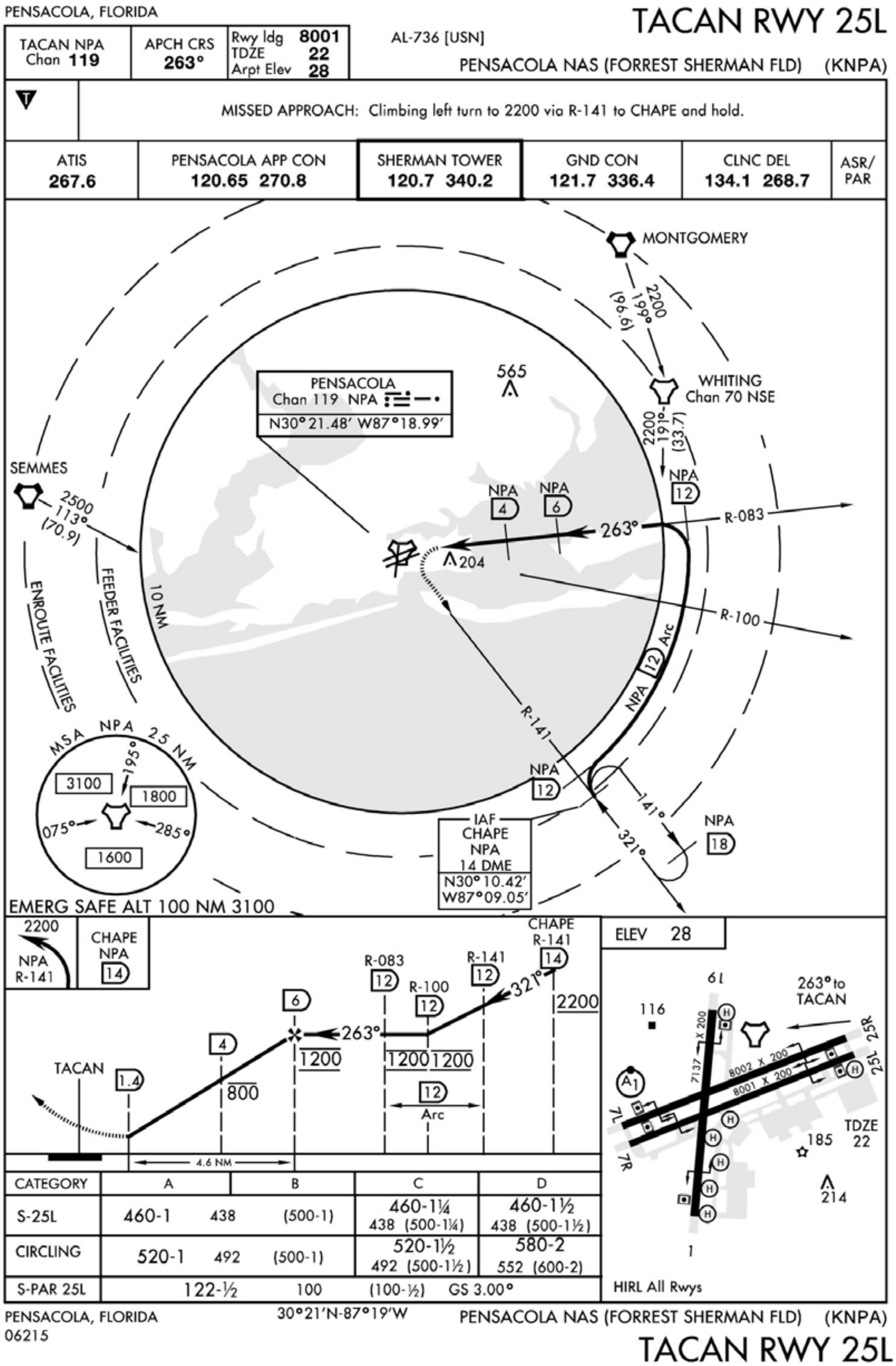


Figure 22-17. TACAN Approach



CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
S-25L	460-1 438 (500-1)		460-1¼ 438 (500-1¼)	460-1½ 438 (500-1½)
CIRCLING	520-1 492 (500-1)		520-1½ 492 (500-1½)	580-2 552 (600-2)
S-PAR 25L	122-½ 100 (100-½) GS 3.00°			

PENSACOLA, FLORIDA
06215
30°21′N-87°19′W
PENSACOLA NAS (FORREST SHERMAN FLD) (KNPA)
TACAN RWY 25L

Figure 22-18. TACAN Low-Altitude Approaches

CHAPTER 23

ADF, UHF/ADF, Marker Beacons

23.1 AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDING (ADF)

The radio compass low-frequency receiver is capable of Automatic Direction Finding (ADF). Most direction finding equipment will receive any frequency between 100 and 1750 kHz. Most other low-frequency receivers have a frequency range of 190 to 1750 kHz. The en route supplement lists the location and frequency of the Low-Frequency (LF) radio ranges and radio beacons. Those beacons coded SAB provide continuous weather information.

Both high- and low-altitude instrument approaches are found in the applicable terminal approach procedures books.

23.1.1 Automatic Direction Finding (ADF) Procedures

Whenever possible, use a nondirectional radio beacon. Commercial broadcasting stations should be used with caution because some have highly directional radiation patterns. Also, they are not flight-checked for navigational use. Positive identification of the commercial station being used is imperative.

The radio compass automatically determines the bearing to any radio station within its frequency and sensitivity range. The radio compass also may be used as an auxiliary receiver for the reception of weather broadcasts and other broadcast information.

The operation of a radio compass depends chiefly upon the characteristics of a loop antenna. A loop-receiving antenna gives maximum reception when the plane of the loop is parallel to, or in line with, the direction of wave travel. As the loop is rotated from this position, volume gradually decreases and reaches a minimum when the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the direction of wave travel.

These characteristics of a loop antenna result from the fact that the receiver input from a loop antenna is the resultant of the opposing voltages in the two halves of the loop. When current flows in a looped conductor, it must flow in opposite directions in each half of the loop. This occurs when the plane of the loop is in line with the station. The fact that one side of the loop is closer to the transmitter causes a slight delay between the time the radio wave reaches one side and the time it reaches the other; therefore, there is a phase difference between the voltages induced in each half of the loop. This causes a resultant current to flow through the transformer and creates a signal input to the receiver.

When the plane of the loop is parallel to the direction of wave travel, a maximum voltage is induced in the loop, and the strength of the signals heard in the headset is also at a maximum. Conversely, when the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the direction of wave travel, both sides of the loop are equidistant from the station, and the radio wave reaches both sides of the loop at the same point in its cycle. The induced voltage is theoretically zero, and the strength of the received signal is at a minimum. This position of the loop is called the null position.

The null position of the loop, rather than the maximum position, is used for direction finding; that is, a bearing is obtained when the plane of the loop is perpendicular to the line on which the radio waves are traveling when they strike the loop. The null position is preferred because it can be determined more exactly than the maximum. A 25° rotation from the maximum position changes total signal strength less than 10 percent, whereas a 25° rotation from the minimum or null position changes the signal strength 50 percent.

With the loop rotated to a null position, the radio station being received is on a line perpendicular to the plane of the loop; however, the direction of the radio station from the aircraft may be either one of two directions 180° apart. The inability of the loop antenna to determine which of the two possible directions is correct is called the 180° ambiguity of the loop.

The 180° ambiguity is eliminated with a nondirectional or sensing antenna.

The loop antenna of the radio compass is automatically rotated to the null position when signals are being received over both the sensing and loop antennas. The combination of signals energizes a phasing system that operates a motor on the loop drive. As the motor turns, it rotates the loop. The bearing pointer is electrically synchronized and turns with the loop, indicating the bearing to the station when the loop has stopped in the null position.

The loop antenna continuously positions itself to remain perpendicular to the station. As the loop antenna can move about only one axis (i.e., it can turn but cannot tilt), an error is induced whenever the aircraft is in a banked attitude. This is called dip error. The magnitude of this error depends on the position of the aircraft from the station, its altitude and range, and the angle of bank used. Dip error is most noticeable when the aircraft is banked and the station is on the nose or tail of the aircraft. The ADF bearing pointer should be considered as giving accurate bearings only in wings-level flight.

23.1.1.1 Tuning

The radio compass is normally tuned for ADF operation. The ADF feature is used for ease of operation; however, if reception of radio signals is poor due to static, thunderstorms, or distance from the stations, use Manual Direction Finder (MDF) procedures described later in this section. Since most ADF receivers do not have a “flag” to warn the pilot when erroneous bearing information is being displayed, the pilot should continuously monitor the Non-Directional Beacon (NDB) identification (refer to specific aircraft NATOPS).

Note

See the appropriate Flight Information Publications (FLIP) en route for the procedures peculiar to tuning foreign low-frequency stations.

ADF tuning:

1. Interphone control panel and radio compass filter switch as required.
2. Obtain control of the set.
3. Function switch — ANT position.
4. VOICE-CW switch — VOICE.
5. Select the frequency band.
6. Tune to the desired frequency for best audible signal. Under conditions of static and/or interferences, a weak station can sometimes be tuned by using the LOOP position. When tuning in LOOP, an increase in volume will generally be required.
7. Identify the station.
8. Function switch — COMP/ADF position.
9. Retune for maximum needle deflection on the tuning meter.

Tuning with the nonmetered radio control compass panel:

As this control panel does not incorporate a tuning meter, do fine tuning for ADF with the function switch in the ANT position and the VOICE-CW switch in the CW position. Tune for minimum or zero modulated tone, return the VOICE-CW switch to VOICE and the function switch to ADF, and reidentify the station.

Note

Tuning for zero modulation is an accurate method of obtaining maximum signal strength and can be used if difficulty is experienced determining maximum needle deflection on the tuning meter. See Figure 23-1 for volume effects on null width.

23.1.1.2 Course Interceptions

Inbound course interceptions may be done identically to those described in paragraph 21.3.3.1. An alternate method: To determine the intercept heading, locate the bearing from the station that you are presently on, the bearing that you want to intercept, and measure the angular difference. If the angular difference is less than 45°, turn toward the desired bearing in the shortest direction with an angle of intercept equal to the computed angular difference. The time to the station will be approximately equal to the time necessary to complete the intercept (Figure 23-2). If the angular difference is greater than 45°, a series of time-distance check maneuvers (discussed under paragraph 23.1.1.5) may be performed if distance/time to the station is unknown. The pilot may select any angular interception if timing is not essential, 30° to 45° being generally sufficient (Figure 23-3).

23.1.1.3 Station Passage

23.1.1.3.1 ADF Procedure

When close to the station, the bearing pointer becomes unsteady and erratic due to the area of signal confusion. This characteristic increases with altitude. Also, a small, lateral displacement from the desired course causes a large off-course bearing indication. A bearing pointer deflection of 5°, when the aircraft is 10 miles from the station, means that the aircraft has departed from the desired course approximately 1 nm, whereas the same 5° displacement at 1 mile would represent a distance of approximately 600 feet. Do not chase the bearing pointer when it starts moving rapidly to the side; instead, maintain a constant heading, as the station is very near.

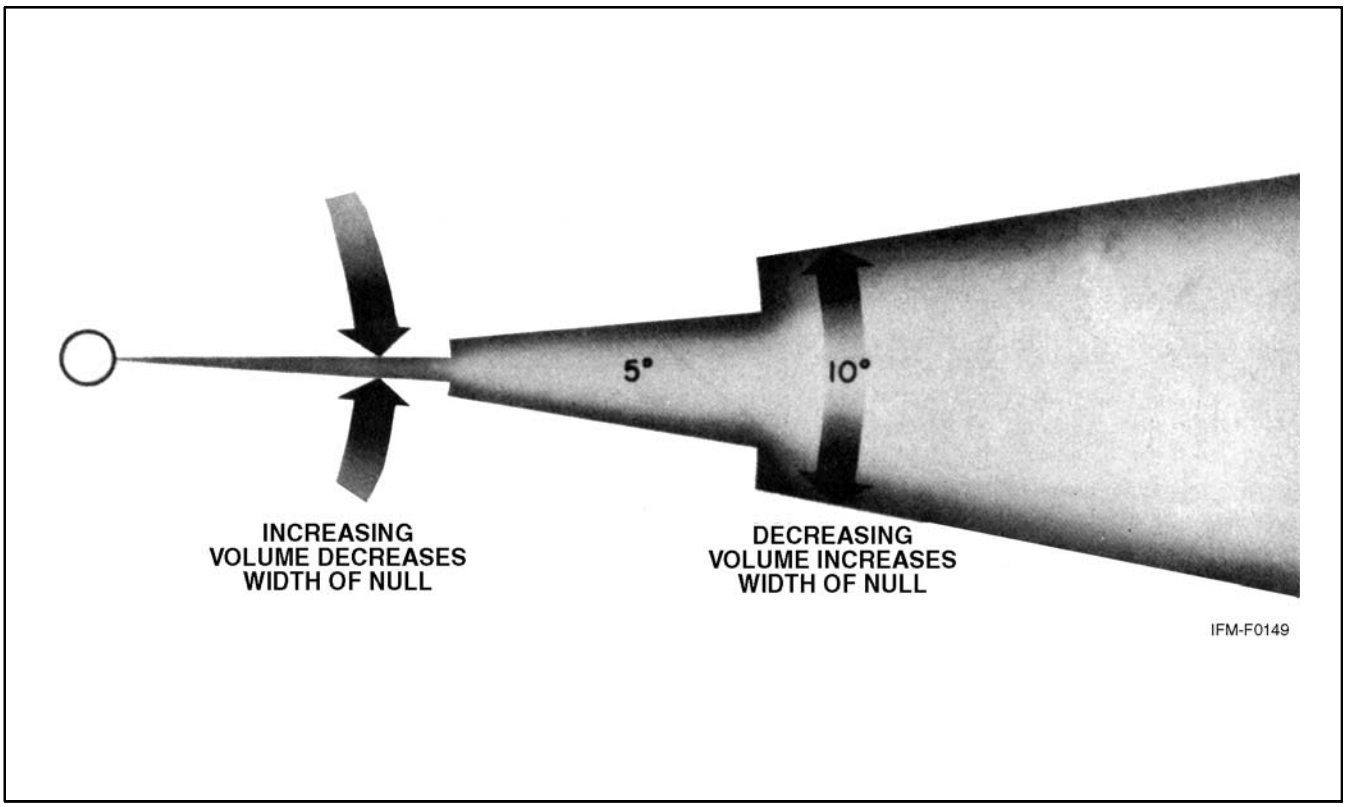
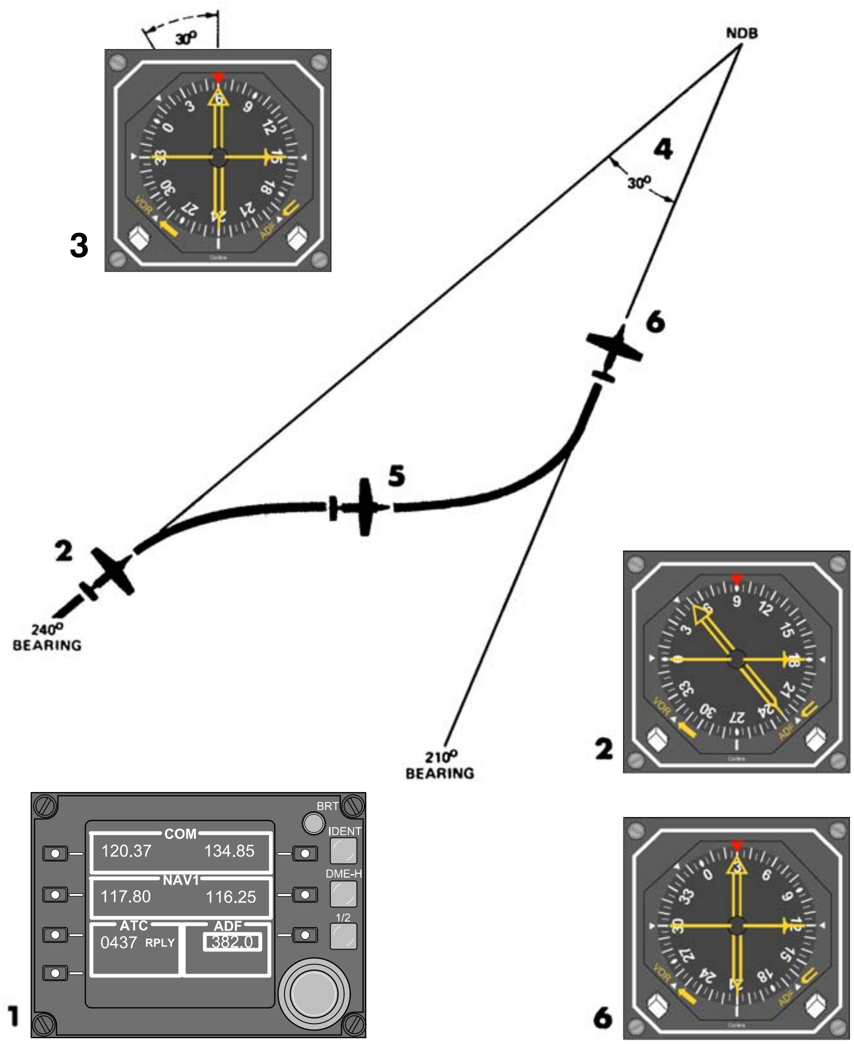


Figure 23-1. Effects of Volume Control on Null Width



Procedural Steps

1. Tune and identify station.
2. Determine the bearing from the radio beacon you are on (240°) by looking at the tail of the No. 2 needle.
3. Determine the bearing from the radio beacon you desire to intercept (210°).

   Visualize this on your heading indicator.
4. Measure the angular difference (30°).

   Since it is less than 45°, compute your intercept heading based on the number of degrees in the computed angular difference (30°) and your present inbound course to the station (060°). The computed intercept heading would be (090°). Since the bearing visualized on the heading indicator is to the right of your present bearing, the 30° is added to your inbound course.
5. Look at your aircraft heading and turn in the shortest direction to the computed intercept heading.

   Start the clock.
6. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead points depend on the No. 2 needle rate of movement.

Figure 23-2. Inbound Course Interception Less Than 45°

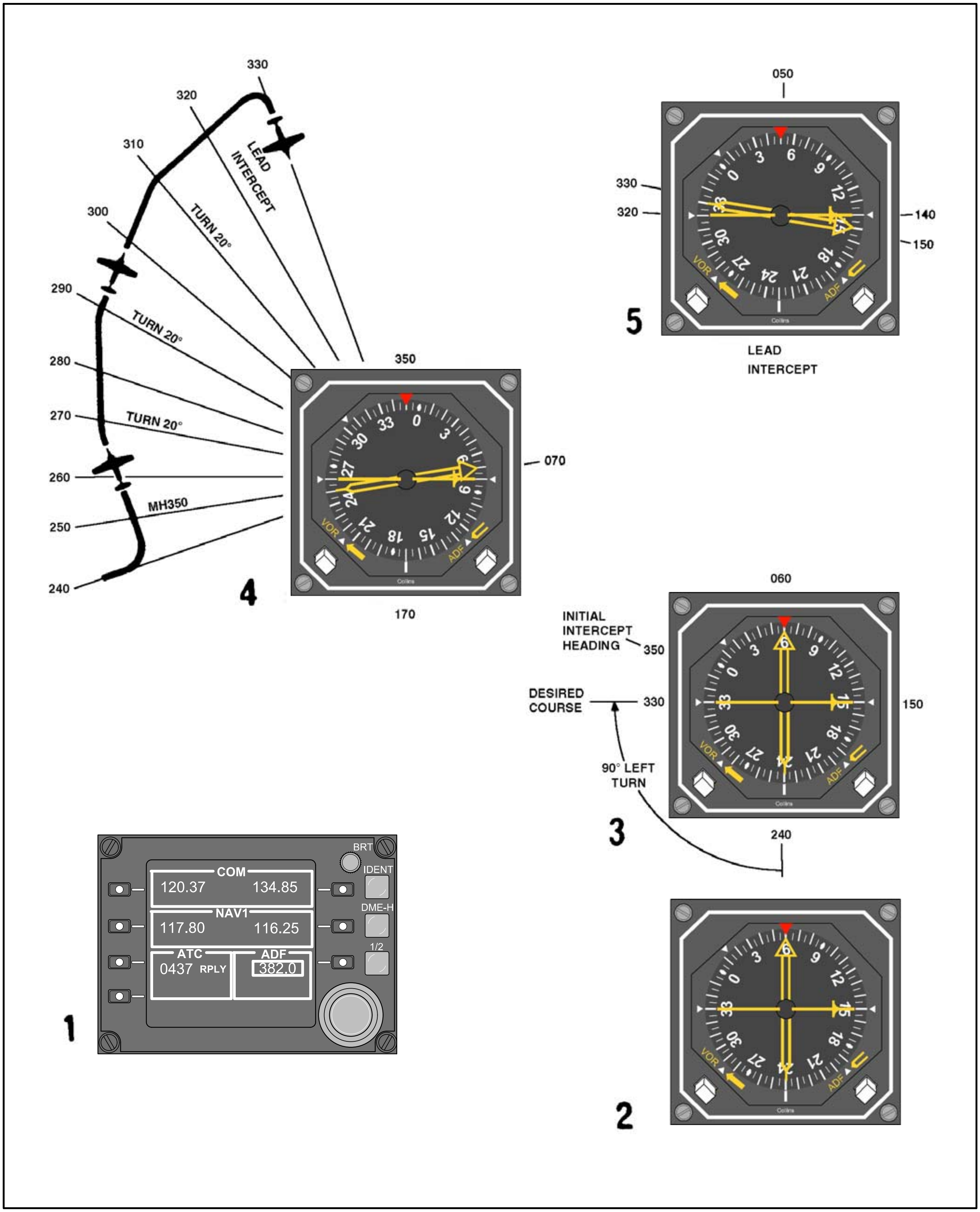


Figure 23-3. Inbound Course Interception Greater Than 45° (Timed Distance Method) (Sheet 1 of 2)

INTERCEPT COMPLETED

Procedural Steps

1. Tune and identify the station.
2. Determine the bearing from the radio beacon you are on (240°) by looking at the tail of the No. 2 needle.
3. Determine an intercept heading.
   a. Determine the bearing from the radio beacon you desire to intercept (330°). Visualize this on the heading indicator.
   b. Measure the angular difference (90°).
   c. Since it is greater than 45°, compute your initial heading based on the present course to the station (060°) and the figure 70°.
   d. Since the shortest direction to the bearing is to the left, subtract 70° from the present course to the station. The computed initial Magnetic Heading (MH) is 350°.
   e. Turn in the shortest direction to the computed initial MH.
4. Intercept sequence.
   a. When intercepting the 270° bearing, start the clock and maintain heading.
   b. After completing 20° of bearing shift, note the time, start the clock again, and turn the aircraft 20° toward the radio beacon.
   c. Continue with the 20° time distance checks until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.
   d. Lead points depend on the rate of movement of the No. 2 needle.

Note

If heading indicators are inoperative, the No. 2 needle will still point to the station. Utilize the magnetic compass to determine bearings and make timed turns.

Figure 23-3. Inbound Course Interception Greater Than 45° (Timed Distance Method) (Sheet 2 of 2)

Initial station passage is positively determined when the pointer moves through the wingtip position. This usually occurs shortly after the aircraft has actually passed the station. Timing should begin that instant regardless of further oscillations.

23.1.1.4 Outbound — Immediately After Station Passage

Turn to parallel the desired outbound course (compensate for wind). Maintain heading and allow the bearing pointer to stabilize. Note the number of degrees between the tail of the bearing pointer and the desired course. To correct back on course, use outbound course interception technique (Figure 23-4).

23.1.1.4.1 Outbound — Away from the Station

First, note the position of the bearing pointer tail. Then, on the compass card, look from the tail in the short direction to the desired course. Any heading beyond the desired course is a no-wind intercept heading. Normally, 45° beyond the desired course is a good intercept heading as it also forms a 45° or "average" angle of intercept; however, as in inbound intercepts, consider the known factors of groundspeed and distance from the station when selecting an intercept heading. Outbound procedures are essentially identical with those for VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) — Radio Magnetic Indicator (RMI) only (Figure 21-9).

23.1.1.4.2 Completing the Intercept

After the intercept heading has been established, adjustments may be required to achieve a more desirable angle or rate of intercept. As the aircraft approaches course, it is necessary to determine a lead point for turning because of the radius of turn. The lead point will depend upon the rate of movement of the bearing pointer and the time required to complete the turn to course. Factors affecting the lead point are groundspeed, distance from the station, intercept angle, and rate of turn. Complete the turn to course, simultaneously applying a correction for known wind.

23.1.1.5 Time-Distance Check

It is possible to calculate the time and distance from the station using ADF.

23.1.1.5.1 ADF Procedures

After tuning the radio compass for ADF, note the position of the bearing pointer. The number of degrees the bearing pointer is deflected from the wingtip position indicates the magnitude and direction of turn required to place the pointer on the wingtip position. Turn to this predetermined heading. If the bearing pointer is not within 5° of the wingtip position after you have made the turn, make a corrective turn to place it on the wingtip. Note the exact time at the completion of this turn, and maintain a constant heading until the pointer shows a bearing change of 5° to 20° (Figure 23-5).

23.1.1.6 Tracking

It is possible to maintain a course to or from a station using the radio compass bearing pointer, regardless of whether the compass card is working properly or not, because the bearing pointer will point to the station and show the relative bearing of the aircraft to the station.

23.1.1.6.1 Inbound

After completing a turn to course, maintain heading until the bearing pointer shows a deflection from the desired course. Turn toward the pointer and beyond a sufficient number of degrees to return to course.

After reintercepting course with the correct wind drift correction applied, the pointer will continue to point to the desired course and be displaced from the top index the number of degrees equal to the applied drift correction. If the pointer moves toward the top index, the correction is too small; if it moves away from the top index, the correction is too large (Figure 23-6).

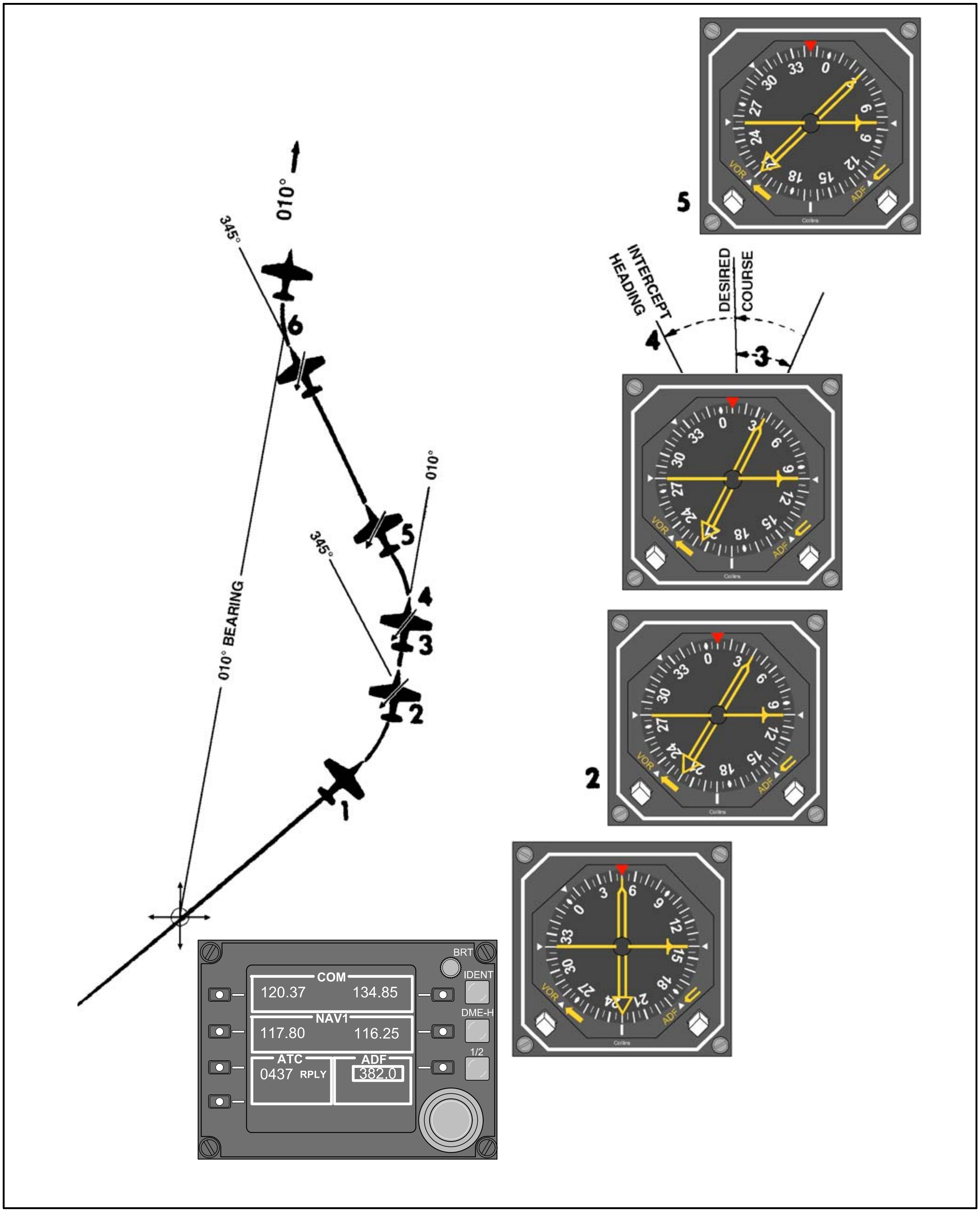


Figure 23-4. Course Interception Immediately After Station Passage (Sheet 1 of 2)

6

INTERCEPT
COMPLETED

Outbound Procedural Steps — ONLY

1. Tune and identify the station.

   This should already be accomplished.

2. Turn in the shortest direction to a heading that will parallel or intercept the outbound course.

   Turning to parallel the desired outbound course is always acceptable. Continuing the turn to an intercept heading may be preferable when the bearing pointer is stabilized or when the pilot knows the aircraft position in relation to the desired course. The effect that airspeed, wind, and magnitude of turn will have on aircraft position during the turn to an intercept heading should be carefully considered.

3. Determine number of degrees off course.

   Note the angular difference between the tail of the bearing pointer and the desired course.

4. Determine an intercept heading.

   If a suitable intercept angle was not established during the initial turn, look from the tail of the bearing pointer to the desired course. Any heading beyond the desired course is a no-wind intercept heading. Turn in this direction an amount approximately equal to the number of degrees off course. Normally, to avoid overshooting the course, do not use an intercept angle greater than 45°.

Note

On some aircraft, the RMI/Bearing-Distance-Heading Indicator (BDHI) bearing pointer does not have a tail. In this case, turn to the magnetic heading of the desired course. Continue on the outbound magnetic heading of the desired course until the bearing pointer stabilizes. Note the number of degrees the bearing pointer is off the tail of the aircraft. This is the number of degrees off course. Any heading change in the direction toward the head of the bearing pointer is a no-wind intercept heading. Turn in the direction of the head of the bearing pointer an amount approximately equal to the number of degrees off course. Normally, to avoid overshooting the course, do not use an intercept angle greater than 45°.

5. Turn to an intercept heading, if not previously accomplished.

6. Maintain the intercept heading until a lead point is reached, then complete the intercept.

   Lead point depends on bearing pointer rate of movement and the time required to turn on course.

Figure 23-4. Course Interception Immediately After Station Passage (Sheet 2 of 2)

23.1.1.6.2 Outbound

To maintain an outbound course, use outbound course interception procedures. Apply corrections to keep the desired course under the tail of the bearing pointer. After applying a wind drift correction outbound, and the tail of the pointer moves toward the top index, the drift correction is too large; if it moves away from the top index, the drift correction is too small (Figure 23-7).

For ease of computation, it is desirable to use 10° of bearing change. When the bearing pointer shows the desired bearing change, again note the exact time. Turn immediately to place the bearing pointer under the top index and maintain that course to the station. Determine the time to the station by applying the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Time in seconds between bearings}}{\text{Degrees of bearing change}} = \text{Minutes to station.}$$

For example, if it requires 2 minutes (120 seconds) to fly a bearing change of 10°, the aircraft is:

$$\frac{120}{10} = 12 \text{ minutes to the station.}$$

The time from the station may also be calculated by using a short method based on the above formula, provided a 10° bearing change is flown. If the elapsed time for the bearing change is noted in seconds and a 10° bearing change is made, the time from the station in minutes is determined by counting off 1 decimal point; thus, if it requires 75 seconds to fly a 10° bearing change, the aircraft is 7.5 minutes from the station.

When the bearing pointer is moving rapidly or when several corrections are required to place the pointer on the wingtip position, the aircraft is very close to the station. For all practical purposes, this can be considered station passage.

The distance from the station may be computed by multiplying True Airspeed (TAS) or groundspeed (in miles per minute) by the previously determined time in minutes. For example, if the aircraft is 4 minutes from the station, flying at a TAS of 300 knots (or 5 nm per minute), the distance from the station is:

$$5 \times 4 = 20 \text{ nm.}$$

The preceding are methods of computing approximate time and distance. For increased accuracy, use only a small amount of bearing change (about 10°) and correct for existing winds.

By flying a constant heading and checking the time and bearing progression closely, you can determine the estimated time of arrival over the station, or the position and distance from a station not directly on the flightpath.

23.1.1.7 Homing

Homing is essentially keeping the nose of the aircraft pointed at the station while proceeding inbound. As homing in a crosswind will result in a curved flightpath to the station, use it only for short distances (i.e., transition from one radio facility to another in the immediate area) (Figure 23-8).

Note

Homing is not an accepted instrument procedure.

23.1.1.7.1 ADF Homing Procedures

Observe the position of the radio compass bearing pointer and turn in the shorter direction to place the head of the bearing pointer under the top index of the compass card. Maintain this indication while proceeding to the station.

23.1.2 UHF Nondirectional Radio Beacon (Homer)

The Ultrahigh Frequency (UHF) homer ground station transmits a continuous carrier in the frequency range of 275 to 287 MHz, modulated with a 1020-cycle tone for identification purposes. Some UHF homers also have a voice capability. The power output is approximately 15 watts. The pilot of an aircraft equipped with UHF/ADF equipment can determine the relative bearing of, and home on, the ground equipment. The airborne equipment extracts the information from signals received by the aircraft UHF communications receiver. The relative bearing of the signal source is indicated on a heading indicator. Best results are obtained under straight-and-level flight conditions (Figure 23-9).

23.1.2.1 UHF/ADF Navigation Auxiliary Receivers

UHF/ADF navigation auxiliary equipment receives UHF signals from any UHF radio beacon operating in the range of 265.0 to 284.9 MHz. The equipment operates on any 1 of 20 preset crystal-controlled channels. To determine the preset channel from a known frequency, subtract the number 264 from the known frequency, disregarding the decimal;. thus, 265.2 MHz will be channel 1, 280.4 MHz will be channel 16, etc. A separate crystal-controlled Guard channel, operating on an alternate basis with the main receiver, is also available. This Guard channel is preset on an assigned frequency of 243.0 MHz.

The equipment is primarily designed for use in normal automatic direction finding; however, it may also be used to provide auxiliary or emergency voice reception if the normal radio receiver should fail. When functioning in the normal automatic direction finding mode, this equipment operates with the UHF homing adapter equipment and the appropriate needle on the course indicator or RMI. As the relationship between the navigation equipment and the communications equipment will vary between types of aircraft, the pilot should refer to the applicable NATOPS flight manual for more specific procedures.

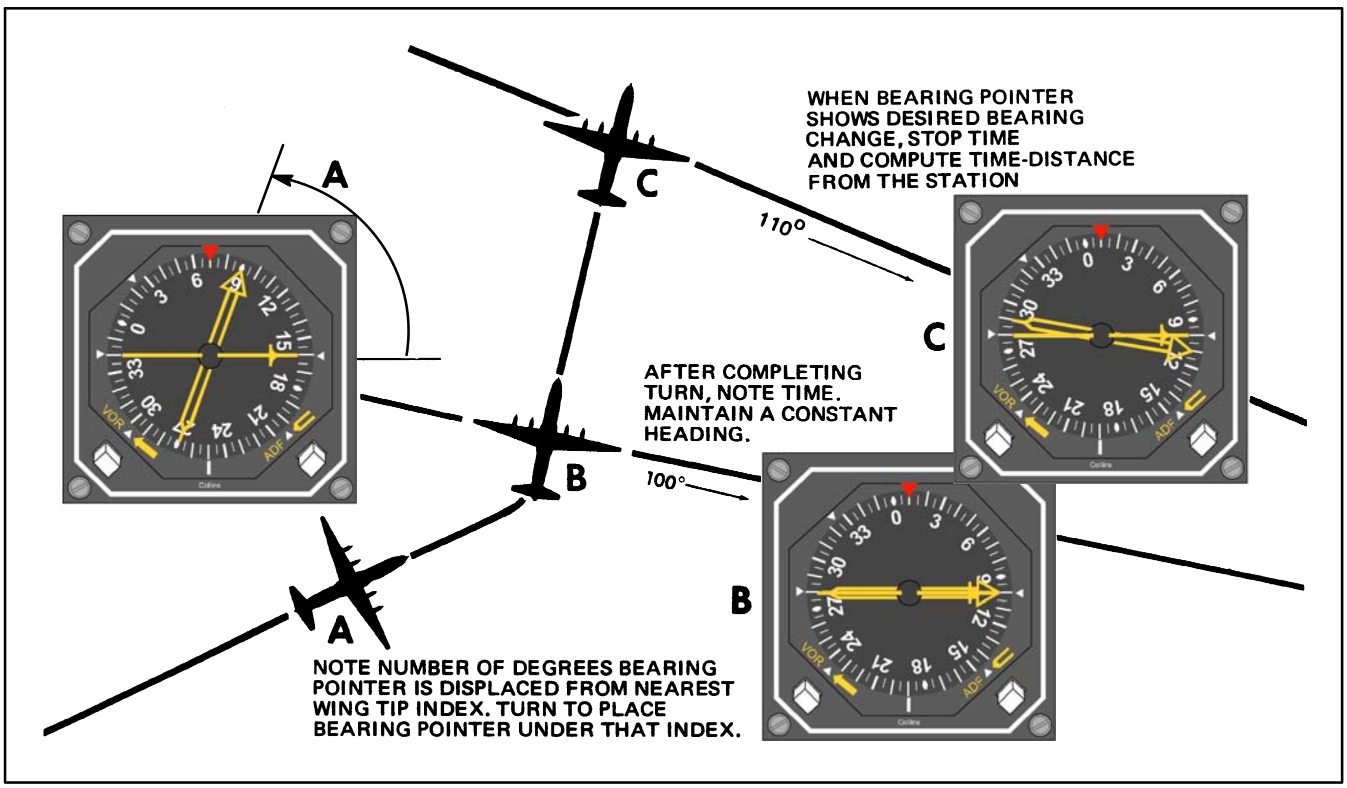


Figure 23-5. Time-Distance Check

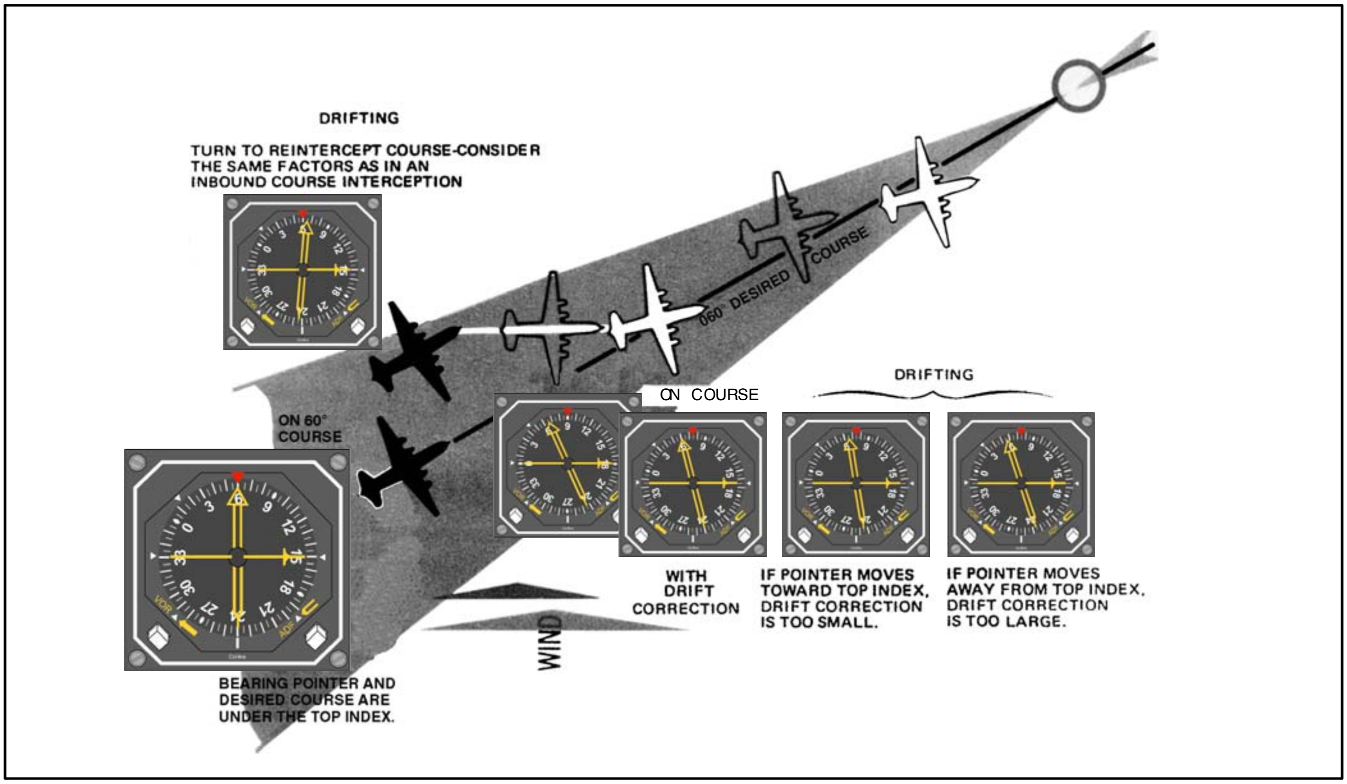


Figure 23-6. Maintaining Course Inbound

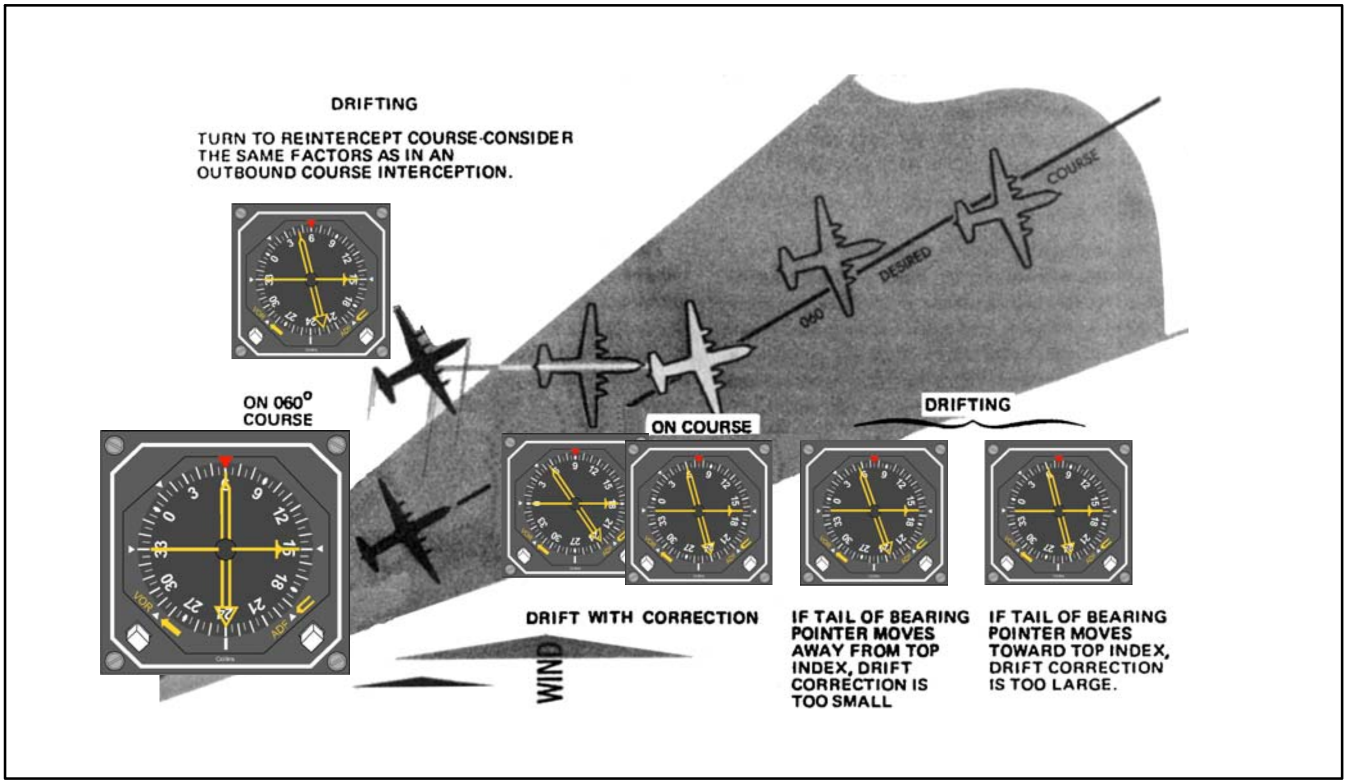


Figure 23-7. Maintaining Course Outbound

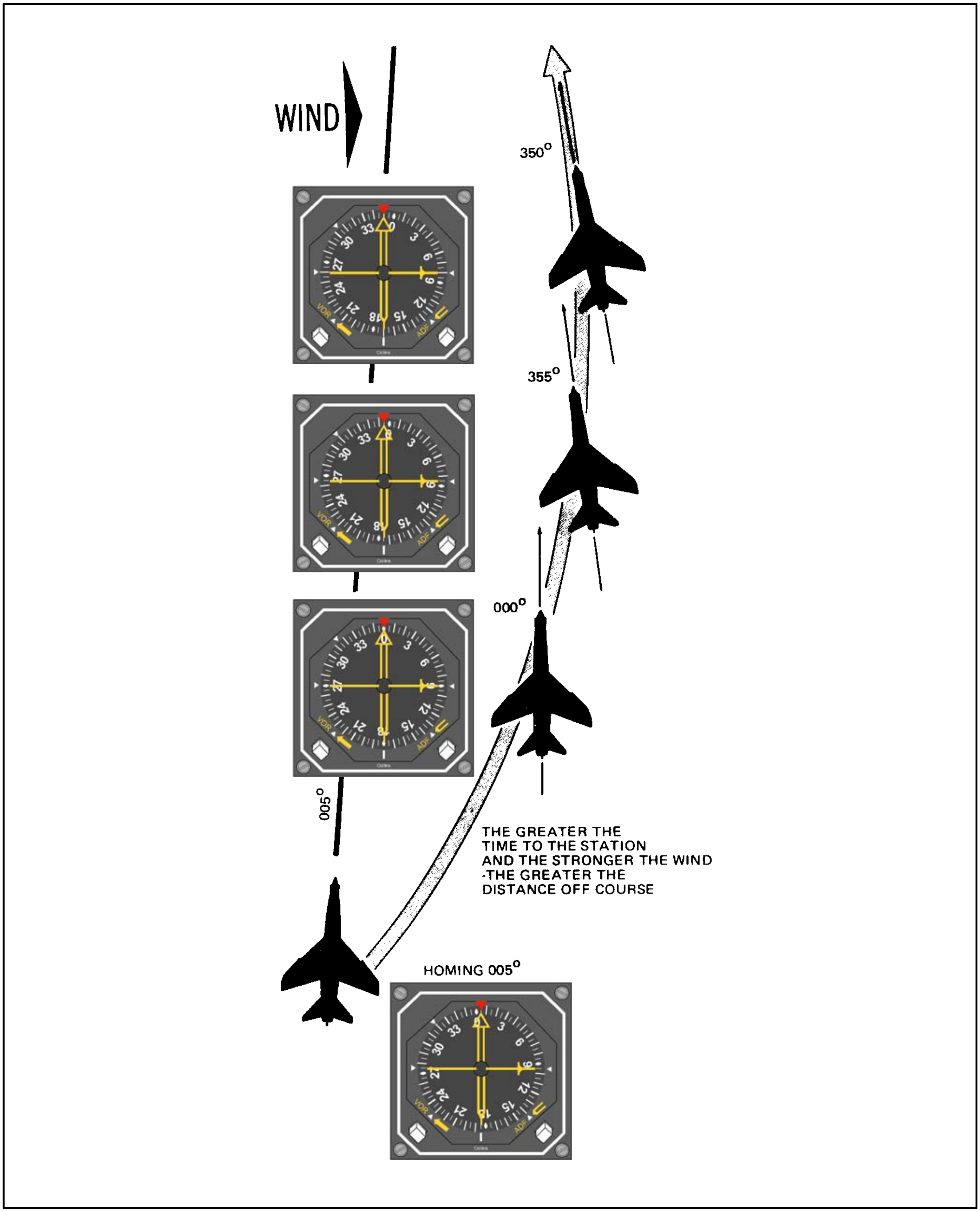


Figure 23-8. Curved Flightpath as a Result of Homing with a Crosswind Condition

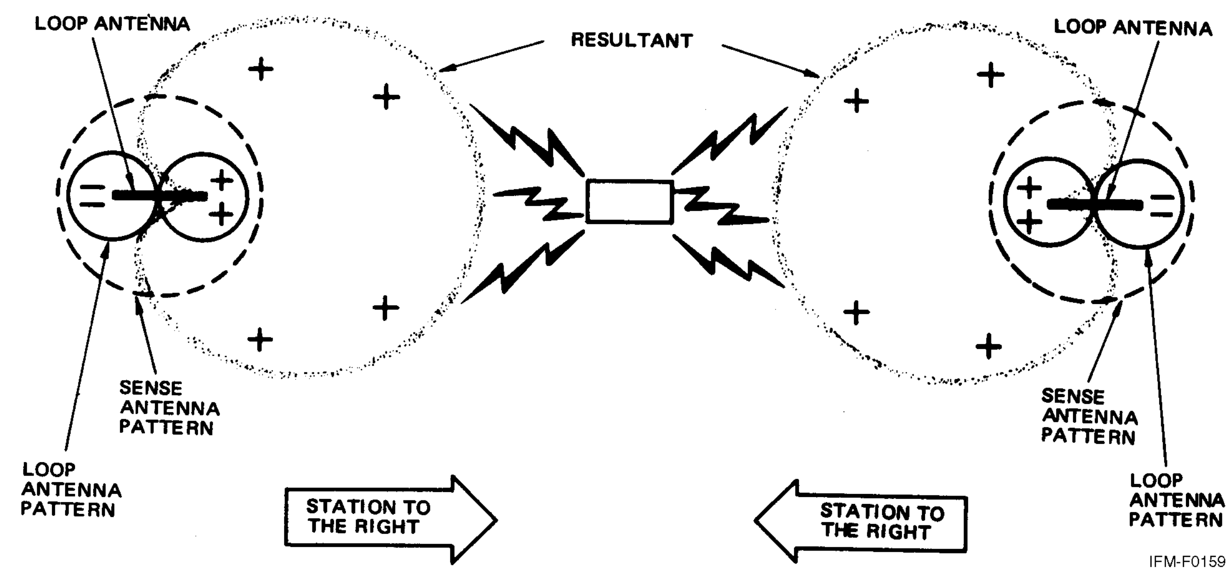


Figure 23-9. Automatic Direction Finding Signal Pattern

23.1.2.2 UHF Homing Adapters

These systems are used with UHF transceivers as a navigational aid. They provide a continuous indication of the approximate relative bearing of an RF signal source transmitted by another aircraft, surface craft, or ground station on a frequency range of 225.0 to 399.9 MHz. The approximate relative bearing will be indicated by the appropriate needle on the course indicator or RMI.

Whenever the function selector switch on the UHF control panel is set to the T/R or T/R+G position, the homing equipment will automatically be placed in the standby condition. When this selector is set to ADF, the command equipment is placed in circuit with the homing equipment, enabling the latter to receive the frequency selected by the channel selector switch on the command set control panel. In the ADF position, the auxiliary guard receiving capability will be lost.

23.1.2.3 Approach Procedures

ADF procedures for holding, high-altitude penetration and approach, procedure turn and approach, and missed approach are the same as those for VOR (refer to Chapter 21) except that normal ADF interception procedures are used. Remember, dip error in turns causes erroneous bearing indications; therefore, make all turns to predetermined headings (Figures 23-10 and 23-11).

23.2 MARKER BEACONS

Marker beacons serve to identify a particular location in space along an airway or on the approach to an instrument runway. This is done by means of a 75-MHz transmitter that transmits a directional signal to be received by aircraft flying overhead. These markers are generally used in conjunction with low-frequency radio ranges and the Instrument Landing System (ILS) as point designators. Four classes of markers are now in general use: Frequency Modulation (FM), Low-Power Fan Marker (LFM), station location or Z-markers, and the ILS marker beacons.

FM and LFM fan markers are keyed to indicate on which radio range course they are located. The radio range courses are numbered clockwise beginning at true north with the north (or near north) course being designated No. 1. Fan markers located on course number one are keyed to emit single dashes, those on course two, two dashes, etc. When two fan markers are located on the same radio range course, the identification of the outermost marker is preceded by two dots; thus, the identification of the outermost marker on a number one course is two dots and one dash.

The class FM fan markers are used to provide a positive identification of positions at definite points along the airways. The transmitters have a power output of approximately 100 watts. Two types of antenna array are used with class FM fan markers. The first type, generally referred to as the standard type, produces an elliptical-shaped pattern, which at an elevation of 1,000 feet above the station is approximately 4 miles wide and 12 miles long. At 10,000 feet, the pattern widens to approximately 12 miles wide and 35 miles long. (The long axis lies across the airway or radio range.)

The second array produces a dumbbell or boneshaped pattern, which at the “handle” is approximately 3 miles wide at 1,000 feet. The boneshaped marker is preferred at approach control locations where timed approaches are used.

The class LFM or low-power fan markers have a rated power output of 5 watts and are usually located within 5 miles of the radio range stations with which they are associated. The antenna array produces a circular pattern, which appears elongated at right angles to the airway due to the directional characteristics of the aircraft receiving antenna.

The station location, or Z-marker, was developed to meet the need for a positive position indicator for aircraft operating under instrument flying conditions to show the pilot when the aircraft was passing directly over a low-frequency radio range station. The marker consists of a 5-watt transmitter and a directional antenna array that is located on the range plot between the towers or the loop antennas.

ILS marker beacon information is included in paragraph 24.2.1.3.

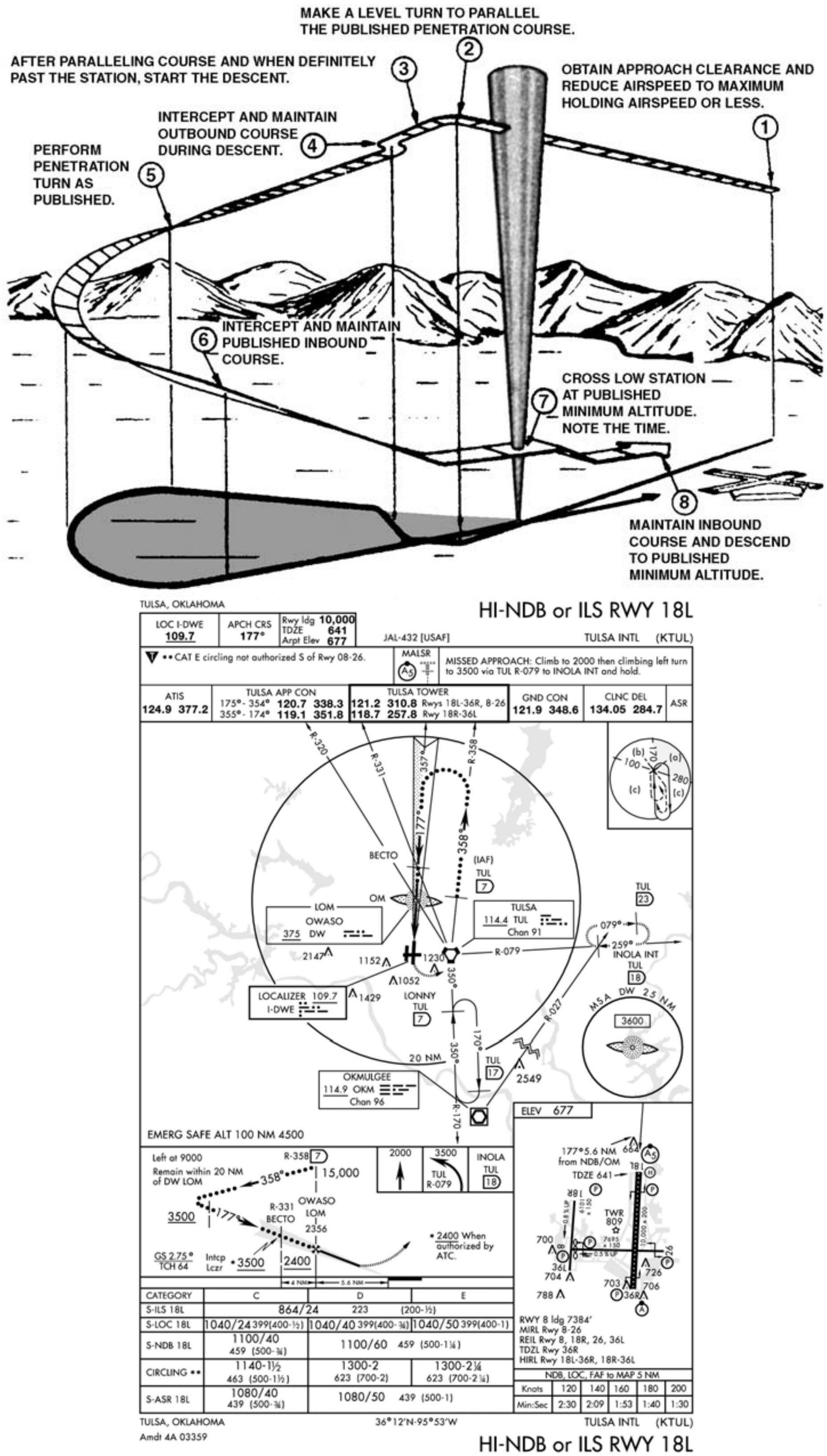


Figure 23-10. Typical ADF High-Altitude Penetration and Approach

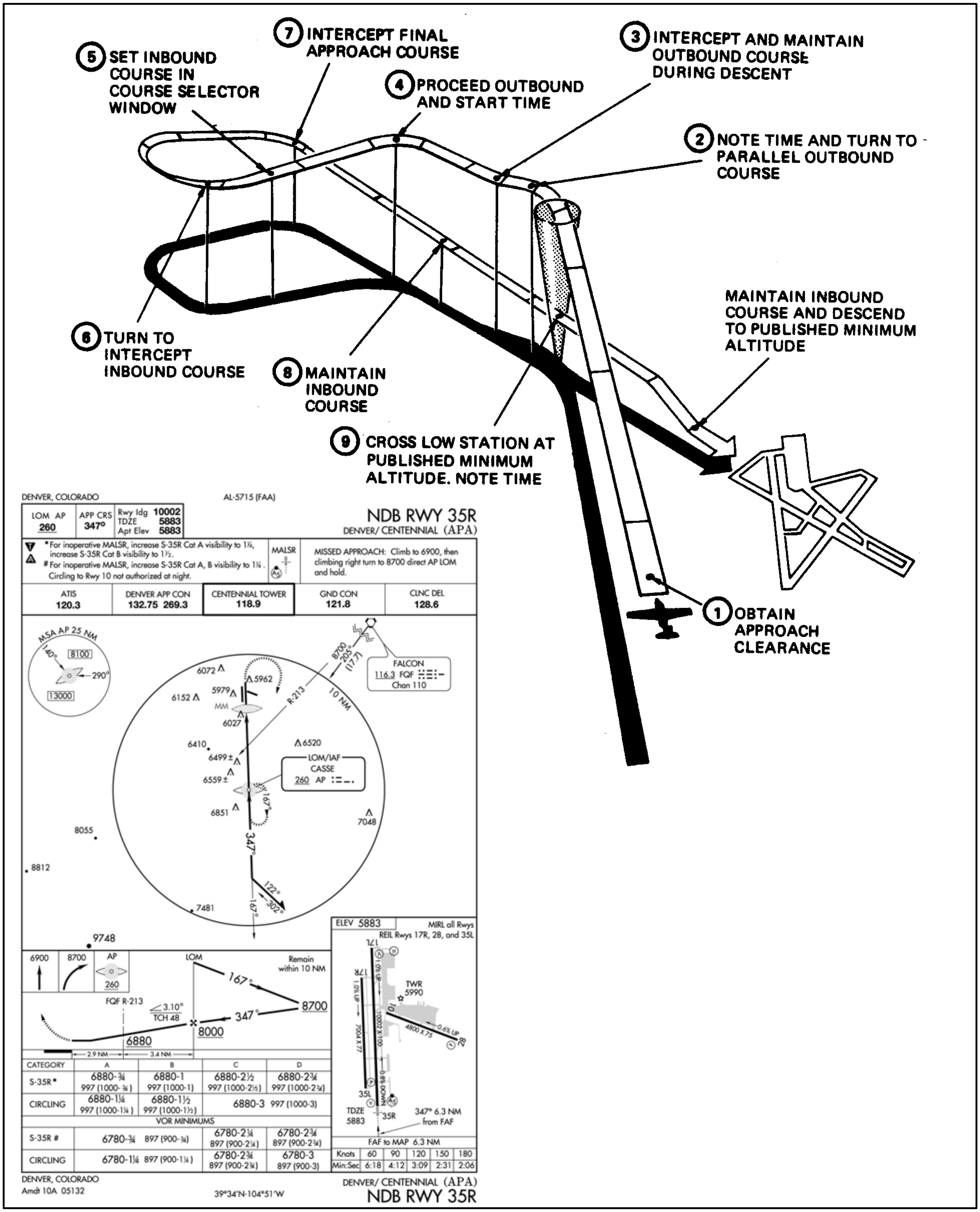


Figure 23-11. Typical ADF Low-Altitude Approach

CHAPTER 24

Instrument Landing System (ILS)

24.1 INTRODUCTION

The Instrument Landing System (ILS) (Figure 24-1) is a precision approach system that provides azimuth and glideslope information to the pilot. It consists of a highly directional localizer (course) and glideslope transmitter with associated marker beacons, compass locators, and, at some sites, Distance Measuring Equipment (DME). The system is automatically monitored and provides changeover to a standby localizer or glideslope transmitter when the main system malfunctions.

The system may be divided functionally into three parts:

1. Guidance information: localizer, glideslope.

2. Range information: marker beacon, DME.

3. Visual information: approach lights, touchdown and centerline lights, runway lights.

24.2 EQUIPMENT AND OPERATION

24.2.1 Ground Equipment

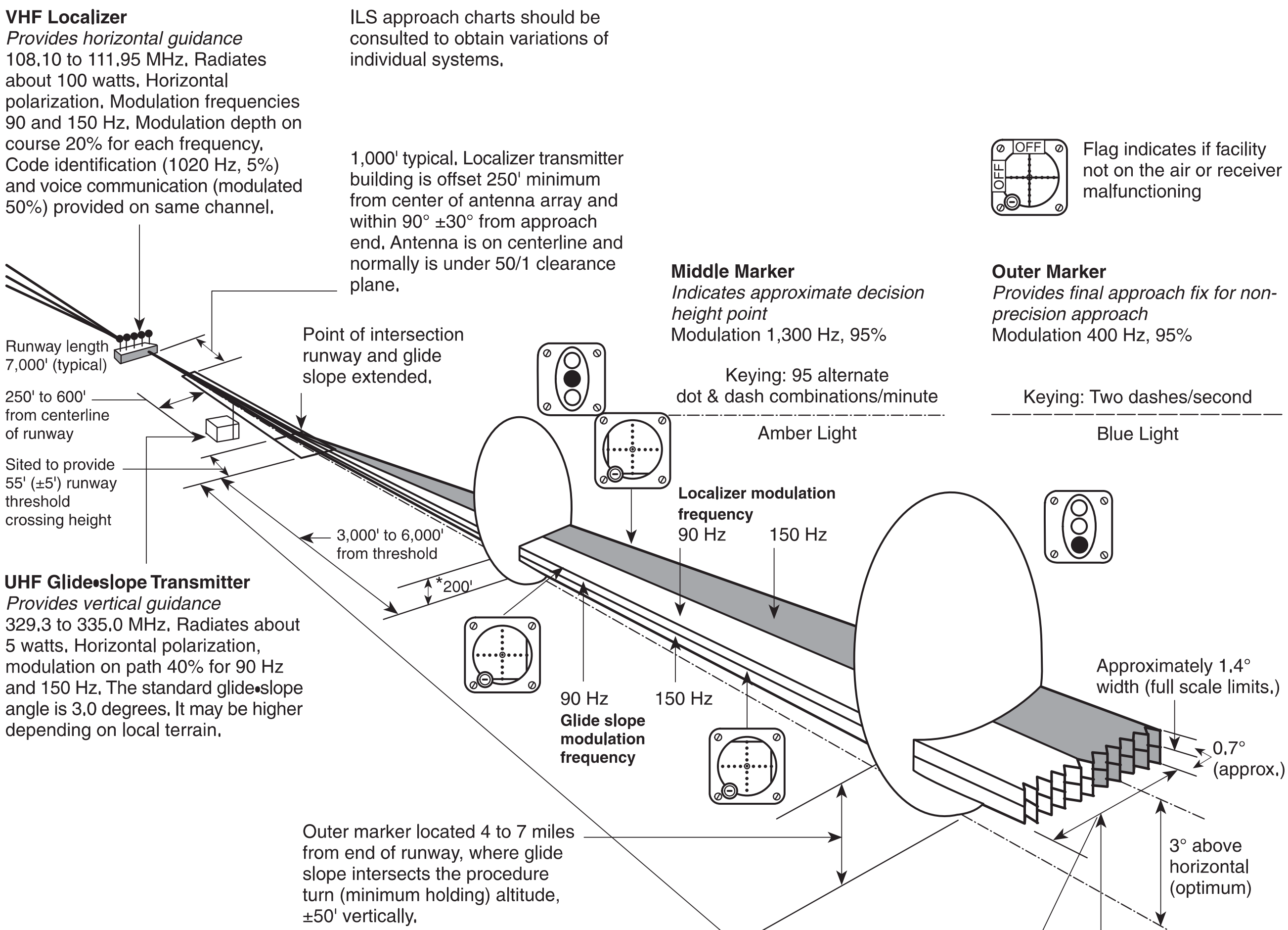
24.2.1.1 Localizer Transmitter

Localizer transmitters are located approximately 1,000 feet beyond and to the side of the nonapproach end of the ILS runway. The antenna is in line with the runway centerline. The 90- and 150-cycle signal patterns are radiated on opposite sides of the extended runway centerline. The 150-cycle signal is on the right when looking at the runway from the outer marker; the 90-cycle signal is on the left. The course is formed along the runway centerline extended (toward outer marker) where the signals overlap and are of equal strength. This course is referred to as the front course. The front course envelope is approximately 5° wide, extending 2-1/2° either side of the course centerline. Most localizer transmitters also provide a signal pattern around the runway so that course signals also overlap in the opposite direction, forming a back course. There are few published ILS back course approaches and a glideslope is not provided for them.

CAUTION

Unless the aircraft ILS equipment includes reverse sensing capability, when flying inbound on the back course it is necessary to steer the aircraft in the direction opposite the needle deflection when making corrections from off-course to on-course. This “flying away from the needle” is also required when flying outbound on the front course of the localizer. Do not use back course signals for approach unless a back course approach procedure is published for that particular runway and the approach is authorized by Air Traffic Control (ATC).

On aircraft without reverse sensing capability, selecting the front course on your Course Deviation Indicator (CDI) will prevent the need to fly away from needle deflection. The CDI will deflect in the proper direction, whether you are on a back course or outbound on a front course.



Rate of Descent Chart
(feet per minute)

Speed (Knots)	Angle		
	2.5°	2.75°	3°
90	400	440	475
110	485	535	585
130	575	630	690
150	665	730	795
160	707	778	849

Compass locators, rated at 25 watts output 190 to 535 KHz, are installed at many outer and some middle markers. A 400 Hz or a 1020 Hz tone, modulating the carrier about 95%, is keyed with the first two letters of the ILS identification on the outer locator and the last two letters on the middle locator. At some locations, simul•taneous voice transmissions from the control tower are provided, with appropriate reduction in identification percentage.

*Figures marked with asterisk are typical. Actual figures vary with deviations in distances to markers, glide angles and localizer widths.

Figure 24-1. Instrument Landing System

ILS localizer transmitters use the odd decimal VHF frequencies from 108.1 to 111.9 MHz (e.g., 110.3 MHz). The localizer transmitter emits continuous identification in the form of a coded three-letter station identifier preceded by the letter I (e.g., I-EMH). Some have voice transmission capabilities.

Note

Momentary localizer flag activity and course aberrations may be observed when other aircraft cross over the localizer antenna or are in a position to affect the radiated signal.

24.2.1.2 Glideslope

1. The Ultrahigh Frequency (UHF) glideslope transmitter, operating on 1 of the 20 ILS channels within the frequency range 329.3 to 335.0 MHz, radiates its signals principally in the direction of final approach. Any instrument indications of a glideslope at azimuths other than those within the angular width of the localizer front course should be disregarded.

2. The glideslope transmitter is located between 750 and 1,250 feet from the approach end of the runway (down the runway) and offset 400 to 600 feet from the runway centerline. It transmits a glideslope beam 1.4° wide.

3. The glideslope projection angle is normally adjusted to 2.5° to 3° above horizontal so that it intersects the middle marker at approximately 200 feet and the outer marker at approximately 1,400 feet above the runway elevation.

4. In addition to the desired glideslope, false course and reversal in sensing will occur at vertical angles considerably greater than the usable slope. The proper use of the glideslope requires that the pilot maintain alertness as the glideslope interception is approached and interpret correctly the “fly-up” and “fly-down” instrument indications to avoid the possibility of attempting to follow one of the higher angle courses.

5. Extreme caution should be used to avoid exceeding a deviation of one dot (or approximately one-half scale) below the glideslope up to the middle marker and to avoid any deviation below the glideslope from the middle marker to completion of landing.

6. The glideslope facilities provide a signal that flares from 18 to 27 feet above the runway; therefore, the glideslope should not be expected to provide guidance completely to a touchdown point on the runway.

7. DME may be installed at the glideslope transmitter site. Range and the three-letter station identifier are available through the Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN) receiver. Bearing information is not provided.

24.2.1.3 Marker Beacons

Marker beacons are very low-powered, 75-MHz transmitters located along the ILS final approach course to mark a specific position. Normally, two marker beacons are used for this purpose, and they are depicted on the terminal chart by the letters OM and MM (Outer Marker and Middle Marker).

An additional beacon called an Inner Marker (IM) may also be installed. The beacons are identified in the aircraft visually (marker beacon light) and/or aurally depending on aircraft equipment. The reception area of the aural signal is larger than that of the visual signal. Marker beacons are not installed for navigation purposes but merely to indicate a fix on the localizer course.

The Outer Marker (OM) is normally located 4 to 7 miles from the end of the runway. Outer marker identification consists of continuous dashes. Aurally, the dashes are comparatively low pitched (400 Hz). The published altitude at the outer marker is what the altimeter should indicate when the aircraft is over the marker and on the glideslope; however, there are no specific limits. The outer marker altitude may also be the procedure turn or glideslope interception altitude.

The Middle Marker (MM) is located approximately 3,500 feet from the runway and is identified by alternating dots and dashes. The aural signal is comparatively high pitched (1,300 Hertz) and easily distinguished from the outer marker signal. This is also the position where an aircraft on glidepath will be at an altitude of approximately 200 feet above the elevation of the touchdown zone.

The IM, where installed, will indicate a point at which an aircraft is at a designated Decision Height (DH) for Category II equipped aircraft on the glideslope between the middle marker and landing threshold. The IM is modulated at 3000 Hz and identified with continuous dots keyed at the rate of six dots per second.

24.2.1.4 Compass Locators

If installed, compass locators are placed at the marker beacon sites (usually only at the OM) as aids to navigation around the ILS. They are low-powered nondirectional radio beacons operating between 200 and 415 kHz with a reliable reception range of at least 15 nm; however, higher-powered, low-frequency nondirectional radio beacons may be collocated with the marker beacons and used as compass locators. These generally carry transcribed weather broadcast information.

On the approach chart, the radio data information box for the locator is broken at the top by the letter L. Within the box are the frequency and the identification of the facility.

The locator identification consists of two letters. When installed at an outer marker, it will normally transmit the first two letters of the three-letter ILS localizer identification. If installed at a middle marker, it will transmit the last two letters. For example, with an ILS localizer identified by the letters I-FAT, the compass locator identification at the outer marker is FA, and at the middle marker is AT. On the profile view of the approach chart, the locators are depicted by the letters LOM or LMM (Locator Outer Marker or Locator Middle Marker).

During periods of routine or emergency maintenance, the coded identification (or code and voice, where applicable) will be removed from ILS localizers but not from Non-Directional Beacon (NDB) compass locators or 75-MHz marker beacons (Figure 24-1).

Note

ILS minimums, with all components operative, normally establish a DH (decision height MSL) with a Height Above Touchdown (HAT) of 200 feet and a visibility of one-half statute mile.

24.2.2 Airborne Equipment

The control panel for tuning the ILS localizer is the same as that used for VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) in most aircraft. The glideslope receiver is automatically tuned when the localizer frequency is selected.

A course indicator is used in this chapter to illustrate procedures for flying ILS. The flight director display is illustrated in Figure 24-3.

The radio magnetic indicator has no function with ILS frequencies; however, bearing information to other radio facilities (compass locators, TACAN, etc.) can be of considerable value. All available navigation equipment should be used when appropriate during any approach.

24.2.2.1 ILS Channel/Frequency

ILS are being commissioned utilizing all 20 channels allotted to ILS by International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) in Aeronautical Telecommunications Annex 10. Aircraft equipment should be checked to ensure the receiving capability of all channels.

24.3 ILS PROCEDURES

24.3.1 Performing the ILS Approach

Information for planning an ILS and transitioning to it from other Navigation Aids (NAVAIDs) is found in the terminal flight information publications (Figure 24-2). The approach should be considered in its entirety from en route transition through landing or missed approach. Refer to other Flight Information Publications (FLIP) documents such as Planning and the En Route IFR Supplement.

Pilots should tune the ILS receiver and identify and monitor the localizer identification signal as soon as practical during the transition procedure. The course and glideslope indicators are reliable only when (1) their warning flags are not displayed, (2) the localizer identifier is received, and (3) the aircraft is within the usable range of the equipment. The localizer is considered reliable within 18 miles of the transmitter within 10° or 10 miles within 35° of the course centerline unless the published approach depicts a transition point at a farther distance. The glideslope interception point and altitude are designated on the terminal chart; the glideslope is considered reliable within 10 miles of the transmitter, provided the aircraft is on the localizer course.

Before localizer interception, set the published front course in the course selector window so that the aircraft heading/localizer relationship is displayed on the course indicator. The transition may require a large turn onto the localizer course (e.g., a teardrop penetration or procedure turn). If the CDI indicates full-scale deflection (course deviation 2-1/2° or greater) during the latter portion of the turn, roll out with an intercept angle that will ensure localizer interception prior to the glideslope intercept point. Normally a 30° to 45° intercept is sufficient; however, groundspeed, distance from the localizer course, and final approach fix may require another intercept angle.

When the localizer is intercepted, maintain the published heading until the first movement of the CDI. The rate of CDI movement will aid in estimating the force and direction of the wind. Heading corrections should be sufficient to stop the CDI movement and return the aircraft to course. After returning to course, apply the drift correction necessary to keep the CDI centered. Heading corrections should be reduced as the aircraft continues inbound (increments of 5° or less are usually sufficient).

The pilot should maintain the glideslope interception altitude, configure the aircraft for landing, and establish the final approach airspeed before reaching the glideslope intercept point. Do not descend below glideslope interception altitude if the CDI indicates full-scale deflection. Call the controlling agency at the final approach fix or as directed.

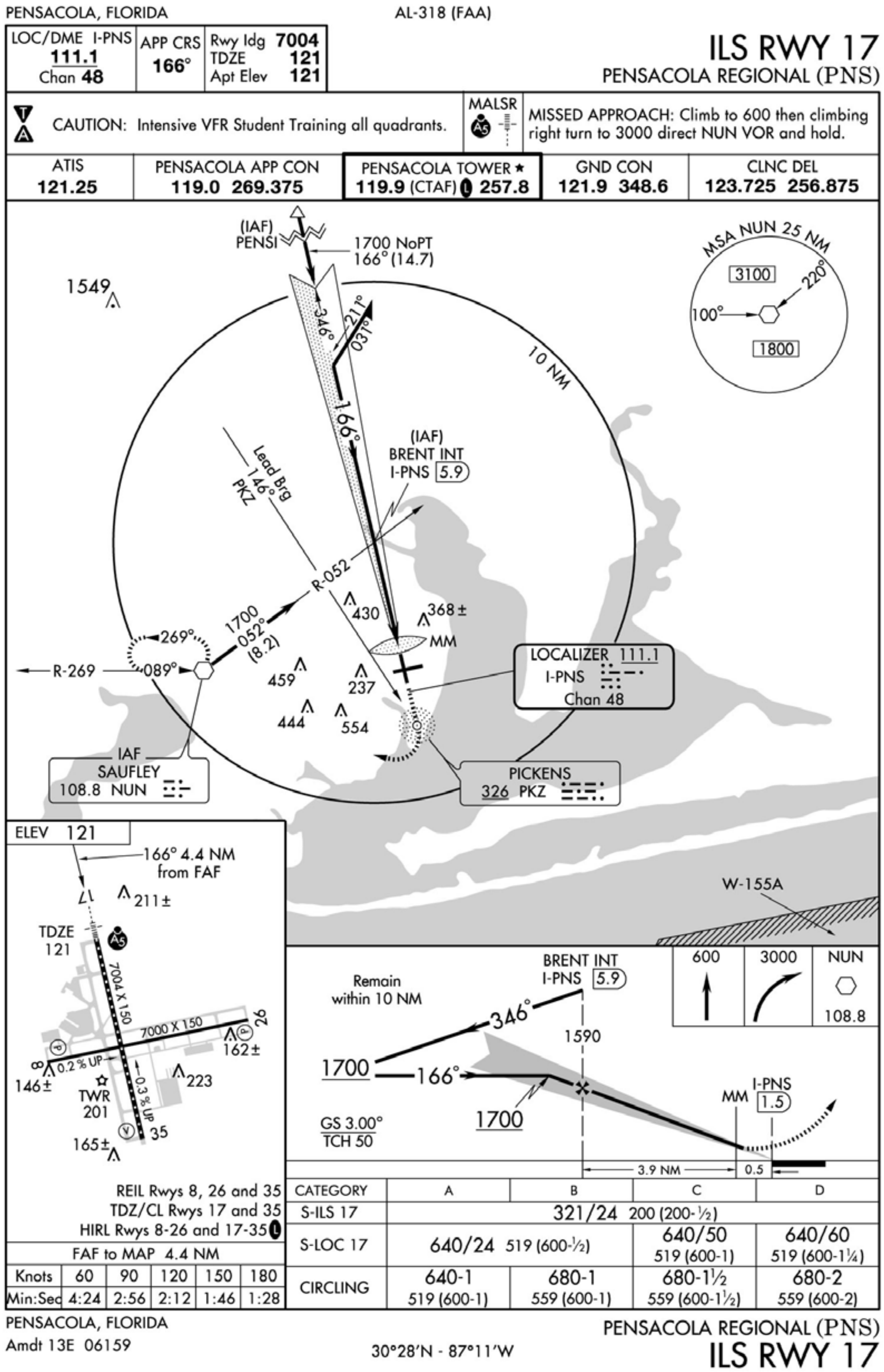
As the Glideslope Indicator (GSI) moves downward from its upper limits, prepare to intercept the glideslope. Slightly before the GSI reaches the center position, establish a pitch attitude on the attitude indicator and a power setting that will result in the vertical velocity and airspeed required to maintain the glidepath. The amount of pitch change required will depend on the glideslope angle. One technique that may be used when intercepting the glideslope (provided the final approach airspeed and configuration have been established) is to change the pitch attitude on the attitude indicator the same number of degrees as the glideslope angle (i.e., normally 2-1/2° to 3°).

WARNING

The glideslope facility provides a path that flares from 18 to 27 feet above the runway; therefore, the glidepath should not be expected to provide guidance completely to a touchdown point on the runway.

Corrections are made using coordinated pitch and power changes. Normally pitch changes should result in vertical velocity changes of less than 300 fpm. A 1° pitch change on the attitude indicator is usually a sufficient amount of correction to achieve a vertical velocity change of 200 to 300 fpm for groundspeeds between 120 and 180 knots.

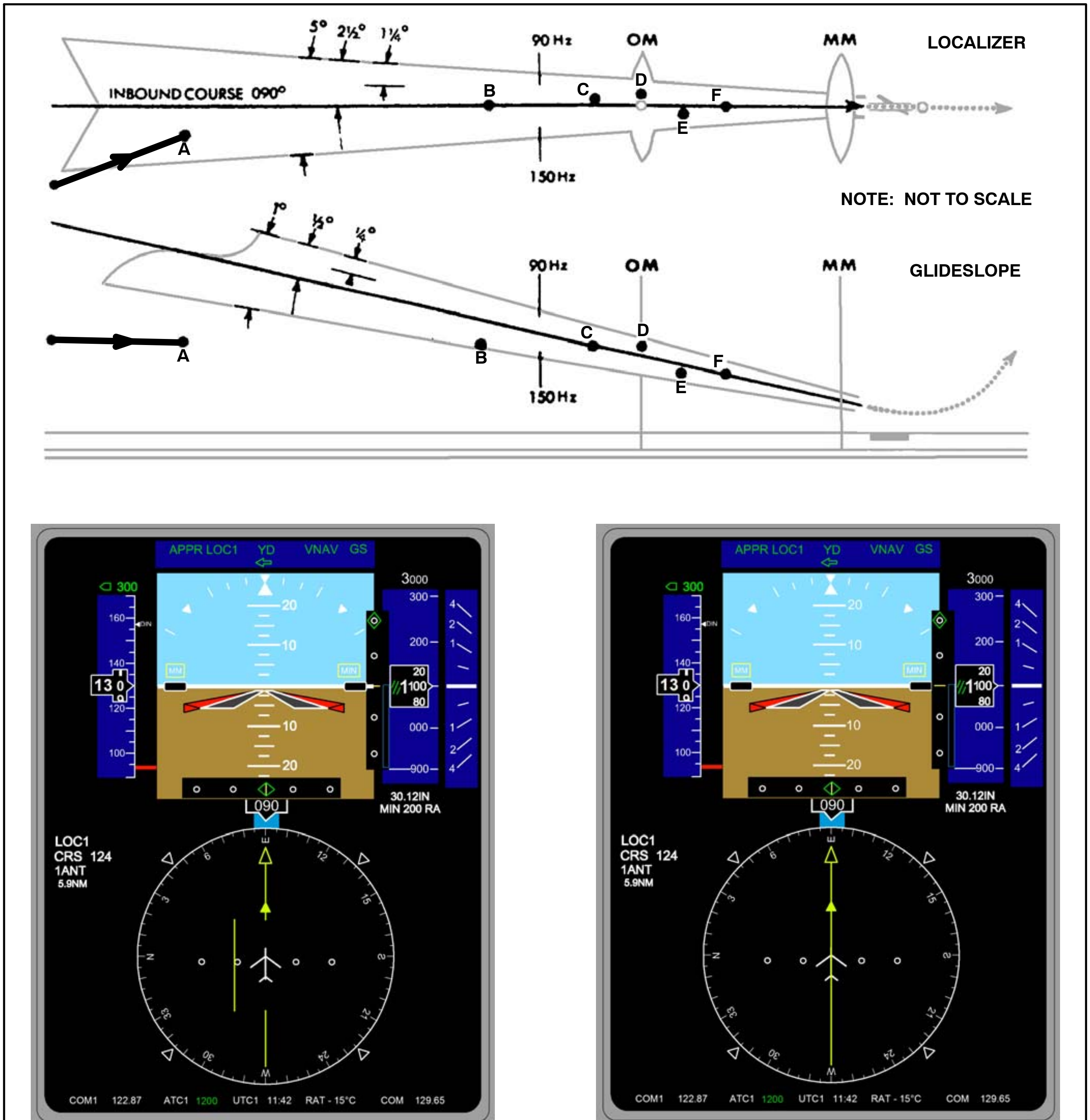
As indicated in Figure 24-3, the size of the course and glideslope envelope reduces progressively throughout the approach; therefore, the size of the pitch and bank corrections should be gradually reduced as the distance to touchdown decreases.



FAF to MAP 4.4 NM					
Knots	60	90	120	150	180
Min:Sec	4:24	2:56	2:12	1:46	1:28

CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
S-ILS 17	321/24 200 (200-½)			
S-LOC 17	640/24 519 (600-½)		640/50 519 (600-1)	640/60 519 (600-1¼)
CIRCLING	640-1 519 (600-1)	680-1 559 (600-1)	680-1½ 559 (600-1½)	680-2 559 (600-2)

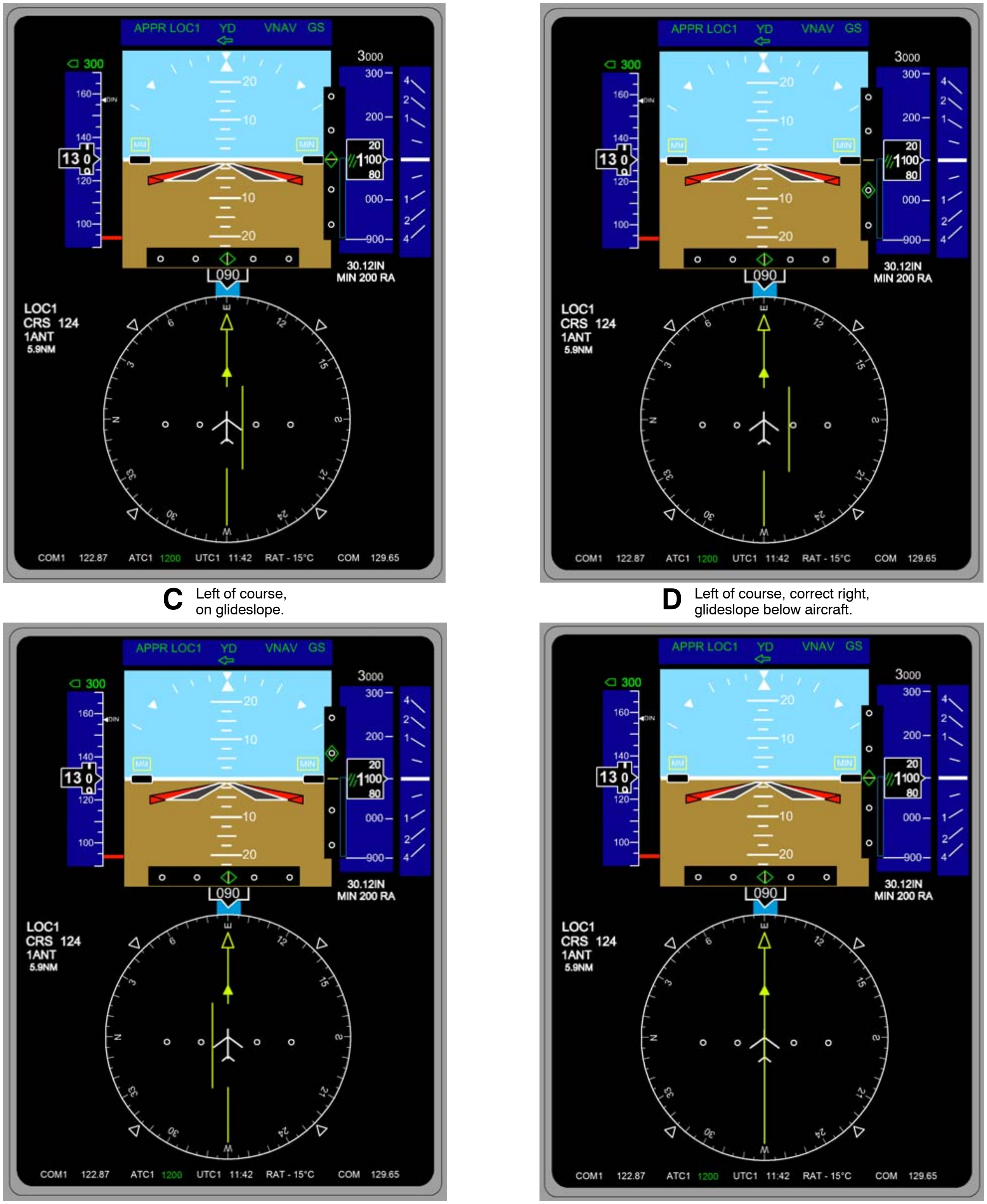
Figure 24-2. Typical ILS Approach



A Front Course Approach – Turning to intercept the ILS Localizer

B Rolling out — on course, glideslope above aircraft.

Figure 24-3. Course Indicator Presentation (Front Course) (Sheet 1 of 2)



C Left of course, on glideslope.

D Left of course, correct right, glideslope below aircraft.

E Right of course, correct left, glideslope above aircraft.

F On course. On glideslope.

Figure 24-3. Course Indicator Presentation (Front Course) (Sheet 2 of 2)

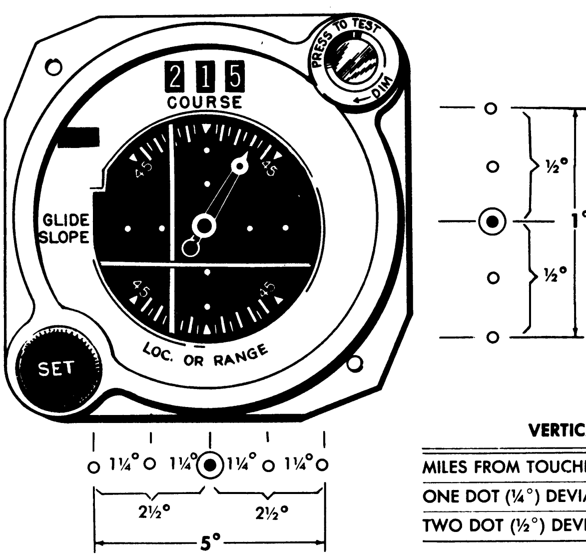
The most common tendency when flying an ILS approach is to “fly” the CDI and GSI. An ILS approach is a basic instrument maneuver similar to a radar approach. Immediate and smooth corrections should be made on the control instruments based on aircraft and flightpath performance indications. The importance of precise aircraft control cannot be overemphasized. Lateral distances in relation to CDI displacement can be considerable, especially at installations where the distance from the localizer transmitter at minimum altitude may be more than 2 miles. For example, in the lateral deviation chart of Figure 24-4, a full-scale deviation at 1 mile from touchdown places the aircraft 617 feet from the centerline. If the CDI was deflected 2° at a missed approach point 1/2 nm from the end of this runway, the aircraft would be approximately 400 feet from the centerline. Do not attempt to fly the final approach with full-scale deflection on the CDI or GSI, as obstruction clearance will not be assured; consideration should be given to executing a missed approach.

The most critical period of the approach occurs while the pilot is busy maintaining course, glidepath, and airspeed, and is approaching the published DH. Ensure the altimeter is being included in the cross-check. The DH is the lowest altitude at which a missed approach will be initiated if sufficient visual reference with the runway environment has not been established. Perform the missed approach when:

1. At the DH and visual reference with the runway environment is insufficient to complete the landing (runway or runway/approach lights).

2. Instructed by the controlling agency.

3. A safe landing is not possible.



The GSI is more sensitive than the CDI.

NOTE: Deviation figures do not take into consideration the distance an aircraft's main gear may be BELOW the location of its glide slope antenna.

NOTE: Figures based on localizer width of 5°, runway length 8000′, localizer transmitter 1000′ beyond runway, and touchdown point 1000′ from threshold.

VERTICAL DEVIATION FROM GLIDE SLOPE

MILES FROM TOUCHDOWN	5	4	3	2	1
ONE DOT (¼°) DEVIATION	130′	104′	78′	52′	26′
TWO DOT (½°) DEVIATION	260′	208′	156′	104′	52′

LATERAL DEVIATION FROM LOCALIZER COURSE

MILES FROM TOUCHDOWN	5	4	3	2	1
ONE DOT (1¼°) DEVIATION	838′	706′	573′	441′	308′
TWO DOT (2½°) DEVIATION	1677′	1412′	1147′	882′	617′

IFM-F0165

Figure 24-4. Course and Glideslope Deviation vs. Actual Displacement from Touchdown

WARNING

If the course warning flag is displayed during the final approach, initiate the missed approach procedure. If the glideslope warning flag is displayed, the approach should be flown no lower than the published localizer-only altitude or, if not published, no lower than circling-minimum altitude for the aircraft category. Localizer-only approaches are planned for and flown as a nonprecision approach.

24.3.2 Localizer Approaches

Most Navy aircraft do not have glideslope capability, but may execute an ILS approach as a localizer approach. In this case, proceed as outlined for a full ILS approach. A localizer approach is a nonprecision approach and the pilot should execute a missed approach when he has reached the missed approach point and the runway environment is not in sight.

Note

Many ILS missed approach procedures require the use of VOR; hence, pilots may have to retune their VOR receiver.

The Localizer-type Directional Aid (LDA) is of comparable utility and accuracy to a localizer, but is not part of a complete ILS. The LDA will not be aligned with the runway, but the angle of divergence will not exceed 30°.

24.3.3 Simplified Directional Facility (SDF)

The Simplified Directional Facility (SDF) provides a final approach that is similar to that of the ILS localizer and LDA; however, the SDF may have a wider course width of 6° or 12°. It does not provide glideslope information. The SDF transmits on frequencies 108.10 to 111.95 MHz. For the pilot, the approach techniques and procedures used in the performance of an SDF instrument approach are essentially identical to those employed in executing a standard no-glideslope localizer approach, except that the SDF course is seldom aligned with the runway and the course may be wider, resulting in less precision.

24.3.4 Radar Vectors

When being radar vectored to an ILS final, the pilot should retain the radar service until established at a point where a transition to the published procedure can be made. The controller should establish the aircraft with a 30° or less intercept angle to the localizer course at an altitude that will intercept the glideslope before the final approach fix. When the controller issues the final vector, altitude, and clearance for the approach, the pilot must know his position in relation to the airfield. If the aircraft is at a range beyond the coverage of the approach chart, maintain the last assigned ATC altitude until within the area depicted on the approach chart. When within the area depicted on the approach chart and after intercepting the localizer, the pilot may follow those altitudes depicted on the approach chart at the specified fixes. Query the controller if there is any doubt concerning position or altitude clearance.

Note

Use radar monitoring service, when available, as an additional source of information.

24.3.5 Localizer (LOC) Back Course Approach

Localizer (LOC) back course (Figures 24-5 and 24-6) approaches are nonprecision approaches and glideslope information is not provided. To maintain the proper aircraft heading/localizer course relationship, set the published front course in the course selector window. When inbound on the back course or outbound on the inbound course, the heading pointer will be in the bottom half of the course indicator. Turning to place it toward the CDI in the lower half of the instrument case will correct the aircraft toward course. Back course approaches are flown using techniques similar to those for localizer approaches.

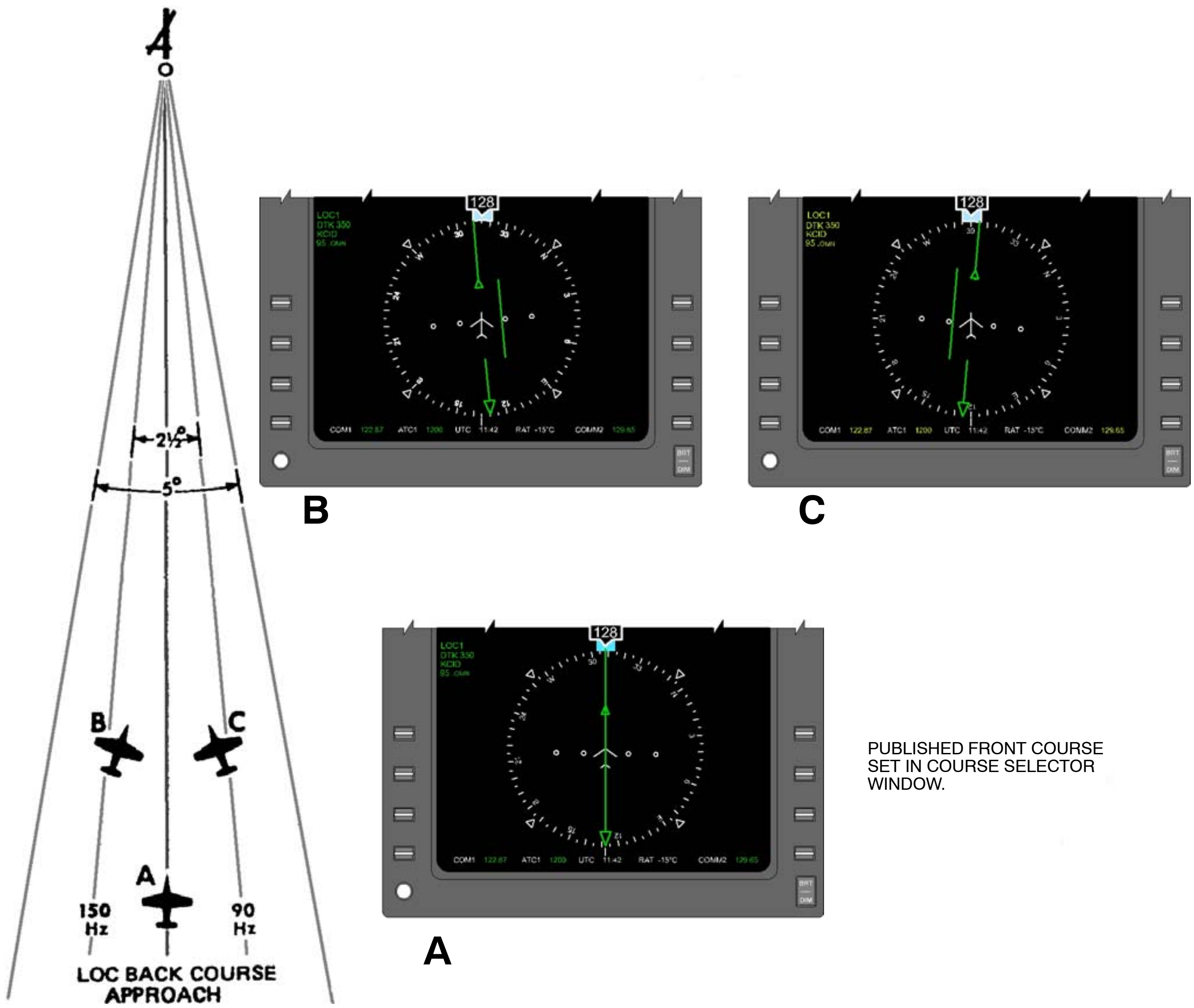
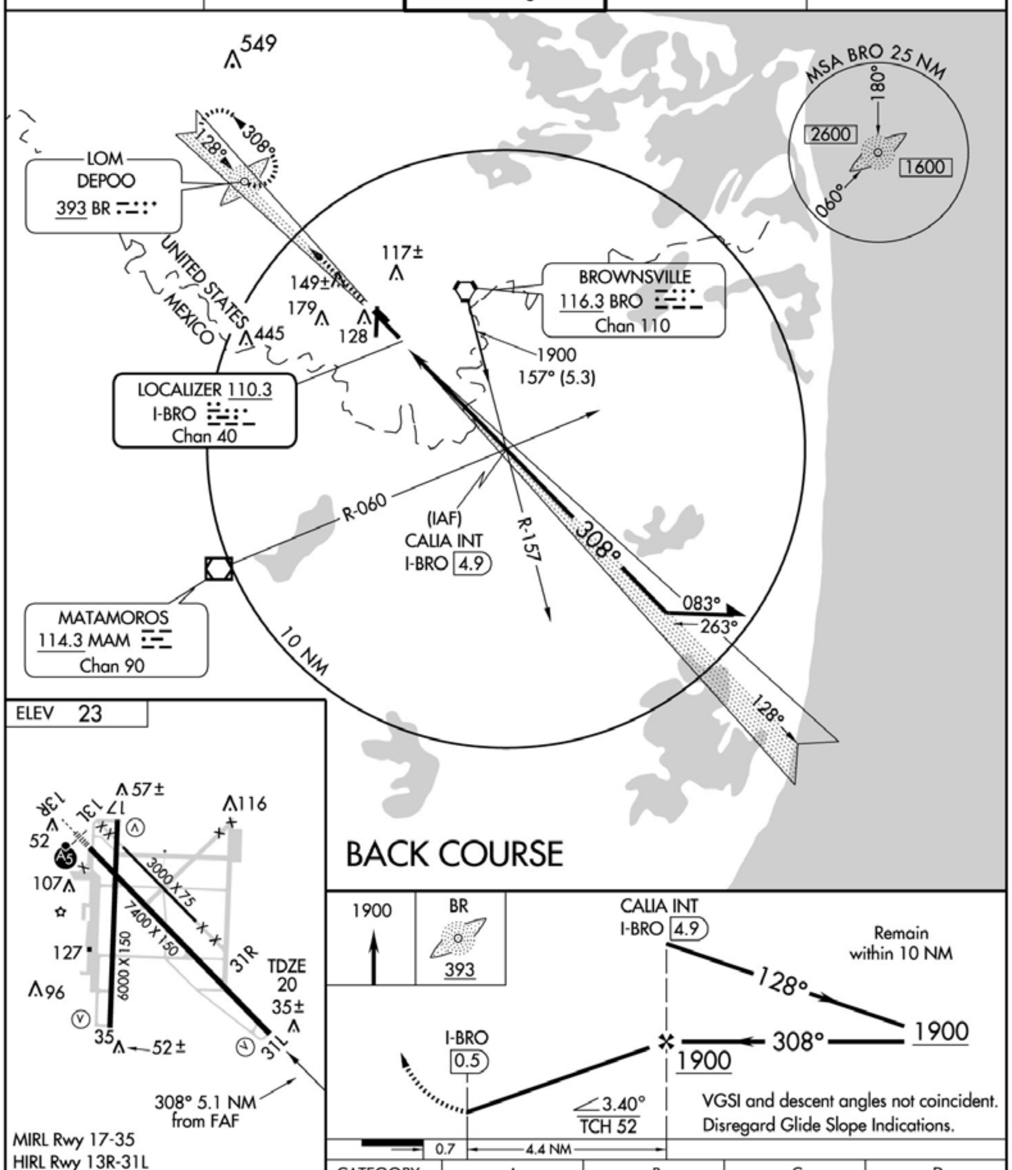


Figure 24-5. Course Indicator Presentations



CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
S-31L	340-1 320 (400-1)			
CIRCLING	420-1 397 (400-1)	480-1 457 (500-1)	480-1½ 457 (500-1½)	580-2 557 (600-2)

FAF to MAP 4.4 NM					
Knots	60	90	120	150	180
Min:Sec	4:24	2:56	2:12	1:46	1:28

BROWNSVILLE, TEXAS
Amdt 11A 05300
25°54'N-97°26'W
BROWNSVILLE/SOUTH PADRE ISLAND INTL (BRO)
LOC BC RWY 31L

Figure 24-6. LOC Back Course Approach

CHAPTER 25

Radar Approaches

25.1 INTRODUCTION

The word radar is derived from the words radio detection and ranging. Radar equipment determines the distance and direction of objects by transmission and return of radio waves.

Radar is used in many ways to increase operational effectiveness. One of its principal uses is to provide a precision approach system for aircraft landing during conditions of restricted visibility and/or low ceilings.

25.1.1 Principles of Radar

The basic principle of radar may be stated in a a single word — reflection. An echo is a simple demonstration of the reflection of sound waves. A radiated noise strikes a reflecting surface and is returned to its source. The time lag between the original sound and its echo is directly proportional to the distance the sound must travel. This same principle applies in the use of radio waves.

The frequency band used contains very short radio waves of ultrahigh or super-high frequency that travel, essentially, in a straight line and are easily reflected from objects in their path.

Longer radio waves are not as easily reflected; they continue around obstacles and tend to follow the curvature of the Earth.

A very short radio wave is produced and transmitted in a certain direction in the form of a short pulse lasting from one-half to several microseconds (millionths of a second). When this pulse strikes a reflecting surface, some of the reflected waves return to the point of origin, where the energy is picked up by a receiver. Multiplying the time interval by the velocity of the radio waves and dividing the product by two gives the distance to the reflecting object (Figure 25-1).

The best means of presenting the return of the echo is by use of cathode-ray tubes, commonly called scopes. With this type presentation, the object (aircraft) reflecting the radio wave appears as a pip on a scope. Through scope interpretation, the radar controller determines position, range, and also elevation of the aircraft during a precision approach.

25.1.2 Radar Traffic Information Service

Radar Traffic Information Service advises pilots of any radar target observed in the proximity that warrants attention. This service does not relieve pilots of their responsibility to see and avoid. The surveillance radar used by Air Traffic Control (ATC) does not provide altitude information on aircraft that are not equipped with Mode C. Several factors influence the availability of radar traffic information services (e.g., weather, controller workload, and traffic volume). Traffic information is provided to all aircraft operating on an IFR Flight Plan, unless operation in Class A airspace or the pilot declines service. When receiving Visual Flight Rules (VFR) advisory service, pilots should monitor the assigned frequency at all times and advise the controller when changing VFR cruising altitude. When the service is no longer required, advise ATC and change transponder code to 1200.

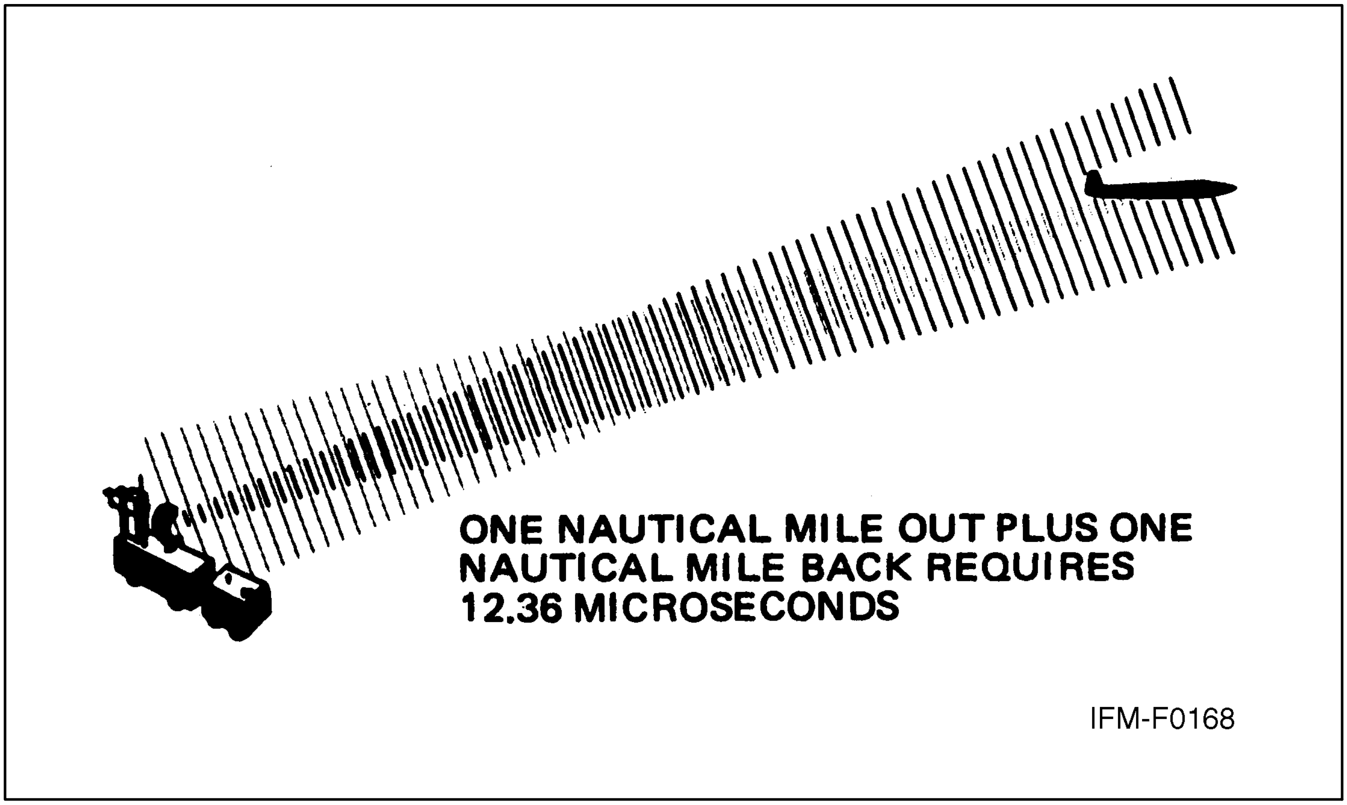


Figure 25-1. Radio Wave Reflection

25.2 RADAR EQUIPMENT AND OPERATION

25.2.1 Equipment

The precision radar approach system displays azimuth, elevation, and range information on the same scope and enables one operator to closely observe aircraft position during the approach. The scope used for this presentation is called AZ-EL, for azimuth and elevation. The elevation presentation appears on the upper portion of the scope, the azimuth on the lower portion. In addition to the glidepath and the runway course-line cursors, range marks are also electronically traced on the AZ-EL display. These range marks, occurring at 1-mile intervals, are spaced approximately in logarithmic relationship. The first mile from touchdown on the display occupies a greater distance than the second mile, and so forth. This has the effect of expanding the display as the aircraft approaches the runway and provides the controller with increasingly precise indications of the aircraft flightpath.

Most radar units incorporate a Moving Target Indicator (MTI) that is adjustable, allowing only moving targets above a certain velocity to appear on the scope.

In addition to the radar facility, a complete Precision Approach Radar (PAR) system will have an approved approach light system, which is necessary to support lowest minimums (Figure 25-2).

25.2.1.1 Limitations of Radar

Radar sets using MTIs are susceptible to radar cancellation speed, commonly called blind speed. This phenomenon causes momentary loss of the target.

Jet aircraft having small reflective surfaces are difficult to track unless transponders (e.g., IFF) are used.

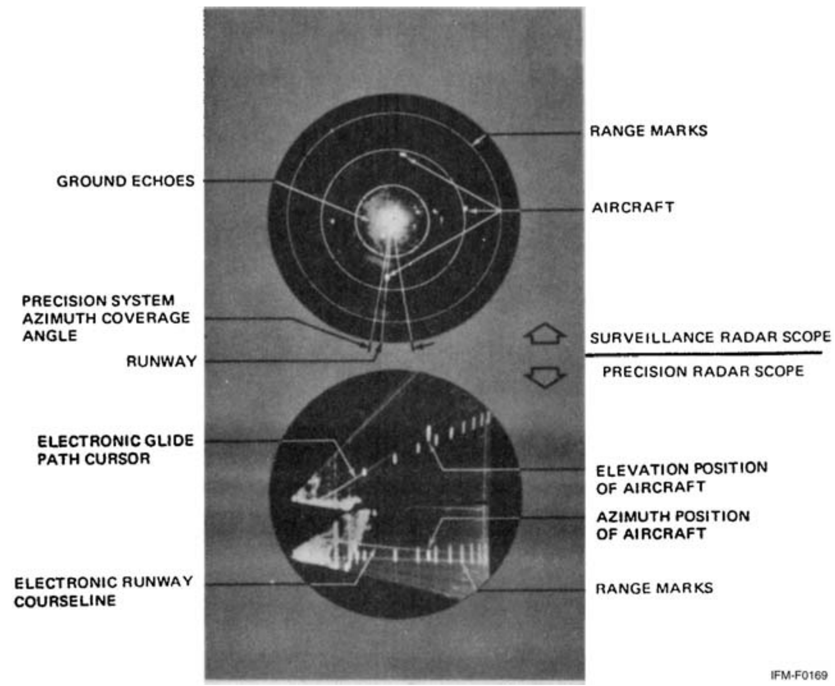


Figure 25-2. Typical Radarscopes

Because of the short wavelength used by radar, rain droplets, snow, and the like cause scope clutter. This makes scope interpretation difficult during heavy rain or other heavy precipitation. Later model radar sets use circular polarization (a grid placed over the antenna) to help eliminate clutter caused by precipitation. The radar controller uses circular polarization only if there is a possibility of losing the target in precipitation clutter. With circular polarization, the controller might unknowingly vector an aircraft through areas of intense precipitation, so the pilot will be advised of possible flight through precipitation not visible on the radarscope.

25.3 RADAR APPROACH PROCEDURES

25.3.1 Radar Approaches

Radar control is one of the most precise methods used for accomplishing an instrument approach. A radar approach system consists of Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR) and/or Precision Approach Radar (PAR), controllers, and associated communication equipment. Controllers interpret radar displays and transmit course and glideslope information to the pilot. As directed, the pilot maneuvers the aircraft to a position from which it can safely land.

Information as to radar availability, frequencies, minimums, glideslope angle, and type of approach can be found in Flight Information Publications (FLIP). The FLIP terminal approach charts provide runway and airfield pictorial presentations (i.e., obstructions, approach lighting, length and width of runways, and the relative positions of navigational aids). When planning for a radar approach, check the en route supplement, terminal charts, and Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs).

There are three basic types of approaches: the precision approach, the nonprecision (surveillance) approach, and the Automated Carrier Landing System (ACLS) automatic approach. The precision approach provides the pilot with precise course, glideslope, and range information. The surveillance approach provides only course and range information and is classified as a nonprecision approach. Both the precision and nonprecision approaches are divided into two segments: transition to final, and the final approach segment. The ACLS approach is discussed in the appropriate NATOPS manual.

25.3.1.1 Transition to Final

The transition to final segment of the approach is controlled by surveillance radar equipment. This segment includes all maneuvering up to a point where the aircraft is inbound on the final approach course and approximately 8 nm from touchdown. During the transition to final, the radar controller directs heading and altitude changes as required to position the aircraft on final approach. Turns and descents should be initiated immediately after instructions are received. Perform turns by establishing an angle of bank on the attitude indicator, which will approximate a standard rate turn for the True Airspeed (TAS) flown (not to exceed 30° of bank). When the aircraft or mission characteristics dictate very low turn rates, it is advisable to inform the controller. The controller uses this information to assist in determining lead points for turns and/or corrections.

As lost communication instructions must be noted and understood, and they are not generally available to the pilot in published form, the controller transmits them. In addition, the controller gives changes in current weather, direction of landing, runway information, and the latest altimeter setting.

While transitioning to final, at NAS, the pilot is advised to perform a prelanding cockpit check. Perform the check and review approach minimums, lost communications procedures, final approach airspeed, and approximate initial rate of descent desired (consider glideslope angle and groundspeed of the aircraft). In addition, use all navigational receivers to remain position oriented and/or ready to comply with lost communications procedures. Throughout this segment, the controller will periodically advise you of the aircraft position relative to the airfield. Do not hesitate to request additional information.

25.3.1.2 Precision Final Approach

The precision final approach starts when the aircraft is within range of the precision radar and contact is established with the final controller. A precision approach radar system includes two antennas, one scanning vertically and the other scanning horizontally. The range is limited to 10 miles, azimuth to 20 degrees, and elevation to 7 degrees. The initial call to the final controller should include the last assigned heading, altitude, and the current status of the gear, if applicable. The required final approach airspeed and configuration should be set prior to glideslope interception, and the landing checklist completed in accordance with the appropriate NATOPS flight manual. The controller will advise the pilot of any change in lost communications procedures. These procedures must be noted and understood. Upon request, the controller will furnish the pilot with the published decision height.

When the controller advises that the aircraft is intercepting glideslope, adjustment of the power and/or drag devices is required to establish the predetermined rate of descent. Adjust the pitch attitude on the attitude indicator to maintain the final approach speed. When the airspeed and glidepath are being maintained, note the power, attitude, and vertical velocity. Use the values as guides during the remainder of the approach.

If the aircraft is observed to deviate above or below the glidepath, the pilot is given the relative amount of deviation by use of terms “slightly” or “well” and asked to adjust the rate of descent to return to the glidepath. Correct these deviations with coordinated pitch and power changes. Maintain a constant airspeed during the approach. When power changes are required, avoid excessive throttle movements. Corrections should be made immediately after instructions are given or when deviations from established attitude or performance indications are desired to return the aircraft to the glidepath.

Accuracy of heading is important for runway alignment during the final approach phase. When instructed to make heading changes, make them immediately. Instructions to turn are preceded by the phrase “turn right” or “turn left.” To prevent overshooting, the angle of bank should approximate the number of degrees to be turned, not to exceed a 1/2 standard rate turn. At high final approach speeds, a larger angle of bank may be required to prevent a prolonged correction, but do not exceed the 1/2 standard rate turn. After a new heading is directed, the controller assumes it is being maintained. Additional heading corrections will be based on the last assigned heading.

If an aircraft is observed by the controller to proceed outside of specified safety zone limits in azimuth and/or elevation and continue to operate outside these prescribed limits, the pilot will be directed to execute a missed approach or to fly a specified course unless the pilot has the runway environment (runway, approach lights, etc.) in sight.

Navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation is provided to the pilot until the aircraft reaches the published Decision Height (DH) (Figure 25-3).

Note

After reaching DH, the precision final controller will continue to provide course and flightpath information until the aircraft passes over the landing threshold. The information is strictly advisory in nature.

A missed approach shall be initiated immediately when any of the following occurs:

1. Upon reaching DH with runway environment not in sight.

2. When instructed by the controller when runway environment is not in sight.

3. When directed by the tower, wheels watch, or runway duty officer.

4. When a safe landing cannot be made.

Note

A pilot may execute a missed approach at his/her own discretion at any time.

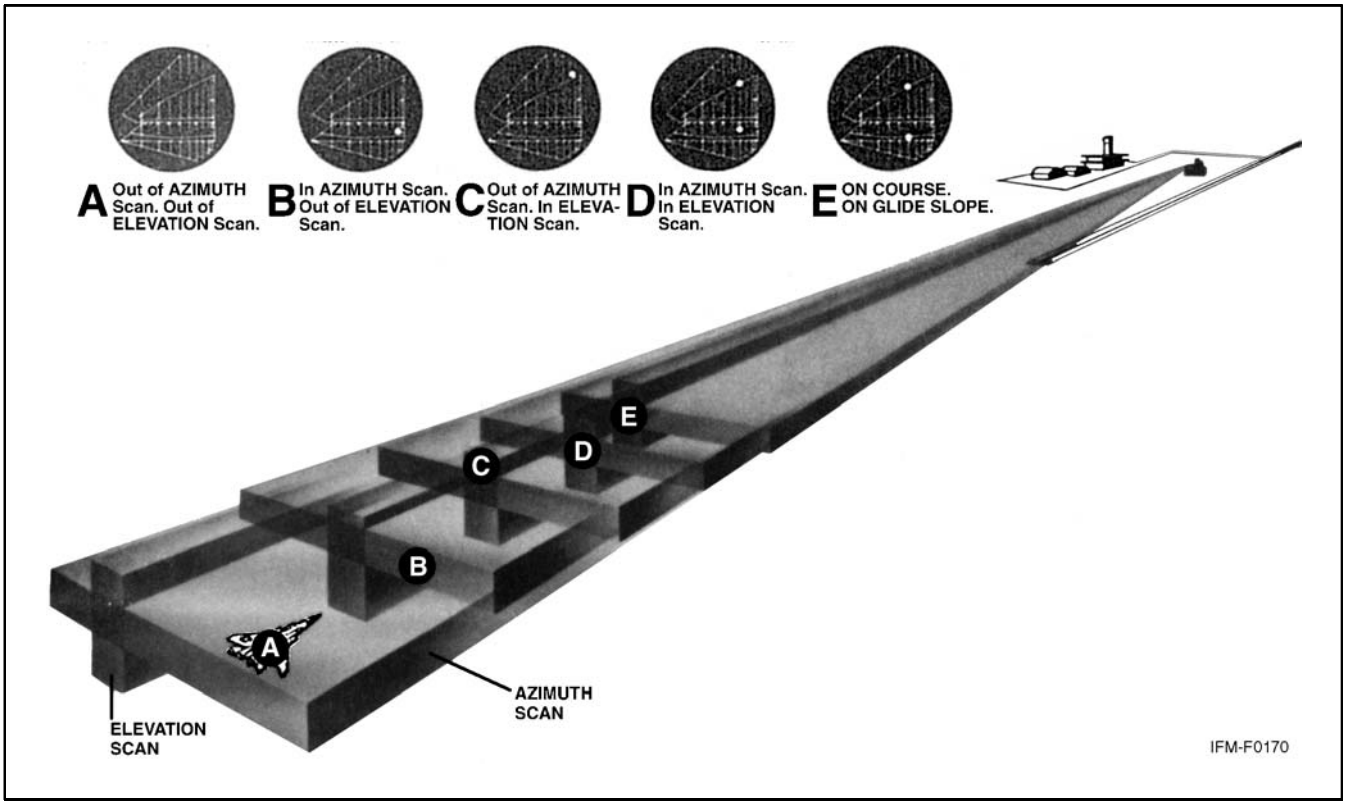


Figure 25-3. Precision Approach

25.3.1.3 Surveillance Final Approach

There may be times when the precision radar equipment is inoperative or not available for the landing runway. Under these conditions, surveillance radar is used to furnish information required to align the aircraft with the approach runway. As surveillance radar is not as accurate as precision radar and does not provide elevation data, the landing weather minimums are higher than for precision approaches (Figure 25-4).

Course corrections are not as accurate as those given during a precision approach because of less precise radarscope presentations. At 1 mile from the landing threshold, the controller will advise the pilot to report the runway in sight or to perform the missed approach. It is important to remember that the controller cannot observe aircraft elevation during the surveillance approach.

Surveillance final approach instructions are similar to those received during the precision approach to the point of establishing the descent. Although no elevation information is provided, on pilot request the controller will give recommended altitudes each mile. Recommended altitudes decrease 300 feet per mile (approximates a 3° glideslope). The pilot should establish a rate of descent that will ensure reaching the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) at or before the Missed Approach Point (MAP). If the MDA is reached before the missed approach point, fly the aircraft at this altitude until the controller advises the pilot the aircraft has reached the missed approach point. Perform the missed approach when:

1. Visual reference with the runway environment at the MAP is insufficient for landing.

2. Instructed by the controller when the runway is not in sight.

3. A safe landing is not possible.

4. Directed by the tower.

Note

The DH, MDA, and weather minimums for the PAR and ASR approach are published in the FLIP Terminal Publication. When available, use the Runway Visual Range (RVR) as the visibility value for straight-in approaches. Prevailing Visibility (PV) is always used as the visibility value for circling approaches.

25.3.1.4 No Gyro Approach (Heading Indicator Inoperative)

If the heading indicator should fail during flight, advise the radar controller and request no gyro approach. Perform turns during the transition to final by establishing an angle of bank on the attitude indicator that will approximate a standard rate turn (not to exceed 30° of bank). Perform turns on final approach by establishing an angle of bank on the attitude indicator that will approximate a 1/2 standard rate turn. If unable to comply with these turn rates, advise the controller so that the controller may determine lead points for turns and heading corrections. Execute turns immediately upon hearing the words “turn right” or “turn left.” Stop the turn on receipt of the words “stop turn.”

25.3.1.5 Voice Procedures

The radar approach is predicated entirely upon voice instructions from the controller. During an approach, repeat all headings, altitudes, and altimeter settings; acknowledge all other instructions unless otherwise advised. During high-density radar operations, a limiting factor is the communication time available. Keep transmissions brief and specific, commensurate with safety of flight. Never sacrifice aircraft control to acknowledge receipt of instructions.

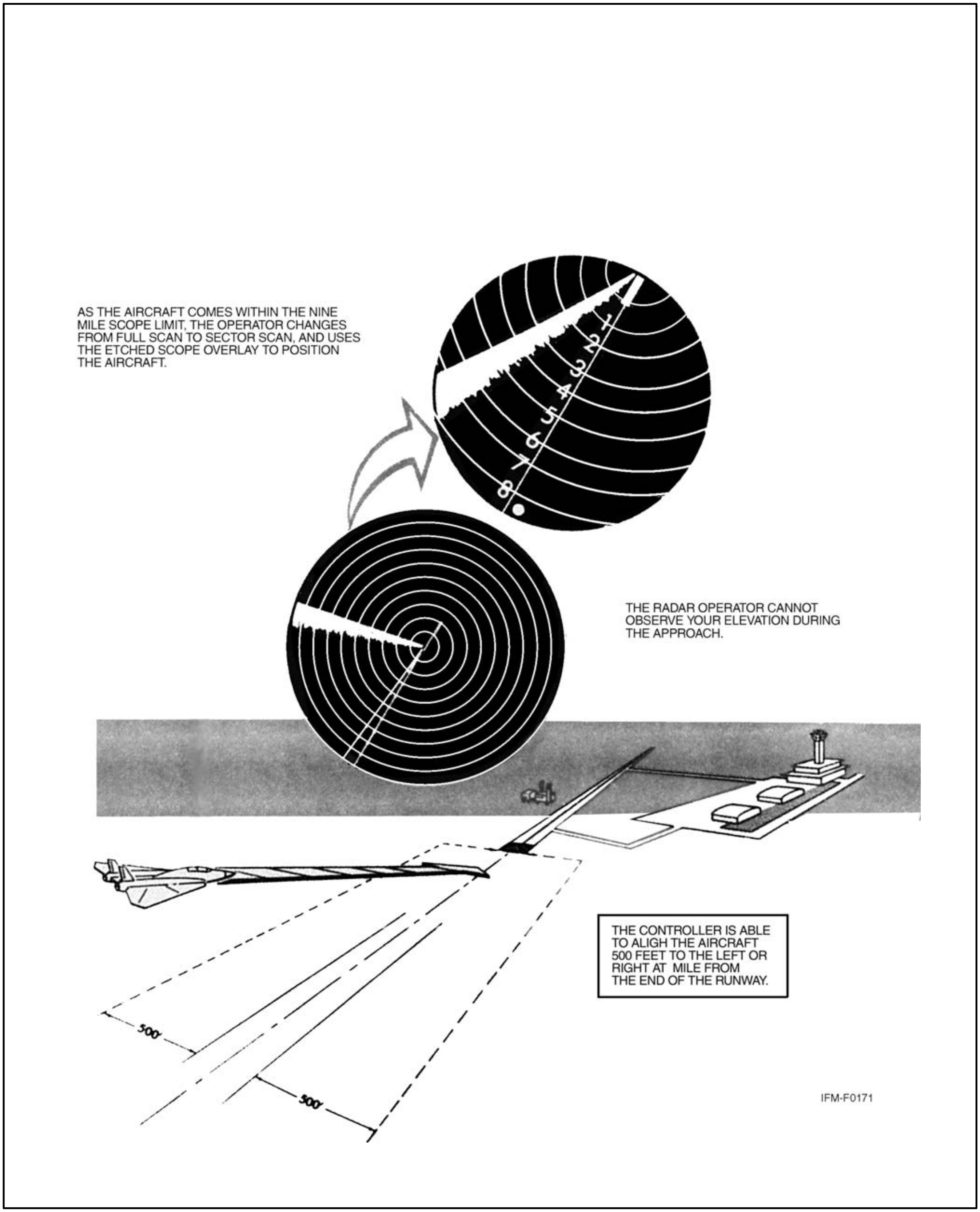


Figure 25-4. Surveillance Approach

CHAPTER 26

Global Positioning System (GPS)

26.1 INTRODUCTION

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is a space-based navigation system that provides highly accurate three-dimensional navigation information to an infinite number of equipped users anywhere on or near the Earth. The typical GPS integrated system will provide position, velocity, time, altitude, steering information, groundspeed, ground track error, heading, and variation.

26.2 SYSTEM OVERVIEW

26.2.1 Signal Accuracy

GPS measures distance by timing a radio signal that starts at the satellite and ends at the GPS receiver. The signal carries with it data that discloses satellite position and time of transmission and synchronizes the aircraft GPS system with satellite clocks. There are two levels of accuracy available: Standard Positioning Service (SPS) and Precise Positioning Service (PPS). Coarse Acquisition (C/A) data can be received by anyone with a GPS receiver. Until recently, the accuracy of this signal was degraded through the use of Selective Availability (SA). (SA was set to zero on 1 May 2000, thus greatly improving the accuracy of GPS for civilian [SPS] users.) It has been reported that current accuracy for SPS users is better than 10 meters horizontal. Precision (P) data can be received only by authorized users (PPS) in possession of the proper codes. The design specification for PPS GPS dictates 6 meters of accuracy but specific testing has indicated greater accuracy.

26.2.2 GPS Segments

GPS is composed of three major segments: space, control, and user.

26.2.2.1 Space Segment

The GPS constellation is composed of multiple satellites, the orbits and spacing of which are arranged to optimize the GPS coverage area.

26.2.2.2 Control Segment

The control segment includes a number of monitor stations and ground antennas located throughout the world. The monitor stations use GPS receivers to track all satellites in view and accumulate ranging data from the satellite signals. The information from the monitor stations is processed at the Master Control Station (MCS) and is used to manage the satellite system.

26.2.2.3 User Segment

The user segment consists of GPS equipment used in a variety of ways: aircraft avionics, surveying equipment, handheld GPS receivers, etc. GPS equipment uses data transmitted by the satellites to provide instantaneous position information.

26.2.3 Integrated Systems

Integration of GPS into each aircraft navigation system will vary depending on the mission of the aircraft. GPS can greatly enhance the performance of an Inertial Navigation System (INS), and the INS, in turn, increases the usefulness of GPS equipment. INS has the ability to accurately measure changes in position and velocity over short periods of time using no external signal; however, errors are cumulative and increase with time. GPS can provide a continuous position update, which allows the INS to calculate error trends and improve its accuracy as time increases. The INS aids the GPS receiver by improving GPS position predictions between position updates as well as improving system anti-jam performance. When GPS is not available (due to mountain shadowing of satellites, jamming, or high dynamic maneuvers), the improved INS will provide the integrated navigation system with accurate position information until the satellites are back in view or the jamming is over. GPS can also provide in-flight alignment capability for the INS.

26.2.4 Flight Management System (FMS)

An FMS is an integrated suite of sensors, receivers, and computers, coupled with a navigation database. These systems generally provide performance and Area Navigation (RNAV) guidance to displays and automatic flight control systems. Inputs can be accepted from multiple sources such as GPS, Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR), Localizer (LOC), and Inertial Reference Unit (IRU). These inputs may be applied to a navigation solution one at a time or in combination. Some FMSs provide for the detection and isolation of faulty navigation information. When appropriate navigation signals are available, FMSs will normally rely on GPS and/or DME/DME (i.e., the use of distance information from two or more DME stations) for position updates. Other inputs may also be incorporated based on FMS system architecture and navigation source geometry.

26.2.5 Required Navigation Performance (RNP)

RNP is intended to provide a single performance standard for aircraft manufacturers, airspace designers, pilots, controllers, and international aviation authorities. Some RNP procedures will take advantage of improved navigation capabilities and will result in increased flight path predictability and repeatability. Typically, various sensor inputs are processed by an RNAV system to arrive at a position estimate having a high statistical degree of accuracy and confidence. When RNP is specified, a combination of systems may be used, provided the aircraft can achieve the required navigation performance. Although it has been a goal for RNP to be sensor-generic, this goal is unachievable as long as the aircraft capability is in any way dependent on external signals. The aircraft navigation system always consists of specific sensors or sensor combinations and the navigation infrastructure consists of specific systems. The RNP capability of an aircraft will vary depending upon the aircraft equipment and the navigation infrastructure. For example, an aircraft may be equipped and certified for RNP 1.0, but may not be capable of RNP 1.0 operations due to limited Navigation Aid (NAVAID) coverage.

26.2.5.1 RNP Levels

An RNP “level” or “type” is applicable to a selected airspace, route, or procedure. The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has defined RNP values for the four typical navigation phases of flight: oceanic, en route, terminal, and approach. The RNP level or type is a value typically expressed as a distance in nautical miles from the intended centerline of a procedure, route, or path. RNP applications also account for potential errors at some multiple of RNP level. U.S. standard values supporting typical RNP airspace are as specified in Figure 26-1. Other RNP levels as identified by ICAO, other states, and the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) may also be used. The applicable RNP level will be depicted on affected charts and procedures.

Segment	RNP Level	Primary Route Width (nm) – Centerline to Boundary
En Route	2.0	8.0 nm (+4.0)
Initial	1.0	4.0 nm (+2.0)
Intermediate	1.0	4.0 nm (+2.0)
Final	0.3	1.2 nm (+0.6)
Missed Approach	1.0	4.0 nm (+2.0)
Departure	1.0	4.0 nm (+2.0)

Figure 26-1. U.S. Standard RNP Levels

26.2.6 Waypoints

RNAV (GPS) approaches make use of both fly-over and fly-by waypoints. Fly-by waypoints are used when an aircraft should begin a turn to the next course prior to reaching the waypoint separating the two route segments. This is known as turn anticipation and is compensated for in the airspace and terrain clearances. Approach waypoints, except for the Missed Approach Waypoint (MAWP) and the Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (MAHWP), are normally fly-by waypoints. Fly-over waypoints are used when the aircraft must fly over the point prior to starting a turn. Fly-over waypoints are depicted as a circled waypoint symbol. Overlay approach charts and some early stand-alone GPS approach charts may not reflect this convention. A Computer Navigation Fix (CNF) is point used for the purpose of defining the navigation track for an airborne computer system (i.e., GPS or FMS). CNFs are assigned five-letter names and charted on aeronautical products. These CNFs are not to be used for any Air Traffic Control (ATC) application, such as holding for which the fix has not already been assessed. CNFs will be charted to distinguish them from conventional reporting points, fixes, intersections, and waypoints. The CNF name will be enclosed in parentheses, and the name will be placed next to the CNF it defines. If the CNF is not at an existing point defined by means such as crossing radials or radial/DME, the point will be indicated by an "X." The CNF name will not be used in filing a flight plan or in aircraft/ATC communications. Use current phraseology (e.g., facility name, radial, distance) to describe these fixes. Unnamed waypoints in the database will be uniquely identified for each airport but may be repeated for another airport. The runway threshold waypoint, which is normally the MAWP, will be coded as RW##. The runway threshold waypoint is also used as the center of the Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA) on most GPS approaches. MAWPs not located at the threshold will have a five-letter identifier.

26.2.7 RNAV Leg Types

A leg type describes the desired path preceding, following, or between waypoints on an RNAV procedure. Leg types are identified by a two-letter code that describes the path (e.g., heading, course, track, etc.) and the termination point (e.g., the path terminates at an altitude, distance, fix, etc.). Leg types used for procedure design are included in the aircraft navigation database, but not normally provided on the procedure chart. The narrative depiction of the RNAV chart describes how a procedure is flown. The "path and terminator concept" defines that every leg of a procedure has a termination point and some kind of path into that termination point. Some of the available leg types are described below.

26.2.7.1 Initial Fix

An Initial Fix leg is used only to define the beginning of a route or procedure.

26.2.7.2 Track to Fix

A Track to Fix (TF) leg is intercepted and acquired as the flight track to the following waypoint. Track to Fix legs are sometimes called point-to-point legs for this reason (Figure 26-2).

26.2.7.3 Direct to Fix

A Direct to Fix (DF) leg is a path described by an aircraft's track from an initial area direct to the next waypoint (Figure 26-3).

26.2.7.4 Course to Fix

A Course to Fix (CF) leg is a path that terminates at a fix with a specified course at that fix (Figure 26-4).

26.2.7.5 Radius to Fix

A Radius to Fix (RF) leg is defined as a constant radius circular path around a defined turn center that terminates at a fix (Figure 26-5).

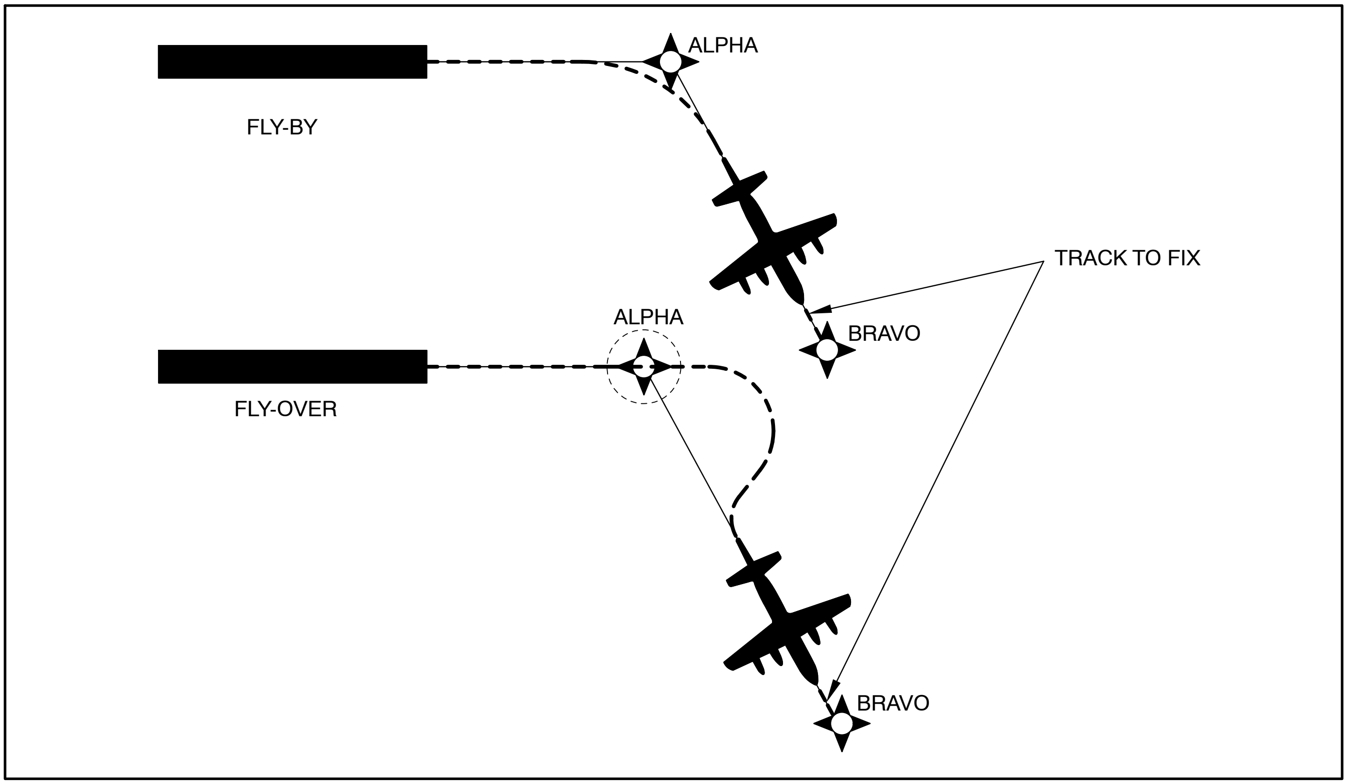


Figure 26-2. Track to Fix Leg Type

26.2.7.6 Heading

A Heading leg may be defined as, but not limited to, a Heading to Altitude (VA), Heading to DME range (VD), and Heading to Manual Termination, that is, Vector (VM).

26.2.8 Course Sensitivity

The Course Deviation Indicator (CDI) sensitivity related to GPS equipment varies with the mode of operation and the type of equipment. (Refer to your flight manual.) Unlike traditional ground-based NAVAIDs, GPS course sensitivity is normally linear regardless of the distance from the waypoint. Typically, the following modes provide the indicated CDI scaling:

26.2.8.1 En Route Mode

En route phase, prior to the execution of the instrument approach, the display sensitivity full-scale deflection is 1 times the RNP value either side of centerline. En route obstacle clearance area is based on the RNP value. Aircrews shall not assume the primary protected containment for the route of flight en route is ±10 nm (refer to specific aircraft NATOPS or FMS user's manual).

26.2.8.2 Terminal Approach Mode

Upon activation of the approach mode, the display sensitivity should smoothly transition from a full-scale deflection of en route RNP to terminal RNP by 30 nm from the destination airport. Aircrew are reminded that the obstacle clearance area reduces as the RNP value transitions from en route to terminal. The approach mode must be active to proceed past the final approach fix on a nonprecision approach.

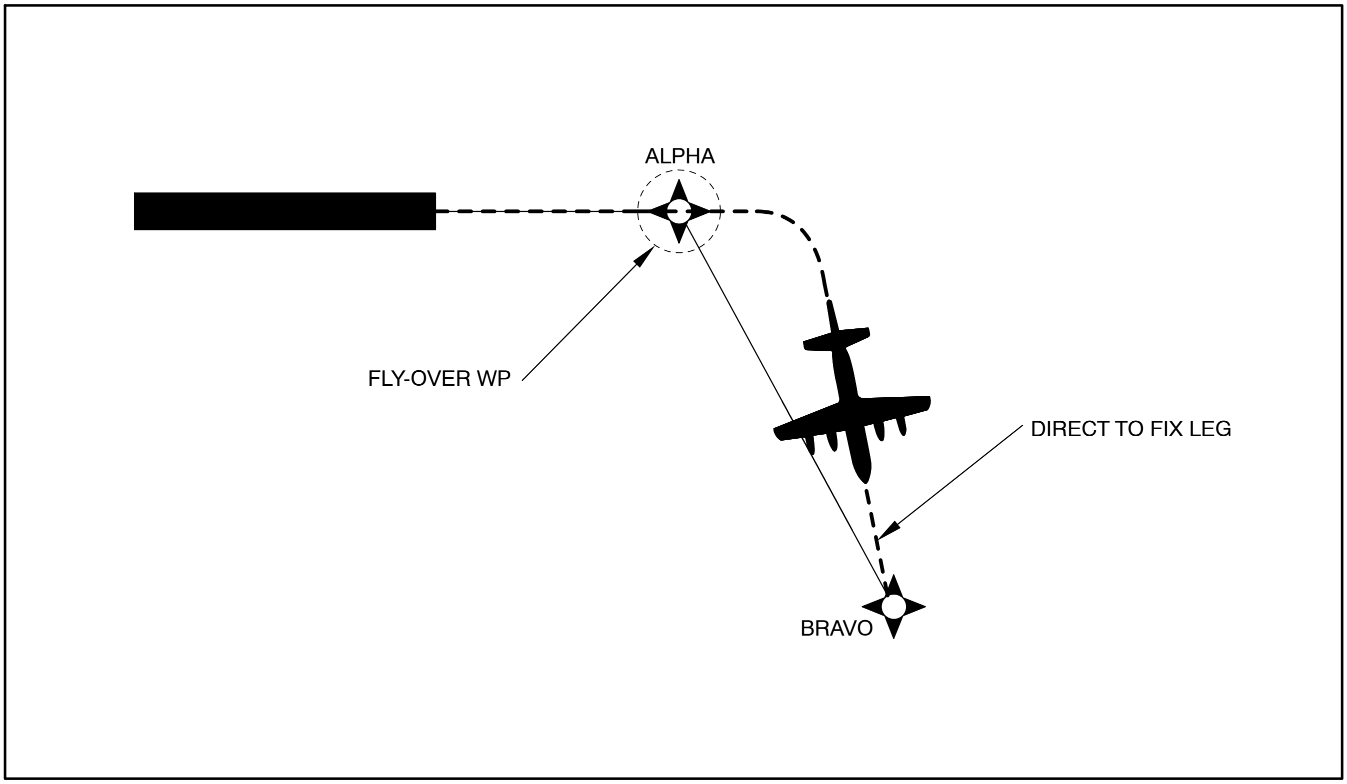


Figure 26-3. Direct to Fix Leg Type

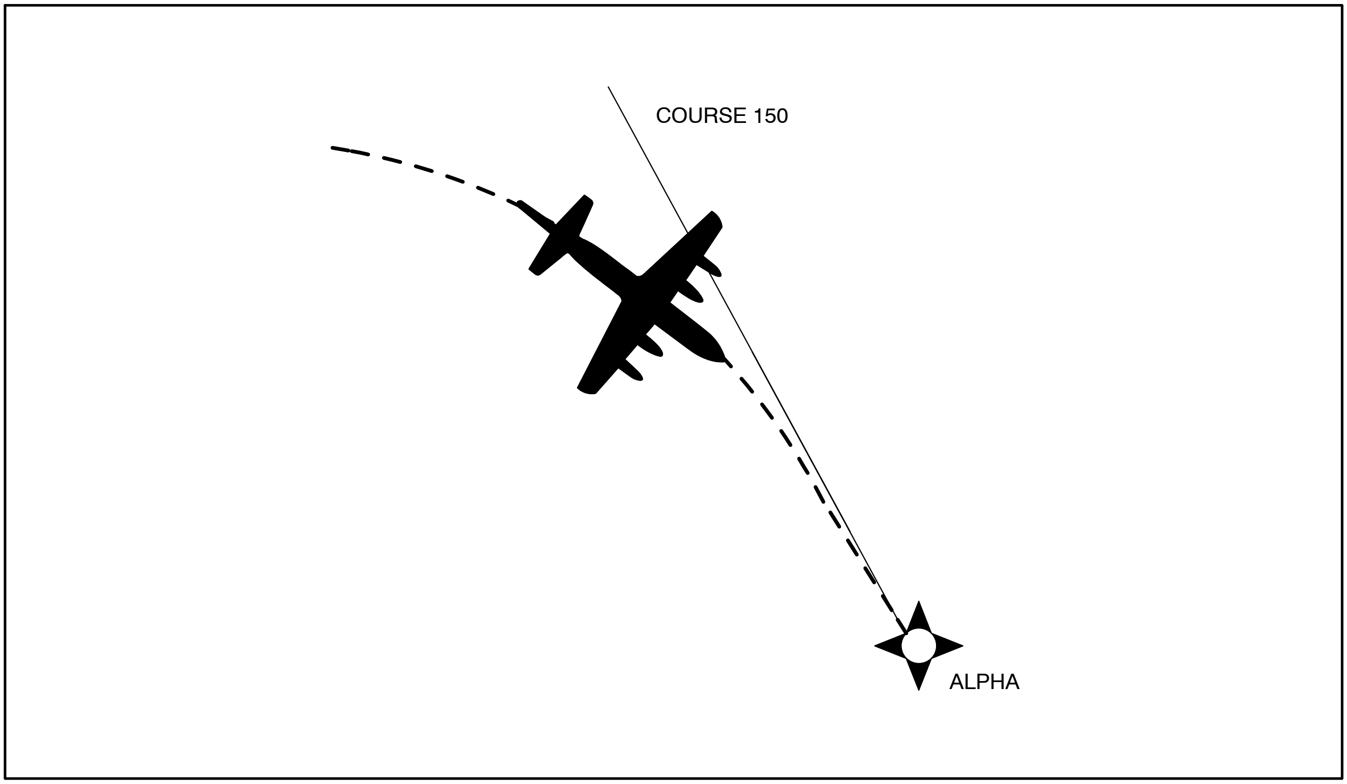


Figure 26-4. Course to Fix Leg Type

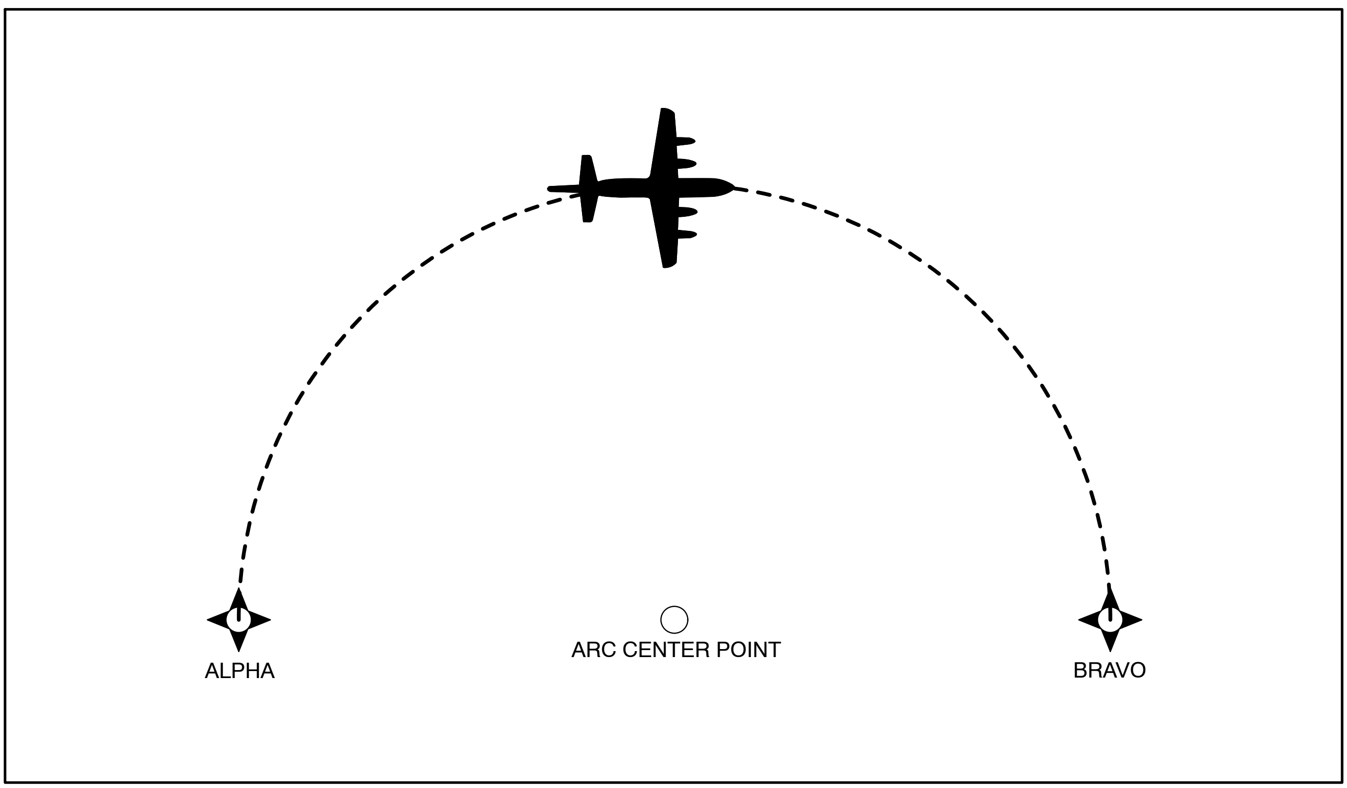


Figure 26-5. Radius to Fix Leg Type

26.2.8.3 Final Approach Mode

At a distance of 2 nm inbound to the Final Approach Fix (FAF) waypoint, the display sensitivity begins to transition to a full-scale deflection of 0.3 nm either side of centerline. Some GPS avionics may provide an angular display between the FAF and Missed Approach Point (MAP) that approximates the course sensitivity of the localizer portion of an Instrument Landing System (ILS).

26.2.8.4 Missed Approach Mode

When navigation to the missed approach holding point is activated, the CDI display sensitivity transitions back to terminal area sensitivity (±1 nm).

26.2.9 Navigation Database

Navigation databases supporting GPS equipment certified for en route and terminal operations contain, as a minimum, all airports, VORs, VORTACs, Non-Directional Beacons (NDBs), and all named waypoints and intersections shown on en route and terminal area charts, Standard Instrument Departures (SIDs), and Standard Terminal Arrivals (STARs).

In the terminal area, the database will include waypoints for SIDs and STARs as well as other flight operations from the beginning of a departure to the en route structure or from an en route fix to the beginning of an approach procedure. All named waypoints are identified with a five-letter alpha character name provided by the National Flight Data Center (NFDC). Waypoints unnamed by the NFDC, such as a DME fix, are assigned a five-letter alphanumeric coded name in the database. (As an example, D234T — This coded waypoint represents a point located on the 234 radial of XYZ VORTAC at 20 nm. The letter T is the twentieth letter of the alphabet and is used to indicate a distance of 20 nm.)

26.3 RESTRICTIONS ON THE USE OF GPS

26.3.1 Specific Capabilities and Restrictions

Specific GPS equipment capabilities vary widely from aircraft to aircraft; therefore, all pilots must be thoroughly familiar with the GPS equipment installed in their aircraft, its authorized use, and its limitations. Some USN aircraft are not capable of performing all of the activities described in this chapter. Aircrews must consult OPNAV 3710.7 series, this manual, wing directives, and the aircraft NATOPS manual to fully determine the capabilities of the aircraft GPS equipment and restrictions on its use. As per OPNAV 3710.7 series, hand-held GPS receivers shall not be used for instrument navigation.

26.3.2 Use of GPS Outside of the U.S. National Airspace System (NAS)

GPS use may be further restricted depending on the area of operation. Flight using GPS is not authorized in some countries. If you plan to use GPS outside the National Airspace System (NAS), check for additional restrictions in Flight Information Publications (FLIP) General Planning (GP) and Area Planning (AP) documents in your area of intended operation. The aircrew shall ensure all non-DoD-approved approaches flown outside the U.S. and Canada using GPS for primary navigation are approved by the Naval Flight Information Group (NAVFIG).

26.3.3 Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM)

GPS equipment certified for Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) use must have the capability of verifying the integrity of the signals received from the GPS constellation. Loss of satellite reception and Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM) warnings may occur due to aircraft dynamics (changes in pitch or bank angle). Antenna location on the aircraft, satellite position relative to the horizon, and aircraft attitude may also affect reception of one or more satellites. As the relative positions of the satellites are constantly changing, prior experience with the airport does not guarantee reception at all times, and RAIM availability should always be checked. The integrity of the GPS signal is verified by determining if the integrity solution is out of limits for the particular phase of flight, if a satellite is providing corrupted information, or if there is an insufficient number of satellites in view. When the integrity of the GPS information does not meet the integrity requirements for the operation being performed, the aircraft GPS avionics will provide a warning in the cockpit. A GPS integrity warning in the cockpit is equivalent to an OFF flag on your Horizontal Situation Indicator (HSI); your GPS navigation information may no longer be reliable. Refer to the aircraft NATOPS for specific information regarding your GPS avionics.

26.3.4 Database Requirements

To use GPS for IFR navigation in the terminal area or for GPS nonprecision approaches, the aircraft GPS equipment must include an updatable navigation database. GPS airborne navigation databases may come from the National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (NGA) via the mission planning system or from an approved commercial source.

26.3.4.1 Manual Database Manipulation

Manual entry/update of the validated data in the navigation database is not possible; however, this requirement does not prevent the storage of user-defined data within the equipment.

26.3.5 RNAV in the Terminal Area

Some GPS equipment will provide the capability to use RNAV procedures in the terminal area. Using GPS equipment as the primary navigation source for RNAV in the terminal area is only permitted if all of the waypoints defining the route of flight can be retrieved from the aircraft GPS navigation database. GPS primary-source navigation using user-defined waypoints may not be used after the Initial Approach Fix (IAF) or prior to the termination point of a SID. GPS equipment may be used to identify the IAF on Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs) and the termination point on SIDs.

26.3.6 GPS Approach Restrictions

There are several important operating restrictions when using GPS to fly approaches.

26.3.6.1 Database Restrictions

Instrument approaches must be accomplished in accordance with approved instrument approach procedures that are retrieved from the FMS database using the current update cycle.

WARNING

Aircrew should not manually adjust designed RNP values (retrieved from database), unless operational requirements dictate. Aircrew shall not use manual RNP values in terminal mode of flight. RNP values other than standard RNP will be noted on the terminal procedure. Failure to adhere to design RNP values (retrieved from database) in the terminal mode may result in a flight violation or mishap.

26.3.6.2 Integrity Monitoring

Instrument approaches must be conducted in the FMS Approach mode, and GPS integrity monitoring (RAIM) must be available at the final approach fix, as indicated to the pilot by the INTG annunciator being extinguished.

26.3.6.3 Alternate Navigation Equipment

The aircraft must have other approved navigation equipment installed and functioning appropriate for the route to the destination airport and any required alternate. Ground-based facilities necessary for these routes must also be operational. GPS-overlay and GPS stand-alone approaches may be flown without the need to tune, ident, or monitor any other NAVAID (though this is not recommended).

26.3.6.3.1 RNAV Procedural Speed Restrictions

Some arrival and departure procedures will have speed restrictions on a specific segment(s) or the entire procedure. These restrictions ensure the aircraft remains within the obstacle clearance area or has proper track stabilization prior to the next programmed waypoint.

26.3.6.4 Scaling and Alerting

The GPS navigation system used for the approach shall use scaling and alerting criteria no less restrictive than RNP 0.3 prior to continuing past the final approach fix. The RNP criteria shall remain for the entire approach.

26.3.6.5 Multiple GPS Receivers

On aircraft equipped with multiple (installed) GPS receivers the aircrew shall use the integrity function for the GPS receiver being used for navigation. The integrity function of other installed GPS (SPS or PPS) receivers shall not be used to indicate the integrity of the GPS receiver being used for navigation.

26.3.7 Alternate Airport Restrictions

When an alternate airport is required, it must be served by an approach based on other-than-GPS navigation, the aircraft must have operational equipment capable of using that navigation aid, and the required navigation aid must be operational.

26.4 GPS APPROACH NOMENCLATURE

26.4.1 GPS Stand-Alone Approaches

GPS stand-alone approaches are constructed specifically for use by GPS and do not have a traditional underlying procedure. GPS stand-alone approaches are identified by the absence of other NAVAIDs in the approach title (e.g., GPS RWY 35). Current stand-alone approaches will be renamed over time as RNAV (GPS) approaches (e.g., RNAV RWY [GPS] 35). The Straight-In Minimums on current GPS charts correspond to the Lateral Navigation (LNAV) Minimums on RNAV charts.

26.4.2 GPS Overlay Approaches

GPS overlay approaches permit pilots to use GPS avionics under IFR to fly existing instrument approach procedures. Overlay approaches can be identified by the use of “GPS” in the title (e.g., “VOR or GPS RWY 24”).

26.4.2.1 GPS Not in the Title

Some approaches (typically VORs and NDBs) do not have GPS in the title, yet they are coded into the aeronautical database used by the GPS and are retrievable. These approaches do not qualify as “overlay” approaches, since “OR GPS” is not in the title. They can, however, be used as a situational awareness tool to back up the pilot at the controls while flying a conventional approach.

26.4.3 RNAV (GPS) Approaches

The GPS “Stand-alone” and GPS “Overlay” approaches are being replaced by the RNAV (GPS) approach format. The RNAV (GPS) format is known as a performance-based procedure. The RNP accuracy required to fly these approaches is RNP 0.3. The minimums section is broken down into sections of LNAV, LNAV/Vertical Navigation (VNAV), Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance (LPV), and GNSS Landing System (GLS). The LNAV approaches generally (but not always) have the highest minimums and are flown to a Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) much like a traditional VOR or Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN). The LNAV/VNAV section of the minimums designates the Decision Altitude (DA) and visibility for aircraft approved for Barometric Vertical Navigation (BARO-VNAV). The LPV section of the minimums designates the Decision Altitude for equipment performing to the level of Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) specifications. The GLS section of the minimums is currently designated “N/A” as a placeholder for the GLS. LPV is the only system authorized to occupy the GLS line.

26.4.4 RNAV (RNP) Approaches

The latest addition to the GPS approach family is the RNAV (RNP) approach also known as Special Aircraft and Aircrew Authorization Required (SAAAR). These approaches are commonly used to avoid prohibited areas, terrain, and noise-sensitive areas that require certified aircraft and specific aircrew training. The RNP level required varies from RNP 0.11 to RNP 0.15 to RNP 0.3. The Naval Flight Information Group is developing SAAAR approaches on a limited basis for Navy and Marine Corps installations.

26.5 AIRCREW ACTIONS

26.5.1 Preflight

In addition to being intimately familiar with operation of their GPS equipment, pilots need to accomplish several additional actions prior to flight using GPS.

26.5.1.1 Check NOTAMs

Review Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs) by referring to the installation NOTAMs for your destination and any alternates. GPS satellite outages are issued as GPS NOTAMs using Pseudo Random Noise (PRN) number or Satellite Vehicle Number (SVN) and can be accessed using the identifier KGPS. It is important to deselect the affected satellite on your FMS/GPS. This ensures the particular satellite deselected is not used for the navigation solution, RAIM calculations, or RAIM prediction.

Receiver manufacturers and/or database suppliers may supply “NOTAM” type information concerning database errors. Pilots should check these sources, when available, to ensure that they have the most current information concerning their electronic database.

26.5.1.2 File the Appropriate Equipment Suffix

Aircraft navigating using GPS are considered to be RNAV-equipped aircraft and the appropriate equipment suffix should be included on the flight plan.

26.5.1.3 GPS Equipment Checks

Check GPS ground equipment by following the specific startup and self-test procedures for the GPS receiver or FMS as outlined in the aircraft NATOPS manual. Check the currency of your database and predicted RAIM available status for the approach you plan to fly at your Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA).

26.5.2 Terminal Area Operations and Departure

26.5.2.1 Load SID

If a SID is to be flown, load the appropriate SID by retrieving the route from the navigation database. If the SID cannot be retrieved from the database, then you may not use RNAV procedures to fly it prior to the SID termination point.

26.5.2.2 Terminal Sensitivity

When flying a SID using GPS, the pilot must ensure the terminal sensitivity mode is selected to ensure the correct scaling of the CDI (±1 nm).

26.5.3 En Route Operations

26.5.3.1 Use of Predictive Integrity

While you are en route to your destination, check the expected integrity (RAIM availability) for the planned approach. If your check indicates the appropriate integrity for the planned operation may not be available, develop an alternate plan for landing at the airfield or proceed to your alternate.

26.5.4 Prior to Descent

26.5.4.1 GPS Approach Briefing

Thoroughly brief the entire GPS instrument approach procedure including the missed approach instructions. Compare the approach retrieved from the GPS navigation database to the instrument approach procedure published on your approach plate. Should differences between the approach chart and database arise, the published approach chart, supplemented by NOTAMs, takes precedence.

26.5.4.2 Develop a Backup Plan

Develop a backup plan to use in case of GPS or GPS integrity failure. Pay particular attention to ground-based NAVAIDs, which can be used to help maintain position awareness. Be sure to consider the possibility of equipment failure past the FAF.

26.5.4.3 Load STAR

If a STAR is to be flown, load the appropriate STAR by retrieving the route from the navigation database. If the STAR cannot be retrieved from the database, then you may not use RNAV procedures to fly the procedure. Additionally, terminal area routing that cannot be retrieved from the navigation database may not be used.

26.5.5 Terminal Area Operations and Arrival

26.5.5.1 Maintain Situational Awareness

As you prepare to enter the busy environment of the terminal area, it is important to maintain a high level of situational awareness using all available means. Monitor all ground-based NAVAIDs that are available to you (bearing pointers, DME, etc.), as GPS approaches are flown point to point. With GPS selected, the bearing pointer on your HSI and distance measurement (DME readout) may be to the next waypoint, not necessarily to the field.

26.5.6 Be Prepared to Use Traditional NAVAIDs

Experience has shown situational awareness can deteriorate when flying GPS approaches if the sequence of events does not go as planned. Be prepared to go to your backup plan if you become disoriented while flying the GPS approach.

26.5.6.1 Be Wary of “Heads-Down”

Operating with GPS in the terminal area tends to be more “heads-down” than normal, especially when things do not go as planned. Being intimately familiar with your GPS equipment and thoroughly preparing for the approach will allow you more time to clear for other traffic.

26.5.6.2 GPS is a New Form of Flying

Flying GPS approaches involves a new way of flying for most military pilots. Setting up a GPS receiver for an approach usually involves many more operations than are required to configure traditional navigation equipment. The sequence of events is critical to success. Setup routines are not always intuitive, requiring pilots to be thoroughly familiar with their equipment before flying GPS approaches in Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC). Once the equipment is properly configured for the approach, the GPS-based approach is much easier and safer to fly than a terrestrial-based (e.g., VOR, TACAN, etc.) nonprecision approach.

26.5.7 Approach Procedures

Flying a GPS approach is much like flying any other nonprecision approach. For procedures regarding equipment specifics and setup, reference NATOPS and your FMS/GPS Operator’s Manual. Incorrect inputs into the GPS receiver are especially critical during approaches. In some cases, an incorrect entry can cause the receiver to leave the approach mode.

26.5.7.1 Prior to the IAF

Some GPS equipment will automatically “Arm” once the aircraft is within 30 nm from the airfield. Other equipment will present a pilot selectable function when within 30 nm that requires the pilot to “Arm” the approach (refer to the specific aircraft NATOPS). If manual arming is required by the equipment, then the aircrew shall “Arm” the approach mode prior to the IAF. Arming the approach mode will allow your GPS equipment to automatically change from en route RNP to terminal RNP.

26.5.7.1.1 Inside of 30 nm

If you do not arm the approach mode prior to 30 nm from the airport, your GPS equipment will generate a warning once your aircraft is 30 nm from the airport. If the system automatically arms, there will be no annunciation at 30 nm.

26.5.7.1.2 3 nm Prior to the FAF

Approximately 3 nm prior to the FAF, your equipment will alert you that display sensitivity is about to change again. At 3 nm, if you still have not armed the approach mode, it will give you another warning.

26.5.7.1.3 Ramp Down

Beginning 2 nm prior to the FAF, your equipment will (if previously armed) automatically scale from terminal integrity performance (±1 nm) to approach integrity performance (±0.3 nm). This change in sensitivity is called ramping down, and depending on your equipment, will occur between 2 nm prior to the FAF and the FAF. After ramping down, the equipment is considered to be in approach mode.

WARNING

Aircrew must ensure the equipment has switched from the armed mode to the active mode by the time the aircraft reaches the FAF. Aircrew shall not descend below the FAF altitude unless the equipment is in approach mode. The aircraft may not remain within primary obstacle clearance area of the instrument approach procedure. Transition to your backup approach (if available) or proceed to the MAP along the final approach course and execute the missed approach or comply with ATC instructions.

CAUTION

Failure to ramp down to approach mode may be an indication of integrity failure, failure to arm, the aircraft did not enter the capture gate, or some other type of failure.

26.5.7.1.4 Two Nautical Mile (2 nm) Lockout

At 2 nm, if you still have not armed the approach mode, your equipment will not let you fly the approach. Your equipment will flag, and GPS navigation guidance will not be provided beyond the FAF.

26.5.7.1.5 GPS Integrity Warning Prior to FAF

If a GPS integrity warning occurs prior to the FAF, the pilot should not descend to the MDA, but should proceed to the MAP via the FAF, perform a missed approach, and notify ATC as soon as practical. Alternatively, the pilot may continue, provided a backup approach is available using another approved source of navigation.

26.5.7.2 Final Approach

The inbound course displayed on the GPS between the FAF and the MAP may be slightly different than that printed on the approach chart and should not affect approach performance. This is due to the way the GPS connects the approach waypoints.

26.5.7.2.1 Stepdown Waypoints

Stepdown waypoints in the final approach segment of RNAV (GPS) approaches are named in addition to being identified by Along Track Distance (ATD). Most RNAV avionics currently do not accommodate waypoints between the FAF and MAP. Stepdown waypoints may not appear in the sequence of waypoints in the navigation database. Aircrew can determine the location of stepdown waypoints and visual descent points (if published) by using ATD.

26.5.7.2.2 GPS Integrity Warning After the FAF

A GPS integrity warning occurring after the FAF is a serious situation and pilots must be prepared to take immediate action. Transition to your backup approach (if available) or proceed to the MAP along the final approach course and execute the missed approach via the route and altitudes specified in the published missed approach procedure or comply with ATC instructions.

26.5.7.3 Performing the Published Missed Approach Procedure

26.5.7.3.1 Missed Approach Point (MAP)

The designated MAP will vary depending on the type of approach minimums selected. The MAP for LNAV will be the runway threshold or a named waypoint. The MAP for LNAV/VNAV will be at the published DA.

26.5.7.3.2 Select Missed Approach Mode

At the MAP, most equipment will not automatically sequence to the next required waypoint; therefore, the pilot must manually sequence the GPS equipment to the next waypoint (refer to specific aircraft NATOPS).

26.5.7.3.3 Performing the Missed Approach

If the missed approach is initiated prior to the MAP, proceed to the MAP along the final approach course and then via the route and altitudes specified in the published missed approach procedure or comply with ATC instructions. If the missed approach procedure includes a turn, do not begin the turn prior to the MAP. The obstacle clearance area provided for the missed approach is predicated upon the missed approach being started at the MAP.

Note

The GPS/FMS may or may not provide proper guidance along the missed approach path; therefore, it is imperative to review the missed approach procedure fully prior to flying it.

26.5.7.3.4 Missed Approach Climb Gradient

Regardless of the method used to navigate the missed approach procedure, the pilot is still responsible for terrain and obstacle avoidance as well as any ATC-required climb gradients. In order to avoid obstacles, pilots must plan to climb at a minimum gradient of 200 feet per nm unless a higher gradient is published.

26.6 GPS NAVIGATION TRAINING

26.6.1 General

Aircrew should practice GPS approaches under Visual Flight Rules (VFR) until thoroughly proficient with all aspects of their equipment (receiver and installation) prior to attempting flight under IFR in IMC. Many GPS receivers provide a simulation mode that can be used to become familiar with receiver operations prior to actual flight operations. Proper training of GPS navigation in controlled airspace will enhance safety and awareness when using PPS for combat operations. GPS training will be developed, with assistance from Naval Air Systems Command PMA-170, by the respective TYCOM/FRS/Type Wing.

26.6.2 Ground Instruction

The use of GPS for flight in controlled airspace requires a thorough knowledge of the terms and nomenclature used to describe and depict GPS navigation processes. The charting of GPS procedures does not follow the convention described by previous training. Some of the areas that GPS training should cover are:

1. The meaning and proper use of Aircraft Equipment/Navigation Suffixes.

2. Procedure characteristics as determined from chart depiction and textual description.

   a. Depiction of waypoint types (fly-over and fly-by) and path terminators as well as associated aircraft flight paths.

   b. Published material for RNAV routes, SIDs, STARs, and GPS approaches.

3. Utilizing the RAIM prediction function.

4. RNAV/GPS system-specific information.

   a. Levels of automation, mode annunciations, changes, alerts, interactions, reversions, and degradation.

   b. Functional integration with other aircraft systems.

   c. The meaning and appropriateness of route discontinuities as well as related flightcrew procedures.

   d. Monitoring procedures for each phase of flight (e.g., monitor PROG or LEGS page).

   e. Types of navigation sensors (e.g., IRU, EGI, GEM, MAGR2K) utilized by the RNAV system and associated system prioritization/weighting/logic.

   f. Turn anticipation with consideration to speed and altitude effects.

g. Interpretation of electronic displays and symbols.

h. Verify currency of aircraft navigation data.

i. Verify successful completion of RNAV system self-tests.

5. Crew coordination and FMS/CDU etiquette.

6. Using the FMS/CDU/displays to maximize situational awareness.

7. Using the FMS/CDU for visual approaches.

8. Extending a point for interception.

9. Intercepting a route between two points.

10. Conditional waypoints and FMS-generated waypoints.

26.6.3 GPS Navigation Flight Training

The amount and type of flight training should be sufficient to expose the flightcrew to the displays, autopilot use (if applicable), and aircraft performance when using GPS for navigation.

1. Proceeding direct to a waypoint in the flight plan and not in the flight plan.

2. Inserting an instrument Departure Procedure (DP) into the flight plan, including setting terminal CDI sensitivity, if required, and the conditions under which terminal RAIM is available for departure.

3. Inserting the destination airport in a flight plan.

4. Determining the correct IAF to proceed to when entering a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) and determining the correct altitudes within a TAA.

5. Executing overlay approaches (especially procedure turns and arcs).

6. Changing to another approach after selecting an approach.

7. Executing “direct” missed approaches where the route is direct to the first waypoint after the MAWP.

8. Executing “routed” missed approaches where the route is not direct to a waypoint from the MAWP, particularly where a course must be manually inserted and flown. This procedure may vary with installation of the receiver.

9. Entering, flying, and exiting holding patterns “manually” (e.g., non-charted holding, holding following a procedure turn, and holding with a second waypoint in the holding pattern).

10. Flying a “route” from a holding pattern.

11. Executing an approach with radar vectors to the final segment.

12. Actions required for RAIM failure both before and after the Final Approach Waypoint (FAWP).

13. Programming a radial and distance from a VOR.

14. Recovering from sequencing past a waypoint at which holding was intended.

15. Operator-recommended levels of automation for phase of flight and workload, including methods to minimize cross-track error to maintain procedure centerline.

16. Crew coordination and FMS/CDU etiquette.

17. Using the FMS/CDU to maximize situational awareness.

18. Using the FMS/CDU for visual approaches.

19. Extending a point for interception.

20. Intercepting a route between two points.

21. Conditional waypoints and FMS-generated waypoints.

26.7 FUTURE IMPROVEMENTS TO GPS

26.7.1 Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)

The Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) is a critical component of the FAA strategic objective of a seamless satellite navigation system for civil aviation. This system will improve the accuracy, availability, and integrity of GPS, thereby improving the capacity and safety currently provided by the National Airspace System. Ultimately, WAAS will allow GPS to be used as a primary means of navigation from takeoff through Category I precision approach. WAAS will provide vertical guidance procedures to achieve an operational capability similar to an instrument landing system, where suitable airport conditions exist.

Unlike traditional ground-based navigation aids, WAAS will cover a more extensive service area. Wide-Area Ground Reference Stations (WRSs) have been linked to form a U.S. WAAS network. Signals from GPS satellites are received by these precisely surveyed ground reference stations and any errors in the signals are identified. Each station in the network relays the data to one of two Wide-Area Master Stations (WMSs), where correction information for specific geographical areas is computed. A correction message is prepared and uplinked to a geostationary communications satellite (GEO) via a Ground Uplink Station (GUS). This message is broadcast on the same frequency as GPS (L1, 1575.42 MHz) to future GPS/WAAS receivers onboard aircraft flying within the broadcast coverage area of WAAS. Other modes of transportation also benefit from the increased accuracy, availability, and integrity that WAAS will deliver. The WAAS broadcast message improves GPS signal accuracy from 100 meters to approximately 7 meters. Planned expansion of the U.S. network will include Canada, Iceland, Mexico, and Panama, and has the potential to expand to other countries as well. Additionally, Japan and Europe are building similar systems that are planned to be interoperable with the U.S. WAAS. The merging of these systems will create a worldwide seamless navigation capability similar to GPS, but with greater accuracy, availability, and integrity.

On March 7, 2006, the FAA declared that WAAS was performing to the level necessary to allow approaches to 200 feet DA. WAAS has provided coverage to 99 percent of the continental U.S. and has an availability rate of 99.87 percent. The FAA is commissioning 300 approaches per year that are WAAS capable. The addition of WAAS capability will be shown in the minimums section of the approach chart as “LPV.” The LPV minimums shall only be flown by properly certified aircraft.

26.7.2 Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS)

The Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS) will augment the Global Positioning System to provide an all-weather approach, landing, and surface navigation capability. LAAS focuses its service on a local area (approximately a 20 to 30 mile radius), such as an airport, and broadcasts its correction message via a Very High Frequency (VHF) radio data link from a ground-based transmitter. LAAS will have a profound impact on aviation navigation. LAAS will yield the extremely high accuracy, availability, and integrity necessary for Category I, II, and III precision approaches. It is expected that the end-state configuration will pinpoint the aircraft position to within one meter or less with a significant improvement in service flexibility and user operating costs. Curved approach paths, not possible using the current instrument landing systems, will be possible for Category I, II, and III precision approaches. Approaches will be designed to avoid obstacles, restricted airspace, noise-sensitive areas, or congested airspace. Unlike current landing systems, LAAS will provide multiple precision approach capabilities to runways within the LAAS coverage area. Duplication of equipment solely for the purpose of serving multiple runways can be eliminated. Also, airports with the need for precise surface area navigation may use the accuracy of LAAS for the position determination of aircraft. Using this capability, controllers will know the location of all airport service vehicles and taxiing aircraft to assist in the prevention of runway incursions in low visibility conditions. Furthermore, aircraft operators will benefit from the reduction of expenses associated with purchasing a variety of radio navigation equipment. Potentially, WAAS and LAAS could use the same aircraft avionics to accomplish both the WAAS and LAAS missions, reduce avionics maintenance costs, and realize savings in aircrew training.

The FAA has already successfully demonstrated the feasibility of GPS-based Category III precision approaches and has completed the proposed architecture for LAAS. This architecture was successfully presented and approved by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) Panel in February 1997. To ensure LAAS will be compatible with international standards, participation in the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) Global Navigation Satellite System Panel (GNSS-P) has been ongoing. Initial FAA Category I LAAS is scheduled to be operational by September 2003. Federal Category II/III development is scheduled to begin in FY03 with production in FY06. The FAA and the Government-Industry Partnership (GIP) partners will continue working toward a private/public use certified LAAS Category I system with the goal of transitioning to the Federal Category I procurement as soon as possible.

PART VII

Instrument Flight

CHAPTER 27

Flight Planning

27.1 PREFLIGHT PREPARATION

Every pilot is required to obtain a preflight weather briefing, review all applicable Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs), and file a flight plan. The weather briefing should consist of the latest or most current weather, airport, and en route Navigation Aid (NAVAID) information. Weather briefing services should be obtained at a DoD weather forecasting office. Weather minimums for naval aviators are defined in OPNAV 3710.7 series.

27.2 WEATHER BRIEFING, SUPPORT PRODUCTS, AND SEVERE WEATHER RESTRICTIONS AND PRODUCTS

Navy and Marine Corps Meteorology and Oceanography (METOC) activities are tasked with providing METOC support to the operating forces of the Navy and Marine Corps. These activities are equipped and staffed to provide full spectrum METOC support products to naval aviators.

27.2.1 Weather Briefing

Pilots are responsible for reviewing and being familiar with weather conditions for the area in which flight is contemplated. Before obtaining a flight clearance, a pilot must receive a weather briefing where services are available; the briefing shall be conducted by a qualified meteorological forecaster. These briefings may be conducted in person, or when available, via weathervision, telephone, or by autographic means. Additionally, a DD Form 175-1 (Flight Weather Briefing) shall be completed for all flights in accordance with OPNAVINST 3710.7 series.

Due to the perishable nature of meteorological data, and in an effort to ensure aviators have the most up-to-date information, all weather briefings will be assigned a briefing void time. The briefing void time shall not exceed the “weather briefed” time by more than 3 hours, and it shall never exceed the planned departure time by more than 30 minutes. This time may be extended when, in the opinion of the meteorologist, conditions are such that a review of the initial form and the deletion/addition of pertinent data is such that a formal rebriefing is not required. When extending void times, the rule stated above applies with the exception that the “weather rebriefed at” time is used as the base time.

Flights departing after void time expiration are in violation of OPNAVINST 3710.7 series because, for record purposes, the briefing never took place, as the official record of the briefing is no longer valid. Requests for extensions, and proper planning, will eliminate this situation.

As a minimum, terminal forecasts entered on the DD Form 175-1 shall be valid for a period of 1 hour before, until 1 hour after, the planned arrival time at destination(s) and alternates. In the event a pilot is departing from an airfield with no weather briefing facility, telephone briefings are available from both military and civilian facilities. Telephone numbers for military briefing facilities are listed in the Flight Information Publications (FLIP). These facilities may be called collect. The pilot receiving a weather briefing must ensure all essential weather elements have been included and adequately covered in the briefing. Meteorological forecasters serve as advisors to the aviator; therefore, pilots should not hesitate to request clarification or additional information when doubt exists. The ease with which all-weather flights are completed successfully is directly proportional to the pilot’s preparation and understanding of the environment in which the flight operates.

27.2.2 Support Products

In addition to the DD Form 175-1, there are other weather-related products that are readily available to aviators that actively support safe and successful mission accomplishment.

27.2.2.1 Optimum Path Aircraft Routing System (OPARS)

Optimum Path Aircraft Routing System (OPARS) is a service that combines the latest forecast environmental wind data fields with the most fuel-efficient flight profile for specific aircraft. A minimum of 2 to 3 hours is required for submission of OPARS requests and return receipt of the completed product. The OPARS product is constructed utilizing a database that contains aircraft performance characteristics, high-altitude airways, NAVAIDs, waypoints, all airports with runways of 5,000 feet or longer (in the Northern Hemisphere), and restricted area information. The environmental database contains wind data from 1,000 to 53,000 feet out to 48 hours, which is updated every 12 hours.

A typical OPARS flight plan will contain summarized flight times and distances, takeoff and landing weight, as well as time, distance, airspeed, groundspeed, and fuel usage between NAVAIDs. It will accept any mission with up to three legs, along standard jet routes from NAVAID point to NAVAID point, rhumbline with checkpoints every 5° latitude or longitude, or along great circle routes, and select the optimum path. The aviator selects these options before the flight plan is submitted. OPARS will route at the most efficient flight level, or between any upper and lower flight level. For further information on this program, refer to the Aviator’s Guide to OPARS Flight Planning (September 1998), or contact the nearest Naval Oceanography Command Activity.

27.2.2.2 Flight Weather Packets

When available, pilots are encouraged to request a flight weather packet when contemplating extended flights, especially those flights that will be conducted on long overwater routes. As a minimum, in addition to a DD Form 175-1, these packets contain surface and upper air charts, a Horizontal Weather Depiction (HWD) chart, and, for overwater flights, altimeters and ditch headings. Additional charts/data tailored to meet special mission needs, such as D values, OPARS data, etc., are also available. When considering the preparation time involved, and the amount of data that must be accumulated and reviewed, every attempt should be made to give a minimum 2 hours advance notice for this product. While en route, pilots should make every attempt to validate the data contained in the packet. Upon arrival at destination, the packet should be provided to the local weather activity for review and forwarding to the forecasting activity that prepared the packet.

27.2.3 Severe Weather Restrictions and Products

Whenever practical, flights shall be planned to circumvent areas of forecasted atmospheric icing and thunderstorm activity.

27.2.3.1 Aviation Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs)

The National Weather Service (NWS) issues unscheduled Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs) whenever there is a high probability of severe weather. These WWs are issued for a designated area and for a specified time period. WWs are used by Naval Oceanography Command activities for forecasting hazardous flying conditions. Except for operational necessity, emergencies, and flights involving all-weather research projects or weather reconnaissance, pilots shall not file into or through areas where the National Weather Service has issued a WW unless one of the following exceptions applies:

1. Performance characteristics of the aircraft permit an en route flight altitude above existing or developing severe storms; or

2. Storm development has not progressed, as determined by a qualified meteorological forecaster, for the planned route. In such situations:

   a. Visual Flight Rules (VFR) filing is permitted if existing and forecast weather for the planned route permits such flights.

   b. Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flight may be permitted if aircraft radar is installed and operative, thus permitting detection and avoidance of isolated thunderstorms.

   c. IFR flight is permissible in positive control areas if visual meteorological conditions can be maintained, thus enabling aircraft to detect and avoid isolated thunderstorms.

Note

In most cases, WWs are not issued specifically for immediate coastal waters or adjacent oceanic areas; however, in some situations, the weather associated with the WW will also be present over said areas. When dealing with such a situation, pilots should request evaluation of the maritime area by a forecaster to ensure WW conditions are not present.

27.2.3.2 Military Weather Warning Advisories (MWWAs)

The U.S. Air Force issues these graphical advisories, which provide an estimate of the weather-producing potential of existing airmasses. These advisories are used whenever a WW is not in effect, and they are also useful for planning purposes. MWWAs are posted in all Naval Weather Offices. A MWWA Bulletin that forecasts severe weather does not constitute a WW.

27.2.3.3 Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMETs) and Airmen's Meteorological Information (AIRMETs)

These advisories are prepared by the National Weather Service and broadcast by Flight Service Stations (FSSs) on VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) facilities.

27.2.3.3.1 SIGMETs

These advisories include weather phenomena potentially hazardous to all categories of aircraft. SIGMETs fall under two categories: convective and nonconvective.

27.2.3.3.2 Convective SIGMETs

Since thunderstorms are the reason for issuing convective SIGMETs, severe or greater turbulence, severe icing, and low-level windshear associated with thunderstorm activity are implied. The criteria for issuing convective SIGMETs are as follows:

1. Tornadoes.
2. Line of thunderstorms.
3. Embedded thunderstorm(s).
4. Thunderstorm areas greater than or equal to thunderstorm intensity level 4 with an area coverage of 4/10 (40 percent) or more.
5. Hail equal to or greater than 3/4 inch diameter.

Three convective SIGMET bulletins specifying Eastern (E), Central (C), and Western (W) U.S. will be issued, when required, on a scheduled basis hourly at 55 minutes past the hour, and as specials on an unscheduled basis. They are valid for 1 to 2 hours. It should be noted that although Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) may not give the content of SIGMETs, they do alert IFR traffic that one is being broadcast and provide the identification of the NAVAID to monitor.

27.2.3.3.3 Nonconvective SIGMETs

The criteria for issuing nonconvective SIGMETs are as follows:

1. Severe and extreme turbulence.
2. Severe icing.
3. Widespread duststorms/sandstorms that lower visibility to less than 3 miles.

27.2.3.3.4 AIRMETs

These advisories will only be issued to amend an Aviation Area Forecast (FA) and relate to weather phenomena that may be potentially hazardous to aircraft concerning the following:

1. Moderate icing.
2. Moderate turbulence.
3. Sustained winds of 30 knots or more at the surface.
4. Widespread areas of ceilings less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility less than 3 miles.
5. Extensive mountain obscurement.

   It should be noted that if the above phenomena are adequately forecast in the FA, an AIRMET will not be issued.

Applicable NOTAMs must be checked before every flight for your departure field, destination, possible alternates, and the airspace in between. NOTAM information is available from the U.S. NOTAM System (USNS) via the Defense Internet NOTAM Distribution System (DINS). Further explanation and definitions for all seven types of NOTAMs can be found in the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM).

File the DD-175 with the clearing authority at least 30 minutes prior to Estimated Time of Departure (ETD) in accordance with OPNAV Instruction 3710.7 series and FLIP. If departing from a civil field, follow the procedure outlined in FLIP. Weight and balance form and passenger manifest, if required, will be submitted with the flight plan. Instructions for completing the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Form 7233-1 flight plan can be found in the AIM.

Pilots shall use only the latest issue of aeronautical charts in planning and conducting flight operations. Aeronautical charts are revised and reissued on a regular scheduled basis to ensure that depicted data are current and reliable. In the conterminous U.S., Sectional Charts are updated every 6 months, IFR En Route Charts every 56 days, and amendments to civil IFR Approach Charts are accomplished on a 56-day cycle with a change notice volume issued on the 26-day midcycle. Charts that have been superseded by those of a more recent date may contain obsolete or incomplete flight information.

FAA by 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 93, Subpart K, has designated High Density Traffic Airports (HDTAs) and has prescribed air traffic rules and requirements for operating aircraft (excluding helicopter operations) to and from these airports.

In addition to the filing of a flight plan, if the flight will traverse or land in one or more foreign countries, it is particularly important that pilots leave a complete itinerary with someone directly concerned and keep that person advised of the flight progress.

27.3 FOLLOW IFR PROCEDURES EVEN WHEN OPERATING VFR

To maintain IFR proficiency, pilots are urged to practice IFR procedures whenever possible, even when operating VFR.

Simulated IFR flight is recommended (under the hood); however, pilots are cautioned to review and adhere to the requirements specified in 14 CFR Section 91.109 before and during such flight.

When flying VFR at night, in addition to the altitude appropriate for the direction of flight, pilots should maintain an altitude that is at or above the Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA) as shown on charts. This is especially true in mountainous terrain, where there is usually very little ground reference. Do not depend on your eyes alone to avoid rising unlighted terrain, or even lighted obstructions such as TV towers.

27.3.1 Flight Plan — VFR Flights

Except for operations in or penetrating a Coastal or Domestic Air Defense Identification Zone (ADIZ) or Distant Early Warning Identification Zone (DEWIZ), a flight plan is not required by the FAA for VFR flight. Local requirements may differ.

It is strongly recommended that a flight plan (for a VFR flight) be filed. This will ensure you receive VFR Search and Rescue Protection.

On pilot's request, at a location having an active tower, the aircraft identification will be forwarded by the tower to the FSS for reporting the actual departure time for the military arrival notification.

Although position reports are not required for VFR flight plans, periodic reports to FAA FSSs along the route are good practice. Such contacts permit significant information to be passed to the transiting aircraft and also serve to check the progress of the flight should it be necessary for any reason to locate the aircraft.

Pilots not operating on an IFR flight plan and when in level cruising flight are cautioned to conform with VFR cruising altitudes appropriate to the direction of flight.

When filing VFR flight plans, indicate aircraft equipment capabilities by appending the appropriate suffix to aircraft type in the same manner as that prescribed for IFR flight.

27.3.2 Flight Plan — Defense VFR (DVFR) Flights

VFR flights into a Coastal or Domestic ADIZ/DEWIZ are required to file Defense VFR (DVFR) flight plans for security purposes. Detailed ADIZ procedures are found in the AIM, National Security and Interception Procedures. (See 14 CFR Part 99.)

27.3.3 Composite Flight Plan (VFR/IFR Flights)

Flight plans that specify VFR operation for one portion of a flight, and IFR for another portion, are referred to as Composite Flight Plans. If VFR flight is conducted for the first portion of the flight, pilots should report their departure time to the FSS with whom the VFR/IFR flight plan was filed and, subsequently, close the VFR portion and request Air Traffic Control (ATC) clearance from the FSS nearest the point at which change from VFR to IFR is proposed. Regardless of the type facility with which you are communicating (FSS, center, or tower), it is the pilot's responsibility to request that facility to "CLOSE VFR FLIGHT PLAN." The pilot must remain in VFR weather conditions until operating in accordance with the IFR clearance.

When a flight plan indicates IFR for the first portion of flight and VFR for the latter portion, the pilot will normally be cleared to the point at which the change is proposed. After reporting over the clearance limit and not desiring further IFR clearance, the pilot should advise ATC to cancel the IFR portion of the flight plan. Then, the pilot should contact the nearest FSS to activate the VFR portion of the flight plan. If the pilot desires to continue the IFR flight plan beyond the clearance limit, the pilot should contact ATC at least 5 minutes prior to the clearance limit and request further IFR clearance. If the requested clearance is not received prior to reaching the clearance limit fix, the pilot will be expected to enter into a standard holding pattern on the radial or course to the fix unless a holding pattern for the clearance limit fix is depicted on a U.S. Government or commercially produced (meeting FAA requirements) low or high altitude en route, area, or Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) chart. In this case, the pilot will hold according to the depicted pattern.

27.3.4 Flight Plan — IFR Flights

27.3.4.1 General

Prior to departure from within, or entering into, controlled airspace, a pilot must submit a complete flight plan and receive an air traffic clearance if weather conditions are below VFR minimums. Instrument flight plans are normally submitted through base operations, but can also be submitted to the nearest FSS or Airport Traffic Control Tower (ATCT) either in person or by telephone (or by radio if no other means are available). Pilots should file IFR flight plans at least 30 minutes prior to ETD to preclude possible delay in receiving a departure clearance from ATC. In order to provide FAA traffic management units strategic route planning capabilities, nonscheduled operators conducting IFR operations above Flight Level (FL) 230 are requested to voluntarily file IFR flight plans at least 4 hours prior to ETD. To minimize your delay in entering Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas at destination when IFR weather conditions exist or are forecast at that airport, an IFR flight plan should be filed before departure. Otherwise, a 30 minute delay is not unusual in receiving an ATC clearance because of time spent in processing flight plan data. Traffic saturation frequently prevents control personnel from accepting flight plans by radio. In such cases, the pilot is advised to contact the nearest FSS for the purpose of filing the flight plan.

Note

There are several methods of obtaining IFR clearances at nontower, non-FSS, and outlying airports. The procedure may vary due to geographical features, weather conditions, and the complexity of the ATC system. To determine the most effective means of receiving an IFR clearance, pilots should ask the nearest FSS the most appropriate means of obtaining the IFR clearance.

When filing an IFR flight plan for a Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS)/ heavy equipped aircraft, add the prefix T for TCAS, H for heavy, or B for both TCAS and heavy to the aircraft type.

When filing an IFR flight plan for flight in an aircraft equipped with a radar beacon transponder, Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN)-only equipment, Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS), or a combination of any of these types of equipment, identify the equipment capability by adding a suffix, preceded by a slant, to the aircraft type.

It is recommended that pilots file the maximum transponder or navigation capability of their aircraft in the equipment suffix. This will provide ATC with the necessary information to utilize all facets of navigational equipment and transponder capabilities available.

Note

The suffix is not to be added to the aircraft identification or be transmitted by radio as part of the aircraft identification.

27.3.4.2 Airways and Jet Routes Depiction on Flight Plan

It is vitally important that the route of flight be accurately and completely described in the flight plan. To simplify definition of the proposed route, and to facilitate ATC, pilots are requested to file via airways or jet routes established for use at the altitude or flight level planned.

If flight is to be conducted via designated airways or jet routes, describe the route by indicating the type and number designators of the airway(s) or jet route(s) requested. If more than one airway or jet route is to be used, clearly indicate points of transition. If the transition is made at an unnamed intersection, show the next succeeding NAVAID or named intersection on the intended route and the complete route from that point. Reporting points may be identified by using authorized name/code as depicted on appropriate aeronautical charts. The following two examples illustrate the need to specify the transition point when two routes share more than one transition fix.

The route of flight may also be described by naming the reporting points or NAVAIDs over which the flight will pass, provided the points named are established for use at the altitude or flight level planned.

When the route of flight is defined by named reporting points, whether alone or in combination with airways or jet routes, and the navigational aids (VOR, VORTAC, TACAN, Non-Directional Beacon [NDB]) to be used for the flight are a combination of different types of aids, enough information should be included to clearly indicate the route requested.

When filing IFR, it is to the pilot's advantage to file a preferred route. These routes can be found in FLIP publications.

ATC may issue a DP or a STAR, as appropriate.

Note

Pilots not desiring a DP or STAR should so indicate in the remarks section of the flight plan as "no DP" or "no STAR."

27.3.4.3 Direct Flights

All or any portions of the route that will not be flown on the radials or courses of established airways or routes, such as direct route flights, must be defined by indicating the radio fixes over which the flight will pass. Fixes selected to define the route shall be those over which the position of the aircraft can be accurately determined. Such fixes automatically become compulsory reporting points for the flight, unless advised otherwise by ATC. Only those navigational aids established for use in a particular structure (e.g., in the low or high structures) may be used to define the en route phase of a direct flight within that altitude structure.

The azimuth feature of VOR aids and that azimuth and distance (DME) features of VORTAC and TACAN aids are assigned certain frequency-protected areas of airspace that are intended for application to established airway and route use, and to provide guidance for planning flights outside of established airways or routes. These areas of airspace are expressed in terms of cylindrical service volumes of specified dimensions called class limits or categories.

An operational service volume has been established for each class in which adequate signal coverage and frequency protection can be assured. To facilitate use of VOR, VORTAC, or TACAN aids, consistent with their operational service volume limits, pilot use of such aids for defining a direct route of flight in controlled airspace should not exceed the following:

1. Operations above FL 450 — Use aids not more than 200 nm apart. These aids are depicted on en route high altitude charts.

2. Operation off established routes from 18,000 feet Mean Sea Level (MSL) to FL 450 — Use aids not more than 260 nm apart. These aids are depicted on en route high altitude charts.

3. Operation off established airways below 18,000 feet MSL — Use aids not more than 80 nm apart. These aids are depicted on en route low altitude charts.

4. Operation off established airways between 14,500 feet MSL and 17,999 feet MSL in the conterminous U.S. — (H) facilities not more than 200 nm apart may be used.

Increasing use of self-contained airborne navigational systems that do not rely on the VOR/VORTAC/TACAN system has resulted in pilot requests for direct routes that exceed NAVAID service volume limits. These direct route requests will be approved only in a radar environment, with approval based on pilot responsibility for navigation on the authorized direct route. Radar flight following will be provided by ATC for ATC purposes.

At times, ATC will initiate a direct route in a radar environment that exceeds NAVAID service volume limits. In such cases, ATC will provide radar monitoring and navigational assistance as necessary.

Airway or jet route numbers, appropriate to the stratum in which operation will be conducted, may also be included to describe portions of the route to be flown.

Note

When route of flight is described by radio fixes, the pilot will be expected to fly a direct course between the points named.

Pilots are reminded that they are responsible for adhering to obstruction clearance requirements on those segments of direct routes that are outside of controlled airspace. The MEAs and other altitudes shown on low altitude IFR en route charts pertain to those route segments within controlled airspace, and those altitudes may not meet obstruction clearance criteria when operating off those routes.

27.3.4.4 Area Navigation (RNAV)

Random RNAV routes can only be approved in a radar environment. Factors that will be considered by ATC in approving random RNAV routes include the capability to provide radar monitoring and compatibility with traffic volume and flow. ATC will radar monitor each flight; however, navigation on the random RNAV route is the responsibility of the pilot.

To be certified for use in the National Airspace System, RNAV equipment must meet the specifications outlined in AC 90-45. The pilot is responsible for variations in equipment capability and must advise ATC if a RNAV clearance cannot be accepted as specified. The controller need only be concerned that the aircraft is RNAV equipped; if the flight plan equipment suffix denotes RNAV capability, the RNAV routing can be applied.

Pilots of aircraft equipped with operational area navigation equipment may file for random RNAV routes throughout the National Airspace System, where radar monitoring by ATC is available, in accordance with the following procedures:

1. File airport-to-airport flight plans prior to departure.

2. File the appropriate RNAV capability certification suffix in the flight plan.

3. Plan the random route portion of the flight plan to begin and end over appropriate arrival and departure transition fixes or appropriate navigation aids for the altitude stratum within which the flight will be conducted. The use of normal preferred departure and arrival routes (DP/STAR), where established, is recommended.

4. File route structure transitions to and from the random route portion of the flight.

5. Define the random route by waypoints. File route description waypoints by using degree-distance fixes based on navigational aids that are appropriate for the altitude stratum.

6. File a minimum of one route description waypoint for each ARTCC through whose area the random route will be flown. These waypoints must be located within 200 nm of the boundary of the preceding center.

7. File an additional route description waypoint for each turn point in the route.

8. Plan additional route description waypoints as required to ensure accurate navigation via the filed route of flight. Navigation is the pilot's responsibility unless ATC assistance is requested.

9. Plan the route of flight so as to avoid prohibited and restricted airspace by 3 nm unless permission has been obtained to operate in that airspace and the appropriate ATC facilities are advised.

Pilots of aircraft equipped with latitude/longitude coordinate navigation capability, independent of VOR/TACAN references, may file for random RNAV routes at and above FL 390 within the conterminous U.S. using the following procedures:

1. File airport-to-airport flight plans prior to departure.

2. File the appropriate RNAV capability certification suffix in the flight plan.

3. Plan the random route portion of the flight to begin and end over published departure/arrival transition fixes or appropriate navigation aids for airports without published transition procedures. The use of preferred departure and arrival routes, such as DP and STAR where established, is recommended.

4. Plan the route of flight so as to avoid prohibited and restricted airspace by 3 nm unless permission has been obtained to operate in that airspace and the appropriate ATC facility is advised.

5. Define the route of flight after the departure fix, including each intermediate fix (turn point) and the arrival fix for the destination airport in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates plotted to the nearest minute. The arrival fix must be identified by both the latitude/longitude coordinates and a fix identifier.

6. Record latitude/longitude coordinates by four figures describing latitude in degrees and minutes followed by a solidus and five figures describing longitude in degrees and minutes.

7. File at FL 390 or above for the random RNAV portion of the flight.

8. Fly all routes/route segments on great circle tracks.

9. Make any in-flight requests for random RNAV clearances or route amendments to an en route ATC facility.

Note

Use NAVAIDs or waypoints to define direct routes and radials/bearings to define other unpublished routes.

A description of the International Flight Plan Form is contained in the FLIP or the International Flight Information Manual (IFIM).

27.4 IFR OPERATIONS TO HIGH-ALTITUDE DESTINATIONS

Pilots planning IFR flights to airports located in mountainous terrain are cautioned to consider the necessity for an alternate airport even when the forecast weather conditions would technically relieve them from the requirement to file one.

The FAA has identified three possible situations where the failure to plan for an alternate airport when flying IFR to such a destination airport could result in a critical situation if the weather is less than forecast and sufficient fuel is not available to proceed to a suitable airport:

1. An IFR flight to an airport where the Minimum Descent Altitudes (MDAs) or landing visibility minimums for *all instrument approaches* are higher than the forecast weather minimums specified in 14 CFR Section 91.167(b). For example, there are 3 high-altitude airports in the U.S. with approved instrument approach procedures where all of the MDAs are greater than 2,000 feet and/or the landing visibility minimums are greater than 3 miles: Bishop, California; South Lake Tahoe, California; and Aspen-Pitkin Co./Sardy Field, Colorado. In the case of these airports, it is possible for a pilot to elect, on the basis of forecasts, not to carry sufficient fuel to get to an alternate when the ceiling and/or visibility is actually lower than that necessary to complete the approach.

2. A small number of other airports in mountainous terrain have MDAs that are slightly (100 to 300 feet) below 2,000 feet AGL. In situations where there is an option as to whether to plan for an alternate, pilots should bear in mind that just a slight worsening of the weather conditions from those forecast could place the airport below the published IFR landing minimums.

3. An IFR flight to an airport that requires special equipment (e.g., DME, glideslope, etc.) in order to make the available approaches to the lowest minimums. Pilots should be aware that all other minimums on the approach charts may require weather conditions better than those specified in 14 CFR Section 91.167(b). An in-flight equipment malfunction could result in the inability to comply with the published approach procedures or, again, in the position of having the airport below the published IFR landing minimums for all remaining instrument approach alternatives.

27.5 FLIGHTS OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND U.S. TERRITORIES

When conducting flights, particularly extended flights, outside the U.S. and its territories, full account should be taken of the amount and quality of air navigation services available in the airspace to be traversed. Every effort should be made to secure information on the location and range of navigational aids, availability of communications and meteorological services, the provision of air traffic services, including alerting service, and the existence of search and rescue services.

Pilots should remember that there is a need to continuously guard the VHF emergency frequency 121.5 MHz when on long overwater flights, except when communications on other VHF channels, equipment limitations, or cockpit duties prevent simultaneous guarding of two channels. Guarding of 121.5 MHz is particularly critical when operating in proximity to Flight Information Region (FIR) boundaries (e.g., operations on Route R220 between Anchorage and Tokyo), as it serves to facilitate communications with regard to aircraft that may experience in-flight emergencies, communications, or navigational difficulties.

The filing of a flight plan, always good practice, takes on added significance for extended flights outside U.S. airspace and is, in fact, usually required by the laws of the countries being visited or overflown. It is also particularly important in the case of such flights that pilots leave a complete itinerary and schedule of the flight with someone directly concerned and keep that person advised of the flight progress. If serious doubt arises as to the safety of the flight, that person should first contact the appropriate FSS. Round Robin flight plans to Mexico are not accepted.

All pilots should review the foreign airspace and entry restrictions published in the IFIM, FLIP, and Foreign Clearance Guide during the flight planning process. Foreign airspace penetration without official authorization can involve both danger to the aircraft and the imposition of severe penalties and inconvenience to both passengers and crew. A flight plan on file with ATC authorities does not necessarily constitute the prior permission required by certain other authorities. The possibility of fatal consequences cannot be ignored in some areas of the world.

Current NOTAMs for foreign locations must also be reviewed. The publication Notices to Airmen, Domestic/International, published biweekly, contains considerable information pertinent to foreign flight. Current foreign NOTAMs are also available from the U.S. International NOTAM Office in Washington, D.C., through any local FSS.

When customs notification is required, it is the responsibility of the pilot to arrange for customs notification in a timely manner. The following guidelines are applicable:

1. When customs notification is required on flights to Canada and Mexico and a predeparture flight plan cannot be filed or an Advise Customs message (ADCUS) cannot be included in a predeparture flight plan, call the nearest en route domestic or International FSS as soon as radio communication can be established and file a VFR or DVFR flight plan, as required, and include as the last item the advise customs information. The station with which such a flight plan is filed will forward it to the appropriate FSS, who will notify the customs office responsible for the destination airport.

2. If the pilot fails to include ADCUS in the radioed flight plan, it will be assumed that other arrangements have been made and FAA will not advise customs.

3. The FAA assumes no responsibility for any delays in advising customs if the flight plan is given too late for delivery to customs before arrival of the aircraft. It is still the pilot's responsibility to give timely notice even though a flight plan is given to FAA.

4. Air Commerce Regulations of the Bureau of Immigration and Customs Enforcement require all private aircraft arriving in the U.S. via:

   a. The U.S./Mexican border or the Pacific Coast from a foreign place in the Western Hemisphere south of 33 degrees north latitude and between 97 degrees and 120 degrees west longitude; or

b. The Gulf of Mexico and Atlantic Coasts from a foreign place in the Western Hemisphere south of 30 degrees north latitude, shall furnish a notice of arrival to the Customs service at the nearest designated airport. This notice may be furnished directly to Customs by:

(1) Radio through the appropriate FAA Flight Service Station.

(2) Normal FAA flight plan notification procedures (a flight plan filed in Mexico does not meet this requirement due to unreliable relay of data); or

(3) Directly to the district Director of Customs or other Customs officer at place of first intended landing but must be furnished at least 1 hour prior to crossing the U.S./Mexican border or the U.S. coastline.

c. This notice will be valid as long as actual arrival is within 15 minutes of the original Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA); otherwise, a new notice must be given to Customs. Notices will be accepted up to 23 hours in advance. Unless an exemption has been granted by Customs, private aircraft are required to make first landing in the U.S. at one of the following designated airports nearest to the point of border of coastline crossing.

27.6 CHANGE IN FLIGHT PLAN

In addition to altitude or flight level, destination and/or route changes, increasing or decreasing the speed of an aircraft constitutes a change in a flight plan; therefore, at any time the average true airspeed at cruising altitude between reporting points varies or is expected to vary from that given in the flight plan by *plus or minus 5 percent, or 10 knots, whichever is greater,* ATC should be advised.

27.7 CHANGE IN PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME

To prevent computer saturation in the en route environment, parameters have been established to delete proposed departure flight plans that have not been activated. Most centers have this parameter set so as to delete these flight plans a minimum of 1 hour after the proposed departure time. To ensure a flight plan remains active, pilots whose actual departure time will be delayed 1 hour or more beyond their filed departure time are requested to notify ATC of their departure time.

Due to traffic saturation, control personnel frequently will be unable to accept these revisions via radio. It is recommended that you forward these revisions to the nearest FSS.

27.8 CLOSING VFR/DVFR FLIGHT PLANS

A pilot is responsible for ensuring that his/her VFR or DVFR flight plan is canceled. You should close your flight plan with the nearest FSS or, if one is not available, you may request any ATC facility to relay your cancellation to the FSS. Control towers do not automatically close VFR or DVFR flight plans because they do not know if a particular VFR aircraft is on a flight plan. If you fail to report or cancel your flight plan within 1/2 hour after your ETA, search and rescue procedures are started.

27.9 CANCELING IFR FLIGHT PLAN

14 CFR Sections 91.153 and 91.169 include the statement "When a flight plan has been activated, the pilot-in-command, upon canceling or completing the flight under the flight plan, shall notify an FAA Flight Service Station or ATC facility."

An IFR flight plan may be canceled at any time the flight is operating in VFR conditions outside Class A airspace by pilots stating "CANCEL MY IFR FLIGHT PLAN" to the controller or air/ground station with which they are communicating. Immediately after canceling an IFR flight plan, a pilot should take the necessary action to change to the appropriate air/ground frequency, VFR radar beacon code, and VFR altitude or flight level.

ATC separation and information services will be discontinued, including radar services (where applicable). Consequently, if the canceling flight desires VFR radar advisory service, the pilot must specifically request it.

Note

Pilots must be aware that other procedures may be applicable to a flight that cancels an IFR flight plan within an area where a special program, such as a designated Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA), Class C airspace, or Class B airspace, has been established.

If a DVFR flight plan requirement exists, the pilot is responsible for filing this flight plan to replace the canceled IFR flight plan. If a subsequent IFR operation becomes necessary, a new IFR flight plan must be filed and an ATC clearance obtained before operating in IFR conditions.

If operating on an IFR flight plan to an airport with a functioning control tower, the flight plan is automatically closed upon landing.

If operating on an IFR flight plan to an airport where there is no functioning control tower, the pilot must initiate cancellation of the IFR flight plan. This can be done after landing if there is a functioning FSS or other means of direct communications with ATC. In the event there is no FSS and/or air/ground communications with ATC is not possible below a certain altitude, the pilot should, weather conditions permitting, cancel the IFR flight plan while still airborne and able to communicate with ATC by radio. This will not only save the time and expense of canceling the flight plan by telephone but will quickly release the airspace for use by other aircraft.

CHAPTER 28

Flight Clearance

28.1 CLEARANCE

A clearance issued by Air Traffic Control (ATC) is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions. An ATC clearance means an authorization by ATC, for the purpose of preventing collision between known aircraft, for an aircraft to proceed under specified conditions within controlled airspace. IT IS NOT AUTHORIZATION FOR A PILOT TO DEVIATE FROM ANY RULE, REGULATION, OR MINIMUM ALTITUDE NOR TO CONDUCT UNSAFE OPERATION OF THE AIRCRAFT.

14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Section 91.3(a) states: “The pilot-in-command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft.” If ATC issues a clearance that would cause a pilot to deviate from a rule or regulation, or in the pilot’s opinion, would place the aircraft in jeopardy, IT IS THE PILOT’S RESPONSIBILITY TO REQUEST AN AMENDED CLEARANCE. Similarly, if a pilot prefers to follow a different course of action, such as make a 360-degree turn for spacing to follow traffic when established in a landing or approach sequence, land on a different runway, take off from a different intersection, take off from the threshold instead of an intersection, or delay operation, THE PILOT IS EXPECTED TO INFORM ATC ACCORDINGLY. When the pilot requests a different course of action, however, the pilot is expected to cooperate so as to preclude disruption of traffic flow or creation of conflicting patterns. The pilot is also expected to use the appropriate aircraft call sign to acknowledge all ATC clearances, frequency changes, or advisory information.

Each pilot who deviates from an ATC clearance in response to a Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System resolution advisory shall notify ATC of that deviation as soon as possible.

When weather conditions permit, during the time an Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flight is operating, it is the direct responsibility of the pilot to avoid other aircraft, as Visual Flight Rules (VFR) flights may be operating in the same area without the knowledge of ATC. Traffic clearances provide standard separation only between IFR flights.

28.2 CLEARANCE PREFIX

A clearance, control information, or a response to a request for information originated by an ATC facility and relayed to the pilot through an AG communication station will be prefixed by “ATC clears,” “ATC advises,” or “ATC requests.”

28.3 CLEARANCE ITEMS

ATC clearances normally contain the following:

28.3.1 Clearance Limit

The traffic clearance issued prior to departure will normally authorize flight to the airport of intended landing. Under certain conditions, at some locations a short-range clearance procedure is utilized whereby a clearance is issued to a fix within or just outside of the terminal area and pilots are advised of the frequency on which they will receive the long-range clearance direct from the center controller.

28.3.2 Departure Procedure

Headings to fly and altitude restrictions may be issued to separate a departure from other air traffic in the terminal area. Where the volume of traffic warrants, DPs have been developed.

28.3.3 Route of Flight

Clearances are normally issued for the altitude or flight level and route filed by the pilot; however, due to traffic conditions, it is frequently necessary for ATC to specify an altitude or flight level or route different from that requested by the pilot. In addition, flow patterns have been established in certain congested areas or between congested areas whereby traffic capacity is increased by routing all traffic on preferred routes. Information on these flow patterns is available in offices where preflight briefing is furnished or where flight plans are accepted.

When required, air traffic clearances include data to assist pilots in identifying radio reporting points. It is the responsibility of pilots to notify ATC immediately if their radio equipment cannot receive the type of signals they must utilize to comply with their clearance.

28.3.4 Altitude Data

The altitude or flight level instructions in an ATC clearance normally require that a pilot maintain the altitude or flight level at which the flight will operate when in controlled airspace. Altitude or flight level changes while en route should be requested prior to the time the change is desired.

When possible, if the altitude assigned is different from the altitude requested by the pilot, ATC will inform the pilot when to expect climb or descent clearance or to request altitude change from another facility. If this has not been received prior to crossing the ATC facility area boundary and assignment at a different altitude is still desired, the pilot should reinitiate the request with the next facility.

The term cruise may be used instead of maintain to assign a block of airspace to a pilot from the Minimum IFR Altitude (MIA) up to and including the altitude specified in the cruise clearance. The pilot may level off at any intermediate altitude within this block of airspace. Climb/descent within the block is to be made at the discretion of the pilot; however, once the pilot starts descent and verbally reports leaving an altitude in the block, the pilot may not return to that altitude without additional ATC clearance.

28.3.5 Holding Instructions

Whenever an aircraft has been cleared to a fix other than the destination airport and delay is expected, it is the responsibility of the ATC controller to issue complete holding instructions (unless the pattern is charted), an Expected Further Clearance Time (EFC), and a best estimate of any additional en route/terminal delay.

If the holding pattern is charted and the controller does not issue complete holding instructions, the pilot is expected to hold as depicted on the appropriate chart. When the pattern is charted, the controller may omit all holding instructions except the charted holding direction and the statement “AS PUBLISHED” (e.g., “HOLD EAST AS PUBLISHED”). Controllers shall always issue complete holding instructions when pilots request them.

Note

Only those holding patterns depicted on U.S. government or commercially produced charts that meet Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) requirements should be used.

If no holding pattern is charted and holding instructions have not been issued, the pilot should ask ATC for holding instructions prior to reaching the fix. This procedure will eliminate the possibility of an aircraft entering a holding pattern other than that desired by ATC. If unable to obtain holding instructions prior to reaching the fix (due to frequency congestion, stuck microphone, etc.), hold in a standard pattern on the course on which you approached the fix and request further clearance as soon as possible. In this event, the altitude/flight level of the aircraft at the clearance limit will be protected so that separation will be provided as required.

When an aircraft is 3 minutes or less from a clearance limit and a clearance beyond the fix has not been received, the pilot is expected to start a speed reduction so that the aircraft will cross the fix, initially, at or below the maximum holding airspeed.

When no delay is expected, the controller should issue a clearance beyond the fix as soon as possible and, whenever possible, at least 5 minutes before the aircraft reaches the clearance limit.

Pilots should report to ATC the time and altitude/flight level at which the aircraft reaches the clearance limit and report leaving the clearance limit.

Note

In the event of two-way communications failure, pilots are required to comply with 14 CFR Section 91.185.

28.4 AMENDED CLEARANCES

Amendments to the initial clearance will be issued at any time an air traffic controller deems such action necessary to avoid possible confliction between aircraft. Clearances will require that a flight hold or change altitude prior to reaching the point where standard separation from other IFR traffic would no longer exist.

Note

Some pilots have questioned this action and requested traffic information and were at a loss when the reply indicated no traffic report. In such cases, the controller has taken action to prevent a traffic confliction that would have occurred at a distant point.

A pilot may wish an explanation of the handling of the flight at the time of occurrence; however, controllers are not able to take time from their immediate control duties nor can they afford to overload the ATC communications channels to furnish explanations. Pilots may obtain an explanation by directing a letter or telephone call to the chief controller of the facility involved.

Pilots have the privilege of requesting a different clearance from that issued by ATC if they believe they have information that would make another course of action more practical or if aircraft equipment limitations or company procedures forbid compliance with the clearance issued.

28.5 SPECIAL VFR CLEARANCES

An ATC clearance must be obtained *prior* to operating within a Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area when the weather is less than that required for VFR flight. A VFR pilot may request and be given a clearance to enter, leave, or operate within most Class D and Class E surface areas and some Class B and Class C surface areas in special VFR conditions, traffic permitting, and providing such flight will not delay IFR operations. All special VFR flights must remain clear of clouds. The visibility requirements for special VFR aircraft (other than helicopters) are:

1. At least 1 statute mile flight visibility for operations within Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas.

2. At least 1 statute mile ground visibility if taking off or landing. If ground visibility is not reported at that airport, the flight visibility must be at least 1 statute mile.

3. The restrictions in subparagraphs 1 and 2 do not apply to helicopters. Helicopters must remain clear of clouds and may operate in Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas with less than 1 statute mile visibility.

When a control tower is located within the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area, requests for clearances should be to the tower. In a Class E surface area, a clearance may be obtained from the nearest tower, FSS, or center.

It is not necessary to file a complete flight plan with the request for clearance, but pilots should state their intentions in sufficient detail to permit ATC to fit their flight into the traffic flow. The clearance will not contain a specific altitude, as the pilot must remain clear of clouds. The controller may require the pilot to fly at or below a certain altitude due to other traffic, but the altitude specified will permit flight at or above the minimum safe altitude. In addition, at radar locations, flights may be vectored if necessary for control purposes or on pilot request.

Note

The pilot is responsible for obstacle or terrain clearance.

Special VFR clearances are effective within Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas only. ATC does not provide separation after an aircraft leaves the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface area on a special VFR clearance.

Special VFR operations by fixed-wing aircraft are prohibited in some Class B and Class C surface areas due to the volume of IFR traffic. A list of these Class B and Class C surface areas is contained in 14 CFR Part 91, Appendix D, Section 3. They are also depicted on sectional aeronautical charts.

ATC provides separation between Special VFR flights and between these flights and other IFR flights.

Special VFR operations by fixed-wing aircraft are prohibited between sunset and sunrise unless the pilot is instrument rated and the aircraft is equipped for IFR flight.

Pilots arriving or departing an uncontrolled airport that has automated weather broadcast capability (Automated Surface Observing System/Automated Weather Observing System [ASOS/AWOS]) should monitor the broadcast frequency, advise the controller that they have the one-minute weather and state intentions prior to operating within the Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E surface areas.

28.6 PILOT RESPONSIBILITY UPON CLEARANCE ISSUANCE

28.6.1 Record ATC Clearance

When conducting an IFR operation, make a written record of your clearance. The specified conditions that are a part of your air traffic clearance may be somewhat different from those included in your flight plan. Additionally, ATC may find it necessary to ADD conditions, such as particular departure route. The very fact that ATC specifies different or additional conditions means that other aircraft are involved in the traffic situation.

28.6.2 ATC Clearance/Instruction Readback

Pilots of airborne aircraft should read back *those parts* of ATC clearances and instructions containing altitude assignments or vectors as a means of mutual verification. The readback of the numbers serves as a double check between pilots and controllers and reduces the kinds of communications errors that occur when a number is either misheard or is incorrect.

1. Include the aircraft identification in all readbacks and acknowledgments. This aids controllers in determining that the correct aircraft received the clearance or instruction. The requirement to include aircraft identification in all readbacks and acknowledgements becomes more important as frequency congestion increases and when aircraft with similar call signs are on the same frequency.

2. Read back altitudes, altitude restrictions, and vectors in the same sequence as they are given in the clearance or instruction.

3. Altitudes contained in charted procedures, such as DPs, instrument approaches, etc. should not be read back unless they are specifically stated by the controller.

It is the responsibility of the pilot to accept or refuse the clearance issued.

28.7 IFR CLEARANCE VFR-ON-TOP

A pilot on an IFR flight plan operating in VFR weather conditions may request VFR-on-top in lieu of an assigned altitude. This permits pilots to select an altitude or flight level of their choice (subject to any ATC restrictions).

Pilots desiring to climb through a cloud, haze, smoke, or other meteorological formation and then either cancel their IFR flight plan or operate VFR-on-top may request a climb to VFR-on-top. The ATC authorization shall contain either a top report or a statement that no top report is available and a request to report reaching VFR-on-top. Additionally, the ATC authorization may contain a clearance limit, routing, and an alternative clearance if VFR-on-top is not reached by a specified altitude.

A pilot on an IFR flight plan, operating in VFR conditions, may request to climb/descend in VFR conditions.

ATC may not authorize VFR-on-top/VFR conditions operations unless the pilot requests the VFR operation or a clearance to operate in VFR conditions will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA-approved noise abatement route or altitude.

When operating in VFR conditions with an ATC authorization to maintain VFR-on-top/maintain VFR conditions, pilots on IFR flight plans must:

1. Fly at the appropriate VFR altitude as prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.159.
2. Comply with the VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria in 14 CFR Section 91.155 (Basic VFR Weather Minimums).
3. Comply with instrument flight rules that are applicable to this flight (e.g., minimum IFR altitudes, position reporting, radio communications, course to be flown, adherence to ATC clearance, etc.).

Note

Pilots should advise ATC prior to any altitude change to ensure the exchange of accurate traffic information.

ATC authorization to maintain VFR-on-top is not intended to restrict pilots so that they must operate only *above* an obscuring meteorological formation (layer). Instead, it permits operation above, below, between layers, or in areas where there is no meteorological obscuration; however, it is imperative that pilots understand that clearance to operate VFR-on-top/VFR conditions does not imply cancellation of the IFR flight plan.

Pilots operating VFR-on-top/VFR conditions may receive traffic information from ATC on other pertinent IFR or VFR aircraft; however, aircraft operating in Class B airspace/Terminal Radar Service Areas (TRSAs) shall be separated as required by FAA Order 7110.65, Air Traffic Control.

Note

When operating in VFR weather conditions, it is the pilot's responsibility to be vigilant so as to see and avoid other aircraft.

ATC will not authorize VFR or VFR-on-top operations in Class A airspace.

28.8 VFR/IFR FLIGHTS

A pilot departing VFR, either intending to or needing to obtain an IFR clearance en route, must be aware of the position of the aircraft and the relative terrain/obstructions. When accepting a clearance below the Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA)/MIA/Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA)/Off-Route Obstruction Clearance Altitude (OROCA), pilots are responsible for their own terrain/obstruction clearance until reaching the MEA/MIA/MVA/OROCA. If pilots are unable to maintain terrain/obstruction clearance, the controller should be advised and pilots should state their intentions.

Note

OROCA is an off-route altitude that provides obstruction clearance with a 1,000-foot buffer in nonmountainous terrain areas and a 2,000-foot buffer in designated mountainous areas within the U.S. This altitude may not provide signal coverage from ground-based navigational aids, air traffic control radar, or communications coverage.

28.9 ADHERENCE TO CLEARANCE

When air traffic clearance has been obtained under either visual or instrument flight rules, the pilot in command of the aircraft shall not deviate from the provisions thereof unless an amended clearance is obtained. When ATC issues a clearance or instruction, pilots are expected to execute its provisions upon receipt. ATC, in certain situations, will include the word "IMMEDIATELY" in a clearance or instruction to impress urgency of an imminent situation and expeditious compliance by the pilot is expected and necessary for safety. The addition of a VFR or other restriction (e.g., climb or descent point or time, crossing altitude, etc.) does not authorize a pilot to deviate from the route of flight or any other provision of the ATC clearance.

When a heading is assigned or a turn is requested by ATC, pilots are expected to initiate the turn promptly, complete the turn, and maintain the new heading unless issued additional instructions.

The phrase "AT PILOT'S DISCRETION" included in the altitude information of an ATC clearance means that ATC has offered the pilot the option to start climb or descent when the pilot wishes and the pilot is authorized to conduct the climb or descent at any rate and to level off temporarily at any intermediate altitude as desired; however, once the aircraft has vacated an altitude, it may not return to that altitude.

When ATC has not used the phrase "AT PILOT'S DISCRETION" nor imposed any climb or descent restrictions, pilots should initiate climb or descent promptly on acknowledgement of the clearance. Descend or climb at an optimum rate consistent with the operating characteristics of the aircraft to 1,000 feet above or below the assigned altitude, and then attempt to descend or climb at a rate of between 500 and 1,500 fpm until the assigned altitude is reached. If at any time the pilot is unable to climb or descend at a rate of at least 500 fpm, advise ATC. If it is necessary to level off at an intermediate altitude during climb or descent, advise ATC, except when leveling off at 10,000 feet Mean Sea Level (MSL) on descent, or 2,500 feet above airport elevation (prior to entering a Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area), when required for speed reduction.

Note

Leveling off at 10,000 feet MSL on descent or 2,500 feet above airport elevation (prior to entering a Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area) to comply with 14 CFR Section 91.117 airspeed restrictions is commonplace. Controllers anticipate this action and plan accordingly. Leveling off at any other time on climb or descent may seriously affect air traffic handling by ATC. Consequently, it is imperative that pilots make every effort to fulfill the above expected actions to aid ATC in safely handling and expediting traffic.

If the altitude information of an ATC DESCENT clearance includes a provision to "CROSS (fix) AT" or "AT OR ABOVE/BELOW (altitude)," the manner in which the descent is executed to comply with the crossing altitude is at the pilot's discretion. This authorization to descend at pilot discretion is only applicable to that portion of the flight to which the crossing altitude restriction applies, and the pilot is expected to comply with the crossing altitude as a provision of the clearance. Any other clearance in which pilot execution is optional will so state "AT PILOT'S DISCRETION."

In case emergency authority is used to deviate from provisions of an ATC clearance, the pilot in command shall notify ATC as soon as possible and obtain an amended clearance. In an emergency situation that does not result in a deviation from the rules prescribed in 14 CFR Part 91 but requires ATC to give priority to an aircraft, the pilot of such aircraft shall, when requested by ATC, make a report within 48 hours of such emergency situation to the manager of that ATC facility.

The guiding principle is that the last ATC clearance has precedence over the previous ATC clearance. When the route or altitude in a previously issued clearance is amended, the controller will restate applicable altitude restrictions. If altitude to maintain is changed or restated, whether prior to departure or while airborne, and previously issued altitude restrictions are omitted, those altitude restrictions are canceled, including departure procedures and Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) altitude restrictions.

Pilots of turbojet aircraft equipped with afterburner engines should advise ATC prior to takeoff if they intend to use afterburning during their climb to the en route altitude. Often, the controller may be able to plan traffic to accommodate a high-performance climb and allow the aircraft to climb to the planned altitude without restriction.

If an expedite climb or descent clearance is issued by ATC, and the altitude to maintain is subsequently changed or restated without an expedite instruction, the expedite instruction is canceled. Expedite climb/descent normally indicates to the pilot that the approximate best rate of climb/descent should be used without requiring an exceptional change in aircraft handling characteristics. Normally controllers will inform pilots of the reason for an instruction to expedite.

28.10 IFR SEPARATION STANDARDS

ATC effects separation of aircraft vertically by assigning different altitudes; longitudinally by providing an interval expressed in time or distance between aircraft on the same, converging, or crossing courses; and laterally by assigning different flight paths.

Separation will be provided between all aircraft operating on IFR flight plans except during that part of the flight (outside Class B airspace or a TRSA) being conducted on a VFR-on-top/VFR conditions clearance. Under these conditions, ATC may issue traffic advisories, but it is the sole responsibility of the pilot to be vigilant so as to see and avoid other aircraft.

When radar is employed in the separation of aircraft at the same altitude, a minimum of 3 miles separation is provided between aircraft operating within 40 miles of the radar antenna site, and 5 miles between aircraft operating beyond 40 miles from the antenna site. These minimums may be increased or decreased in certain specific situations.

Note

Certain separation standards are increased in the terminal environment when Center Radar Approach Control (CERAP) is being utilized.

28.11 SPEED ADJUSTMENTS

ATC will issue speed adjustments to pilots of radar-controlled aircraft to achieve or maintain required or desired spacing.

ATC will express all speed adjustments in terms of knots based on Indicated Airspeed (IAS) in 10-knot increments except that at or above Flight Level (FL) 240, speeds may be expressed in terms of Mach numbers in 0.01-Mach increments. The use of Mach numbers is restricted to turbojet aircraft with Mach meters.

Pilots complying with speed adjustments are expected to maintain a speed within plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed.

Unless pilot concurrence is obtained, ATC requests for speed adjustments will be in accordance with the following minimums:

1. To aircraft operating between FL 280 and 10,000 feet, a speed not less than 250 knots or the equivalent Mach number.

2. To turbine-powered aircraft operating below 10,000 feet:

   a. A speed not less than 210 knots, except:

   b. Within 20 flying miles of the airport of intended landing, a speed not less than 170 knots.

3. Reciprocating engine or turboprop aircraft within 20 flying miles of the runway threshold of the airport of intended landing, a speed not less than 150 knots.

4. To departing aircraft:

   a. Turbine-powered aircraft, a speed not less than 230 knots.

   b. Reciprocating engine aircraft, a speed not less than 150 knots.

When ATC combines a speed adjustment with a descent clearance, the sequence of delivery, with the word then between, indicates the expected order of execution.

Note

The maximum speeds below 10,000 feet as established in 14 CFR Section 91.117 still apply. If there is any doubt concerning the manner in which such a clearance is to be executed, request clarification from ATC.

If ATC determines (before an approach clearance is issued) that it is no longer necessary to apply speed adjustment procedures, they will inform the pilot to resume normal speed. Approach clearances supersede any prior speed adjustment assignments, and pilots are expected to make their own speed adjustments, as necessary, to complete the approach;however under certain circumstances, it may be necessary for ATC to issue further speed adjustments after approach clearance is issued to maintain separation between successive arrivals. Under such circumstances, previously issued speed adjustments will be restated if that speed is to be maintained or additional speed adjustments are requested. ATC must obtain pilot concurrence for speed adjustments after approach clearances are issued. Speed adjustments should not be assigned inside the final approach fix on final or a point 5 miles from the runway, whichever is closer to the runway.

The pilots retain the prerogative of rejecting the application of speed adjustment by ATC if the minimum safe airspeed for any particular operation is greater than the speed adjustment.

Note

In such cases, pilots are expected to advise ATC of the speed that will be used.

Pilots are reminded that they are responsible for rejecting the application of speed adjustment by ATC if, in their opinion, it will cause them to exceed the maximum indicated airspeed prescribed by 14 CFR Section 91.117(a), (c) and (d). *IN SUCH CASES, THE PILOT IS EXPECTED TO SO INFORM ATC.* Pilots operating at or above 10,000 feet MSL who are issued speed adjustments that exceed 250 knots IAS and are subsequently cleared below 10,000 feet MSL are expected to comply with 14 CFR Section 91.117(a).

Speed restrictions of 250 knots do not apply to U.S. registered aircraft operating beyond 12 nautical miles from the coastline within the U.S. Flight Information Region, in Class E airspace below 10,000 feet MSL; however, in airspace underlying a Class B airspace area designated for an airport, or in a VFR corridor designated through such as a Class B airspace area, pilots are expected to comply with the 200-knot speed limit specified in 14 CFR Section 91.117(c).

For operations in a Class C and Class D surface area, ATC is authorized to request or approve a speed greater than the maximum indicated airspeeds prescribed for operation within that airspace (14 CFR Section 91.117(b)).

Note

Pilots are expected to comply with the maximum speed of 200 knots when operating beneath Class B airspace or in a Class B VFR corridor (14 CFR Section 91.117(c) and (d)).

When in communications with the Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC) or approach control facility, pilots should, as a good operating practice, state any ATC-assigned speed restriction on initial radio contact associated with an ATC communications frequency change.

28.12 RUNWAY SEPARATION

Tower controllers establish the sequence of arriving and departing aircraft by requiring them to adjust flight or ground operation as necessary to achieve proper spacing. They may HOLD an aircraft short of the runway to achieve spacing between it and an arriving aircraft; the controller may instruct a pilot to EXTEND DOWNWIND in order to establish spacing from an arriving or departing aircraft. At times, a clearance may include the word IMMEDIATE (e.g., CLEARED FOR IMMEDIATE TAKEOFF). In such cases, IMMEDIATE is used for purposes of air traffic separation. It is up to the pilot to refuse the clearance if, in the pilot’s opinion, compliance would adversely affect the operation.

28.13 VISUAL SEPARATION

Visual separation is a means employed by ATC to separate aircraft in terminal areas and en route airspace in the NAS. There are two methods employed to effect this separation:

1. The tower controller sees the aircraft involved and issues instructions, as necessary, to ensure the aircraft avoid each other.

2. A pilot sees the other aircraft involved and, upon instructions from the controller, provides separation by maneuvering the aircraft to avoid it. When pilots accept responsibility to maintain visual separation, they must maintain constant visual surveillance and not pass the other aircraft until it is no longer a factor.

Note

Traffic is no longer a factor when, during approach phase, the other aircraft is in the landing phase of flight or executes a missed approach; during departure or en route, traffic is no longer a factor when the other aircraft turns away or is on a diverging course.

A pilot acceptance of instructions to follow another aircraft or provide visual separation from it is an acknowledgment that the pilot will maneuver the aircraft as necessary to avoid the other aircraft or to maintain in-trail separation. In operations conducted behind heavy jet aircraft, it is also an acknowledgment that the pilot accepts the responsibility for wake turbulence separation.

Note

When a pilot has been told to follow another aircraft or to provide visual separation from it, the pilot should promptly notify the controller if visual contact with the other aircraft is lost or cannot be maintained or if the pilot cannot accept the responsibility for the separation for any reason.

Scanning the sky for other aircraft is a key factor in collision avoidance. Pilots and copilots (or the right seat passenger) should continuously scan to cover all areas of the sky visible from the cockpit. Pilots must develop an effective scanning technique that maximizes their visual capabilities. Spotting a potential collision threat increases directly as more time is spent looking outside the aircraft. One must use timesharing techniques to scan the surrounding airspace effectively while monitoring instruments as well.

Since the eye can focus only on a narrow viewing area, effective scanning is accomplished with a series of short, regularly spaced eye movements that bring successive areas of the sky into the central visual field. Each movement should not exceed 10 degrees, and each area should be observed for at least 1 second to enable collision detection. Although many pilots seem to prefer the method of horizontal back-and-forth scanning every pilot should develop a scanning pattern that is not only comfortable but assures optimum effectiveness; however, pilots should remember that they have a regulatory responsibility (14 CFR Section 91.113(a)) to see and avoid other aircraft when weather conditions permit.

28.14 USE OF VISUAL CLEARING PROCEDURES

28.14.1 Before Takeoff

Prior to taxiing onto a runway or landing area in preparation for takeoff, pilots should scan the approach areas for possible landing traffic and execute the appropriate clearing maneuvers to provide them a clear view of the approach areas.

28.14.2 Climbs and Descents

During climbs and descents in flight conditions that permit visual detection of other traffic, pilots should execute gentle banks, left and right, at a frequency that permits continuous visual scanning of the airspace about them.

28.14.3 Straight and Level

Sustained periods of straight-and-level flight in conditions that permit visual detection of other traffic should be broken at intervals with appropriate clearing procedures to provide effective visual scanning.

28.14.4 Traffic Pattern

Entries into traffic patterns while descending create specific collision hazards and should be avoided.

28.14.5 Traffic at VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) Sites

All operators should emphasize the need for sustained vigilance in the vicinity of VORs and airway intersections due to the convergence of traffic.

28.14.6 Training Operations

Operators of pilot training programs are urged to adopt the following practices:

1. Pilots undergoing flight instruction at all levels should be requested to verbalize clearing procedures (call out clear left, right, above, or below) to instill and sustain the habit of vigilance during maneuvering.

2. High-wing airplane: Momentarily raise the wing in the direction of the intended turn and look.

3. Low-wing airplane: Momentarily lower the wing in the direction of the intended turn and look.

4. Appropriate clearing procedures should precede the execution of all turns including chandelles, lazy eights, stalls, slow flight, climbs, straight and level, spins, and other combination maneuvers.

28.15 TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM (TCAS I AND II)

TCAS I provides only proximity warning to assist the pilot in the visual acquisition of intruder aircraft. No recommended avoidance maneuvers are provided nor authorized as a direct result of a TCAS I warning. It is intended for use by smaller commuter aircraft holding 10 to 30 passenger seats and general aviation aircraft.

TCAS II provides Traffic Advisories (TAs) and Resolution Advisories (RAs). Resolution advisories provide recommended maneuvers in a vertical direction (climb or descend only) to avoid conflicting traffic. Airline aircraft, and larger commuter and business aircraft holding 31 passenger seats or more, use TCAS II equipment.

1. Each pilot who deviates from an ATC clearance in response to a TCAS II RA shall notify ATC of that deviation as soon as practical and expeditiously return to the current ATC clearance when the traffic conflict is resolved.

2. Deviations from rules, policies, or clearances should be kept to the minimum necessary to satisfy a TCAS II RA.

3. The serving IFR air traffic facility is not responsible to provide approved standard IFR separation to an aircraft after a TCAS II RA maneuver until one of the following conditions exists:

   a. The aircraft has returned to its assigned altitude and course.

   b. Alternate ATC instructions have been issued.

TCAS does not alter or diminish the pilot’s basic authority and responsibility to ensure safe flight. Since TCAS does not respond to aircraft that are not transponder equipped or aircraft with a transponder failure, TCAS alone does not ensure safe separation in every case.

At this time, no air traffic service nor handling is predicated on the availability of TCAS equipment in the aircraft.

CHAPTER 29

En Route Procedures

29.1 AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER (ARTCC) COMMUNICATIONS

29.1.1 Direct Communications, Controllers and Pilots

Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) are capable of direct communications with Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) air traffic on certain frequencies. Maximum communications coverage is possible through the use of Remote Center Air/Ground (RCAG) sites comprised of both VHF and Ultrahigh Frequency (UHF) transmitters and receivers. These sites are located throughout the U.S. Although they may be several hundred miles away from the ARTCC, they are remoted to the various ARTCCs by landlines or microwave links. Since IFR operations are expedited through the use of direct communications, pilots are requested to use these frequencies strictly for communications pertinent to the control of IFR aircraft. Flight plan filing, en route weather, weather forecasts, and similar data should be requested through FSSs, company radio, or appropriate military facilities capable of performing these services.

An ARTCC is divided into sectors. Each sector is handled by one or a team of controllers and has its own sector discrete frequency. As a flight progresses from one sector to another, the pilot is requested to change to the appropriate sector discrete frequency.

29.1.2 Air Traffic Control (ATC) Frequency Change Procedures

The following phraseology will be used by controllers to effect a frequency change:

Example:

(Aircraft identification) contact (facility name or location name and terminal function) (frequency) at (time, fix, or altitude).

Note

Pilots are expected to maintain a listening watch on the transferring controller frequency until the time, fix, or altitude specified. ATC will omit frequency change restrictions whenever pilot compliance is expected upon receipt.

The following phraseology should be utilized by pilots for establishing contact with the designated facility:

1. When operating in a radar environment:

   a. On initial contact, the pilot should inform the controller of the aircraft assigned altitude preceded by the words “LEVEL,” or “CLIMBING TO,” or “DESCENDING TO,” as appropriate, and the aircraft present vacating altitude, if applicable.

Examples:

(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), LEVEL (altitude or flight level).

(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), LEAVING (exact altitude or flight level), CLIMBING TO or DESCENDING TO (altitude of flight level).

Note

Exact altitude or flight level means to the nearest 100-foot increment. Exact altitude or flight level reports on initial contact provide ATC with information required prior to using Mode C altitude information for separation purposes.

2. When operating in a nonradar environment:

   a. On initial contact, the pilot should inform the controller of the aircraft present position, altitude, and time estimate for the next reporting point.

Example:

(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), (position), (altitude), ESTIMATING (reporting point) AT (time).

   b. After initial contact, when a position report will be made, the pilot should give the controller a complete position report.

Example:

(Name) CENTER, (aircraft identification), (position), (time), (altitude), (type of flight plan), (Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and name of next reporting point), (the name of the next succeeding reporting point), AND (remarks).

At times, controllers will ask pilots to verify they are at a particular altitude. The phraseology used will be: "VERIFY AT (altitude)." In climbing or descending situations, controllers may ask pilots to "VERIFY ASSIGNED ALTITUDE AS (altitude)." Pilots should confirm that they are at the altitude stated by the controller or the assigned altitude is correct as stated. If this is not the case, they should inform the controller of the actual altitude being maintained or the different assigned altitude.

CAUTION

Pilots should not take action to change their actual altitude or different assigned altitude to the altitude stated in the controller's verification request unless the controller specifically authorizes a change.

29.1.3 ARTCC Radio Frequency Outage

ARTCCs normally have at least one backup radio receiver and transmitter system for each frequency, which can usually be placed into service quickly with little or no disruption of ATC service. Occasionally, technical problems may cause a delay, but switchover seldom takes more than 60 seconds. When it appears the outage will not be quickly remedied, the ARTCC will usually request a nearby aircraft, if there is one, to switch to the affected frequency to broadcast communications instructions; therefore, it is important that the pilot wait at least 1 minute before deciding that the ARTCC has actually experienced a radio frequency failure. When such an outage does occur, the pilot should, if workload and equipment capability permit, maintain a listening watch on the affected frequency while attempting to comply with the following recommended communications procedures:

1. If two-way communications cannot be established with the ARTCC after changing frequencies, a pilot should attempt to recontact the transferring controller for the assignment of an alternative frequency or other instructions.

2. When an ARTCC radio frequency failure occurs after two-way communications have been established, the pilot should attempt to reestablish contact with the center on any other known ARTCC frequency, preferably that of the next responsible sector, when practicable, and ask for instructions; however, when the next normal frequency change along the route is known to involve another ATC facility, the pilot should contact that facility, if feasible, for instructions. If communications cannot be reestablished by either method, the pilot is expected to request communications instructions from the FSS appropriate to the route of flight.

Note

The exchange of information between an aircraft and an ARTCC through an FSS is quicker than relay via company radio because the FSS has direct interphone lines to the responsible ARTCC sector. Accordingly, when circumstances dictate a choice between the two, during an ARTCC frequency outage, relay via FSS radio is recommended.

29.2 POSITION REPORTING

The safety and effectiveness of traffic control depends to a large extent on accurate position reporting. In order to provide the proper separation and expedite aircraft movements, ATC must be able to make accurate estimates of the progress of every aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan.

29.2.1 Position Identification

When a position report is to be made passing a VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR) radio facility, the time reported should be the time at which the first complete reversal of the TO-FROM indicator is accomplished.

When a position report is made passing a facility by means of an airborne ADF, the time reported should be the time at which the indicator makes a complete reversal.

When an aural or a light panel indication is used to determine the time passing a reporting point, such as a fan marker, Z marker, cone of silence, or intersection of range courses, the time should be noted when the signal is first received and again when it ceases. The mean of these two times should then be taken as the actual time over the fix.

If a position is given with respect to distance and direction from a reporting point, the distance and direction should be computed as accurately as possible.

Except for terminal area transition purposes, position reports or navigation with reference to aids not established for use in the structure in which flight is being conducted will not normally be required by ATC.

29.2.2 Position Reporting Points

Code of Federal Regulations (CFRs) require pilots to maintain a listening watch on the appropriate frequency and, unless operating under the provisions of subparagraph c, to furnish position reports passing certain reporting points. Reporting points are indicated by symbols on en route charts. The designated compulsory reporting point symbol is a solid triangle ▲ and the “on request” reporting point symbol is an open triangle △. Reports passing an “on request” reporting point are only necessary when requested by ATC.

29.2.3 Position Reporting Requirements

29.2.3.1 Flights Along Airways or Routes

A position report is required by all flights regardless of altitude, including those operating in accordance with an ATC clearance specifying “VFR-on-top,” over each designated compulsory reporting point along the route being flown.

29.2.3.2 Flights Along a Direct Route

Regardless of the altitude or flight level being flown, including flights operating in accordance with an ATC clearance specifying “VFR-on-top,” pilots shall report over each reporting point used in the flight plan to define the route of flight.

29.2.3.3 Flights in a Radar Environment

When informed by ATC that their aircraft are in "RADAR CONTACT," pilots should discontinue position reports over designated reporting points. They should resume normal position reporting when ATC advises "RADAR CONTACT LOST" or "RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED."

29.2.4 Position Report Items

Position reports should include the following items:

1. Identification.
2. Position.
3. Time.
4. Altitude or flight level (include actual altitude or flight level when operating on a clearance specifying VFR-on-top).
5. Type of flight plan (not required in IFR position reports made directly to ARTCCs or approach control).
6. ETA and name of next reporting point.
7. The name only of the next succeeding reporting point along the route of flight.
8. Pertinent remarks.

29.3 ADDITIONAL REPORTS

The following reports should be made to ATC or FSS facilities without a specific ATC request:

29.3.1 At All Times

1. When vacating any previously assigned altitude or flight level for a newly assigned altitude or flight level.
2. When an altitude change will be made if operating on a clearance specifying VFR-on-top.
3. When unable to climb/descend at a rate of at least 500 feet per minute.
4. When approach has been missed. (Request clearance for specific action [e.g., to alternative airport, another approach, etc.].)
5. Change in the average true airspeed (at cruising altitude) when it varies by 5 percent or 10 knots (whichever is greater) from that filed in the flight plan.
6. The time and altitude or flight level upon reaching a holding fix or point to which cleared.
7. When leaving any assigned holding fix or point.

Note

The reports in steps 6 and 7 may be omitted by pilots of aircraft involved in instrument training at military terminal area facilities when radar service is being provided.

8. Any loss, in controlled airspace, of VOR, Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN), ADF, low-frequency navigation receiver capability, Global Positioning System (GPS) anomalies while using installed IFR-certified GPS/GNSS receivers, complete or partial loss of ILS receiver capability, or impairment of air/ground communications capability. Reports should include aircraft identification, equipment affected, degree to which the capability to operate under IFR in the ATC system is impaired, and the nature and extent of assistance desired from ATC.

Note

- Other equipment installed in an aircraft may effectively impair safety and/or the ability to operate under IFR. If such equipment (e.g., airborne weather radar) malfunctions and in the pilot's judgment either safety or IFR capabilities are affected, reports should be made as above.
- When reporting GPS anomalies, include the location and altitude of the anomaly. Be specific when describing the location and include duration of the anomaly if necessary.

9. Any information relating to the safety of flight.

29.3.1.1 When Not in Radar Contact

1. When leaving final approach fix inbound on final approach (nonprecision approach) or when leaving the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound on final approach (precision approach).
2. A corrected estimate at any time it becomes apparent that an estimate as previously submitted is in error in excess of 3 minutes.

Pilots encountering weather conditions that have not been forecast, or hazardous conditions which have been forecast, are expected to forward a report of such weather to ATC.

29.4 AIRWAYS AND ROUTE SYSTEMS

Two fixed route systems are established for air navigation purposes: the VOR and Low/Medium Frequency (L/MF) system, and the jet route system. To the extent possible, these route systems are aligned in an overlying manner to facilitate transition between each.

1. The VOR and L/MF Airway System consists of airways designated from 1,200 feet above the surface (or in some instances higher) up to but not including 18,000 feet Mean Sea Level (MSL). These airways are depicted on en route low altitude charts.

Note

The altitude limits of a Victor airway should not be exceeded except to effect transition within or between route structures.

a. Except in Alaska and coastal North Carolina, the VOR airways are predicated solely on VOR or VORTAC navigation aids; are depicted in blue on aeronautical charts; and are identified by a V (Victor) followed by the airway number (e.g., V12).

Note

Segments of VOR airways in Alaska and North Carolina (V56, V290) are based on L/MF navigation aids and charted in brown instead of blue on en route charts.

(1) A segment of an airway that is common to two or more routes carries the numbers of all the airways that coincide for that segment. When such is the case, pilots filing a flight plan need to indicate only that airway number for the route filed.

(2) With respect to position reporting, reporting points are designated for VOR Airway Systems. Flights using Victor airways will report over these points unless advised otherwise by ATC.

b. The L/MF airways (colored airways) are predicated solely on L/MF navigation aids; are depicted in brown on aeronautical charts; and are identified by color name and number (e.g., Amber One). Green and red airways are plotted east and west. Amber and blue airways are plotted north and south.

Note

Except for G13 in North Carolina, the colored airway system exists only in the state of Alaska. All other such airways formerly so designated in the conterminous U.S. have been rescinded.

2. The jet route system consists of jet routes established from 18,000 feet MSL to Flight Level (FL) 450 inclusive.

a. These routes are depicted on en route high altitude charts. Jet routes are depicted in black on aeronautical charts and are identified by a J (Jet) followed by the airway number (e.g., J12). Jet routes, as VOR airways, are predicated solely on VOR or VORTAC navigation facilities (except in Alaska).

Note

Segments of jet routes in Alaska are based on L/MF navigation aids and are charted in brown color instead of black on en route charts.

b. With respect to position reporting, reporting points are designated for jet route systems. Flights using jet routes will report over these points unless otherwise advised by ATC.

29.4.1 Area Navigation (RNAV) Routes

1. RNAV is a method of navigation that permits aircraft operations on any desired course within the coverage of station-referenced navigation signals or within the limits of a self-contained system capability or combination of these.

2. Fixed RNAV routes are permanent, published routes that can be flight planned for use by aircraft with RNAV capability. A previously established fixed RNAV route system has been terminated except for a few high altitude routes in Alaska.

3. Random RNAV routes are direct routes, based on area navigation capability, between waypoints defined in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates, degree-distance fixes, or offsets from established routes/airways at a specified distance and direction. Radar monitoring by ATC is required on all random RNAV routes.

Operation above FL 450 may be conducted on a point-to-point basis. Navigational guidance is provided on an area basis utilizing those facilities depicted on the en route high altitude charts.

29.4.2 Radar Vectors

Controllers may vector aircraft within controlled airspace for separation purposes, noise abatement considerations, when an operational advantage will be realized by the pilot or the controller, or when requested by the pilot. Vectors outside of controlled airspace will be provided only on pilot request. Pilots will be advised as to what the vector is to achieve when the vector is controller initiated and will take the aircraft off a previously assigned nonradar route. To the extent possible, aircraft operating on RNAV routes will be allowed to remain on their own navigation.

When flying in Canadian airspace, pilots are cautioned to review Canadian Air Regulations.

1. Special attention should be given to the parts that differ from U.S. CFRs.

a. The Canadian Airways Class B airspace restriction is an example. Class B airspace is all controlled low level airspace above 12,500 feet MSL or the Minimum En Route Altitude (MEA), whichever is higher, within which only IFR and controlled Visual Flight Rules (VFR) flights are permitted. (Low level airspace means an airspace designated and defined as such in the Designated Airspace Handbook.)

b. Regardless of the weather conditions or the height of the terrain, no person shall operate an aircraft under VFR conditions within Class B airspace except in accordance with a clearance for VFR flight issued by ATC.

c. The requirement for entry into Class B airspace is a student pilot permit (under the guidance or control of a flight instructor).

d. VFR flight requires visual contact with the ground or water at all times.

2. Segments of VOR airways and high level routes in Canada are based on L/MF navigation aids and are charted in brown color instead of blue on en route charts.

29.5 AIRWAY OR ROUTE COURSE CHANGES

Pilots of aircraft are required to adhere to airways or routes being flown. Special attention must be given to this requirement during course changes. Each course change consists of variables that make the technique applicable in each case a matter only the pilot can resolve. Some variables that must be considered are turn radius, wind effect, airspeed, degree of turn, and cockpit instrumentation. An early turn, as illustrated in Figure 29-1, is one method of adhering to airways or routes. The use of any available cockpit instrumentation, such as Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), may be used by the pilot to lead the turn when making course changes. This is consistent with the intent of 14 CFR Section 91.181, which requires pilots to operate along the centerline of an airway and along the direct course between navigational aids or fixes.

Turns that begin at or after fix passage may exceed airway or route boundaries. Figure 29-1 contains an example flight track depicting this, together with an example of an early turn.

Without such actions as leading a turn, aircraft operating in excess of 290 knots True Airspeed (TAS) can exceed the normal airway or route boundaries depending on the amount of course change required, wind direction and velocity,

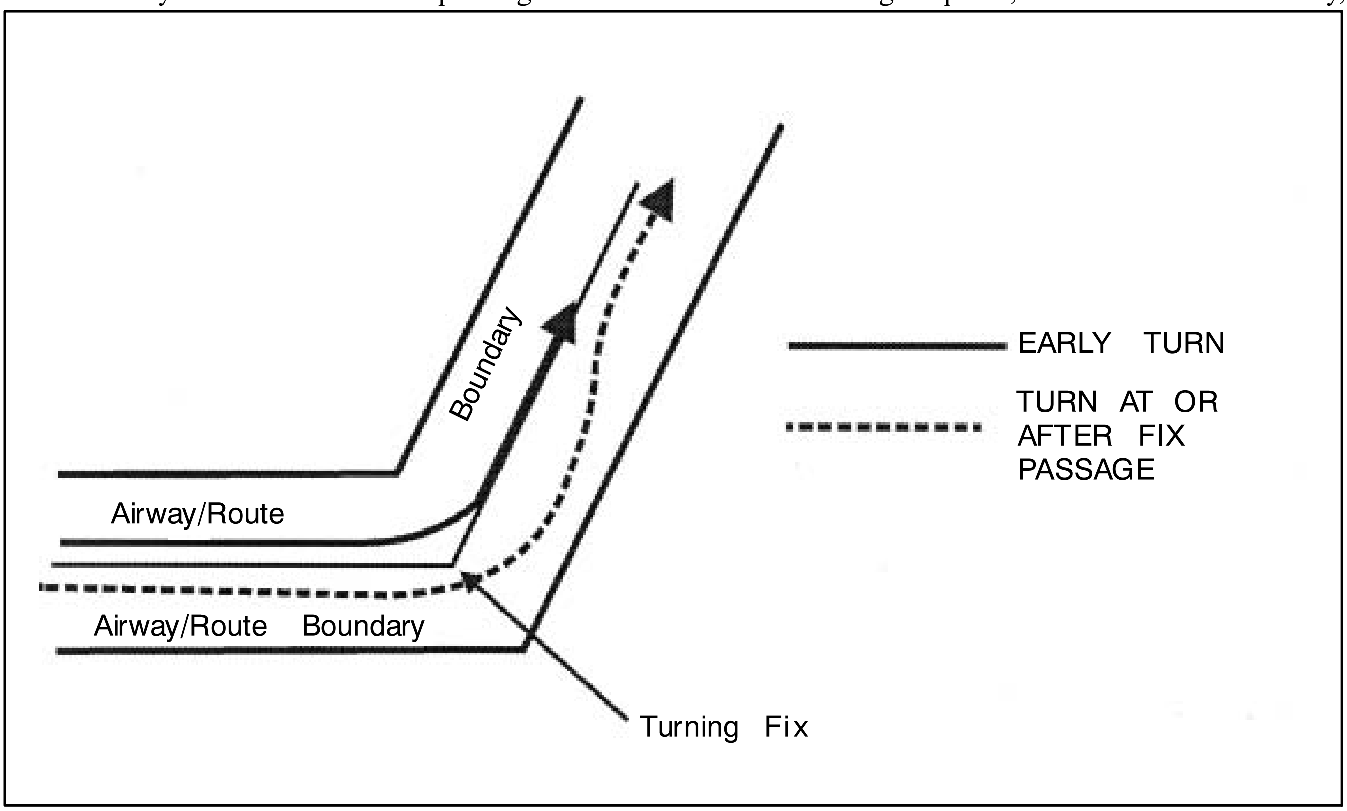


Figure 29-1. Adhering to Airways or Routes

the character of the turn fix (DME, overhead navigation aid, or intersection), and the pilot technique in making a course change. For example, a flight operating at 17,000 feet MSL with a TAS of 400 knots, a 25-degree bank, and a course change of more than 40 degrees would exceed the width of the airway or route (e.g., 4 nautical miles each side of centerline); however, in the airspace below 18,000 feet MSL, operations in excess of 290 knots TAS are not prevalent and the provision of additional IFR separation in all course change situations for the occasional aircraft making a turn in excess of 290 knots TAS creates an unacceptable waste of airspace and imposes a penalty upon the preponderance of traffic that operates at low speeds. Consequently, the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) expects pilots to lead turns and take other actions they consider necessary during course changes to adhere as closely as possible to the airways or route being flown.

Due to the high airspeeds used at 18,000 feet MSL and above, FAA provides additional IFR separation protection for course changes made at such altitude levels.

29.6 CHANGEOVER POINT (COP)

Changeover Points (COPs) are prescribed for Federal airways, jet routes, area navigation routes, or other direct routes for which an MEA is designated under 14 CFR Part 95. The COP is a point along the route or airway segment between two adjacent navigation facilities or waypoints where changeover in navigation guidance should occur. At this point, the pilot should change navigation receiver frequency from the station behind the aircraft to the station ahead.

The COP is normally located midway between the navigation facilities for straight route segments or at the intersection of radials or courses forming a dogleg in the case of dogleg route segments. When the COP is not located at the midway point, aeronautical charts will depict the COP location and give the mileage to the radio aids.

COPs are established for the purpose of preventing loss of navigation guidance, to prevent frequency interference from other facilities, and to prevent use of different facilities by different aircraft in the same airspace. Pilots are urged to observe COPs to the fullest extent.

29.7 REDUCED VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMUMS (RVSM)

Reduced Vertical Separation Minimums (RVSM) reduce the vertical separation between FL 290 to 410 from 2,000 feet to 1,000 feet and make six additional FLs available for operation. The additional FLs enable more aircraft to fly more time/fuel efficient profiles and provide the potential for enhanced airspace capacity. RVSM operators must receive authorization from the appropriate civil aviation authority. RVSM aircraft must meet required equipage and altitude-keeping performance standards. Operators must operate in accordance with RVSM policies/procedures applicable to the airspace where they are flying. Additional information is found in the Aeronautical Information Manual/Federal Aviation Regulation (AIM/FAR).

29.8 HOLDING

Whenever an aircraft is cleared to a fix other than the destination airport and delay is expected, it is the responsibility of the ATC controller to issue complete holding instructions (unless the pattern is charted), an EFC, and best estimate of any additional en route/terminal delay.

Note

Only those holding patterns depicted on U.S. government or commercially produced (meeting FAA requirements) low/high altitude en route, area, or Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) charts should be used.

If the holding pattern is charted and the controller does not issue complete holding instructions, the pilot is expected to hold as depicted on the appropriate chart. When the pattern is charted, the controller may omit all holding instructions except the charted holding direction and the statement “AS PUBLISHED” (e.g., “HOLD EAST AS PUBLISHED”). Controllers shall always issue complete holding instructions when pilots request them.

If no holding pattern is charted and holding instructions have not been issued, the pilot should ask ATC for holding instructions prior to reaching the fix. This procedure will eliminate the possibility of an aircraft entering a holding pattern other than that desired by ATC. If unable to obtain holding instructions prior to reaching the fix (due to frequency congestion, stuck microphone, etc.), enter a standard pattern on the course on which the aircraft approached the fix and request further clearance as soon as possible. In this event, the altitude/flight level of the aircraft at the clearance limit will be protected so that separation will be provided as required.

When an aircraft is 3 minutes or less from a clearance limit and a clearance beyond the fix has not been received, the pilot is expected to start a speed reduction so that the aircraft will cross the fix, initially, at or below the maximum holding airspeed.

When no delay is expected, the controller should issue a clearance beyond the fix as soon as possible and, whenever possible, at least 5 minutes before the aircraft reaches the clearance limit.

Pilots should report to ATC the time and altitude/flight level at which the aircraft reaches the clearance limit and report leaving the clearance limit.

When holding at a VOR station, pilots should begin the turn to the outbound leg at the time of the first complete reversal of the TO-FROM indicator.

Patterns at the most generally used holding fixes are depicted (charted) on U.S. Government or commercially produced (meeting FAA requirements) low/high altitude en route, area, and STAR charts. Pilots are expected to hold in the pattern depicted unless specifically advised otherwise by ATC.

Note

Holding patterns that protect for a maximum holding airspeed other than the standard may be depicted by an icon, unless otherwise depicted. The icon is a standard holding pattern symbol (racetrack) with the airspeed restriction shown in the center. In other cases, the airspeed restriction will be depicted next to the standard holding pattern symbol.

An ATC clearance requiring an aircraft to hold at a fix where the pattern is not charted will include the following information (Figure 29-2):

1. Direction of holding from the fix in terms of the eight cardinal compass points (e.g., N, NE, E, SE, etc.).

2. Holding fix (the fix may be omitted if included at the beginning of the transmission as the clearance limit).

3. Radial, course, bearing, airway or route on which the aircraft is to hold.

4. Leg length in miles if DME or RNAV is to be used (leg length will be specified in minutes on pilot request or if the controller considers it necessary).

5. Direction of turn if left turns are to be made, the pilot requests, or the controller considers it necessary.

6. Time to expect further clearance and any pertinent additional delay information.

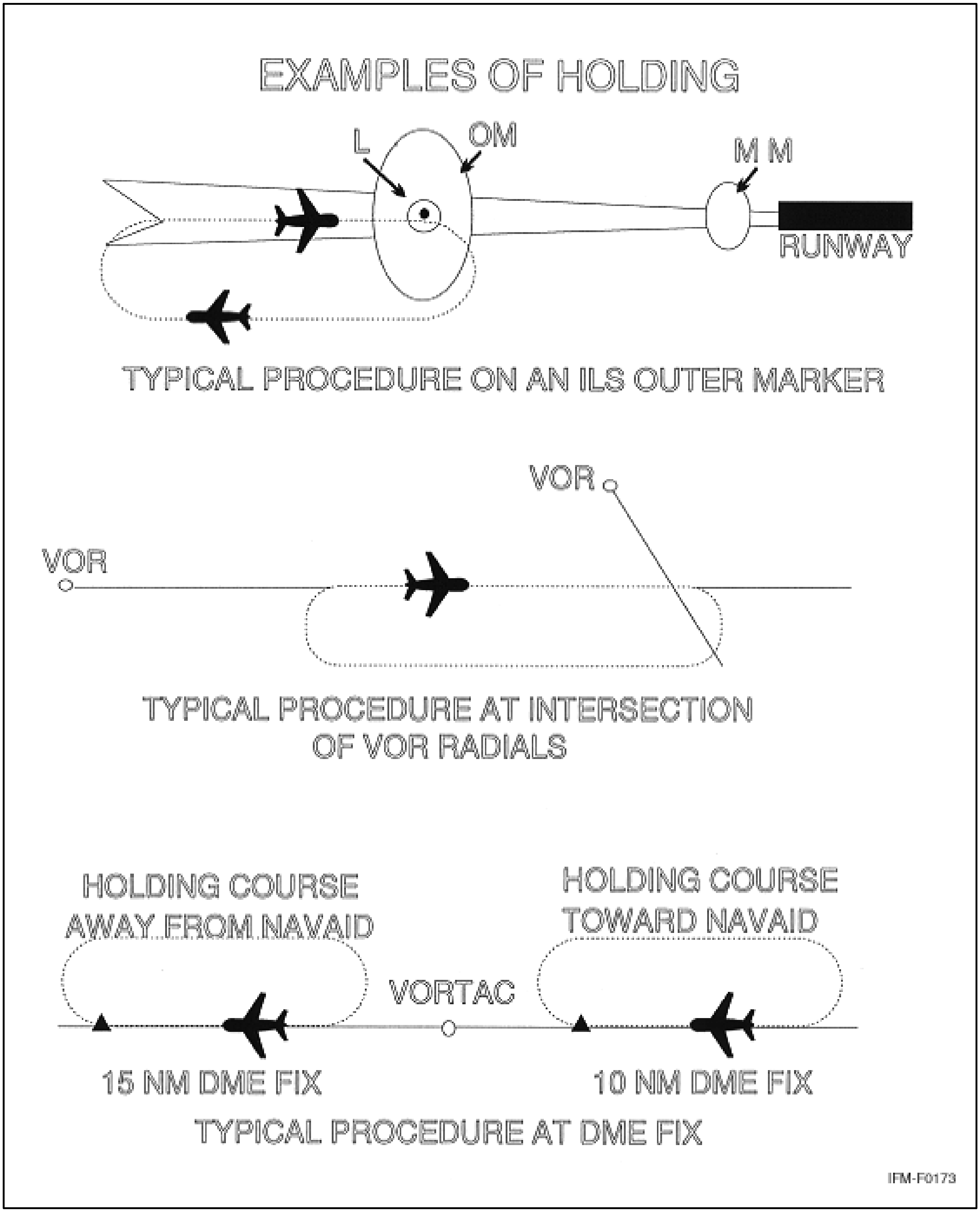


Figure 29-2. Holding Patterns

Holding pattern airspace protection is based on the following procedures.

29.8.1 Descriptive Terms

29.8.1.1 Standard Pattern

Right turns (Figure 29-3).

29.8.1.2 Nonstandard Pattern

Left turns.

29.8.2 Airspeeds

All aircraft may hold at the following altitudes and maximum holding airspeeds:

Altitude (MSL)	Airspeed (KIAS)
Minimum Holding Altitude (MHA) to 6,000 feet	200
6,001 feet to 14,000 feet	230
14,001 feet and above	265

The following are exceptions to the maximum holding airspeeds:

1. Holding patterns from 6,001 to 14,000 feet may be restricted to a maximum airspeed of 210 Knots Indicated Airspeed (KIAS). This nonstandard pattern will be depicted by an icon.

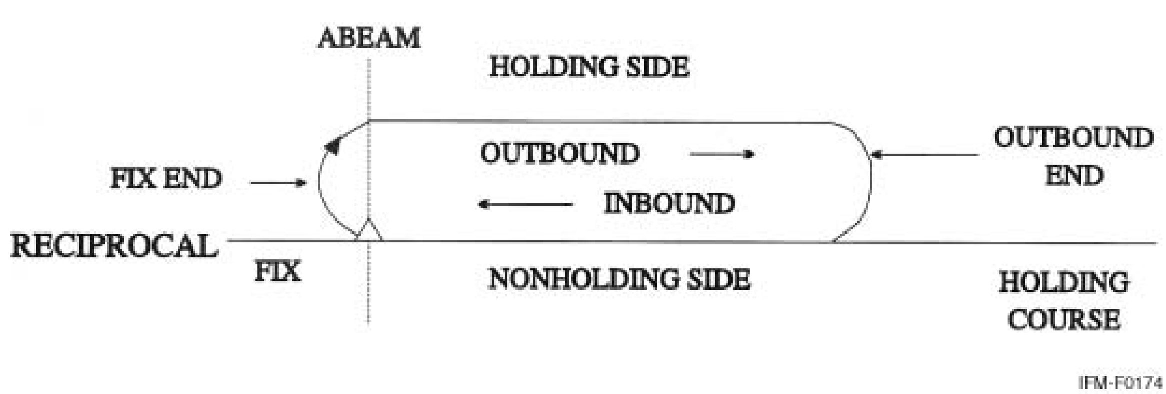


Figure 29-3. Holding Pattern Descriptive Terms

2. Holding patterns may be restricted to a maximum airspeed of 175 KIAS. This nonstandard pattern will be depicted by an icon. Holding patterns restricted to 175 KIAS will generally be found on Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs) applicable to Category A and B aircraft only.

3. Holding patterns at United States Air Force (USAF) airfields only — 310 KIAS maximum, unless otherwise depicted.

4. Holding patterns at Navy fields only — 230 KIAS maximum, unless otherwise depicted.

5. When a climb-in hold is specified by a published procedure (e.g., "Climb-in holding pattern to depart XYZ VORTAC at or above 10,000" or "All aircraft climb-in TRUCK holding pattern to cross TRUCK Int at or above 11,500 before proceeding on course"), additional obstacle protection area has been provided to allow for greater airspeeds in the climb for those aircraft requiring them. The holding pattern template for a maximum airspeed of 310 KIAS has been used for the holding pattern if there are no airspeed restrictions on the holding pattern as specified in step 2 of this section. Where the holding pattern is restricted to a maximum airspeed of 175 KIAS, the 200 KIAS holding pattern template has been applied for published climb-in hold procedures for altitudes 6,000 feet and below and the 230 KIAS holding pattern template has been applied for altitudes above 6,000 feet. The airspeed limitations in 14 CFR Section 91.117, Aircraft Speed, still apply.

The following phraseology may be used by an ATCS to advise a pilot of the maximum holding airspeed for a holding pattern airspace area:

PHRASEOLOGY — (AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION) (holding instructions, when needed) MAXIMUM HOLDING AIRSPEED IS (speed in knots).

29.8.3 Entry Procedures

(Figure 29-4.)

29.8.3.1 Parallel Procedure

When approaching the holding fix from anywhere in sector (a), the parallel entry procedure would be to turn to a heading to parallel the holding course outbound on the nonholding side for 1 minute, turn in the direction of the holding pattern through more than 180 degrees, and return to the holding fix or intercept the holding course inbound.

29.8.3.2 Teardrop Procedure

When approaching the holding fix from anywhere in sector (b), the teardrop entry procedure would be to fly to the fix, turn outbound to a heading for a 30-degree teardrop entry within the pattern (on the holding side) for a period of 1 minute, then turn in the direction of the holding pattern to intercept the inbound holding course.

29.8.3.3 Direct Entry Procedure

When approaching the holding fix from anywhere in sector (c), the direct entry procedure would be to fly directly to the fix and turn to follow the holding pattern.

Although other entry procedures may enable the aircraft to enter the holding pattern and remain within protected airspace, the parallel, teardrop, and direct entries are the procedures for entry and holding recommended by the FAA.

29.8.4 Timing

29.8.4.1 Inbound Leg

1. At or below 14,000 feet MSL: 1 minute.

2. Above 14,000 feet MSL: 1-1/2 minutes.

Note

The initial outbound leg should be flown for 1 minute or 1-1/2 minutes (appropriate to altitude). Timing for subsequent outbound legs should be adjusted, as necessary, to achieve proper inbound leg time. Pilots may use any navigational means available (e.g., DME, RNAV, etc.), to ensure the appropriate inbound leg times.

29.8.4.2 Outbound Leg

Timing begins over or abeam the fix, whichever occurs later. If the abeam position cannot be determined, start timing when turn to outbound is completed.

29.8.5 Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)

DME holding is subject to the same entry and holding procedures except that distances (nautical miles) are used in lieu of time values. The outbound course of a DME holding pattern is called the outbound leg of the pattern. The length of the outbound leg will be specified by the controller. The end of the outbound leg is determined by the odometer reading (Figures 29-5 and 29-6).

Note

- When the inbound course is toward the Navigation Aid (NAVAID), the fix distance is 10 nm, and the leg length is 5 nm, the end of the outbound leg will be reached when the DME reads 15 nm.

- When the inbound course is away from the NAVAID, the fix distance is 27 nm, and the leg length is 8 nm, the end of the outbound leg will be reached when the DME reads 20 nm.

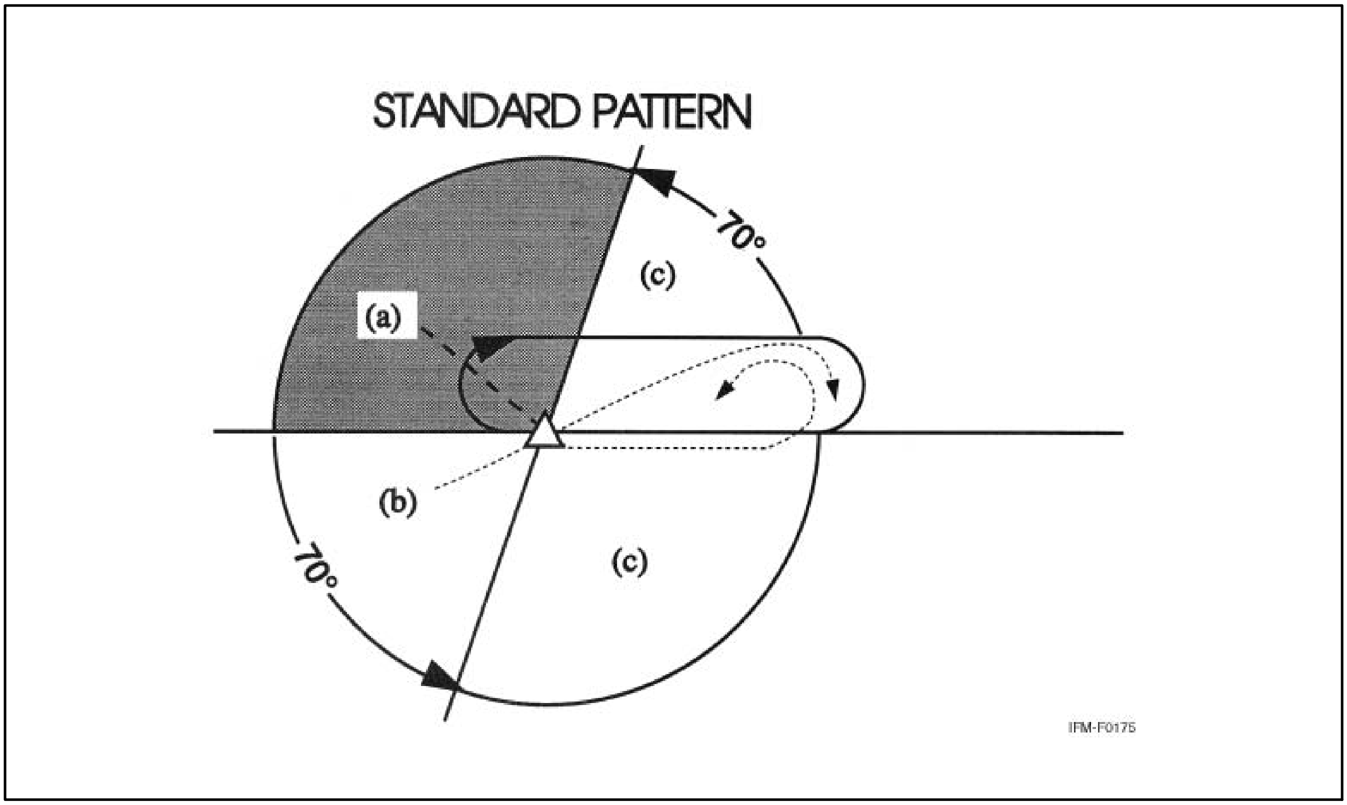


Figure 29-4. Holding Pattern Entry Procedures

29.8.6 Pilot Action

Start speed reduction when 3 minutes or less from the holding fix. Cross the holding fix, initially, at or below the maximum holding airspeed.

Make all turns during entry and while holding at:

1. 3 degrees per second; or
2. 30-degree bank angle; or
3. 25-degree bank, provided a flight director system is used.

Note

Use whichever requires the least bank angle.

Compensate for wind effect primarily by drift correction on the inbound and outbound legs. When outbound, triple the inbound drift correction to avoid major turning adjustments (e.g., if correcting left by 8 degrees when inbound, correct right by 24 degrees when outbound).

Determine entry turn from aircraft heading upon arrival at the holding fix; ±5 degrees in heading is considered to be within allowable good operating limits for determining entry.

Advise ATC immediately what increased airspeed is necessary, if any, due to turbulence, icing, etc., or if unable to accomplish any part of the holding procedures. When such higher speeds become no longer necessary, operate according to the appropriate published holding speed and notify ATC.

29.8.7 Nonstandard Holding Pattern

Fix end and outbound end turns are made to the left. Entry procedures to a nonstandard pattern are oriented in relation to the 70-degree line on the holding side just as in the standard pattern.

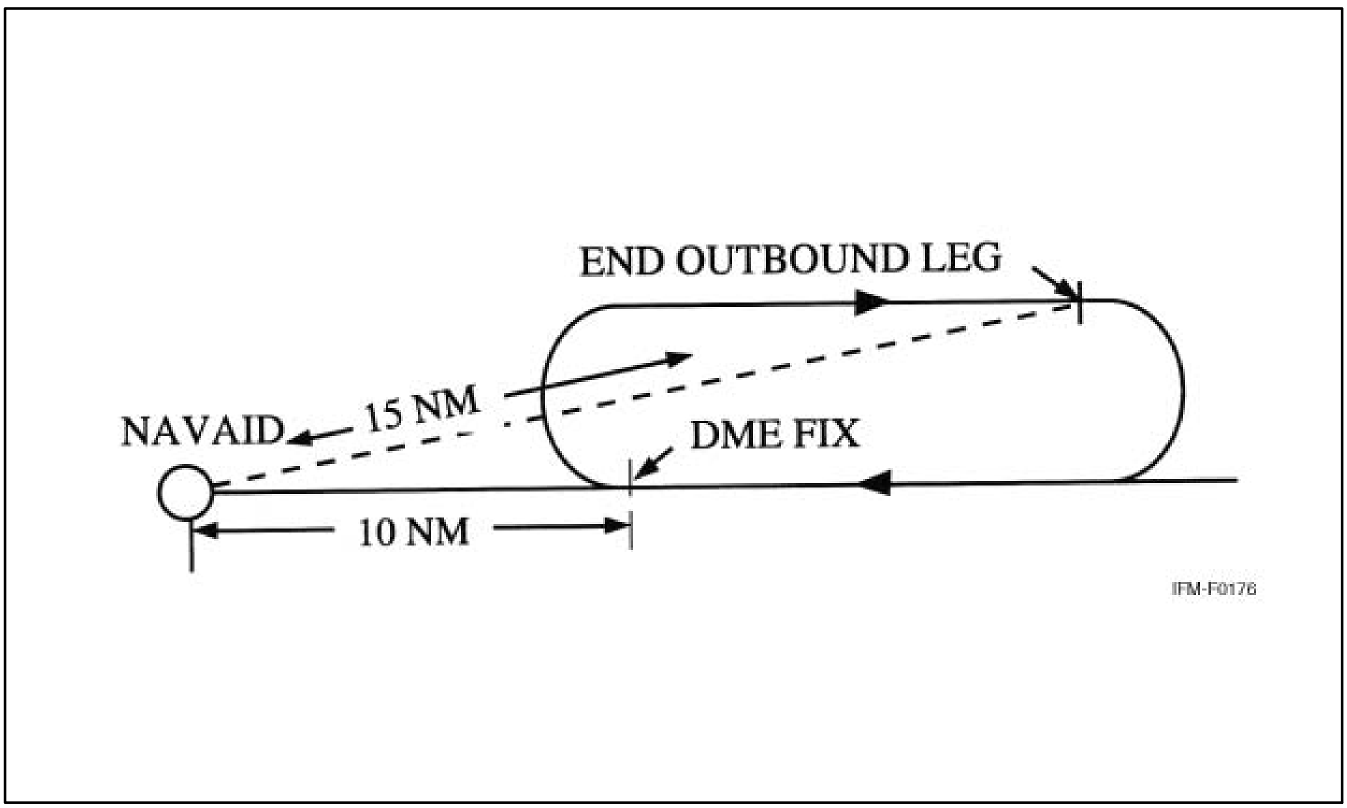


Figure 29-5. Inbound Leg Toward NAVAID

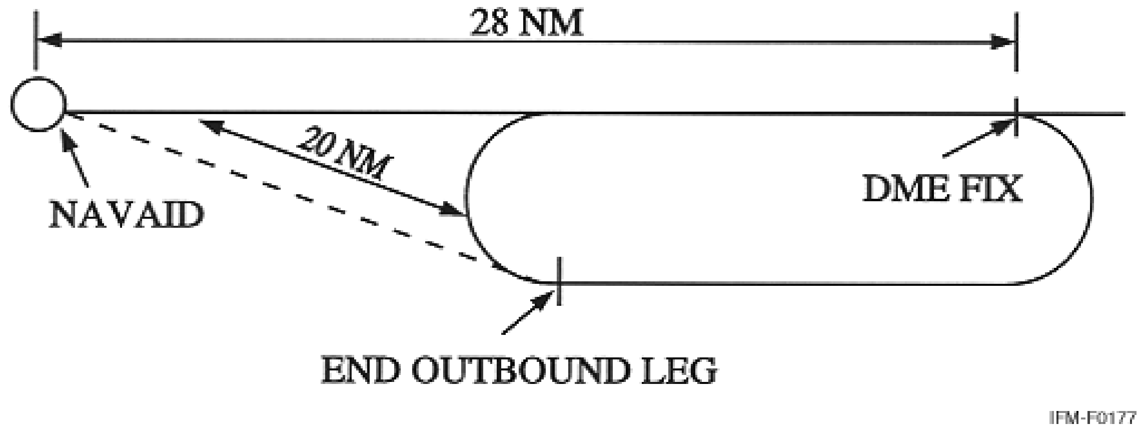


Figure 29-6. Inbound Leg Away from NAVAID

When holding at a fix and instructions are received specifying the time of departure from the fix, the pilot should adjust the aircraft flightpath within the limits of the established holding pattern in order to leave the fix at the exact time specified. After departing the holding fix, normal speed is to be resumed with respect to other governing speed requirements, such as terminal area speed limits, specific ATC requests, etc. Where the fix is associated with an instrument approach and timed approaches are in effect, a procedure turn shall not be executed unless the pilot advises ATC, as aircraft holding are expected to proceed inbound on final approach directly from the holding pattern when approach clearance is received.

Radar surveillance of outer fix holding pattern airspace areas.

1. Whenever aircraft are holding at an outer fix, ATC will usually provide radar surveillance of the outer fix holding pattern airspace area, or any portion of it, if it is shown on the controller radar scope.

2. The controller will attempt to detect any holding aircraft that stray outside the holding pattern airspace area and will assist any detected aircraft to return to the assigned airspace area.

Note

Many factors could prevent ATC from providing this additional service, such as workload, number of targets, precipitation, ground clutter, and radar system capability. These circumstances may make it unfeasible to maintain radar identification of aircraft to detect aircraft straying from the holding pattern. The provision of this service depends entirely upon whether controllers believe they are in a position to provide it and does not relieve pilots of their responsibility to adhere to an accepted ATC clearance.

3. If an aircraft is established in a published holding pattern at an assigned altitude above the published Minimum Holding Altitude (MHA) and subsequently cleared for the approach, the pilot may descend to the published minimum holding altitude. The holding pattern would only be a segment of the IAP *if* it is published on the instrument procedure chart and is used in lieu of a procedure turn.

For those holding patterns where there are no published minimum holding altitudes, the pilot, upon receiving an approach clearance, must maintain the last assigned altitude until leaving the holding pattern and established on the inbound course; thereafter, the published minimum altitude of the route segment being flown will apply. It is expected that the pilot will be assigned a holding altitude that will permit a normal descent on the inbound course.

29.9 UPDATING OF WEATHER DATA

Pilots shall periodically determine that their intended route of flight remains clear of aviation Severe Weather Watch Bulletins (WWs) and that weather forecasts for each successive intermediate destination and alternate, when required, continue to satisfy the minimums established for the aircraft and the filing status (IFR/VFR). These updates are readily available from U.S. Navy, Marine Corps, and Air Force weather activities through use of the Pilot-to-Metro Service (PMSV), Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) broadcasts, selected VOR and low-frequency NAVAIDs, and data provided by Air Route Traffic Control Centers (ARTCCs) and Flight Service Stations (FSSs) in the form of weather advisory broadcasts and Hazardous In-Flight Weather Advisory Services (HIWAS). When dealing with situations where adverse weather is involved, such as weather associated with Significant Meteorological Information (SIGMETs) or WWs, pilots need to obtain more specific guidance or further technical evaluation of meteorological conditions that could affect the flight. When faced with this situation, the pilot should initiate communications with one of the activities listed below (in order of preference):

1. Military Pilot-to-Metro Service (PMSV).

2. FAA En Route Flight Advisory Service (EFAS).

3. The nearest FSS.

When utilizing full-service PMSV or EFAS, the pilot will have access to a qualified meteorological forecaster. Most PMSVs and FSSs are 24 hour facilities, but EFAS runs for specific daytime hours and pertains only to the en route portion of flight. EFAS is still the preferred method of obtaining en route hazardous weather information if the pilot cannot utilize PMSV because, unlike FSSs, EFASs are dedicated specifically to weather updates.

CHAPTER 30

Terminal Procedures

30.1 STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL (STAR), FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM PROCEDURES (FMSP) FOR ARRIVALS

A Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) is an Air Traffic Control (ATC) coded IFR arrival route established for application to arriving Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) aircraft destined for certain airports. FMSPs for arrivals serve the same purpose but are only used by aircraft equipped with a Flight Management System (FMS). The purpose of both is to simplify clearance delivery procedures and facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach procedures.

1. STARs/FMSPs may have mandatory speeds and/or crossing altitudes published. Other STARs may have planning information depicted to inform pilots what clearances or restrictions to “expect.” “Expect” altitudes/speeds are not considered STAR/FMSP crossing restrictions until verbally issued by ATC.

Note

The “expect” altitudes/speeds are published so that pilots may have the information for planning purposes. These altitudes/speeds should not be used in the event of lost communications unless ATC has specifically advised the pilot to expect these altitudes/speeds as part of a further clearance.

2. Pilots navigating on a STAR/FMSP shall maintain last assigned altitude until receiving authorization to descend so as to comply with all published/issued restrictions. This authorization will contain the phrase “DESCEND VIA.”

   a. A “descend via” clearance authorizes pilots to navigate vertically and laterally, in accordance with the depicted procedure, to meet published restrictions. Vertical navigation is at pilot discretion; however, adherence to published altitude crossing restrictions and speeds is mandatory unless otherwise cleared. (Minimum En Route Altitudes [MEAs] are not considered restrictions; however, pilots are expected to remain above MEAs.)

   b. Pilots cleared for vertical navigation using the phrase “descend via” shall inform ATC upon initial contact with a new frequency.

Pilots of IFR aircraft destined to locations for which STARs have been published may be issued a clearance containing a STAR whenever ATC deems it appropriate.

Use of STARs requires pilot possession of at least the approved chart. As with any ATC clearance or portion thereof, it is the responsibility of each pilot to accept or refuse an issued STAR. Pilots should notify ATC if they do not wish to use a STAR by placing “NO STAR” in the remarks section of the flight plan or by the less desirable method of verbally stating the same to ATC.

STAR charts are published in the Terminal Procedures Publications (TPPs) and are available on subscription from the National Aeronautical Charting Office, AVN-500.

30.2 LOCAL FLOW TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM

This program is a continuing effort by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) to enhance safety, minimize the impact of aircraft noise, and conserve aviation fuel. The enhancement of safety and reduction of noise is achieved in this program by minimizing low altitude maneuvering of arriving turbojet and turboprop aircraft weighing more than 12,500 pounds and by permitting departure aircraft to climb to higher altitudes sooner as arrivals are operating at higher altitudes at the points where their flightpaths cross. The application of these procedures also reduces exposure time between controlled aircraft and uncontrolled aircraft at the lower altitudes in and around the terminal environment. Fuel conservation is accomplished by absorbing any necessary arrival delays for aircraft included in this program operating at the higher and more fuel-efficient altitudes.

A fuel-efficient descent is basically an uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment) from cruising altitude to the point when level flight is necessary for the pilot to stabilize the aircraft on final approach. The procedure for a fuel-efficient descent is based on an altitude loss that is most efficient for the majority of aircraft being served. This will generally result in a descent gradient window of 250 to 350 feet per nautical mile.

When crossing altitudes and speed restrictions are issued verbally or are depicted on a chart, ATC will expect the pilot to descend first to the crossing altitude and then reduce speed. Verbal clearances for descent will normally permit an uninterrupted descent in accordance with the procedure as described above. Acceptance of a charted fuel-efficient descent (Runway Profile Descent) clearance requires the pilot to adhere to the altitudes, speeds, and headings depicted on the charts unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

Note

Pilots receiving a clearance for a fuel-efficient descent are expected to advise ATC if they do not have runway profile descent charts published for that airport or are unable to comply with the clearance.

30.3 APPROACH CONTROL

Approach control is responsible for controlling all instrument flight operating within its area of responsibility. Approach control may serve one or more airfields, and control is exercised primarily by direct pilot and controller communications. Prior to arriving at the destination radio facility, instructions will be received from the Air Route Traffic Control Center (ARTCC) to contact approach control on a specified frequency.

30.3.1 Radar Approach Control

1. Where radar is approved for approach control service, it is used not only for radar approaches (Airport Surveillance Radar [ASR] and Precision Approach Radar [PAR]) but is also used to provide vectors in conjunction with published nonradar approaches based on radio Navigation Aids (NAVAIDs) (Instrument Landing System [ILS], Microwave Landing System [MLS], VHF Omnidirectional Range [VOR], Non-Directional Beacon [NDB], Tactical Air Navigation [TACAN]). Radar vectors can provide course guidance and expedite traffic to the final approach course of any established Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) or to the traffic pattern for a visual approach. Approach control facilities that provide this radar service will operate in the following manner:

   a. Arriving aircraft are either cleared to an outer fix most appropriate to the route being flown with vertical separation and, if required, given holding information or, when radar handoffs are effected between the ARTCC and approach control, or between two approach control facilities, aircraft are cleared to the airport or to a fix so located that the handoff will be completed prior to the time the aircraft reaches the fix. When radar handoffs are utilized, successive arriving flights may be handed off to approach control with radar separation in lieu of vertical separation.

b. After release to approach control, aircraft are vectored to the final approach course (ILS, MLS, VOR, ADF, etc.). Radar vectors and altitude or flight levels will be issued as required for spacing and separating aircraft; *therefore, pilots must not deviate from the headings issued by approach control.* Aircraft will normally be informed when it is necessary to vector across the final approach course for spacing or other reasons. If approach course crossing is imminent and the pilot has not been informed that the aircraft will be vectored across the final approach course, the pilot should query the controller.

c. The pilot is not expected to turn inbound on the final approach course unless an approach clearance has been issued. This clearance will normally be issued with the final vector for interception of the final approach course, and the vector will be such as to enable the pilot to establish the aircraft on the final approach course prior to reaching the final approach fix.

d. In the case of aircraft already inbound on the final approach course, approach clearance will be issued prior to the aircraft reaching the final approach fix. When established inbound on the final approach course, radar separation will be maintained and the pilot will be expected to complete the approach utilizing the approach aid designated in the clearance (ILS, MLS, VOR, radio beacons, etc.) as the primary means of navigation; therefore, once established on the final approach course, pilots must not deviate from it unless a clearance to do so is received from ATC.

e. After passing the final approach fix on final approach, aircraft are expected to continue inbound on the final approach course and complete the approach or effect the missed approach procedure published for that airport.

2. ARTCCs are approved for and may provide approach control services to specific airports. The radar systems used by these centers do not provide the same precision as an ASR/PAR used by approach control facilities and towers, and the update rate is not as fast; therefore, pilots may be requested to report established on the final approach course.

3. Whether aircraft are vectored to the appropriate final approach course or provide their own navigation on published routes to it, radar service is automatically terminated when the landing is completed or when instructed to change to advisory frequency at uncontrolled airports, whichever occurs first.

30.4 ADVANCE INFORMATION ON INSTRUMENT APPROACH

When landing at airports with approach control services and where two or more IAPs are published, pilots will be provided in advance of their arrival with the type of approach to expect or informed that they may be vectored for a visual approach. This information will be broadcast either by a controller or on Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS). It will not be furnished when the visibility is 3 miles or better and the ceiling is at or above the highest initial approach altitude established for any low-altitude IAP for the airport.

The purpose of this information is to aid the pilot in planning arrival actions; however, it is not an ATC clearance or commitment and is subject to change. Pilots should bear in mind that fluctuating weather, shifting winds, blocked runway, etc. are conditions that may result in changes to approach information previously received. It is important that pilots advise ATC immediately if they are unable to execute the approach ATC advised will be used or if they prefer another type of approach.

Aircraft destined to uncontrolled airports, which have automated weather data with broadcast capability, should monitor the (Automated Surface Observing System/Automated Weather Observing System [ASOS/AWOS]) frequency to ascertain the current weather for the airport. Pilots shall advise ATC when They have received the broadcast weather and state their intentions.

When making an IFR approach to an airport not served by a tower or FSS, after ATC advises “CHANGE TO ADVISORY FREQUENCY APPROVED,” you should broadcast your intentions, including the type of approach being executed, your position, and when over the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or when over the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach). Continue to monitor the appropriate frequency (e.g., UNICOM) for reports from other pilots.

30.5 INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE CHARTS

14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Section 91.175(a), Instrument Approaches to Civil Airports, requires the use of Standard Instrument Approach Procedures (SIAPs) prescribed for the airport in 14 CFR Part 97 unless otherwise authorized by the Administrator (including ATC). 14 CFR Section 91.175(g), Military Airports, requires civil pilots flying into or out of military airports to comply with the IAP and takeoff and landing minimums prescribed by the authority having jurisdiction at those airports.

1. All IAPs (standard and special, civil and military) are based on joint civil and military criteria contained in the U.S. Standard for Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS). The design of IAPs based on criteria contained in TERPS takes into account the interrelationship between airports, facilities, and the surrounding environment, terrain, obstacles, noise sensitivity, etc. Appropriate altitudes, courses, headings, distances, and other limitations are specified and, once approved, the procedures are published and distributed by government and commercial cartographers as instrument approach charts.

2. Not all IAPs are published in chart form. Radar IAPs are established where requirements and facilities exist but they are printed in tabular form in appropriate U.S. Government Flight Information Publications.

3. Straight-in IAPs are identified by the navigational system providing the final approach guidance and the runway to which the approach is aligned (e.g., VOR RWY 13). Circling only approaches are identified by the navigational system providing final approach guidance and a letter (e.g., VOR A). More than one navigational system separated by a slash indicates more than one type of equipment must be used to execute the final approach (e.g., VOR/Distance Measuring Equipment (DME) RWY 31). More than one navigational system separated by the word “or” indicates either type of equipment may be used to execute the final approach (e.g., VOR or GPS RWY 15). In some cases, other types of navigation systems may be required to execute other portions of the approach (e.g., an NDB procedure turn to an ILS or an NDB in the missed approach). Pilots should ensure the aircraft is equipped with the required NAVAID(s) in order to execute the approach, including the missed approach. The FAA will initiate a program to provide a new notation for Localizer (LOC) approaches when charted on an ILS approach requiring other navigational aids to fly the final approach course. The LOC minimums will be annotated with the NAVAID required (e.g., “DME Required” or “RADAR Required”). During the transition period, ILS approaches will still exist without the annotation. The naming of multiple approaches of the same type to the same runway is also changing. New approaches with the same guidance will be annotated with an alphabetical suffix beginning at the end of the alphabet and working backward for subsequent procedures (ILS Z RWY 28, ILS Y RWY 28, etc.). The existing annotations such as ILS 2 RWY 28 or Silver ILS RWY 28 will be phased out and eventually replaced with the new designation. Category II and III ILS procedures are not subject to this naming convention. Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS), Lateral Navigation/Vertical Navigation (LNAV/VNAV), and Global Positioning System (GPS) approach procedures will be charted as RNAV RWY (Number) (e.g., RNAV RWY 21). VOR/DME Area Navigation (RNAV) approaches will continue to be identified as VOR/DME RNAV RWY (Number) (e.g., VOR/DME RNAV RWY 21).

4. Approach minimums are based on the local altimeter setting for that airport, unless annotated otherwise (e.g., Oklahoma City/Will Rogers World approaches are based on having a Will Rogers World altimeter setting). When a different altimeter source is required, or more than one source is authorized, it will be annotated on the approach chart (e.g., use Sidney altimeter setting; if not received, use Scottsbluff altimeter setting). Approach minimums may be raised when a nonlocal altimeter source is authorized. When more than one altimeter source is authorized, and the minimums are different, they will be shown by separate lines in the approach minimums box or a note (e.g., use Manhattan altimeter setting; when not available, use Salina altimeter setting and increase all Minimum Descent Altitudes [MDAs] 40 feet). When the altimeter must be obtained from a source other than air traffic, a note will indicate the source (e.g., obtain local altimeter setting on Common Traffic Advisory Frequency [CTAF]). When the altimeter setting(s) on which the approach is based is not available, the approach is not authorized.

5. A pilot adhering to the altitudes, flightpaths, and weather minimums depicted on the IAP chart or vectors and altitudes issued by the radar controller is assured of terrain and obstruction clearance and runway or airport alignment during approach for landing.

6. IAPs are designed to provide an IFR descent from the en route environment to a point where a safe landing can be made. They are prescribed and approved by appropriate civil or military authority to ensure a safe descent during instrument flight conditions at a specific airport. It is important that pilots understand these procedures and their use prior to attempting to fly instrument approaches.

7. TERPS criteria for the following type of instrument approach procedures:

   a. Precision approaches where an electronic glideslope is provided (PAR, ILS, Tactical Landing System [TLS], and MLS).

   b. Precision approaches when vertical guidance is provided (Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance [LPV], GNSS Landing System [GLS], and Special Category 1 Differential GPS [SCAT-1]).

   c. Nonprecision approaches when vertical guidance is provided (LNAV/VNAV).

   d. Nonprecision approaches when no vertical guidance or glidepath is provided (all except for those listed in subparagraphs a to c above).

The method used to depict prescribed altitudes on instrument approach charts differs according to techniques employed by different chart publishers. Prescribed altitudes may be depicted in three different configurations: minimum, maximum, and mandatory. The U.S. Government distributes charts produced by National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (NGA) and FAA. Altitudes are depicted on these charts in the profile view with underscore, overscore, or both to identify them as minimum, maximum, or mandatory.

1. Minimum altitude will be depicted with the altitude value underscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at or above the depicted value.

2. Maximum altitude will be depicted with the altitude value overscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at or below the depicted value.

3. Mandatory altitude will be depicted with the altitude value both underscored and overscored. Aircraft are required to maintain altitude at the depicted value.

Note

The underscore and $\overline{\text{overscore}}$ to identify mandatory altitudes and the $\overline{\text{overscore}}$ to identify maximum altitudes are used almost exclusively by NGA for military charts. With very few exceptions, civil approach charts produced by FAA utilize only the underscore to identify minimum altitudes. Pilots are cautioned to adhere to altitudes as prescribed because, in certain instances, they may be used as the basis for vertical separation of aircraft by ATC. When a depicted altitude is specified in the ATC clearance, that altitude becomes mandatory as defined above.

30.5.1 Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA)

Minimum Safe Altitudes (MSAs) are published for emergency use on IAP charts. For conventional navigation systems, the MSA is normally based on the primary omnidirectional facility on which the IAP is predicated. The MSA depiction on the approach chart contains the facility identifier of the NAVAID used to determine the MSA altitudes. For RNAV approaches, the MSA is based on the runway waypoint for straight-in approaches, or the airport waypoint for circling approaches. For GPS approaches, the MSA center will be the Missed Approach Waypoint (MAWP). MSAs are expressed in feet above mean sea level and normally have a 25-nm radius; however, this radius may be expanded to 30 nm if necessary to encompass the airport landing surfaces. Ideally, a single sector altitude is established and depicted on the plan view of approach charts; however, when necessary to obtain relief from obstructions, the area may be further sectored and as many as four MSAs established. When established, sectors may be no less than 90° in spread. MSAs provide 1,000 foot clearance over all obstructions but do not necessarily ensure acceptable navigation signal coverage.

30.5.2 Terminal Arrival Area (TAA)

1. The objective of the Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) is to provide a seamless transition from the en route structure to the terminal environment for arriving aircraft equipped with an FMS and/or GPS navigational equipment. The underlying instrument approach procedure is an Area Navigation (RNAV) procedure described in paragraph 30.5.8. The TAA provides the pilot and air traffic controller with a very efficient method for routing traffic into the terminal environment with little required air traffic control interface and with minimum altitudes depicted that provide standard obstacle clearance compatible with the instrument procedure associated with it. The TAA will not be found on all RNAV procedures, particularly in areas of heavy concentration of air traffic. When the TAA is published, it replaces the MSA for that approach procedure.

2. The RNAV procedure underlying the TAA will be the “T” design (also called the “Basic T”), or a modification of the “T.” The “T” design incorporates from one to three Initial Approach Fixes (IAFs): an Intermediate Fix (IF) that serves as a dual purpose IF (IAF), a Final Approach Fix (FAF), and a Missed Approach Point (MAP) usually located at the runway threshold. The three IAFs are normally aligned in a straight line perpendicular to the intermediate course, which is an extension of the final course leading to the runway, forming a “T.” The initial segment is normally from 3 to 6 nm in length, the intermediate 5 to 7 nm, and the final segment 5 nm. Specific segment length may be varied to accommodate specific aircraft categories for which the procedure is designed; however, the published segment lengths will reflect the highest category of aircraft normally expected to use the procedure.

   a. A standard racetrack holding pattern may be provided at the center IAF and, if present, may be necessary for course reversal and for altitude adjustment for entry into the procedure. In the latter case, the pattern provides an extended distance for the descent required by the procedure. Depiction of this pattern in U.S. Government publications will utilize the “hold-in-lieu-of-PT” holding pattern symbol.

   b. The published procedure will be annotated to indicate when the course reversal is not necessary when flying within a particular TAA area (e.g., “NoPT”); otherwise, the pilot is expected to execute the course reversal under the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.175. The pilot may elect to use the course reversal pattern when it is not required by the procedure, but must inform air traffic control and receive clearance to do so (Figures 30-1 and 30-2).

3. The “T” design may be modified by the procedure designers where required by terrain or ATC considerations. For instance, the “T” design may appear more like a regularly or irregularly shaped “Y,” or may even have one or both outboard IAFs eliminated, resulting in an upside-down “L” or an “I” configuration (Figures 30-3 and 30-4). Further, the leg lengths associated with the outboard IAFs may differ (Figures 30-5 and 30-6).

4. Another modification of the “T” design may be found at airports with parallel runway configurations. Each parallel runway may be served by its own “T” IAF, IF (IAF), and FAF combination, resulting in parallel final approach courses (Figure 30-4). Common IAFs may serve both runways; however, only the intermediate and final approach segments for the landing runway will be shown on the approach chart (Figures 30-5 and 30-6).

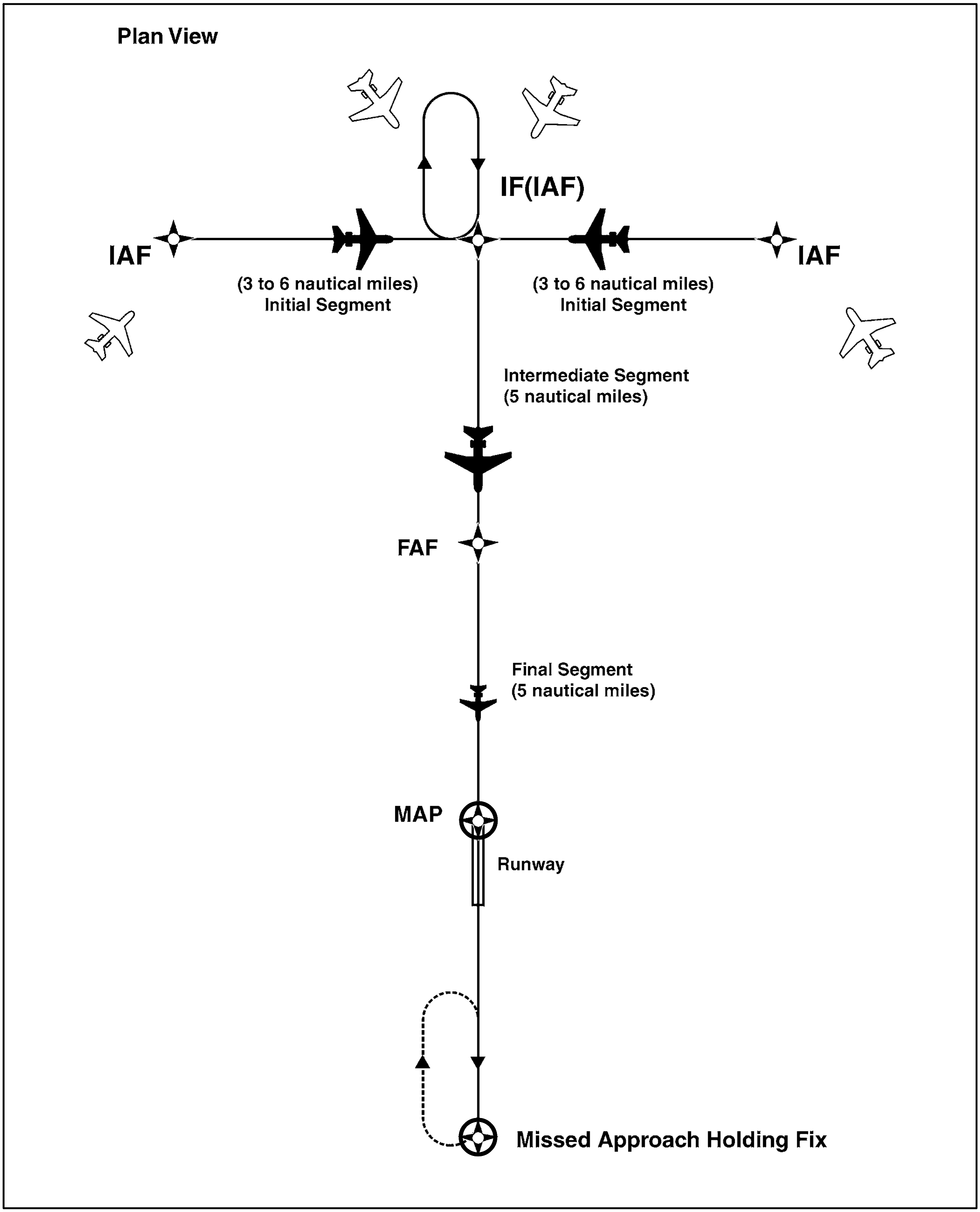


Figure 30-1. Basic “T” Design

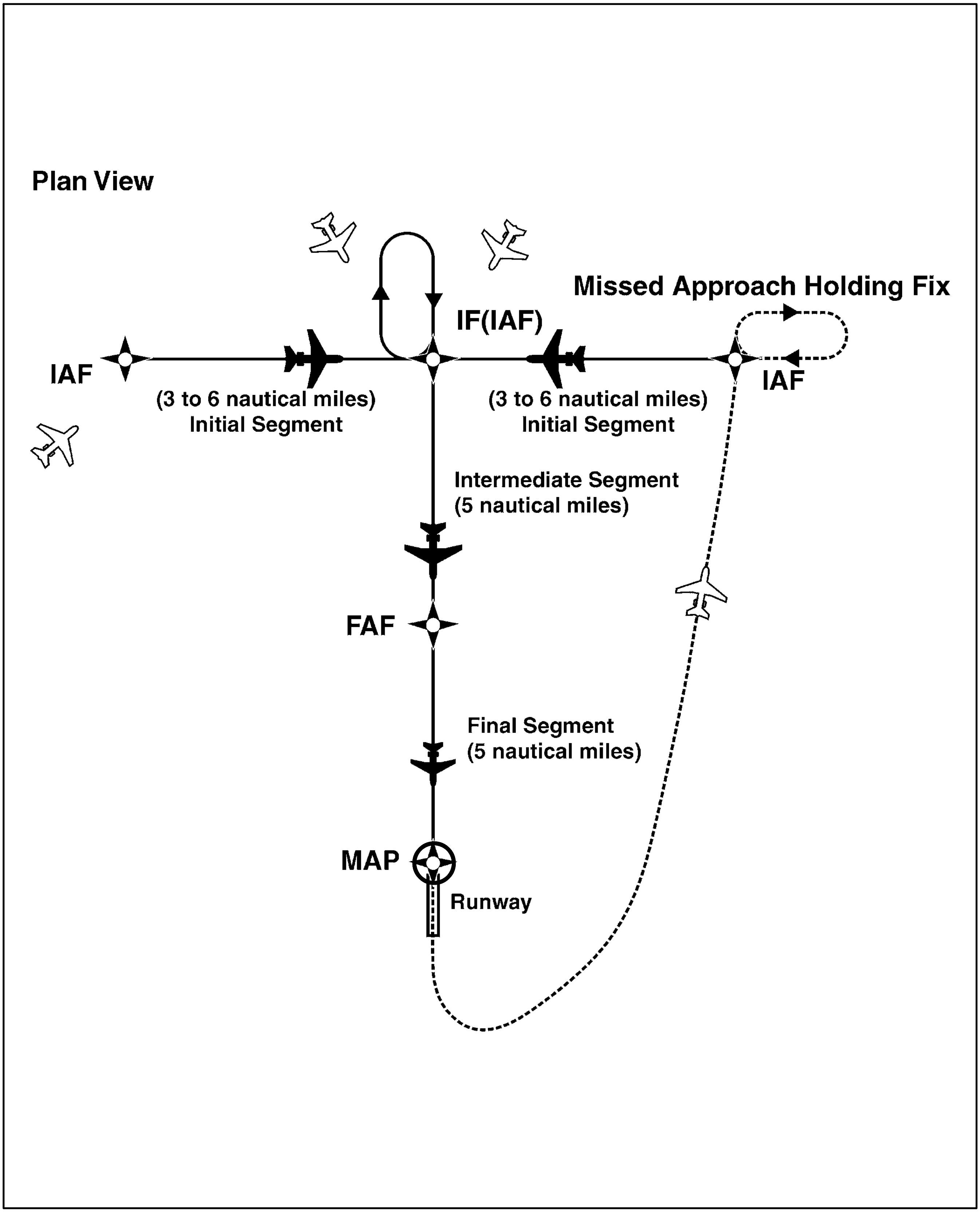


Figure 30-2. Basic “T” Design

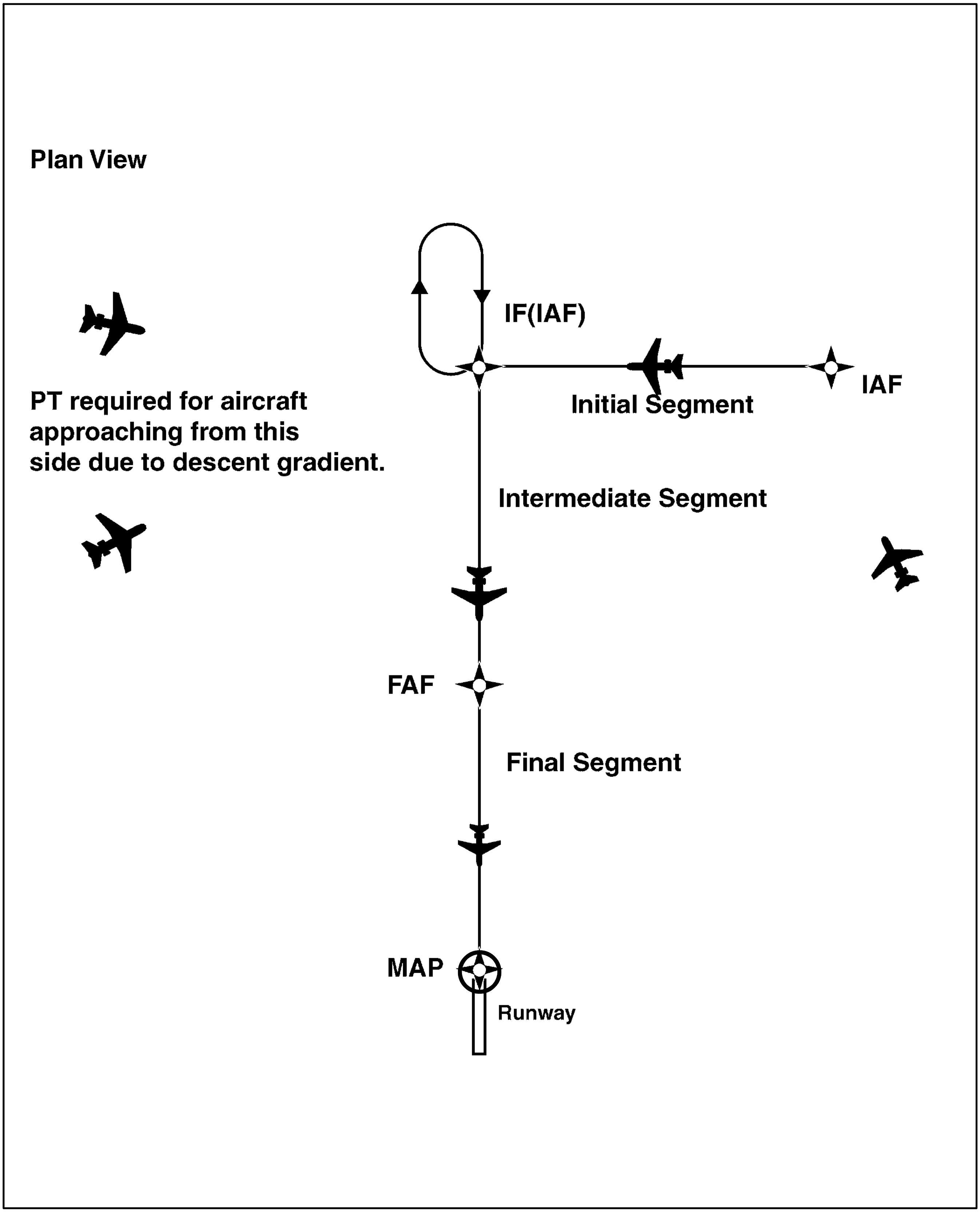


Figure 30-3. Modified Basic "T"

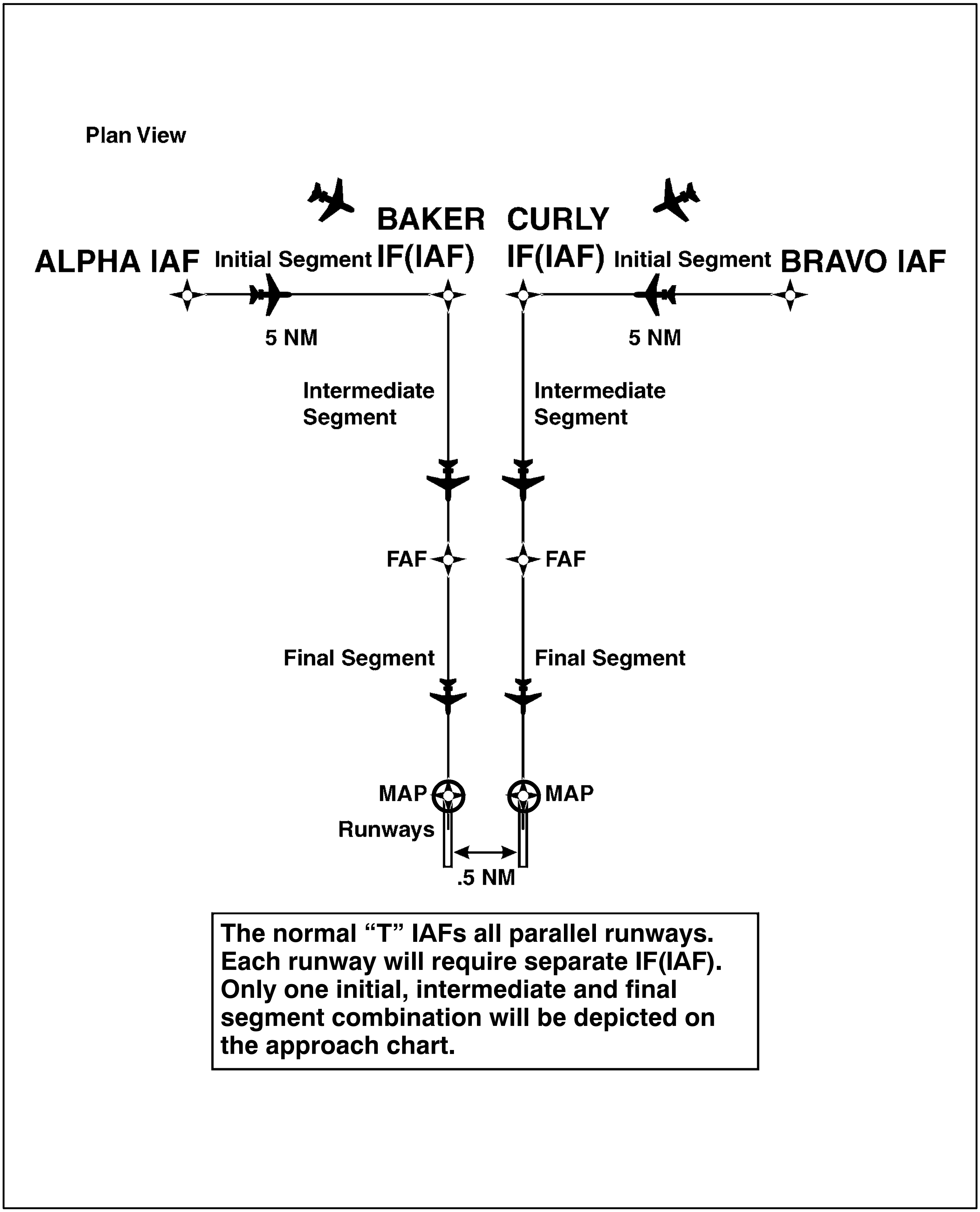


Figure 30-4. Modified "T" Approach to Parallel Runways

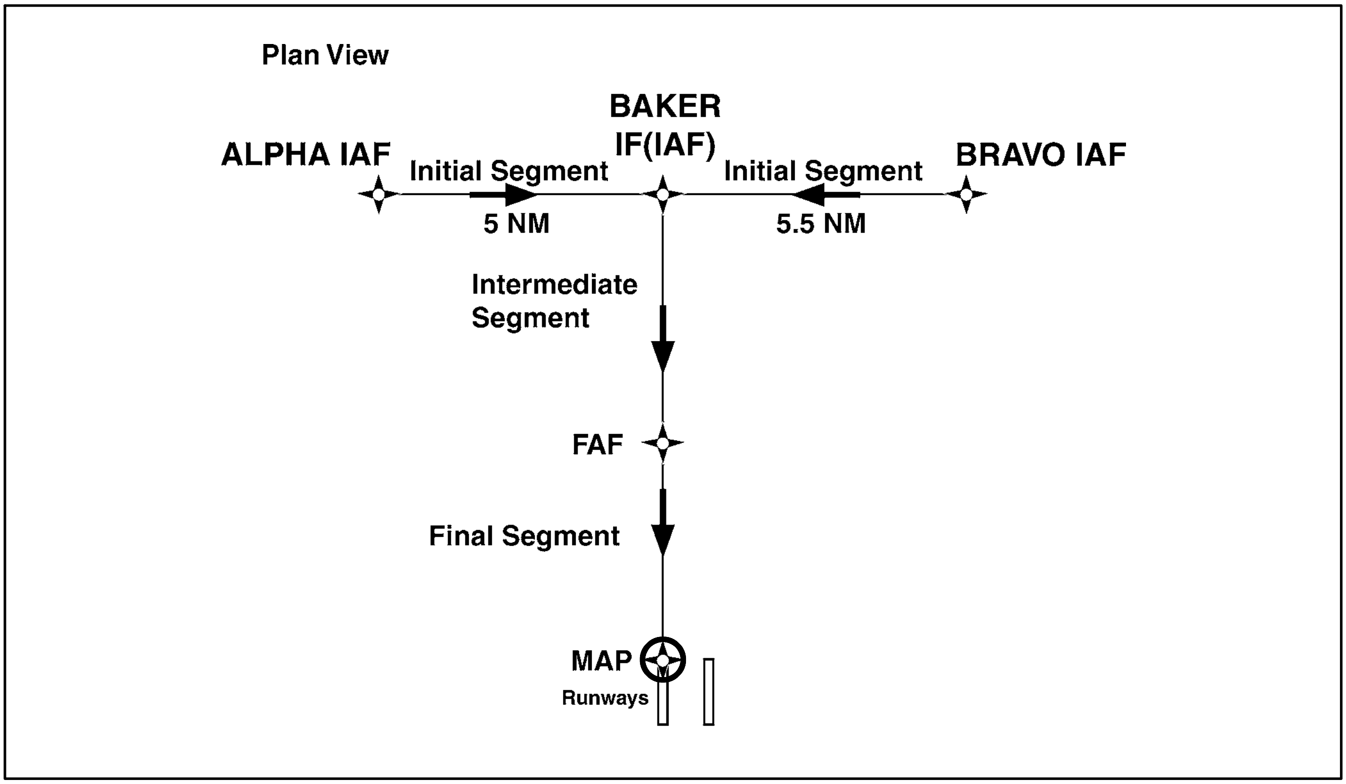


Figure 30-5. “T” Approach with Common IAFs to Parallel Runways

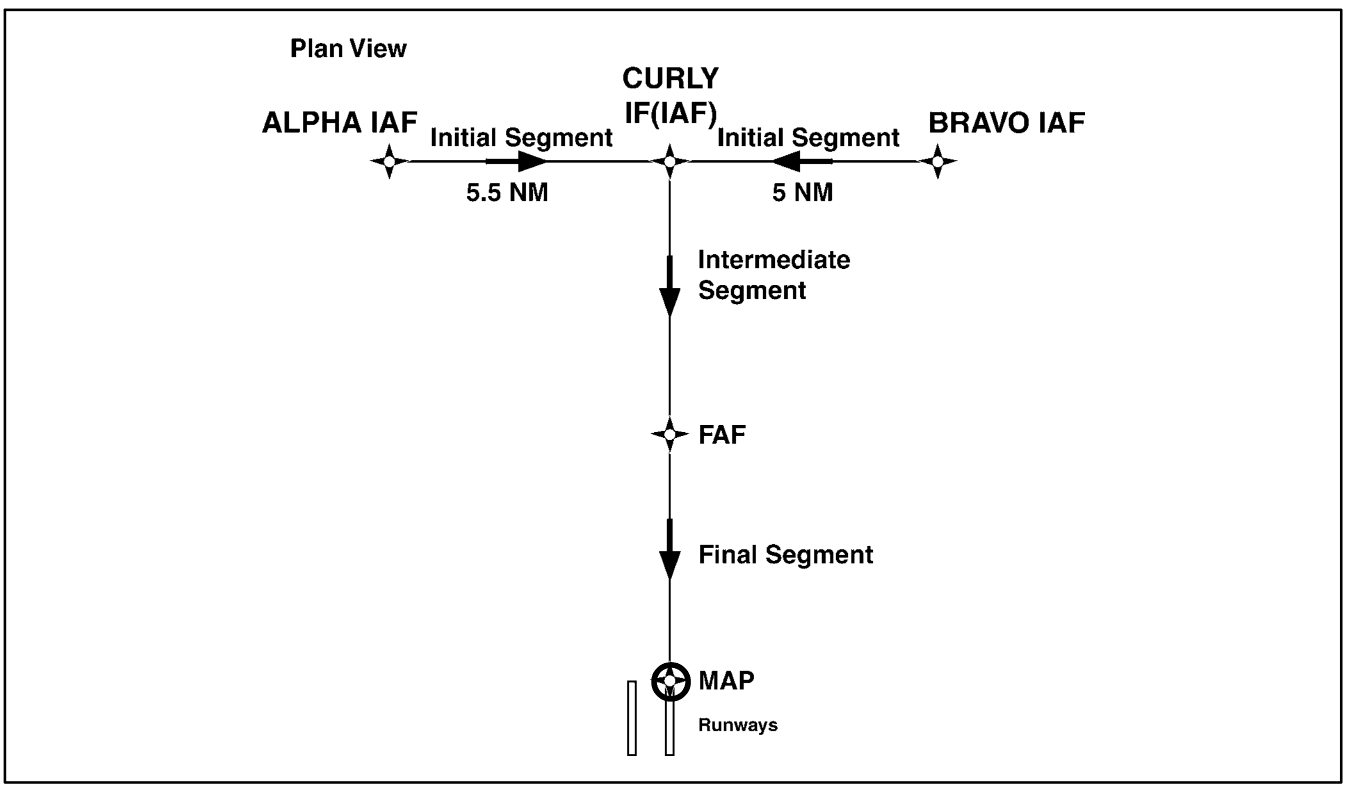


Figure 30-6. “T” Approach with Common IAFs to Parallel Runways

5. The standard TAA consists of three areas defined by the extension of the IAF legs and the intermediate segment course. These areas are called the straight-in, left-base, and right-base areas (Figure 30-7). TAA area lateral boundaries are identified by magnetic courses to the IF (IAF). The straight-in area can be further divided into pie-shaped sectors with the boundaries identified by magnetic courses to the IF (IAF) and may contain stepdown sections defined by arcs based on RNAV distances (DME or Along Track Distance [ATD]) from the IF (IAF). The right/left-base areas can only be subdivided using arcs based on RNAV distances from the IAF for those areas. Minimum Mean Sea Level (MSL) altitudes are charted within each of these defined areas/subdivisions that provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance or more, as necessary, in mountainous areas.

   a. Prior to arriving at the TAA boundary, the pilot can determine which area of the TAA the aircraft will enter by selecting the IF (IAF) to determine the magnetic bearing to the IF (IAF). That bearing should then be compared with the published bearings that define the lateral boundaries of the TAA areas. This is critical when approaching the TAA near the extended boundary between the left- and right-base areas, especially where these areas contain different minimum altitude requirements.

   b. Pilots entering the TAA and cleared by air traffic control are expected to proceed directly to the IAF associated with that area of the TAA at the altitude depicted, unless otherwise cleared by air traffic control. Pilots entering the TAA with two-way radio communications failure (14 CFR Section 91.185, IFR Operations: Two-Way Radio Communications Failure), must maintain the highest altitude prescribed by Section 91.185(c)(2) until arriving at the appropriate IAF.

   c. Depiction of the TAA on U.S. Government charts will be through the use of icons located in the plan view outside the depiction of the actual approach procedure (Figure 30-8). Use of icons is necessary to avoid obscuring any portion of the "T" procedure (altitudes, courses, minimum altitudes, etc.). The icon for each TAA area will be located and oriented on the plan view with respect to the direction of arrival to the approach procedure and will show all TAA minimum altitudes and sector/radius subdivisions for that area. The IAF for each area of the TAA is included on the icon where it appears on the approach to help the pilot orient the icon to the approach procedure. The IAF name and the distance of the TAA area boundary from the IAF are included on the outside arc of the TAA area icon. Examples here are shown with the TAA around the approach to aid pilots in visualizing how the TAA corresponds to the approach and should not be confused with the actual approach chart depiction.

   d. Each waypoint on the "T," except the missed approach waypoint, is assigned a pronounceable five-character name used in air traffic control communications, that is found in the RNAV databases for the procedure. The missed approach waypoint is assigned a pronounceable name when it is not located at the runway threshold.

6. Once cleared to fly the TAA, pilots are expected to obey minimum altitudes depicted within the TAA icons, unless instructed otherwise by air traffic control. In Figure 30-9, pilots within the left-base area are expected to maintain a minimum altitude of 10,000 feet once within 30 nm and a minimum altitude of 9,600 feet once within 30 nm in the right-base area. Pilots approaching from the northeast are expected to maintain a minimum altitude of 11,400 feet once within 30 nm, and when within 12 nm of the IF (IAF), descend to a minimum altitude of 9,100 feet MSL until reaching the IF (IAF).

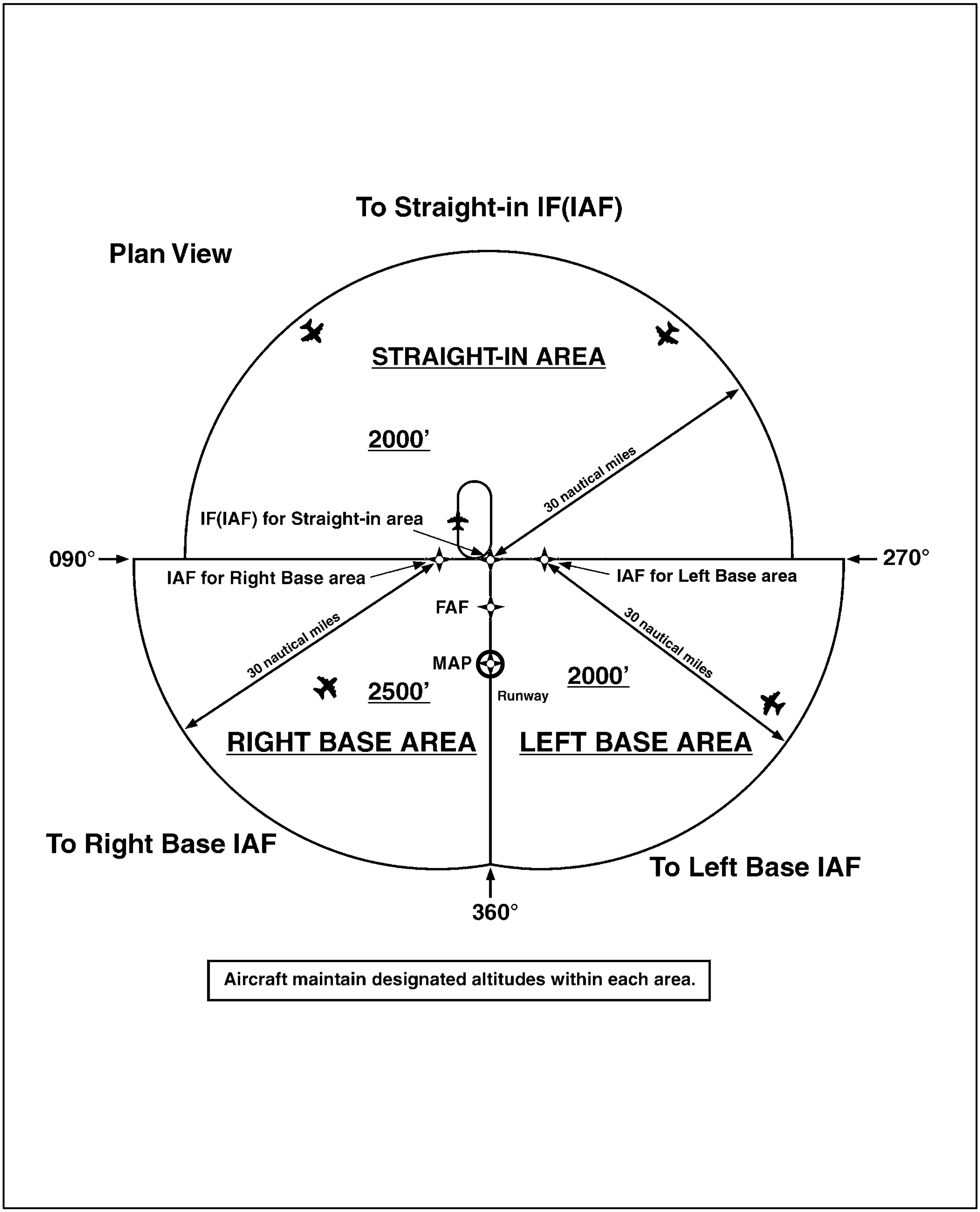


Figure 30-7. TAA Areas

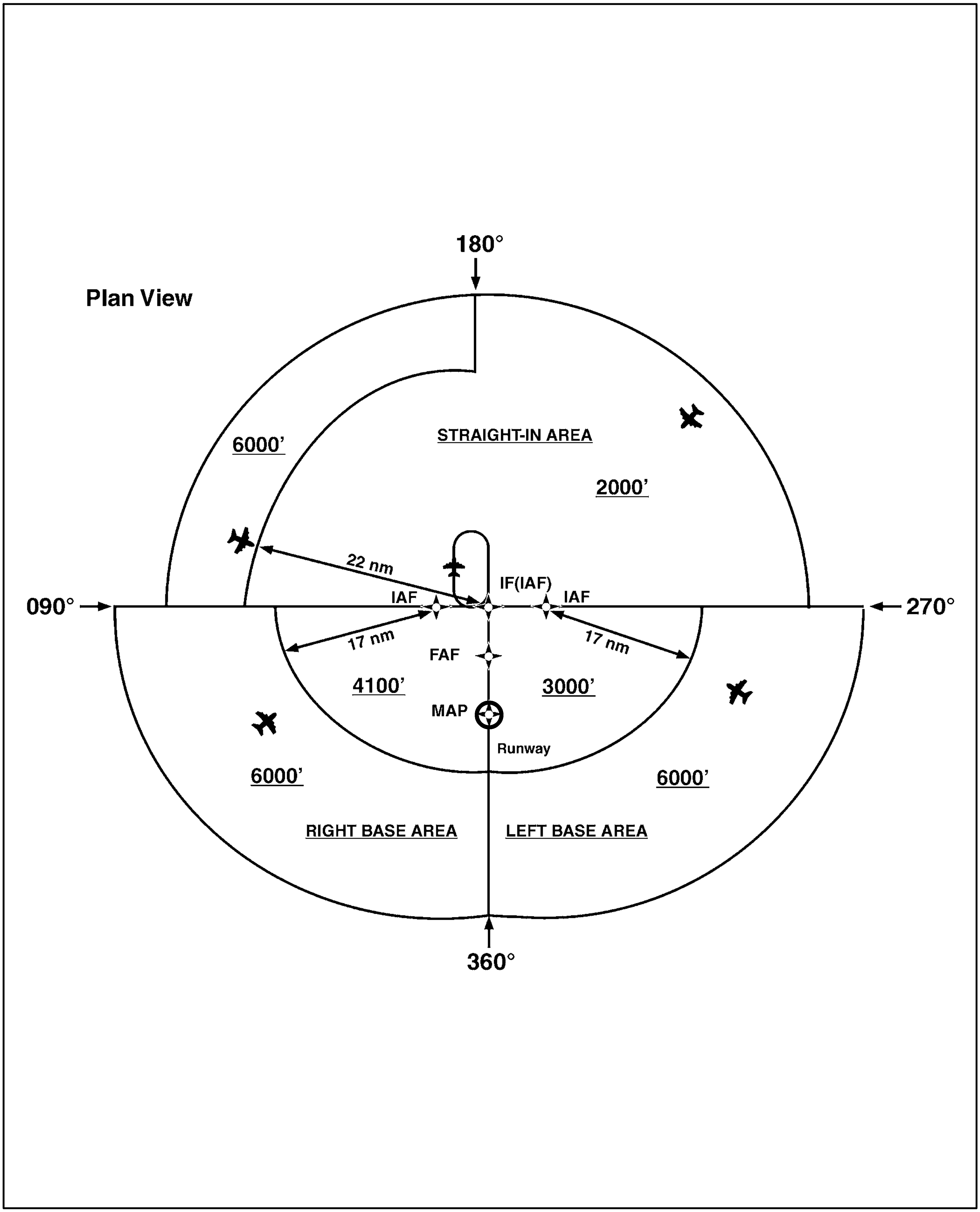


Figure 30-8. Sectored TAA Areas

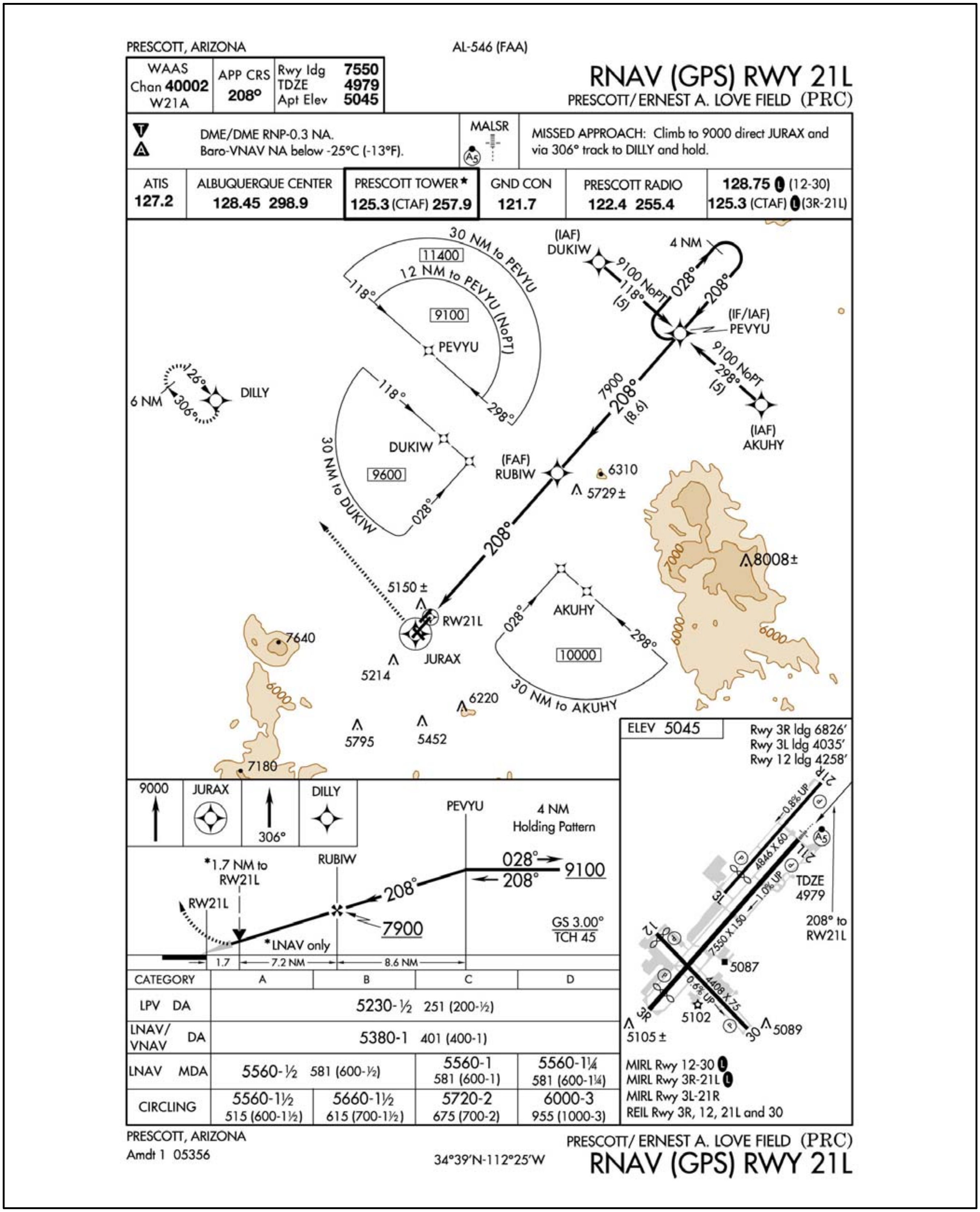


Figure 30-9. RNAV Approach Chart

7. Just as the underlying “T” approach procedure may be modified in shape, the TAA may contain modifications to the defined area shapes and sizes. Some areas may even be eliminated, with other areas expanded as needed. Figure 30-10 is an example of a design limitation where a course reversal is necessary when approaching the IF (IAF) from certain directions due to the amount of turn required at the IF (IAF). Design criteria require a course reversal whenever this turn exceeds 120 degrees. In this generalized example, pilots approaching on a bearing to the IF (IAF) from 300° clockwise through 060° are expected to execute a course reversal. The term NoPT will be annotated on the boundary of the TAA icon for the other portion of the TAA.

8. Figure 30-11 depicts another TAA modification that pilots may encounter. In this generalized example, the right-base area has been eliminated. Pilots operating within the TAA between 360° clockwise to 060° bearing to the IF (IAF) are expected to execute the course reversal in order to properly align the aircraft for entry onto the intermediate segment. Aircraft operating in all other areas from 060° clockwise to 360° bearing to the IF (IAF) need not perform the course reversal, and the term “NoPT” will be annotated on the TAA boundary of the icon in these areas.

9. When an airway does not cross the lateral TAA boundaries, a feeder route will be established to provide a transition from the en route structure to the appropriate IAF. Each feeder route will terminate at the TAA boundary and will be aligned along a path pointing to the associated IAF. Pilots should descend to the TAA altitude after crossing the TAA boundary and cleared by air traffic control (Figure 30-12).

30.5.3 Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA)

The Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA) is established for use by ATC when radar ATC is exercised. MVA charts are prepared by air traffic facilities at locations where there are numerous different minimum IFR altitudes. Each MVA chart has sectors large enough to accommodate vectoring of aircraft within the sector at the MVA. Each sector boundary within 40 miles of the radar is at least 3 miles from the obstruction determining the MVA. Each sector boundary 40 miles or more from the radar is at least 5 miles from the obstruction determining the MVA. To avoid a large sector with an excessively high MVA due to an isolated prominent obstruction, the obstruction may be enclosed in a buffer area. This is done to facilitate vectoring around the obstruction (Figure 30-13).

1. The minimum vectoring altitude in each sector provides 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle in designated mountainous areas. Where lower MVA are required in designated mountainous areas to achieve compatibility with terminal routes or to permit vectoring to an IAP, 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance may be authorized with the use of Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR). The minimum vectoring altitude will provide at least 300 feet above the floor of controlled airspace.

Note

The Off-Route Obstruction Clearance Altitude (OROCA) is an off-route altitude that provides obstruction clearance with a 1,000-foot buffer in nonmountainous terrain areas and a 2,000-foot buffer in designated mountainous areas within the U.S. This altitude may not provide signal coverage from ground-based navigational aids, air traffic control radar, or communications coverage.

2. Because of differences in the areas considered for MVA, those applied to other minimum altitudes, and the ability to isolate specific obstacles, some MVA may be lower than the nonradar MEAs, Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitudes (MOCAs)or other minimum altitudes depicted on charts for a given location. While being radar vectored, IFR altitude assignments by ATC will be at or above MVA.

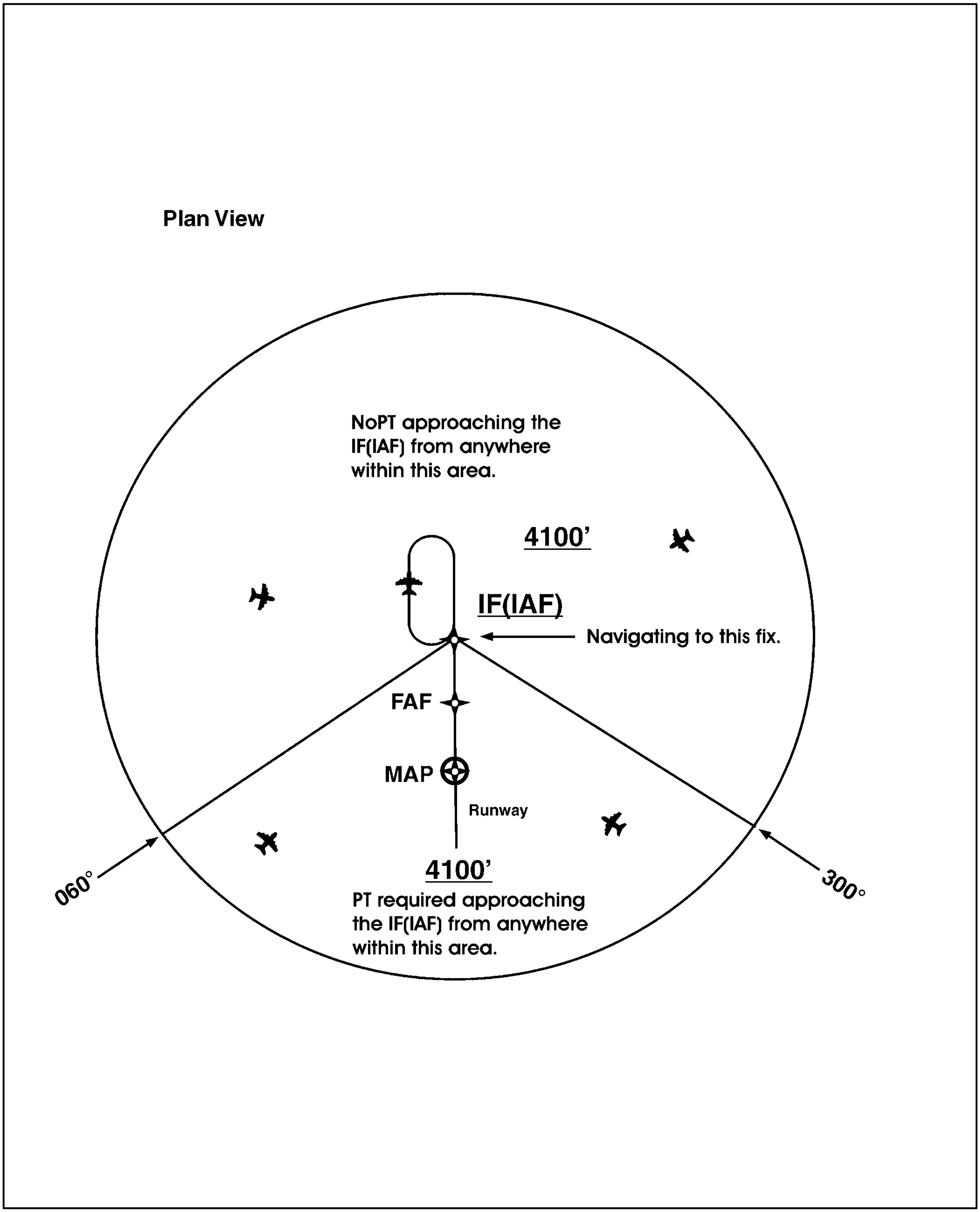


Figure 30-10. TAA with Left- and Right-Base Areas Eliminated

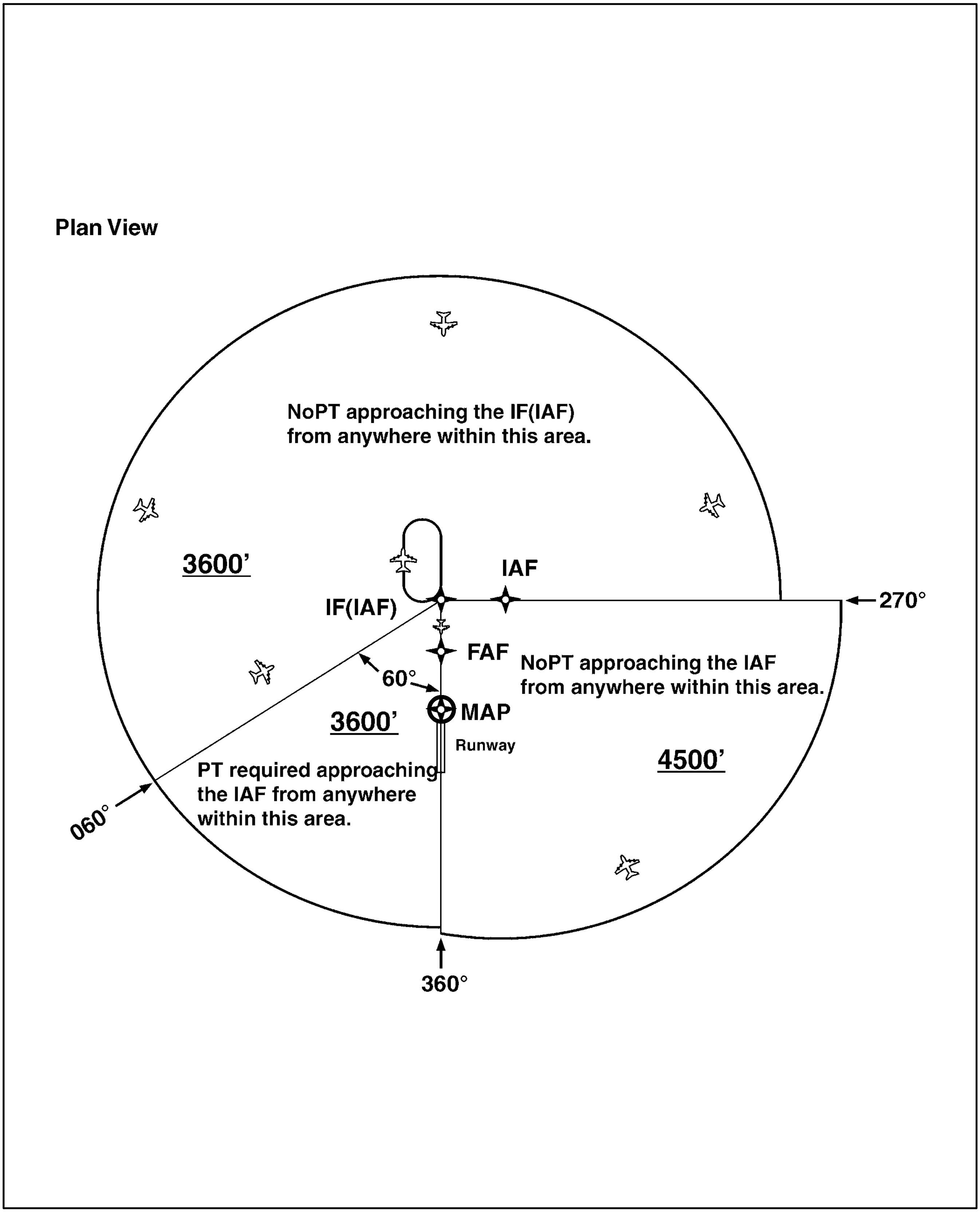


Figure 30-11. TAA with Right Base Eliminated

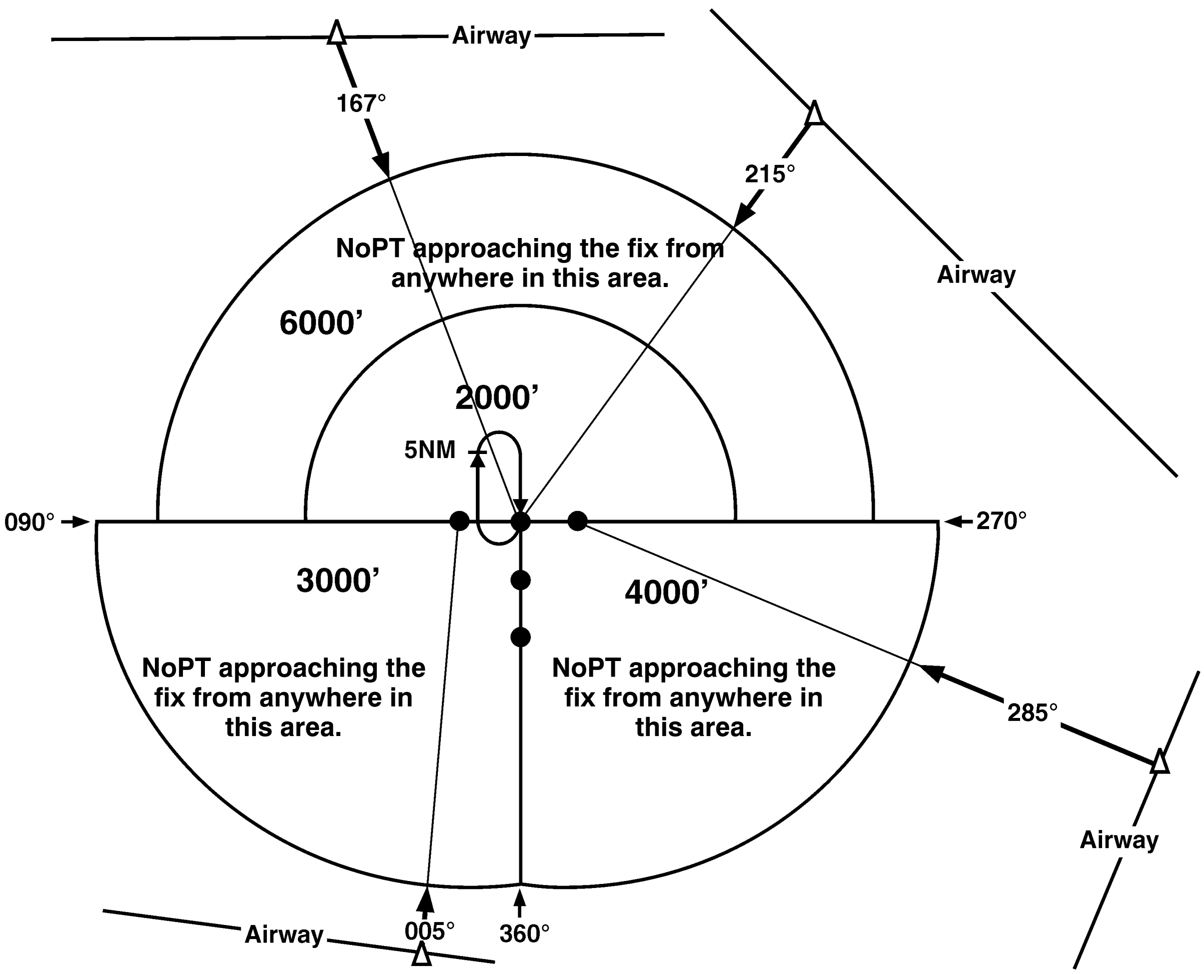


Figure 30-12. Examples of a TAA with Feeders from an Airway

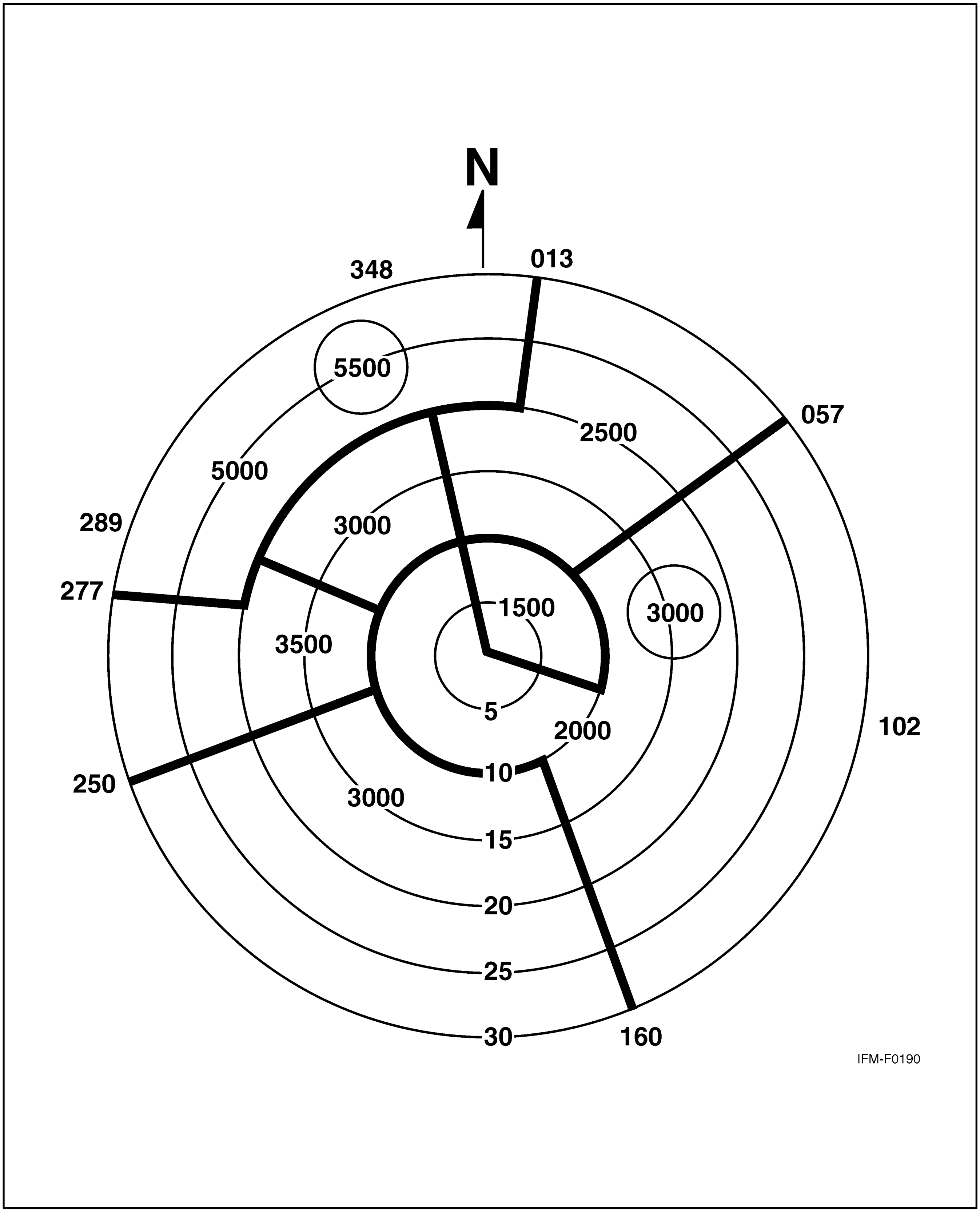


Figure 30-13. Minimum Vectoring Altitude Charts

30.5.4 Visual Descent Point (VDP)

VDPs are being incorporated in selected nonprecision approach procedures. The VDP is a defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided visual reference required by 14 CFR Section 91.175(c)(3) is established. The VDP will normally be identified by DME on VOR and LOC procedures and by a long track distance to the next waypoint for RNAV procedures. The VDP is identified on the profile view of the approach chart by the symbol V.

1. VDPs are intended to provide additional guidance where they are implemented. No special technique is required to fly a procedure with a VDP. The pilot should not descend below the MDA prior to reaching the VDP and acquiring the necessary visual reference.

2. Pilots not equipped to receive the VDP should fly the approach procedure as though no VDP had been provided.

30.5.5 Visual Portion of the Final Segment

Instrument procedures designers perform a visual area obstruction evaluation off the approach end of each runway authorized for instrument landing, straight-in, or circling. Restrictions to instrument operations are imposed if penetrations of the obstruction clearance surfaces exist. These restrictions vary based on the severity of the penetrations and may include increasing required visibility, denying VDPs, and prohibiting night instrument operations to the runway.

30.5.6 Vertical Descent Angle (VDA) on Nonprecision Approaches

Descent angles are currently being published on selected nonprecision approaches. The FAA intends to eventually publish Vertical Descent Angles (VDAs) on all nonprecision approaches. Published along with the VDA is the Threshold Crossing Height (TCH) (i.e., the height of the descent angle above the landing threshold). The descent angle describes a computed path from the FAF and altitude to the runway threshold at the published TCH. The optimum descent angle is 3.00 degrees; whenever possible, the approach will be designed to accommodate this angle.

1. The VDA provides the pilot with information not previously available on nonprecision approaches. It provides the means for the pilot to establish a stabilized approach descent from the FAF or stepdown fix to the TCH. Stabilized descent along this path is a key factor in the reduction of Controlled Flight Into Terrain (CFIT) incidents. Pilots can use the published angle and estimated/actual groundspeed to find a target rate of descent from a rate of descent table published with the instrument approach procedures.

2. Normally, the VDA will first appear on the nonprecision approach chart as the procedure is amended through the normal process; however, in some cases, pilots can expect to see this data provided via a NOTAM(D).

3. Pilots should be aware that the published angle is for information only — it is strictly advisory in nature. There is no implicit additional obstacle protection below the MDA. Pilots must still respect the published MDA unless the visual cues stated in 14 CFR Section 91.175 are present. In rare cases, the published procedure descent angle will not coincide with the Visual Glideslope Indicator (VGSI), Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI) or Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI). In these cases, the procedure will be annotated: “VGSI and descent angle not coincident.”

30.5.7 Pilot Operational Considerations When Flying Nonprecision Approaches

The MAP on a nonprecision approach is not designed with any consideration to where the aircraft must begin descent to execute a safe landing. It is developed based on terrain, obstructions, NAVAID location, and possibly air traffic considerations. Because the MAP may be located anywhere from well prior to the runway threshold to past the opposite end of the runway, the descent from the MDA to the runway threshold cannot be determined based on the MAP location. Descent from MDA at the MAP when the MAP is located close to the threshold would require an excessively steep descent gradient to land in the normal touchdown zone. Any turn from the final approach course to the runway heading may also be a factor in when to begin the descent.

1. Pilots are cautioned that descent to a straight-in landing from the MDA at the MAP may be inadvisable or impossible, on a nonprecision approach, even if current weather conditions meet the published ceiling and visibility. Aircraft speed, height above the runway, descent rate, amount of turn, and runway length are some of the factors that must be considered by the pilot to determine if a landing can be accomplished.

2. Visual Descent Points (VDPs) provide pilots with a reference for the optimal location to begin descent from the MDA, based on the designed VDA for the approach procedure, assuming required visual references are available. Approaches without VDPs have not been assessed for terrain clearance below the MDA and may not provide a clear vertical path to the runway at the normally expected descent angle; therefore, pilots must be especially vigilant when descending below the MDA at locations without VDPs. This does not necessarily prevent flying the normal angle; it only means that obstacle clearance in the visual segment could be less and greater care should be exercised in looking for obstacles in the visual segment. Use of VGSI systems can aid the pilot in determining if the aircraft is in a position to make the descent from the MDA; however, when the visibility is close to minimums, the VGSI may not be visible at the start descent point for a normal glidepath due to its location down the runway.

3. Accordingly, pilots are advised to carefully review approach procedures, prior to initiating the approach, to identify the optimum position(s), and any unacceptable positions, from which a descent to landing can be initiated (in accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.175(c)).

30.5.8 Area Navigation (RNAV) Instrument Approach Charts

Reliance on RNAV systems for instrument approach operations is becoming more commonplace as new systems such as GPS, Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS), and Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS) are developed and deployed. In order to foster and support full integration of RNAV into the National Airspace System (NAS), the FAA has developed a new charting format for RNAV IAPs (Figure 30-8). This format avoids unnecessary duplication and proliferation of instrument approach charts. The approach minimums for unaugmented GPS (the present GPS approaches) and augmented GPS (WAAS and LAAS when they become operational) will be published on the same approach chart. The approach chart will be titled RNAV (GPS) RWY XX. The first RNAV approach charts may appear as stand-alone "GPS" procedures, prior to WAAS becoming operational. Accordingly, the minimums line associated with WAAS may be marked NA until the navigation system is operational. The chart may contain as many as four lines of approach minimums: Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) Landing System (GLS), LPV, Lateral Navigation/Vertical Navigation (LNAV/VNAV), LNAV, and CIRCLING. GLS includes WAAS and LAAS. LNAV/VNAV is a new type of instrument approach with lateral and vertical navigation. During a transition period when GPS procedures are undergoing revision, the new title RNAV (GPS) approach charts and formats will be published. ATC clearance for the RNAV procedure will authorize a properly certified pilot to utilize any landing minimums for which the aircraft is certified. The RNAV (GPS) chart will include formatted information required for quick pilot or flightcrew reference located at the top of the chart. This portion of the chart, developed based on a study by the Department of Transportation, Volpe National Transportation Systems Center, is commonly referred to as the pilot briefing, or EZ Brief.

1. New minimums lines will be:

   a. GLS. "GLS" is the acronym for GNSS Landing System; GNSS is the acronym for Global Navigation Satellite System. The minimums line labeled GLS will accommodate aircraft equipped with precision approach capable WAAS receivers operating to their fullest capability. WAAS, as its name implies, augments the basic GPS satellite constellation with additional ground stations and enhanced position/integrity information transmitted from geostationary satellites. This capability of augmentation enhances both the accuracy and integrity of basic GPS and may support precision (GLS) approach minimums as low as 200-foot Height Above Touchdown (HAT) and 1/2 statute mile (SM) visibility. Publication of the lowest GLS minimums requires that certain interrelated conditions of satellite availability and runway landing environment are met. The suitability of the landing environment to support the lowest landing minimums is determined by the degree of airport compliance with AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design. Precision runway and airport compliance factors include runway marking and lighting, obstacle clearance surfaces, runway length, approach lighting, taxiway layout, etc. Pilots will be informed that all the requirements of the precision runway landing environment are satisfied by the notation GLS PA (GNSS Landing System Precision Approach) on the first line of minimums in U.S. Government Terminal Procedure Publication charts. Pilots will be informed that not all of the precision runway requirements are met by the notation GLS without the letters "PA" on the first line of minimums. In this latter case, the airborne WAAS receiver may be operating in the most capable mode, but because the landing environment does not support the low-visibility operations, minimums no lower than 300-foot HAT and 3/4 SM visibility will be published. Since computed glidepath guidance is provided to the pilot, procedure minimum altitude will be published as a Decision Altitude (DA).

b. LNAV/VNAV identifies minimums developed to accommodate an RNAV IAP with vertical guidance, but with integrity limits larger than a precision approach. LNAV stands for Lateral Navigation; VNAV stands for Vertical Navigation. Aircraft using LNAV/VNAV minimums will descend to landing via an internally generated descent path based on satellite or other approach approved VNAV systems. WAAS equipment may revert to this mode of operation when the signal does not support the highest level of accuracy and integrity. Since electronic vertical guidance is provided, the minimums will be published as a DA. Other navigation systems may be specifically authorized to use this line of minimums; see Section A, Terms/Landing Minimums Data, of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books for a more detailed explanation.

c. LNAV. This minimum is for lateral navigation only, and the approach minimum altitude will be published as an MDA because vertical guidance is not provided. LNAV provides the same level of service as the present GPS stand-alone approaches. LNAV minimums support the following navigation systems: WAAS (when the navigation solution will not support vertical navigation) and GPS navigation systems which are presently authorized to conduct GPS approaches. The LNAV line on the RNAV chart will allow the present approach certified receivers to fly the new approaches. Existing GPS approaches will be converted to this format. (The receiver must be approved for approach operations in accordance with: AC 20-138, Airworthiness Approval of Global Positioning System [GPS] Navigation Equipment for Use as a Visual Flight Rules [VFR] and IFR Supplemental Navigation System, for stand-alone TSO-C128 Class A(1) systems; or AC 20-130A, Airworthiness Approval of Navigation or Flight Management Systems Integrating Multiple Navigation Sensors, for GPS as part of a multisensor system, qualify for this minimum.)

2. Other systems may be authorized to utilize these approaches. See the description in Section A of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books for details. Through a special authorization, aircraft equipped with other IFR approach approved RNAV systems may fly to the LNAV/VNAV and/or LNAV minimums described above. These systems may include aircraft equipped with an FMS that can file /E or /F. Operational approval must also be obtained for Barometric Vertical Navigation (BARO-VNAV) systems to operate to the LNAV/VNAV minimums. BARO-VNAV may not be authorized on some approaches due to other factors. Pilots are directed to their local Flight Standards District Office (FSDO) for additional information.

Note

RNAV and BARO-VNAV systems must have a manufacturer-supplied electronic database that shall include the waypoints, altitudes, and vertical data for the procedure to be flown. The system shall also be able to extract the procedure in its entirety, not just as a series of waypoints.

3. Required Navigation Performance (RNP).

   a. With the widespread deployment of RNAV systems, the advent of GPS, and the imminent implementation of WAAS, greater flexibility in route, procedure, and airspace design is now possible, with an associated increase in navigation accuracy and flight safety. To capitalize on the potential of RNAV systems, the FAA and the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) are effecting a shift toward a new standard of navigation and airspace management called RNP.

   b. Navigation systems have typically been described as being sensor specific, such as VOR, NDB, and ILS systems. When RNP is specified, it does not matter what the underlying navigation system or combination of systems is used, provided the aircraft can achieve the required navigation performance. Typically, various sensor inputs are processed by the RNAV system to arrive at a position estimate having a high statistical degree of accuracy and confidence. RNP is intended to provide a single performance standard that can be used and applied to aircraft and aircraft equipment manufacturers, airspace, planners, aircraft certification and operations, pilots and controllers, and international aviation authorities. RNP can be related to obstacle clearance or aircraft separation requirements to ensure a consistent level of application.

   c. An RNP level or type is applicable to a selected airspace, route, or procedure. The applicable RNP is expressed as a value that represents a distance in nautical miles from the intended position to the actual position of an aircraft. It is within this distance that an aircraft would normally be expected to operate. For general RNAV approach procedures, RNP 0.3 is required.

   d. Pilots are advised to refer to the “TERPS/LANDING MINIMUMS DATA” (Section A) of the U.S. Government Terminal Procedures books for aircraft approach eligibility requirements by specific RNP level requirements. Aircraft meeting RNP criteria will have an appropriate entry, including special conditions and limitations, if any, in the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or its supplement. This will only occur when it has been determined that the aircraft complies with the appropriate provisions of certification.

   e. Some aircraft have RNP approval in their AFM without a GPS sensor. The lowest level of sensors that the FAA will support for RNP service is DME/DME; however, necessary DME NAVAID ground infrastructure may or may not be available at the airport of intended operations. For those locations having an RNAV chart published with LNAV/VNAV minimums, a procedure note may be provided (e.g., DME/DME RNP 0.3 NA; this means that RNP aircraft dependent on DME/DME to achieve RNP 0.3 are not authorized to conduct this approach). Where FAA flight inspection successfully determines the availability and geometry of DME facilities will support RNP 0.3 and the DME signal meets inspection tolerances, a note such as “DME/DME RNP 0.3 Authorized” will appear on the chart. Where DME facility availability is a factor, the note may read “DME/DME RNP 0.3 Authorized; ABC and XYZ Required,” meaning that ABC and XYZ facilities have been determined by flight inspection to be required in the navigation solution to ensure RNP 0.3.

4. Chart terminology will change slightly to support the new procedure types.

   a. Decision Altitude (DA) replaces the familiar term Decision Height (DH). DA conforms to the international convention where altitudes relate to MSL and heights relate to Above Ground Level (AGL). DA will eventually be published for other types of instrument approach procedures with vertical guidance as well. DA indicates to the pilot that the published descent profile is flown to the DA (MSL), where a missed approach will be initiated if visual references for landing are not established. Obstacle clearance is provided to allow a momentary descent below DA while transitioning from the final approach to the missed approach. The aircraft is expected to follow the missed instructions while continuing along the published final approach course to at least the published runway threshold waypoint or MAP (if not at the threshold) before executing any turns.

   b. Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) has been in use for many years and will continue to be used for the LNAV only and circling procedures.

c. Threshold Crossing Height (TCH) has been traditionally used in precision approaches as the height of the glideslope above threshold. With publication of LNAV/VNAV minimums and RNAV descent angles, including graphically depicted descent profiles, TCH also applies to the height of the descent angle, or glidepath, at the threshold. Unless otherwise required for larger type aircraft that may be using the IAP, the typical TCH is 30 to 50 feet.

5. The minimums format will also change slightly.

a. Each line of minimums on the RNAV IAP will be titled to reflect the RNAV system applicable (e.g., GLS, LNAV/VNAV, and LNAV). Circling minimums will also be provided.

b. The minimums title box will also indicate the nature of the minimum altitude for the IAP. For example:

(1) DA will be published next to the minimums line title for minimums supporting vertical guidance such as for GLS or LNAV/VNAV.

(2) MDA will be published where the minimums line supports only lateral guidance. Descent below the MDA, including during the missed approach, is not authorized unless the visual conditions stated in 14 CFR Section 91.175 exist.

(3) Where two or more systems, such as GLS and LNAV/VNAV, share the same minimums, each line of minimums will be displayed separately.

6. Chart symbology will change slightly to include:

a. Descent Profile. The published descent profile and a graphical depiction of the vertical path to the runway will be shown. Graphical depiction of the RNAV vertical guidance will differ from the traditional depiction of an ILS glideslope (feather) through the use of a simple vertical track (no feather).

(1) It is FAA policy to design IAPs with minimum altitudes established at fixes/waypoints to achieve optimum stabilized (constant rate) descents within each procedure segment. This design can enhance the safety of the operations and contribute toward reduction in the occurrence of Controlled Flight Into Terrain (CFIT) accidents. Additionally, the National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) recently emphasized that pilots could benefit from publication of the appropriate IAP descent angle for a stabilized descent on final approach; therefore, the new RNAV IAP format will include the descent angle to the hundredth of a degree (e.g., 3.00 degrees). The angle will be provided in the graphically depicted descent profile.

(2) The stabilized approach may be performed by reference to vertical navigation information provided by WAAS or LNAV/VNAV systems, or for LNAV-only systems, by the pilot determining the appropriate aircraft attitude/groundspeed combination to attain a constant rate descent that best emulates the published angle. To aid the pilot, U.S. Government Terminal Procedures Publication charts publish an expanded Rate of Descent Table on the inside of the back hard cover for use in planning and executing precision descents under known or approximate groundspeed conditions.

b. Visual Descent Point (VDP). VDPs are published on most RNAV (GPS) IAPs. VDPs apply only to aircraft utilizing LNAV minimums, not GLS or LNAV/VNAV minimums.

c. Missed Approach Symbology. In order to make missed approach guidance more readily understood, a method has been developed to display missed approach guidance in the profile view through the use of quick reference icons. Due to limited space in the profile area, only four or fewer icons can be shown; however, the icon may not provide representation of the entire missed approach procedure. The entire set of textual missed approach instructions is provided at the top of the approach chart in the pilot briefing (Figure 30-8).

d. Waypoints. All RNAV or GPS stand-alone IAPs are flown using data pertaining to the particular IAP obtained from an onboard database, including the sequence of all WPs used for the approach and missed approach. Included in the database, in most receivers, is coding that informs the navigation system of which Waypoints (WPs) are fly-over or fly-by. The navigation system may provide guidance appropriately, including leading the turn prior to a Fly-By Waypoint (FBWP), or causing overflight of a Fly-Over Waypoint (FOWP). Where the navigation system does not provide such guidance, the pilot must accomplish the turn lead or waypoint overflight manually. Chart symbology for the FBWP provides pilot awareness of expected actions. Refer to the legend of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books.

e. TAAs are described in paragraph 30.5.2. When published, the new RNAV chart will depict the TAA areas through the use of icons representing each TAA area associated with the RNAV procedure. These icons will be depicted in the plan view of the approach chart, generally arranged on the chart in accordance with their position relative to the aircraft arrival from the en route structure. The WP, to which navigation is appropriate and expected within each specific TAA area, will be named and depicted on the associated TAA icon. Each depicted named WP is the IAF for arrivals from within that area. TAAs may not be depicted on all RNAV procedures because of the inability for ATC to accommodate the TAA due to airspace congestion.

f. Cold Temperature Limitations. A minimum temperature limitation will be published for each procedure for which BARO-VNAV operations are authorized. This temperature represents the airport temperature below which use of the BARO-VNAV will not be authorized to the LNAV/VNAV minimums. An example limitation will read: “BARO-VNAV NA below –20 °C (–4 °F).” This information will be found in the upper left-hand box of the pilot briefing.

g. WAAS Channel Number/Approach ID. The WAAS Channel Number is an equipment optional capability that allows the use of a five-digit number to select a specific instrument approach procedure. The Approach ID is a unique four-letter combination for verifying selection of the correct procedure. The WAAS Channel Number and Approach ID will be displayed prominently in the approach procedure pilot briefing. The WAAS Channel Number and Approach ID provide one method available to the pilot for selecting and verifying the approach procedure for the runway of intended landing from the onboard databases. Some equipment may utilize a menu selection method.

(1) The Menu Method. In general, although the steps may vary among equipment types, the pilot first selects the airport of intended landing using the airborne equipment control panel. From a menu that is presented for this airport, the pilot then selects the approach runway. Selecting, from the menu, the Approach ID that matches the Approach ID printed on the approach chart then makes selection of the specific approach procedure. Finally, the pilot activates the procedure by selecting the IAF with which to begin the approach.

(2) Five-Digit Channel Number Method. The pilot enters the unique five-digit number provided for the approach chart, and the receiver recalls a specific approach procedure from the aircraft database. A list of information including the Approach ID and available IAFs is displayed. The pilot confirms the correct procedure is selected by comparing the Approach ID listed with that printed on the approach chart. Finally, the pilot activates the procedure by selecting the appropriate IAF with which to begin the approach.

30.6 APPROACH CLEARANCE

An aircraft that has been cleared to a holding fix and subsequently “cleared . . . approach” has not received new routing. Even though clearance for the approach may have been issued prior to the aircraft reaching the holding fix, ATC would expect the pilot to proceed via the holding fix (the last assigned route) and the feeder route associated with that fix (if a feeder route is published on the approach chart) to the IAF to commence the approach.

Note

When cleared for the approach, the published off airway (feeder) routes that lead from the en route structure to the IAF are part of the approach clearance.

If a feeder route to an IAF begins at a fix located along the route of flight prior to reaching the holding fix, and clearance for an approach is issued, a pilot should commence the approach via the published feeder route (i.e., the aircraft would not be expected to overfly the feeder route and return to it). The pilot is expected to commence the approach in a similar manner at the IAF if the IAF for the procedure is located along the route of flight to the holding fix.

If a route of flight directly to the initial approach fix is desired, it should be so stated by the controller with phraseology to include the words “direct,” “proceed direct,” or a similar phrase that the pilot can interpret without question. When uncertain of the clearance, immediately query ATC as to what route of flight is desired.

The name of an instrument approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, such as the glideslope on an instrument landing system, is inoperative or unreliable. The controller will use the name of the approach as published, but must advise the aircraft at the time an approach clearance is issued that the inoperative or unreliable approach aid component is unusable.

30.7 INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURES

Minimums are specified for various aircraft approach categories based upon a value 1.3 times the stalling speed of the aircraft in the landing configuration at maximum certified gross landing weight. In 14 CFR Section 97.3(b) categories are listed as follows:

1. Category A: Speed less than 91 knots.
2. Category B: Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.
3. Category C: Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.
4. Category D: Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.
5. Category E: Speed 166 knots or more.

Aircraft approach categories are also discussed in the U.S. Terminal Procedures (commonly called approach plates), which states, among other things, that “An aircraft shall fit in only one category. If it is necessary to maneuver at speeds in excess of the upper limit of a speed range for a category, the minimums for the next higher category should be used.” If it is necessary, while circling to land, to maneuver at speeds in excess of the upper limit of the speed range for each category, due to the possibility of extending the circling maneuver beyond the area for which obstruction clearance is provided, the circling minimum for the next higher approach category should be used. For example, an aircraft that falls in Category C, but is circling to land at a speed of 141 knots or higher, should use the approach Category D minimum when circling to land.

When operating on an unpublished route or while being radar vectored, the pilot, when an approach clearance is received, shall, in addition to complying with the minimum altitudes for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177), maintain the last assigned altitude unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC, or until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or IAP. After the aircraft is so established, published altitudes apply to descent within each succeeding route or approach segment unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC. Notwithstanding this pilot responsibility for aircraft operating on unpublished routes or while being radar vectored, ATC will, except when conducting a radar approach, issue an IFR approach clearance only after the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or IAP, or assign an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. For this purpose, the procedure turn of a published IAP shall not be considered a segment of that IAP until the aircraft reaches the initial fix or navigation facility upon which the procedure turn is predicated.

Note

The altitude assigned will ensure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or IAP. If uncertain of the meaning of the clearance, immediately request clarification from ATC.

Several IAPs, using various navigation and approach aids, may be authorized for an airport. ATC may advise that a particular approach procedure is being used, primarily to expedite traffic. If issued a clearance that specifies a particular approach procedure, notify ATC immediately if a different one is desired. In this event it may be necessary for ATC to withhold clearance for the different approach until such time as traffic conditions permit; however, a pilot involved in an emergency situation will be given priority. If the pilot is not familiar with the specific approach procedure, ATC should be advised and they will provide detailed information on the execution of the procedure.

At times, ATC may not specify a particular approach procedure in the clearance, but will state "CLEARED APPROACH." Such clearance indicates that the pilot may execute any one of the authorized IAPs for that airport. This clearance does not constitute approval for the pilot to execute a contact approach or a visual approach.

Except when being radar vectored to the final approach course, when cleared for a specifically prescribed IAP (i.e., "cleared ILS runway one niner approach") or when "cleared approach" (i.e., execution of any procedure prescribed for the airport), pilots shall execute the entire procedure commencing at an IAF or an associated feeder route as described on the IAP chart unless an appropriate new or revised ATC clearance is received or the IFR flight plan is canceled.

Pilots planning flights to locations served by special IAPs should obtain advance approval from the owner of the procedure. Approval by the owner is necessary because special procedures are for the exclusive use of the single interest unless otherwise authorized by the owner. Additionally, some special approach procedures require certain crew qualifications training or other special considerations in order to execute the approach. Also, some of these approach procedures are based on privately owned navigational aids. Owners of aids that are not for public use may elect to turn off the aid for whatever reason they may have (e.g., maintenance, conservation, etc.). Air traffic controllers are not required to question pilots to determine if they have permission to use the procedure. Controllers presume a pilot has obtained approval and is aware of any details of the procedure if an IFR flight plan was filed to that airport.

When executing an instrument approach and in radio contact with an FAA facility, unless in radar contact, report passing the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach).

Pilots should not rely on radar to identify a fix unless the fix is indicated as RADAR on the IAP. Pilots may request radar identification of an OM, but the controller may not be able to provide the service due either to workload or not having the fix on the video map.

If a missed approach is required, advise ATC and include the reason (unless initiated by ATC). Comply with the missed approach instructions for the instrument approach procedure being executed unless otherwise directed by ATC.

30.8 PROCEDURE TURN

A procedure turn is the maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to perform a course reversal to establish the aircraft inbound on an intermediate or final approach course. The procedure turn or hold in lieu of procedure turn is a required maneuver. The procedure turn is not required when the symbol NoPT is shown, when radar vectoring to the final approach course is provided, when conducting a timed approach, or when the procedure turn is not authorized. The hold in lieu of procedure turn is not required when radar vectoring to the final approach course is provided or when NoPT is shown. The altitude prescribed for the procedure turn is a minimum altitude until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. The maneuver must be completed within the distance specified in the profile view.

1. On U.S. Government charts, a barbed arrow indicates the direction or side of the outbound course on which the procedure turn is made. Headings are provided for course reversal using the 45-degree type procedure turn; however, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn is left to the discretion of the pilot. Some of the options are the 45-degree procedure turn, the racetrack pattern, the teardrop procedure turn, or the 80 degree ↔ 260 degree course reversal. Some procedure turns are specified by procedural track. These turns must be flown exactly as depicted.

2. When the approach procedure involves a procedure turn, a maximum speed of not greater than 200 knots Indicated Airspeed (IAS) should be observed from first overhead the course reversal IAF through the procedure turn maneuver to ensure containment within the obstruction clearance area. Pilots should begin the outbound turn immediately after passing the procedure turn fix. The procedure turn maneuver must be executed within the distance specified in the profile view. The normal procedure turn distance is 10 miles. This may be reduced to a minimum of 5 miles where only Category A or helicopter aircraft are to be operated or increased to as much as 15 miles to accommodate high-performance aircraft.

3. A teardrop procedure or penetration turn may be specified in some procedures for a required course reversal. The teardrop procedure consists of departure from an initial approach fix on an outbound course followed by a turn toward and intercepting the inbound course at or prior to the intermediate fix or point. Its purpose is to permit an aircraft to reverse direction and lose considerable altitude within reasonably limited airspace. Where no fix is available to mark the beginning of the intermediate segment, it shall be assumed to commence at a point 10 miles prior to the final approach fix. When the facility is located on the airport, an aircraft is considered to be on final approach upon completion of the penetration turn; however, the final approach segment begins on the final approach course 10 miles from the facility.

4. A holding pattern in lieu of procedure turn may be specified for course reversal in some procedures. In such cases, the holding pattern is established over an intermediate fix or a final approach fix. The holding pattern distance or time specified in the profile view must be observed. Maximum holding airspeed limitations, as set forth for all holding patterns, apply. The holding pattern maneuver is completed when the aircraft is established on the inbound course after executing the appropriate entry. If cleared for the approach prior to returning to the holding fix, and the aircraft is at the prescribed altitude, additional circuits of the holding pattern are not necessary nor expected by ATC. If pilots elect to make additional circuits to lose excessive altitude or to become better established on course, it is their responsibility to so advise ATC upon receipt of their approach clearance.

5. A procedure turn is not required when an approach can be made directly from a specified intermediate fix to the final approach fix. In such cases, the term NoPT is used with the appropriate course and altitude to denote that the procedure turn is not required. If a procedure turn is desired, and when cleared to do so by ATC, descent below the procedure turn altitude should not be made until the aircraft is established on the inbound course, since some NoPT altitudes may be lower than the procedure turn altitudes.

30.8.1 Limitations on Procedure Turns

1. In the case of a radar initial approach to a final approach fix or position, or a timed approach from a holding fix, or where the procedure specifies NoPT, no pilot may make a procedure turn unless, when final approach clearance is received, the pilot so advises ATC and a clearance is received to execute a procedure turn.

2. When a teardrop procedure turn is depicted and a course reversal is required, this type turn must be executed.

3. When a holding pattern replaces a procedure turn, the holding pattern must be followed, except when radar vectoring is provided or when NoPT is shown on the approach course. The recommended entry procedures will ensure the aircraft remains within the holding pattern protected airspace. As in the procedure turn, the descent from the minimum holding pattern altitude to the final approach fix altitude (when lower) may not commence until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. Where a holding pattern is established in lieu of a procedure turn, the maximum holding pattern airspeeds apply.

4. The absence of the procedure turn barb in the plan view indicates a procedure turn is not authorized for that procedure.

30.9 TIMED APPROACHES FROM A HOLDING FIX

Timed approaches may be conducted when the following conditions are met:

1. A control tower is in operation at the airport where the approaches are conducted.

2. Direct communications are maintained between the pilot and the center or approach controller until the pilot is instructed to contact the tower.

3. If more than one missed approach procedure is available, none require a course reversal.

4. If only one missed approach procedure is available, the following conditions are met:

   a. Course reversal is not required.

   b. Reported ceiling and visibility are equal to or greater than the highest prescribed circling minimums for the IAP.

5. When cleared for the approach, pilots shall not execute a procedure turn. (14 CFR Section 91.175.)

Although the controller will not specifically state that timed approaches are in progress, the assigning of a time to depart the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach) is indicative that timed approach procedures are being utilized, or in lieu of holding, the controller may use radar vectors to the final approach course to establish a mileage interval between aircraft that will ensure the appropriate time sequence between the final approach fix/outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker and the airport.

Each pilot in an approach sequence will be given advance notice as to the time they should leave the holding point on approach to the airport. When a time to leave the holding point has been received, the pilot should adjust the flight path to leave the fix as closely as possible to the designated time (Figure 30-14).

Example:

At 12:03 local time, in the example shown, a pilot holding receives instructions to leave the fix inbound at 12:07. These instructions are received just as the pilot has completed turn at the outbound end of the holding pattern and is proceeding inbound toward the fix. Arriving back over the fix, the pilot notes the time is 12:04 and there are 3 minutes to lose in order to leave the fix at the assigned time. Since the time remaining is more than 2 minutes, the pilot plans to fly a racetrack pattern rather than a 360-degree turn, which would use up 2 minutes. The turns at the ends of the racetrack pattern will consume approximately 2 minutes. Three minutes to go, minus 2 minutes required for the turns, leaves 1 minute for level flight. Since two portions of level flight will be required to get back to the fix inbound, the pilot halves the 1 minute remaining and plans to fly level for 30 seconds outbound before starting the turn back to the fix on final approach. If the winds were negligible at flight altitude, this procedure would bring the pilot inbound across the fix precisely at the specified time of 12:07; however, if expecting headwind on final approach, the pilot should shorten the 30-second outbound course somewhat, knowing the wind will carry the aircraft away from the fix faster while outbound and decrease the groundspeed while returning to the fix. On the other hand, compensating for a tailwind on final approach, the pilot should lengthen the calculated 30-second outbound heading somewhat, knowing the wind would tend to hold the aircraft closer to the fix while outbound and increase the groundspeed while returning to the fix.

30.10 RADAR APPROACHES

The only airborne radio equipment required for radar approaches is a functioning radio transmitter and receiver. The radar controller vectors the aircraft to align it with the runway centerline. The controller continues the vectors to keep the aircraft on course until the pilot can complete the approach and landing by visual reference to the surface. There are two types of radar approaches: Precision (PAR) and Surveillance (ASR).

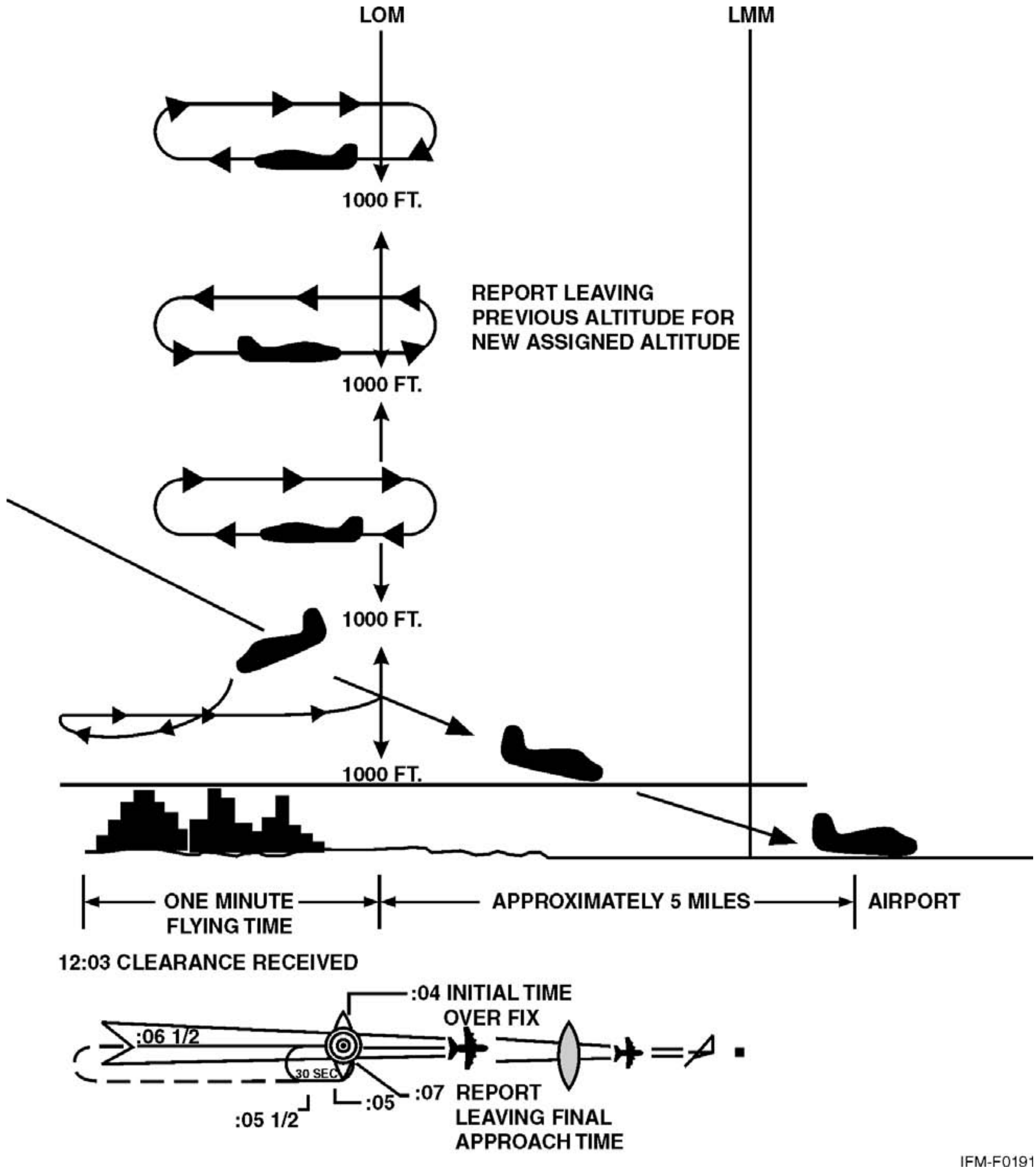


Figure 30-14. Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix

A radar approach may be given to any aircraft upon request and may be offered to pilots of aircraft in distress or to expedite traffic; however, an ASR might not be approved unless there is an ATC operational requirement, or in an unusual or emergency situation. Acceptance of a PAR or ASR by a pilot does not waive the prescribed weather minimums for the airport or for the particular aircraft operator concerned. The decision to make a radar approach when the reported weather is below the established minimums rests with the pilot.

PAR and ASR minimums are published on separate pages in the FAA Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP).

1. A Precision Approach (PAR) is one in which a controller provides highly accurate navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation to a pilot. Pilots are given headings to fly, to direct them to, and keep their aircraft aligned with the extended centerline of the landing runway. They are told to anticipate glidepath interception approximately 10 to 30 seconds before it occurs and when to start descent. The published DH will be given only if the pilot requests it. If the aircraft is observed to deviate above or below the glidepath, the pilot is given the relative amount of deviation by use of terms “slightly” or “well” and is expected to adjust the aircraft rate of descent/ascent to return to the glidepath. Trend information is also issued with respect to the elevation of the aircraft and may be modified by the terms “rapidly” and “slowly” (e.g., “well above glidepath, coming down rapidly”). Range from touchdown is given at least once each mile. If an aircraft is observed by the controller to proceed outside of specified safety zone limits in azimuth and/or elevation and continue to operate outside these prescribed limits, the pilot will be directed to execute a missed approach or to fly a specified course unless the pilot has the runway environment (runway, approach lights, etc.) in sight. Navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation is provided the pilot until the aircraft reaches the published DH. Advisory course and glidepath information is furnished by the controller until the aircraft passes over the landing threshold, at which point the pilot is advised of any deviation from the runway centerline. Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

2. A Surveillance Approach (ASR) is one in which a controller provides navigational guidance in azimuth only. The pilot is furnished headings to fly to align the aircraft with the extended centerline of the landing runway. Since the radar information used for a surveillance approach is considerably less precise than that used for a precision approach, the accuracy of the approach will not be as great and higher minimums will apply. Guidance in elevation is not possible but the pilot will be advised when to commence descent to the MDA or, if appropriate, to an intermediate stepdown fix Minimum Crossing Altitude (MCA) and subsequently to the prescribed MDA. In addition, the pilot will be advised of the location of the MAP prescribed for the procedure and the aircraft position each mile on final from the runway, airport, heliport, or MAP, as appropriate. If requested by the pilot, recommended altitudes will be issued at each mile, based on the descent gradient established for the procedure, down to the last mile that is at or above the MDA. Normally, navigational guidance will be provided until the aircraft reaches the MAP. Controllers will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach unless at the MAP the pilot has the runway, airport, or heliport in sight or, for a helicopter point-in-space approach, the prescribed visual reference with the surface is established. Also, if, at any time during the approach the controller considers that safe guidance for the remainder of the approach cannot be provided, the controller will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach. Similarly, guidance termination and missed approach will be effected upon pilot request and, for civil aircraft only, controllers may terminate guidance when the pilot reports the runway, airport, heliport or visual surface route (point-in-space approach) in sight or otherwise indicates continued guidance is not required. Radar service is automatically terminated at the completion of a radar approach.

Note

- The published MDA for straight-in approaches will be issued to the pilot before beginning descent. When a surveillance approach will terminate in a circle-to-land maneuver, the pilot must furnish the aircraft approach category to the controller. The controller will then provide the pilot with the appropriate MDA.
- ASR approaches are not available when an ATC facility is using Center Radar Approach Control (CERAP).

3. A no-gyro approach is available to a pilot under radar control who experiences circumstances wherein the directional gyro or other stabilized compass is inoperative or inaccurate. When this occurs, the pilot should so advise ATC and request a no-gyro vector or approach. Pilots of aircraft not equipped with a directional gyro or other stabilized compass who desire radar handling may also request a no-gyro vector or approach. The pilot should make all turns at standard rate and should execute the turn immediately upon receipt of instructions (e.g., "TURN RIGHT," "STOP TURN"). When a surveillance or precision approach is made, the pilot will be advised after the aircraft has been turned onto final approach to make turns at half standard rate.

30.11 RADAR MONITORING OF INSTRUMENT APPROACHES

PAR facilities operated by the FAA and the military services at some joint-use (civil and military) and military installations monitor aircraft on instrument approaches and issue radar advisories to the pilot when weather is below VFR minimums (1,000 and 3), at night, or when requested by a pilot. This service is provided only when the PAR final approach course coincides with the final approach of the navigational aid and only during the operational hours of the PAR. The radar advisories serve only as a secondary aid, since the pilot has selected the navigational aid as the primary aid for the approach.

Prior to starting final approach, the pilot will be advised of the frequency on which the advisories will be transmitted. If, for any reason, radar advisories cannot be furnished, the pilot will be so advised.

Advisory information, derived from radar observations, includes information on:

1. Passing the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or passing the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach).

Note

Parallel approach operations demand heightened pilot situational awareness. A thorough approach procedure chart review should be conducted with, as a minimum, emphasis on the following approach chart information: name and number of the approach, localizer frequency, inbound localizer/azimuth course, glideslope intercept altitude, decision height, missed approach instructions, special notes/procedures, and the assigned runway location/proximity to adjacent runways. Pilots will be advised that simultaneous ILS/MLS or simultaneous close parallel ILS Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) approaches are in use. This information may be provided through the ATIS.

2. The close proximity of adjacent aircraft conducting simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS and simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches mandates strict pilot compliance with all ATC clearances. ATC assigned airspeeds, altitudes, and headings must be complied with in a timely manner. Autopilot coupled ILS/MLS approaches require pilot knowledge of procedures necessary to comply with ATC instructions. Simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS and simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches necessitate precise localizer tracking to minimize final monitor controller intervention and unwanted No Transgression Zone (NTZ) penetration. In the unlikely event of a breakout, ATC will not assign altitudes lower than the minimum vectoring altitude. Pilots should notify ATC immediately if there is a degradation of aircraft or navigation systems.

3. Strict radio discipline is mandatory during parallel ILS/MLS approach operations. This includes an alert listening watch and the avoidance of lengthy, unnecessary radio transmissions. Attention must be given to proper call sign usage to prevent the inadvertent execution of clearances intended for another aircraft. Use of abbreviated call signs must be avoided to preclude confusion of aircraft with similar sounding call signs. Pilots must be alert to unusually long periods of silence or any unusual background sounds in their radio receiver. A stuck microphone may block the issuance of ATC instructions by the final monitor controller during simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS and simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches.

4. Use of Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance Systems (TCAS) provides an additional element of safety to parallel approach operations. Pilots should follow recommended TCAS operating procedures presented in approved flight manuals, original equipment manufacturer recommendations, professional newsletters, and FAA publications.

30.12 PARALLEL ILS/MLS APPROACHES (DEPENDENT)

Parallel approaches are an ATC procedure permitting parallel ILS/MLS approaches (Figure 30-15) to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and required airborne equipment.

A parallel (dependent) approach differs from a simultaneous (independent) approach in that the minimum distance between parallel runway centerlines is reduced there is no requirement for radar monitoring or advisories, and a staggered separation of aircraft on the adjacent localizer/azimuth course is required (Figure 30-16).

Aircraft are afforded a minimum of 1.5 miles radar separation diagonally between successive aircraft on the adjacent localizer/azimuth course when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 4,300 feet apart. When runway centerlines are more than 4,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart, a minimum of 2 miles diagonal radar separation is provided. Aircraft on the same localizer/azimuth course within 10 miles of the runway end are provided a minimum of 2.5 miles radar separation. In addition, a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of 3 miles radar separation is provided between aircraft during turn onto the parallel final approach course.

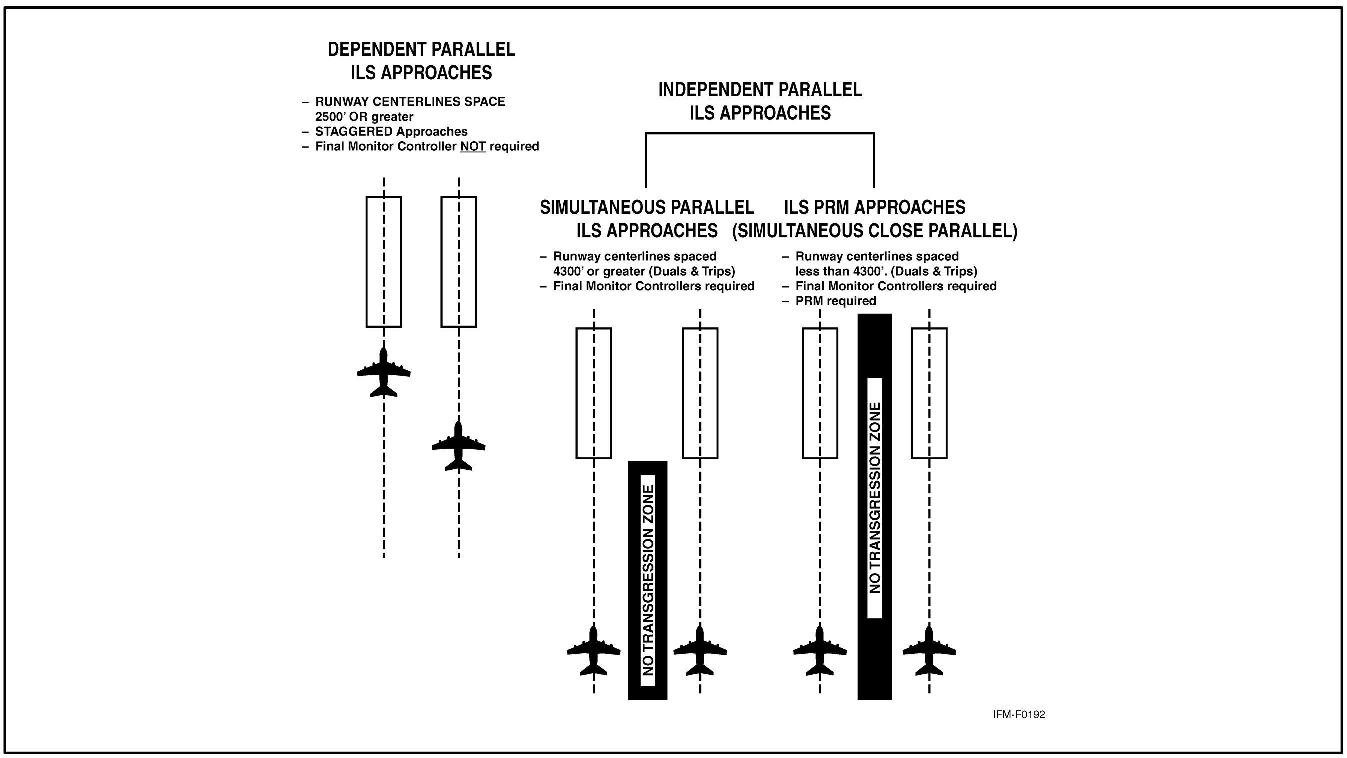


Figure 30-15. Parallel ILS Approaches

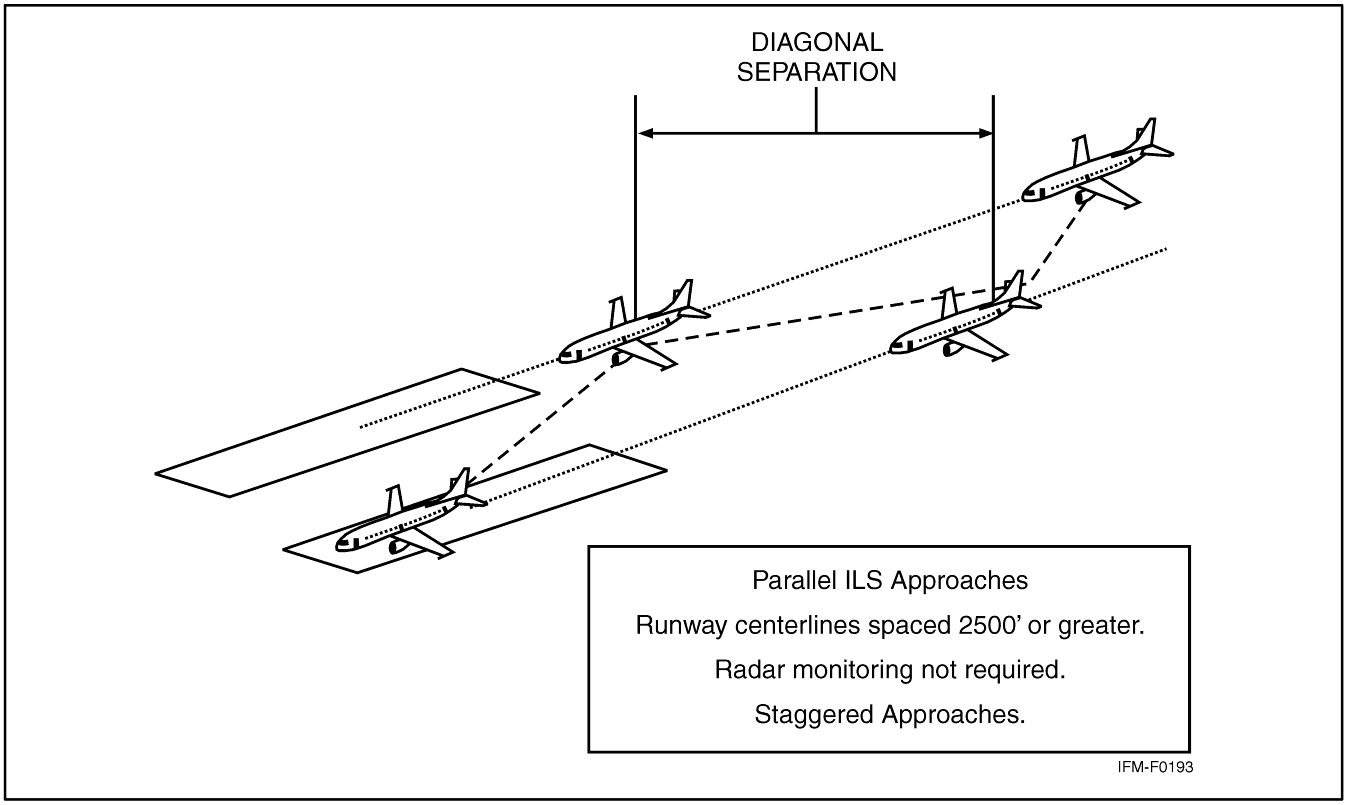


Figure 30-16. Staggered ILS Approaches

Whenever parallel ILS/MLS approaches are in progress, pilots are informed that approaches to both runways are in use. In addition, the radar controller will have the interphone capability of communicating with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

30.13 SIMULTANEOUS PARALLEL ILS/MLS APPROACHES (INDEPENDENT)

30.13.1 System

This approach system permits simultaneous ILS/MLS approaches (Figure 30-17) to parallel runways with centerlines separated by 4,300 to 9,000 feet and equipped with final monitor controllers. Simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches require radar monitoring to ensure separation between aircraft on the adjacent parallel approach course. Aircraft position is tracked by final monitor controllers who will issue instructions to aircraft observed deviating from the assigned localizer course. Staggered radar separation procedures are not utilized. Integral parts of a total system are ILS/MLS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and required airborne equipment. The approach procedure chart permitting simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches will contain the note "simultaneous approaches authorized RWYS 14L and 14R," identifying the appropriate runways as the case may be. When advised that simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches are in progress, pilots shall advise approach control immediately of malfunctioning or inoperative receivers, or if a simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approach is not desired.

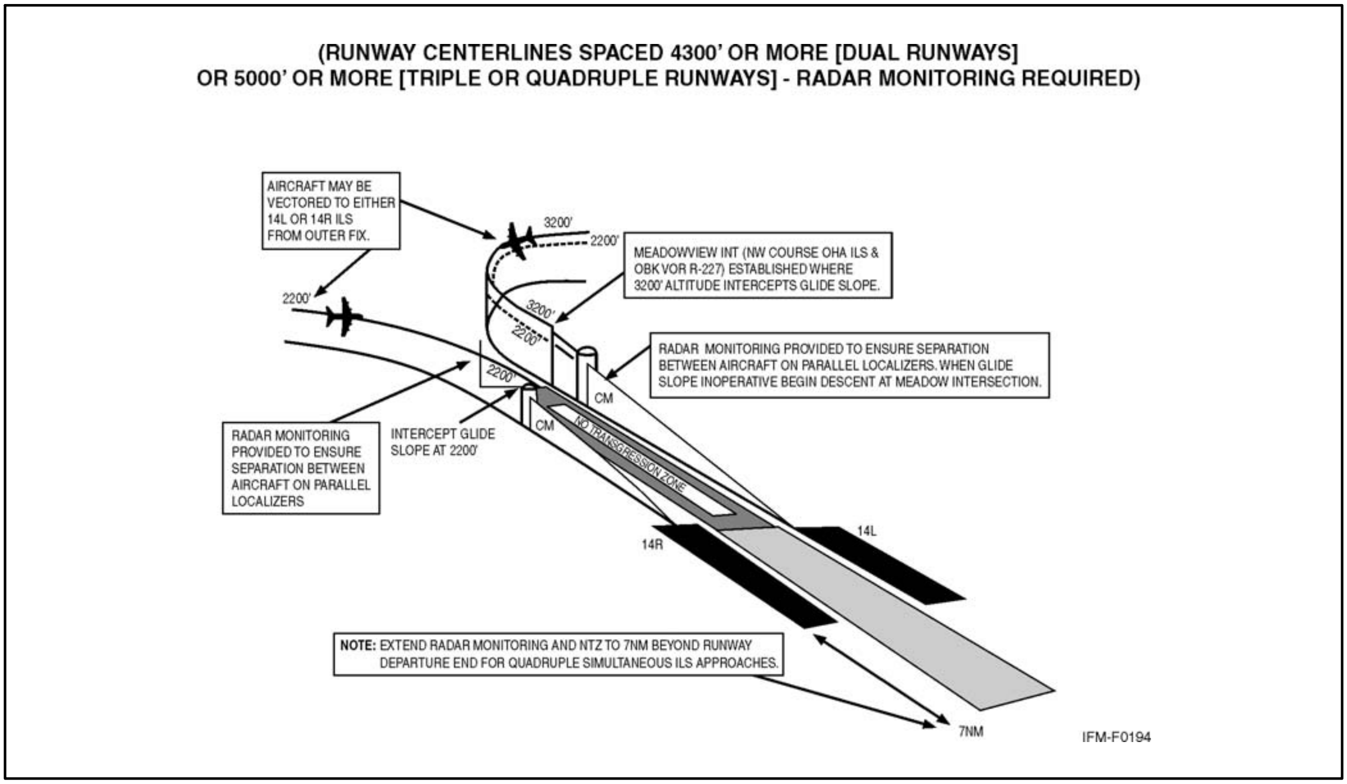


Figure 30-17. Simultaneous Parallel ILS Approaches

30.13.2 Radar Monitoring

This service is provided for each simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approach to ensure aircraft do not deviate from the final approach course. Radar monitoring includes instructions if an aircraft nears or penetrates the prescribed NTZ (an area 2,000 feet wide located equidistant between parallel final approach courses). This service will be provided as follows:

1. During turn onto parallel final approach, aircraft will be provided 3 miles radar separation or a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical separation. Aircraft will not be vectored to intercept the final approach course at an angle greater than 30 degrees.

2. The final monitor controller will have the capability of overriding the tower controller on the tower frequency.

3. Pilots will be instructed to monitor the tower frequency to receive advisories and instructions.

4. Aircraft observed to overshoot the turn-on or to continue on a track that will penetrate the NTZ will be instructed to return to the correct final approach course immediately. The final monitor controller may also issue missed approach or breakout instructions to the deviating aircraft.

5. If a deviating aircraft fails to respond to such instructions or is observed penetrating the NTZ, the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course may be instructed to alter course.

6. Radar monitoring will automatically be terminated when visual separation is applied, the aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight, or the aircraft is 1 mile or less from the runway threshold (for runway centerlines spaced 4,300 feet or greater). Final monitor controllers will not advise pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

30.14 SIMULTANEOUS CLOSE PARALLEL ILS PRM APPROACHES (INDEPENDENT)

30.14.1 System

This approach system permits simultaneous ILS PRM approaches (Figure 30-18) to dual runways with centerlines separated by less than 4,300 feet and equipped with final monitor controllers. To qualify for reduced lateral runway separation, final monitor controllers must be equipped with high-update radar and high-resolution ATC radar displays, collectively called a PRM system. The PRM system displays almost instantaneous radar information. Automated tracking software provides monitor controllers with aircraft identification, position, a 10-second projected position, as well as visual and aural controller alerts. The PRM system is a supplemental requirement for simultaneous close parallel approaches in addition to the system requirements for simultaneous parallel ILS/MLS approaches described in paragraph 30.13. Simultaneous close parallel ILS PRM approaches are identified by a separate approach procedure chart named ILS PRM (Simultaneous Close Parallel). The name ILS PRM is derived from the Precision Runway Monitor System (PRMS), which provides a means for simplifying the name of the simultaneous close parallel ILS approach.

30.14.2 Requirements

The following requirements must be met in order to fly an ILS PRM approach:

1. Air carrier pilots (including Part 121 and Part 135) must complete ILS PRM training, which includes viewing one of the FAA videos, RDU Precision Runway Monitor: A Pilot's Approach or ILS PRM Approaches, Information for Pilots. Watching one of these videos is strongly recommended for all pilots who wish to fly these approaches.

2. All ATC-directed breakouts, a vector off the ILS prior to the DA, must be hand flown.

3. If the airport has two tower frequencies operating for each runway, the aircraft flying the ILS PRM approach must have the capability of enabling the pilot(s) to listen to two frequencies simultaneously. Pilots shall advise air traffic control within 200 miles of the airport of intended landing if the pilot(s) are not qualified and/or the aircraft is not equipped to fly the approach.

30.14.3 Radar Monitoring

Simultaneous close parallel ILS/MLS approaches require final monitor controllers utilize the Precision Runway Monitor System (PRMS) to ensure prescribed separation standards are met. Procedures and communications phraseology are described in paragraph 30.13. To ensure separation is maintained, and in order to avoid an imminent situation during simultaneous close parallel ILS/MLS approaches, pilots must immediately comply with final monitor controller instructions to avoid an imminent situation. A minimum of 3 miles radar separation or 1,000 feet vertical separation will be provided during the turn onto close parallel final approach courses. In the event of a missed approach, radar monitoring is provided to one-half mile beyond the departure end of the runway. Final monitor controllers will not notify pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

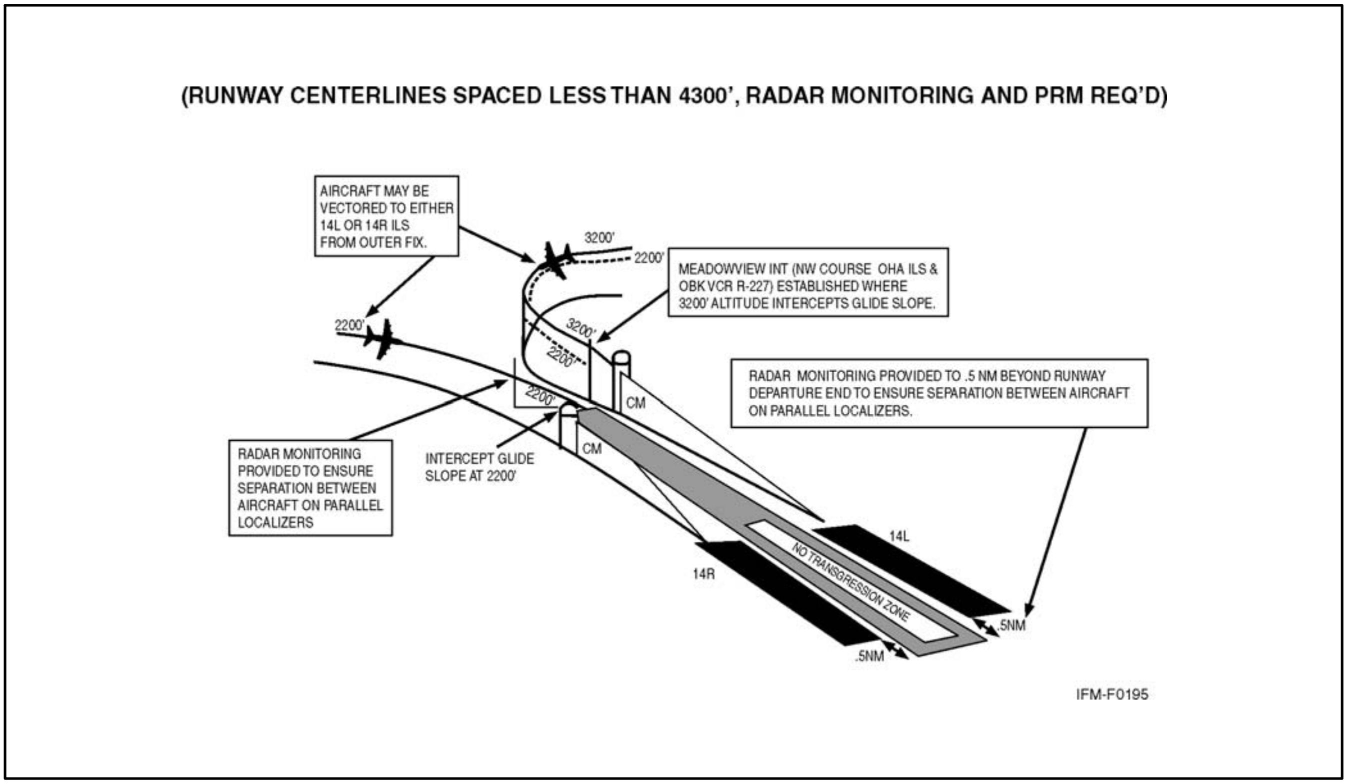


Figure 30-18. ILS PRM Approaches

30.14.4 Differences Between ILS and ILS PRM Approaches of Importance to the Pilot

30.14.4.1 Runway Spacing

Prior to ILS PRM approaches, most ATC-directed breakouts were the result of two aircraft in trail getting too close together. Two aircraft going in the same direction did not mandate quick reaction times, but two aircraft along side each other separated by less than 4,300 feet and closing at 135 feet per second does constitute the need for quick action. A blunder has to be recognized by one controller, the information passed on to another controller, and breakout instructions issued to the endangered aircraft. The pilot will not have any warning that a breakout is imminent because the blundering aircraft will probably be on another frequency. It is important that when a pilot receives breakout instructions, he/she assumes that a blundering aircraft is heading into his/her approach course and begins the breakout as soon as safety allows.

30.14.4.2 Communications

To help in avoiding communication problems caused by stuck mikes and two parties talking at the same time, two tower frequencies for each runway will be in use during ILS PRM approach operations. The tower controller and the monitor controller will be broadcasting on both of the assigned frequencies. The monitor controller has the capability of overriding the tower controller. The pilots flying the approach will listen to both frequencies and only broadcast on the primary tower frequency. If a breakout is initiated by the monitor controller and the primary frequency is blocked by another transmission, the breakout instruction will be able to be heard on the second frequency. Antiblocking technology installed in VHF radios might remove the requirement for the second VHF communications frequency in the near future.

30.14.4.3 Hand-Flown Breakouts

The use of the autopilot is encouraged while flying an ILS PRM approach, but the autopilot must be disengaged in the rare event that a breakout is issued. Simulation studies of breakouts have shown that a hand-flown breakout is initiated consistently faster than a breakout performed using the autopilot.

30.14.4.4 TCAS

TCAS II-equipped aircraft will fly the ILS PRM approach with the TCAS set to the Traffic Advisory (TA) only mode. If the TCAS is set to the TA/Resolution Advisory (RA) mode, there is a chance that the TCAS resolution advisory will be in conflict with the breakout instruction and result in a confusing situation during a critical time. Pilots must remember to switch back to the TA/RA mode after completing the breakout maneuver.

30.14.4.5 Descending Breakouts

In the past, breakout descents were rarely given to pilots when flying on the lLS localizer and glideslope. A greater chance exists for the controller to issue a descending breakout when there is a blundering aircraft from an adjacent approach course crossing an aircraft path. Pilots must be aware that a descending breakout is a possibility. In no case will the controller descend an aircraft below the Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA), which will provide at least 1,000 feet clearance above obstacles. The pilot is not expected to exceed 1,000 feet per minute rate of descent in the event a descending breakout is issued.

30.15 SIMULTANEOUS CONVERGING INSTRUMENT APPROACHES

ATC may conduct instrument approaches simultaneously to converging runways (i.e., runways having an included angle from 15 to 100 degrees) at airports where a program has been specifically approved to do so.

The basic concept requires that dedicated, separate standard instrument approach procedures be developed for each converging runway included. Missed approach points must be at least 3 miles apart and missed approach procedures ensure missed approach protected airspace does not overlap.

Other requirements are radar availability, nonintersecting final approach courses, precision (ILS/MLS) approach systems on each runway and, if runways intersect, controllers must be able to apply visual separation as well as intersecting runway separation criteria. Intersecting runways also require minimums of at least 700-foot ceilings and 2 miles visibility. Straight-in approaches and landings must be made.

Whenever simultaneous converging approaches are in progress, aircraft will be informed by the controller as soon as feasible after initial contact or via ATIS. Additionally, the radar controller will have direct communications capability with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

30.16 SIDESTEP MANEUVER

ATC may authorize a nonprecision approach procedure that serves either one of parallel runways that are separated by 1,200 feet or less followed by a straight-in landing on the adjacent runway.

Aircraft that will execute a sidestep maneuver will be cleared for a specified nonprecision approach and landing on the adjacent parallel runway (e.g., “cleared ILS runway 7 left approach, sidestep to runway 7 right”). Pilots are expected to commence the sidestep maneuver as soon as possible after the runway or runway environment is in sight.

Landing minimums to the adjacent runway will be based on nonprecision criteria and therefore higher than the precision minimums to the primary runway, but will normally be lower than the published circling minimums.

30.17 APPROACH AND LANDING MINIMUMS

30.17.1 Landing Minimums

The rules applicable to landing minimums are contained in 14 CFR Section 91.175.

30.17.2 Published Approach Minimums

Approach minimums are published for different aircraft categories and consist of a minimum altitude (DA, DH, MDA) and required visibility. These minimums are determined by applying the appropriate TERPS criteria. When a fix is incorporated in a nonprecision final segment, two sets of minimums may be published: one for the pilot who is able to identify the fix and a second for the pilot who cannot. Two sets of minimums may also be published when a second altimeter source is used in the procedure. When a nonprecision procedure incorporates both a stepdown fix in the final segment and a second altimeter source, two sets of minimums are published to account for the stepdown fix and a note addresses minimums for the second altimeter source.

30.17.3 Obstacle Clearance

Final approach obstacle clearance is provided from the start of the final segment to the runway or missed approach point, whichever occurs last. Sidestep obstacle protection is provided by increasing the width of the final approach obstacle clearance area. Circling approach protected areas are defined by the tangential connection of arcs drawn from each runway end. The arc radii distance differs by aircraft approach category. Because of obstacles near the airport, a portion of the circling area may be restricted by a procedural note (e.g., “Circling NA E of RWY 17-35”). Obstacle clearance is provided at the published minimums for the pilot who makes a straight-in approach, sidesteps, circles, or executes the missed approach. Missed approach obstacle clearance requirements may dictate the published minimums for the approach (Figure 30-19).

30.17.4 Straight-In Minimums

Straight-in minimums are shown on the IAP when the final approach course is within 30 degrees of the runway alignment (15 degrees for GPS IAPs) and a normal descent can be made from the IFR altitude shown on the IAP to the runway surface. When either the normal rate of descent or the runway alignment factor of 30 degrees (15 degrees for GPS IAPs) is exceeded, a straight-in minimum is not published and a circling minimum applies. The fact that a straight-in minimum is not published does not preclude pilots from landing straight-in if they have the active runway in sight and have sufficient time to make a normal approach for landing. Under such conditions and when ATC has cleared them for landing on that runway, pilots are not expected to circle even though only circling minimums are published. If they desire to circle, they should advise ATC.

30.17.5 Sidestep Maneuver Minimums

Landing minimums for a sidestep maneuver to the adjacent runway will normally be higher than the minimums to the primary runway.

30.17.6 Circling Minimums

In some busy terminal areas, ATC may not allow circling and circling minimums will not be published. Published circling minimums provide obstacle clearance when pilots remain within the appropriate area of protection. Pilots should remain at or above the circling altitude until the aircraft is continuously in a position from which a descent to a landing on the intended runway can be made at a normal rate of descent using normal maneuvers. Circling may require maneuvers at low altitude, at low airspeed, and in marginal weather conditions. Pilots must use sound judgment, have an in-depth knowledge of their capabilities, and fully understand the aircraft performance to determine the exact circling maneuver because weather, unique airport design, and the aircraft position, altitude, and airspeed must all be considered. The following basic rules apply:

1. Maneuver the shortest path to the base or downwind leg, as appropriate, considering existing weather conditions. There is no restriction from passing over the airport or other runways.

2. It should be recognized that circling maneuvers may be made while VFR or other flying is in progress at the airport. Standard left turns or specific instruction from the controller for maneuvering must be considered when circling to land.

CIRCLING APPROACH AREA RADII

Approach Category	Radius (Miles)
A	1.3
B	1.5
C	1.7
D	2.3
E	4.5

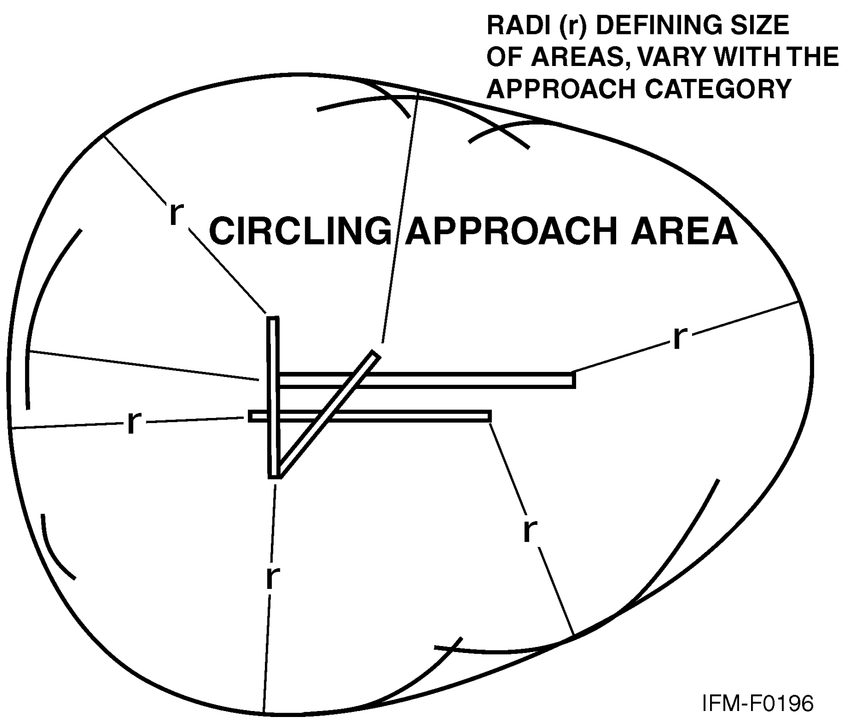


Figure 30-19. Final Approach Obstacle Clearance

3. At airports without a control tower, it may be desirable to fly over the airport to observe wind and turn indicators and other traffic that may be on the runway or flying in the vicinity of the airport.

30.17.7 Instrument Approach at a Military Field

When instrument approaches are conducted by civil aircraft at military airports, they shall be conducted in accordance with the procedures and minimums approved by the military agency having jurisdiction over the airport.

30.18 MISSED APPROACH

When a landing cannot be accomplished, advise ATC and, upon reaching the missed approach point defined on the approach procedure chart, the pilot must comply with the missed approach instructions for the procedure being used or with an alternate missed approach procedure specified by ATC.

Protected obstacle clearance areas for missed approach are predicated on the assumption that the missed approach is initiated at the DH or at the missed approach point and not lower than MDA. A climb of at least 200 feet per nautical mile is required, unless a higher climb gradient is published on the approach chart. Reasonable buffers are provided for normal maneuvers, but no consideration is given to an abnormally early turn; therefore, when an early missed approach is executed, pilots should, unless otherwise cleared by ATC, fly the IAP as specified on the approach plate to the missed approach point at or above the MDA or DH before executing a turning maneuver.

If visual reference is lost while circling to land from an instrument approach, the missed approach specified for that particular procedure must be followed (unless an alternate missed approach procedure is specified by ATC). To become established on the prescribed missed approach course, the pilot should make an initial climbing turn toward the landing runway and continue the turn until established on the missed approach course. Inasmuch as the circling maneuver may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to become established on the prescribed missed approach course, depending on the aircraft position at the time visual reference is lost. Adherence to the procedure will ensure an aircraft will remain within the circling and missed approach obstruction clearance areas (Figure 30-20).

At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure (Figure 30-21).

When approach has been missed, request clearance for specific action (e.g., to alternative airport, another approach, etc.).

30.19 VISUAL APPROACH

A visual approach is conducted on an IFR flight plan and authorizes a pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must have either the airport or the preceding identified aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and controlled by the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must have a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater. ATC may authorize this type approach when it will be operationally beneficial. Visual approaches are an IFR procedure conducted under IFR in Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC). Cloud clearance requirements of 14 CFR Section 91.155 are not applicable, unless required by operation specifications.

30.19.1 Operating to an Airport Without Weather Reporting Service

ATC will advise the pilot when weather information is not available at the destination airport. ATC may initiate a visual approach, provided there is a reasonable assurance that weather at the airport is a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater (e.g., area weather reports, Pilot Reports [PIREPs], etc.).

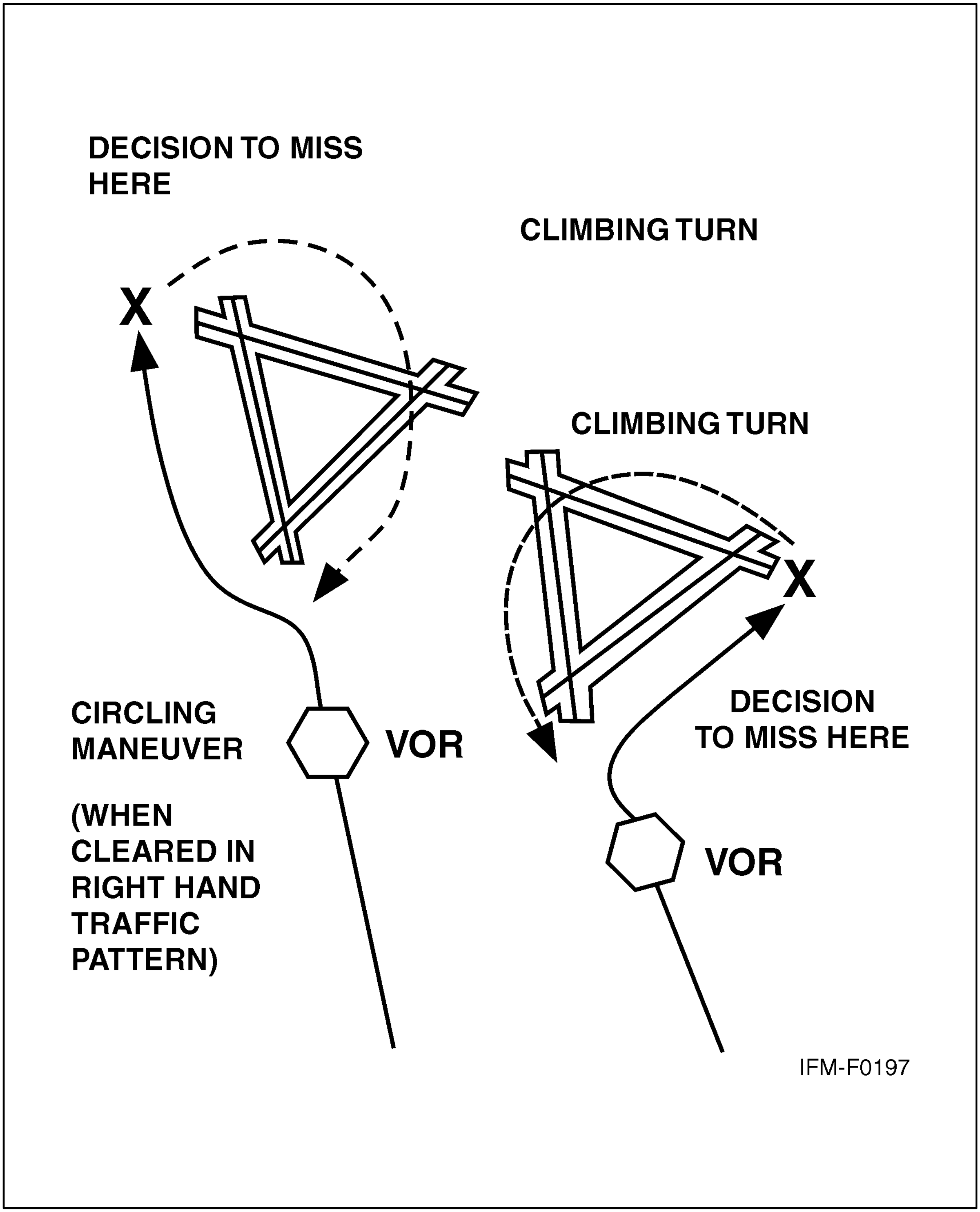


Figure 30-20. Circling and Missed Approach Obstruction Clearance Areas

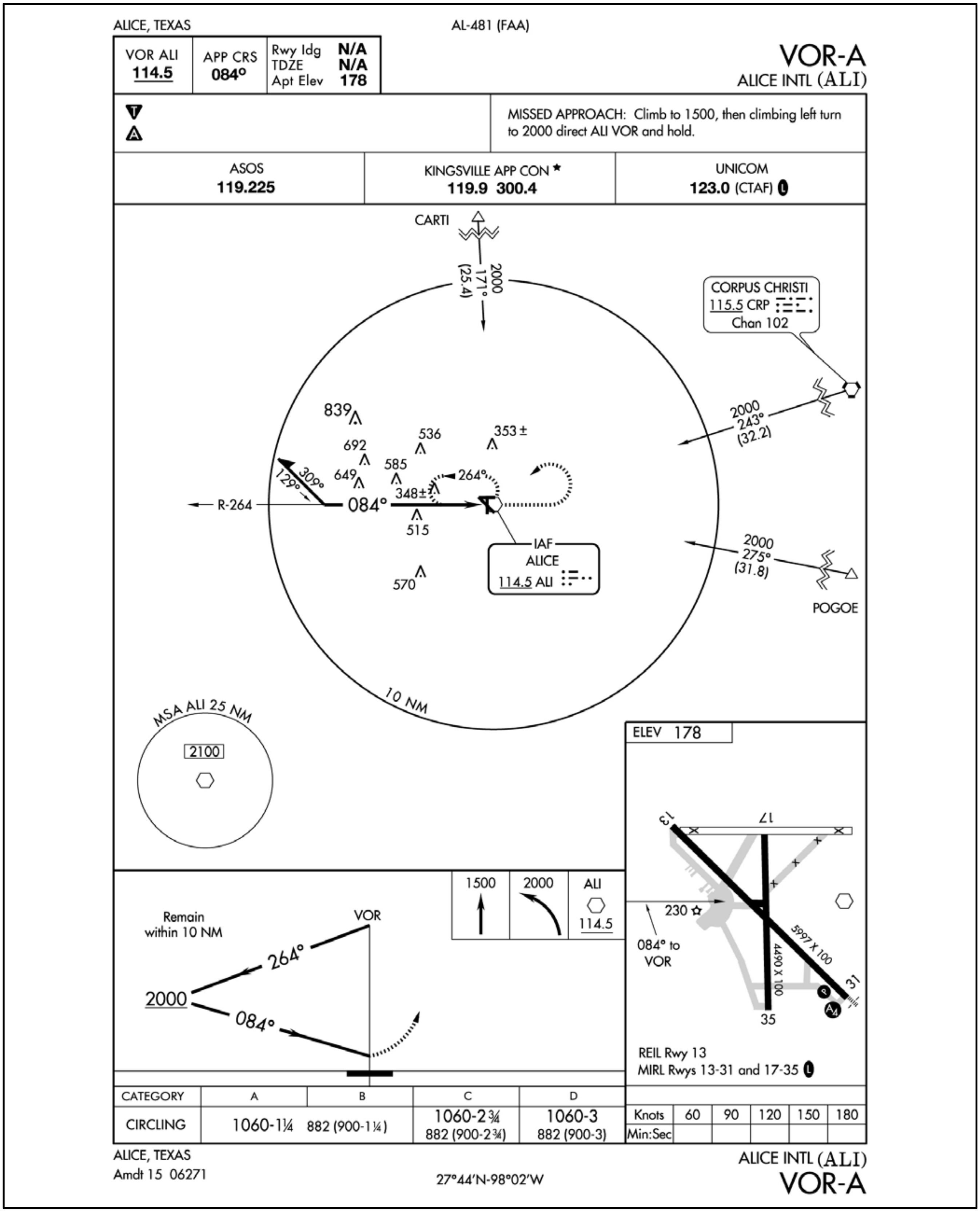


Figure 30-21. Missed Approach

30.19.2 Operating to an Airport With an Operating Control Tower

Aircraft may be authorized to conduct a visual approach to one runway while other aircraft are conducting IFR or VFR approaches to another parallel, intersecting, or converging runway. When operating to airports with parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, the succeeding aircraft must report sighting the preceding aircraft unless standard separation is being provided by ATC. When operating to parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet but less than 4,300 feet, controllers will clear/vector aircraft to the final at an angle not greater than 30 degrees unless radar, vertical, or visual separation is provided during the turn-on. The purpose of the 30-degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the final and to preclude side-by-side operations with one or both aircraft in a belly-up configuration during the turn-on. Once the aircraft are established within 30 degrees of final, or on the final, these operations may be conducted simultaneously. When the parallel runways are separated by 4,300 feet or more, or intersecting/converging runways are in use, ATC may authorize a visual approach after advising all aircraft involved that other aircraft are conducting operations to the other runway. This may be accomplished through use of the ATIS.

30.19.3 Separation Responsibilities

If the pilot has the airport in sight but cannot see the aircraft to be followed, ATC may clear the aircraft for a visual approach; however, ATC retains both separation and wake vortex separation responsibility. When visually following a preceding aircraft, acceptance of the visual approach clearance constitutes acceptance of pilot responsibility for maintaining a safe approach interval and adequate wake turbulence separation.

A visual approach is not an IAP and therefore has no missed approach segment. If a go-around is necessary for any reason, aircraft operating at controlled airports will be issued an appropriate advisory/clearance/instruction by the tower. At uncontrolled airports, aircraft are expected to remain clear of clouds and complete a landing as soon as possible. If a landing cannot be accomplished, the aircraft is expected to remain clear of clouds and contact ATC as soon as possible for further clearance. Separation from other IFR aircraft will be maintained under these circumstances.

Visual approaches reduce pilot/controller workload and expedite traffic by shortening flightpaths to the airport. It is the pilot's responsibility to advise ATC as soon as possible if a visual approach is not desired.

Authorization to conduct a visual approach is an IFR authorization and does not alter IFR flight plan cancellation responsibility.

Radar service is automatically terminated, without advising the pilot, when the aircraft is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

30.20 CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE (CVFP)

CVFPs are charted visual approaches established for environmental/noise considerations and/or when necessary for the safety and efficiency of air traffic operations. The approach charts depict prominent landmarks, courses, and recommended altitudes to specific runways. CVFPs are designed to be used primarily for turbojet aircraft.

These procedures will be used only at airports with an operating control tower.

Most approach charts will depict some NAVAID information, which is for supplemental navigational guidance only.

Unless indicating a Class B airspace floor, all depicted altitudes are for noise abatement purposes and are recommended only. Pilots are not prohibited from flying other-than-recommended altitudes if operational requirements dictate.

When landmarks used for navigation are not visible at night, the approach will be annotated "*PROCEDURE NOT AUTHORIZED AT NIGHT.*"

CVFPs usually begin within 20 flying miles from the airport.

Published weather minimums for CVFPs are based on minimum vectoring altitudes rather than the recommended altitudes depicted on charts.

CVFPs are not instrument approaches and do not have missed approach segments.

ATC will not issue clearances for CVFPs when the weather is less than the published minimum.

ATC will clear aircraft for a CVFP after the pilot reports siting a charted landmark or a preceding aircraft. If instructed to follow a preceding aircraft, pilots are responsible for maintaining a safe approach interval and wake turbulence separation.

Pilots should advise ATC if at any point they are unable to continue an approach or lose sight of a preceding aircraft. Missed approaches will be handled as a go-around.

30.21 CONTACT APPROACH

Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan, provided they are clear of clouds and have at least 1 mile flight visibility and can reasonably expect to continue to the destination airport in those conditions, may request ATC authorization for a contact approach.

Controllers may authorize a contact approach provided:

1. The contact approach is specifically requested by the pilot. ATC cannot initiate this approach.

2. The reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

3. The contact approach will be made to an airport having a standard or special instrument approach procedure.

4. Approved separation is applied between aircraft so cleared and between these aircraft and other IFR or special VFR aircraft.

A contact approach is an approach procedure that may be used by a pilot (with prior authorization from ATC) in lieu of conducting a standard or special IAP to an airport. It is not intended for use by a pilot on an IFR flight clearance to operate to an airport not having a published and functioning IAP, nor is it intended for an aircraft to conduct an instrument approach to one airport and then, when “in the clear,” discontinue that approach and proceed to another airport. In the execution of a contact approach, the pilot assumes the responsibility for obstruction clearance. If radar service is being received, it will automatically terminate when the pilot is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

30.22 LANDING PRIORITY

A clearance for a specific type of approach (ILS, MLS, ADF, VOR, or straight in) to an aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan does not mean that landing priority will be given over other traffic. Airport Traffic Control Towers (ATCTs) handle all aircraft, regardless of the type of flight plan, on a first-come, first-served basis; therefore, because of local traffic or runway in use, it may be necessary for the controller, in the interest of safety, to provide a different landing sequence. In any case, a landing sequence will be issued to each aircraft as soon as possible to enable the pilot to properly adjust the aircraft flightpath.

30.23 OVERHEAD APPROACH MANEUVER

Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan in VMC may request ATC authorization for an overhead maneuver. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument approach procedure. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is considered to be VFR and the IFR flight plan is canceled when the aircraft reaches the initial point on the initial approach portion of the maneuver (Figure 30-22). The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved. Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of an IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver. Cancellation of the IFR flight plan must be accomplished after crossing the landing threshold on the initial portion of the maneuver or after landing. Controllers may authorize an overhead maneuver and issue the following to arriving aircraft:

1. Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. This information may be omitted if either is standard.

2. Request for a report on initial approach.

3. Break information and a request for the pilot to report. The break point will be specified if nonstandard. Pilots may be requested to report break if required for traffic or other reasons.

30.24 APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEM (ALS)

The ALS provides the basic means to transition from instrument flight to visual flight for landing. Operational requirements dictate the sophistication and configuration of the approach light system for a particular runway.

The ALS is a configuration of signal lights starting at the landing threshold and extending into the approach area a distance of 2,400 to 3,000 feet for precision instrument runways and 1,400 to 1,500 feet for nonprecision instrument runways. Some systems include sequenced flashing lights, which appear to the pilot as a ball of light traveling toward the runway at high speed (twice a second) (Figure 30-23).

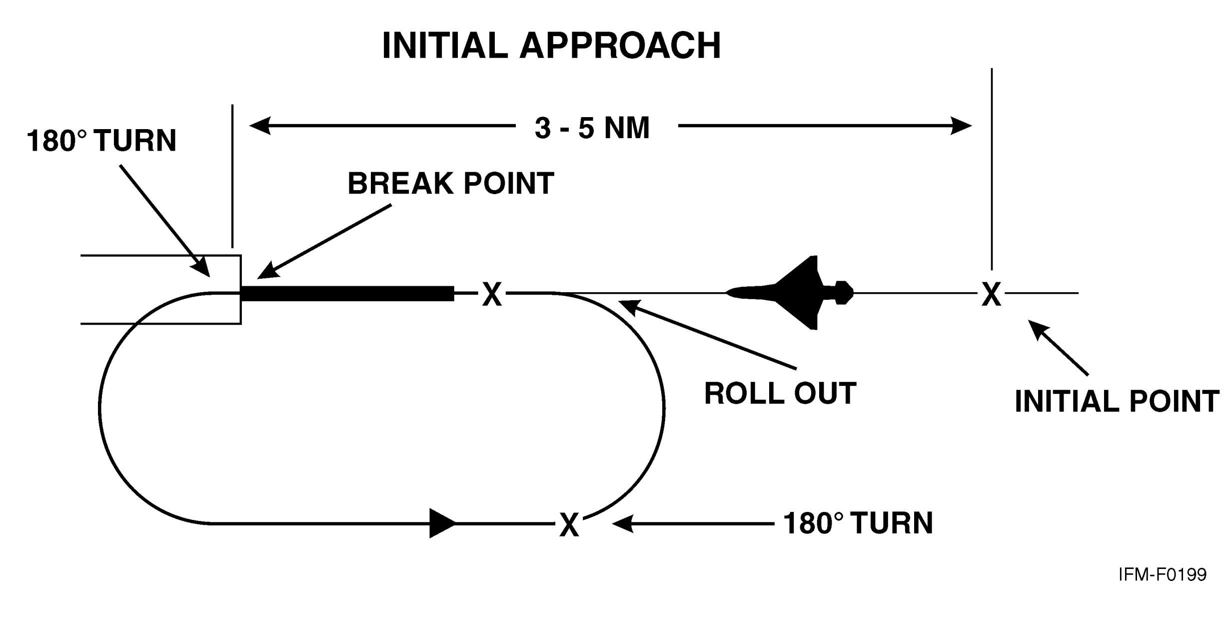


Figure 30-22. Overhead Maneuver

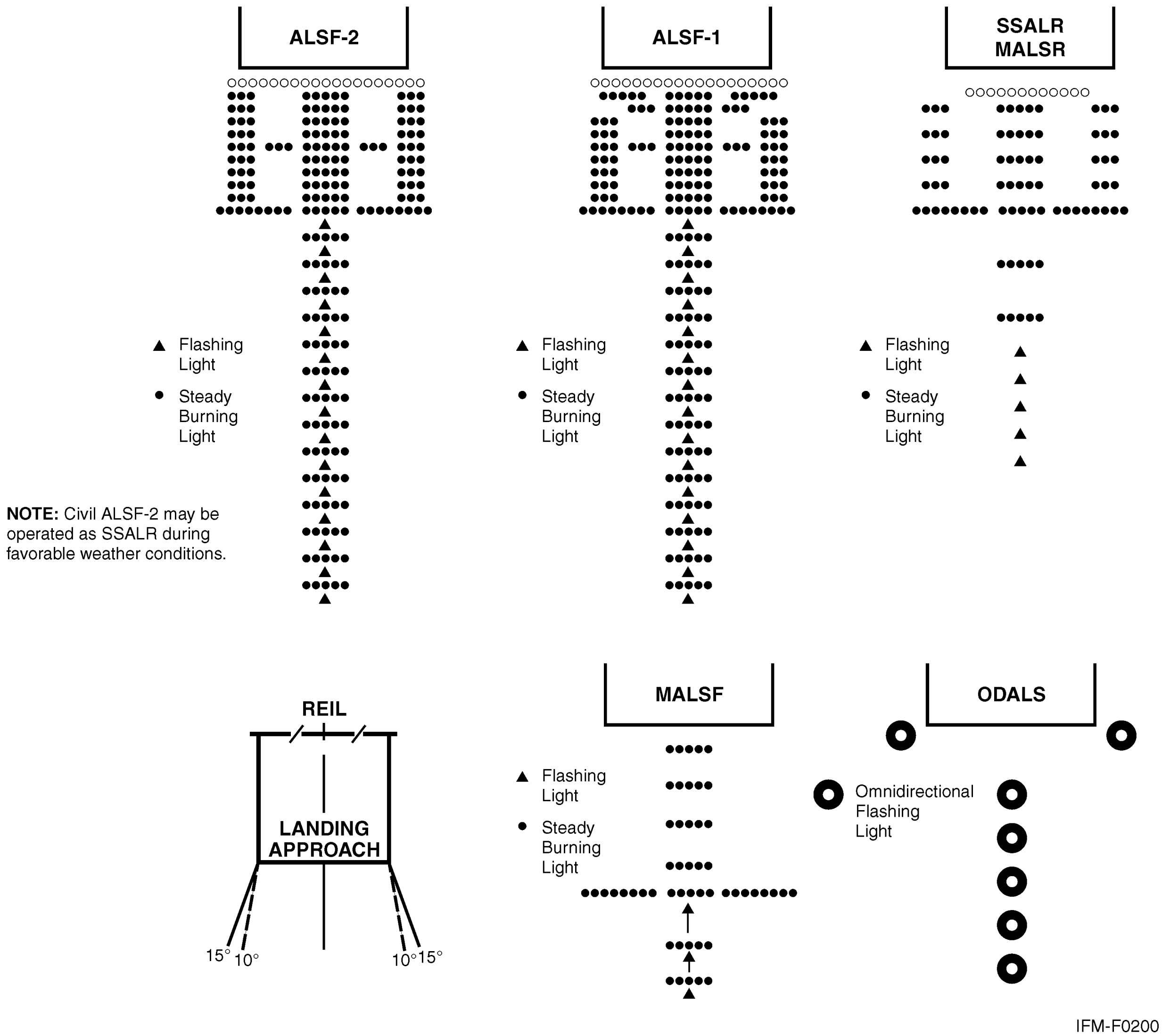


Figure 30-23. Precision and Nonprecision Configuration (Lighting)

30.25 VISUAL GLIDESLOPE INDICATORS

30.25.1 Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI)

The Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI) is a system of lights so arranged to provide visual descent guidance information during the approach to a runway. These lights are visible from 3 to 5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles or more at night. The visual glidepath of the VASI provides safe obstruction clearance within ±10 degrees of the extended runway centerline and to 4 nm from the runway threshold. Descent, using the VASI, should not be initiated until the aircraft is visually aligned with the runway. Lateral course guidance is provided by the runway or runway lights.

VASI installations may consist of 2, 4, 6, 12, or 16 light units arranged in bars referred to as near, middle, and far bars. Most VASI installations consist of 2 bars, near and far, and may consist of 2, 4, or 12 light units. Some VASIs consist of three bars (near, middle, and far), which provide an additional visual glidepath to accommodate high-cockpit aircraft. This installation may consist of either 6 or 16 light units. VASI installations consisting of 2, 4, or 6 light units are located on one side of the runway, usually the left. Where the installation consists of 12 or 16 light units, the units are located on both sides of the runway.

Two-bar VASI installations provide one visual glidepath, which is normally set at 3 degrees. Three-bar VASI installations provide two visual glidepaths. The lower glidepath is provided by the near and middle bars and is normally set at 3 degrees whereas the upper glidepath, provided by the middle and far bars, is normally 1/4 degree higher. This higher glidepath is intended for use only by high-cockpit aircraft to provide a sufficient threshold crossing height. Although normal glidepath angles are 3 degrees, angles at some locations may be as high as 4.5 degrees to give proper obstacle clearance. Pilots of high-performance aircraft are cautioned that use of VASI angles in excess of 3.5 degrees may cause an increase in runway length required for landing and rollout.

The basic principle of the VASI is that of color differentiation between red and white. Each light unit projects a beam of light having a white segment in the upper part of the beam and red segment in the lower part of the beam. The light units are arranged so that the pilot using the VASIs during an approach will see the combination of lights shown below.

For 28-bar VASI (4 light units), Figure 30-24.

For 3-bar VASI (6 light units), Figure 30-25.

For other VASI configurations, Figure 30-26.

30.25.2 Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI)

The PAPI uses light units similar to the VASI but are installed in a single row of either two or four light units. These systems have an effective visual range of approximately 5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles at night. The row of light units is normally installed on the left side of the runway and the glidepath indications are as depicted (Figure 30-27).

30.25.3 Tricolor Systems

Tricolor visual approach slope indicators normally consist of a single light unit projecting a three-color visual approach path into the final approach area of the runway upon which the indicator is installed. The below-glidepath indication is red, the above-glidepath indication is amber, and the on-glidepath indication is green. These types of indicators have a useful range of approximately one-half to 1 mile during the day and up to 5 miles at night depending upon the visibility conditions (Figure 30-28).

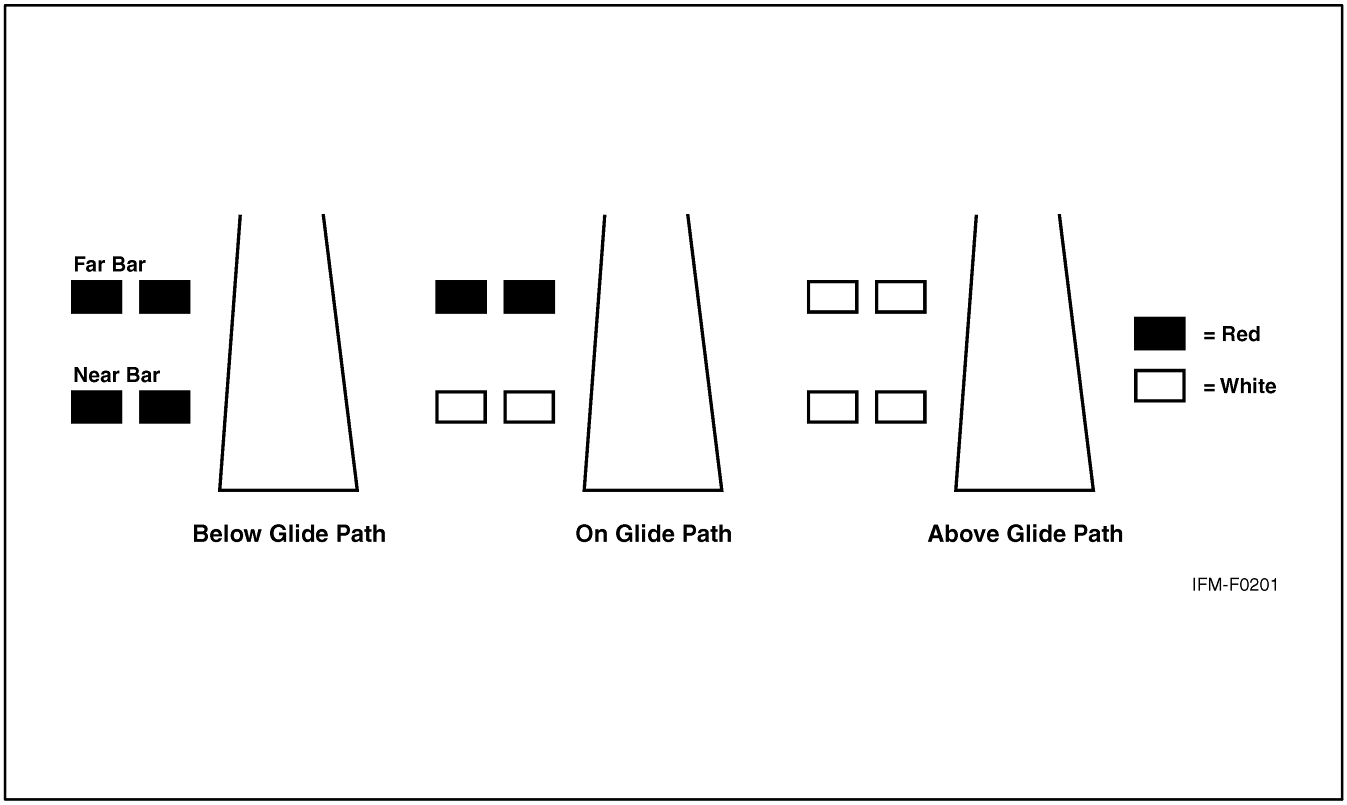


Figure 30-24. 28-Bar VASI

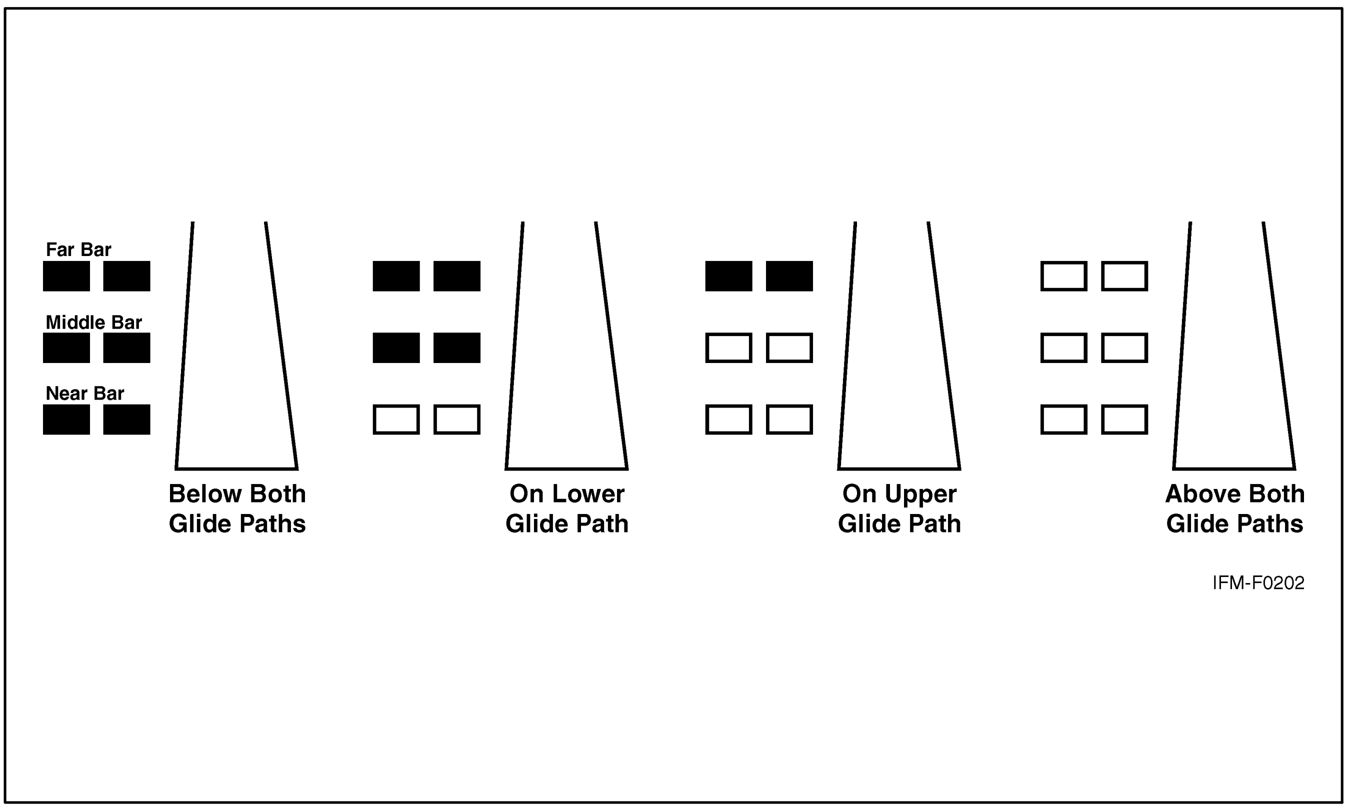


Figure 30-25. 3-Bar VASI

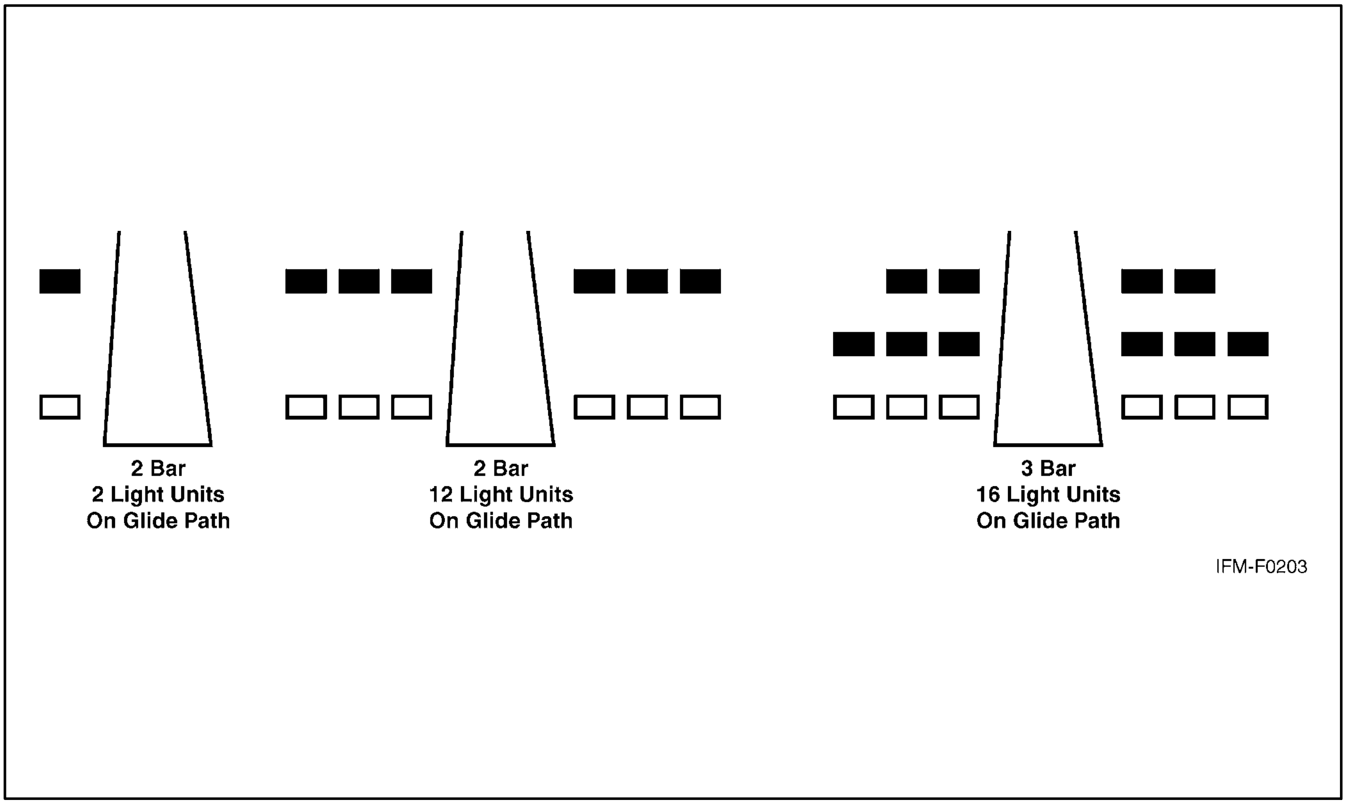


Figure 30-26. VASI Variations

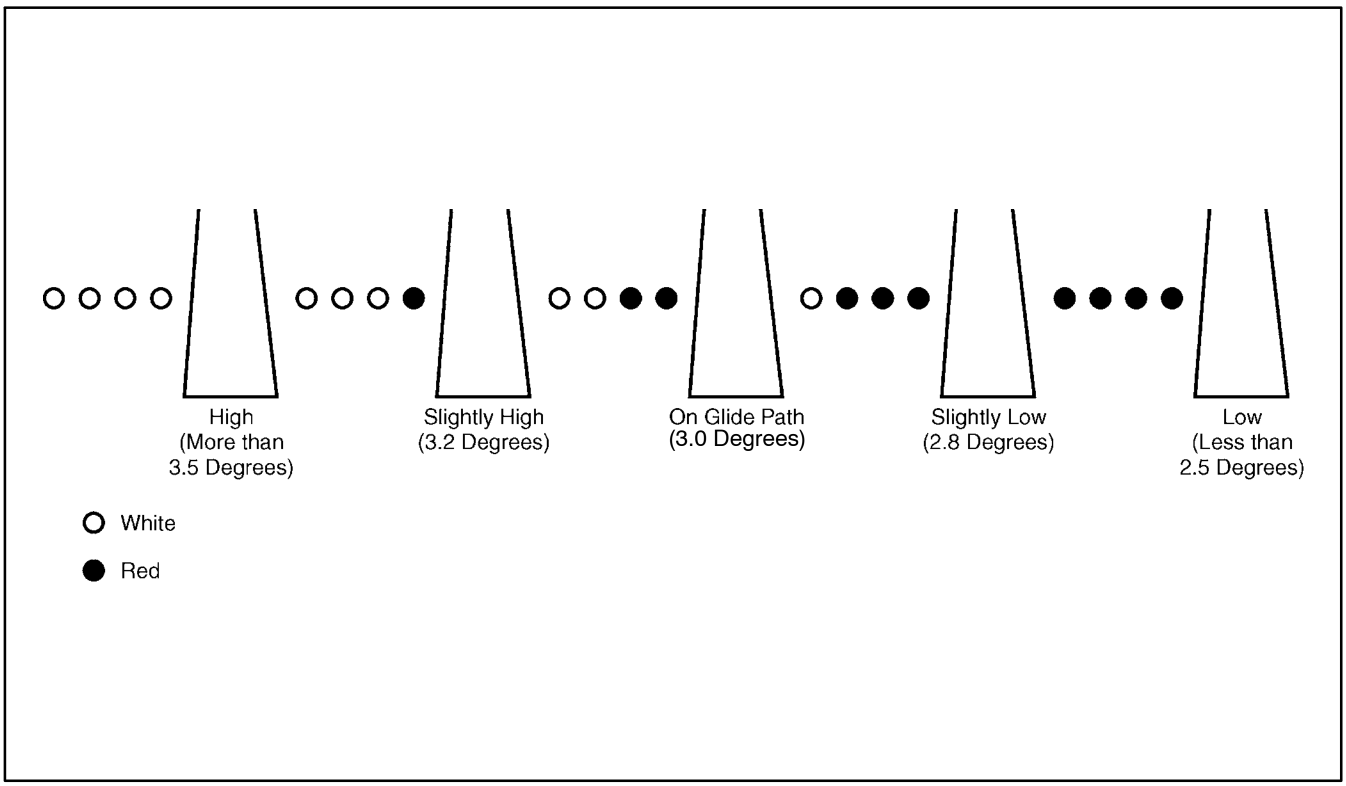


Figure 30-27. Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI)

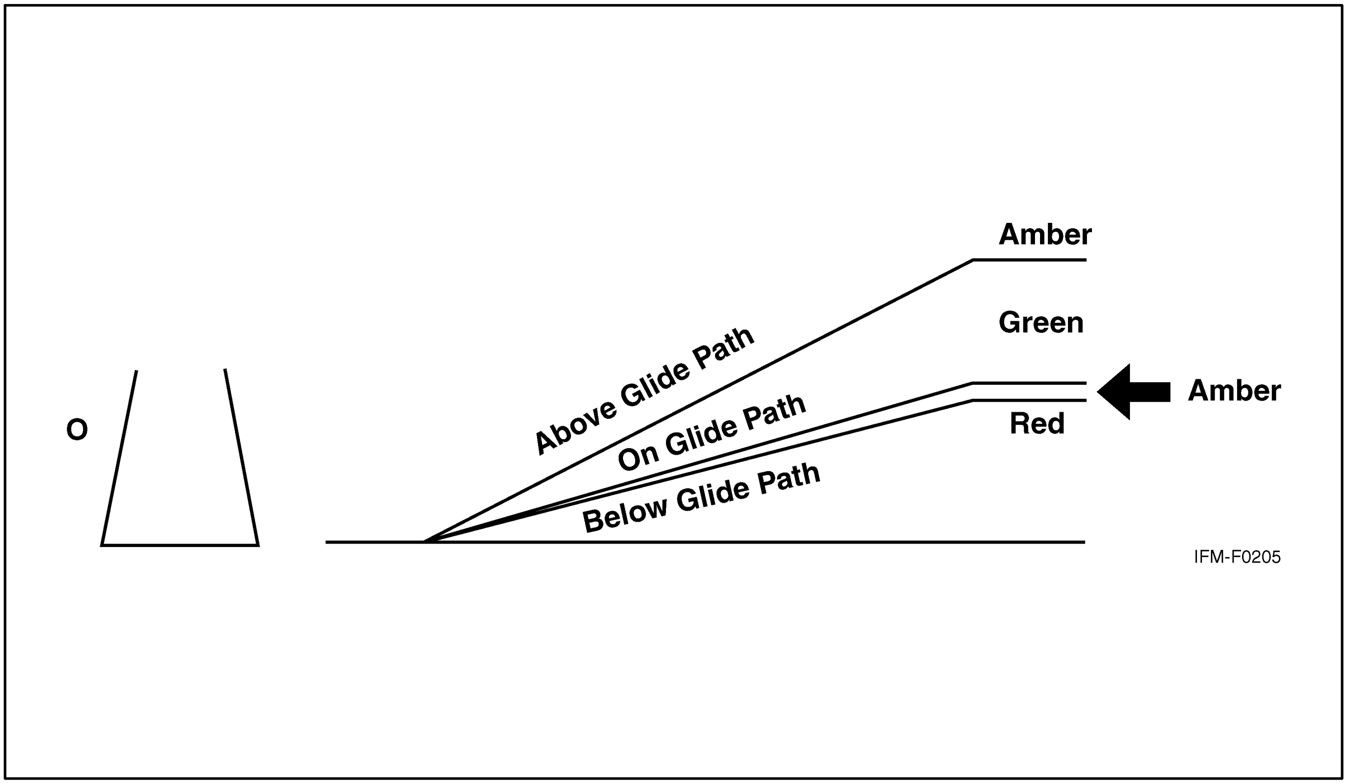


Figure 30-28. Tricolor Visual Approach Slope Indicator

Note

- Since the tricolor VASI consists of a single light source that could possibly be confused with other light sources, pilots should exercise care to properly locate and identify the light signal.
- When the aircraft descends from green to red, the pilot may see a dark amber color during the transition from green to red.

30.25.4 Pulsating Systems

Pulsating visual approach slope indicators normally consist of a single light unit projecting a two-color visual approach path into the final approach area of the runway upon which the indicator is installed. The on-glidepath indication is a steady white light. The slightly-below-glidepath indication is a steady red light. If the aircraft descends further below the glidepath, the red light starts to pulsate. The above-glidepath indication is a pulsating white light. The pulsating rate increases as the aircraft gets farther above or below the desired glideslope. The useful range of the system is approximately 4 miles during the day and up to 10 miles at night (Figure 30-29).

Note

Since the PVASI consists of a single light source that could possibly be confused with other light sources, pilots should exercise care to properly locate and identify the light signal.

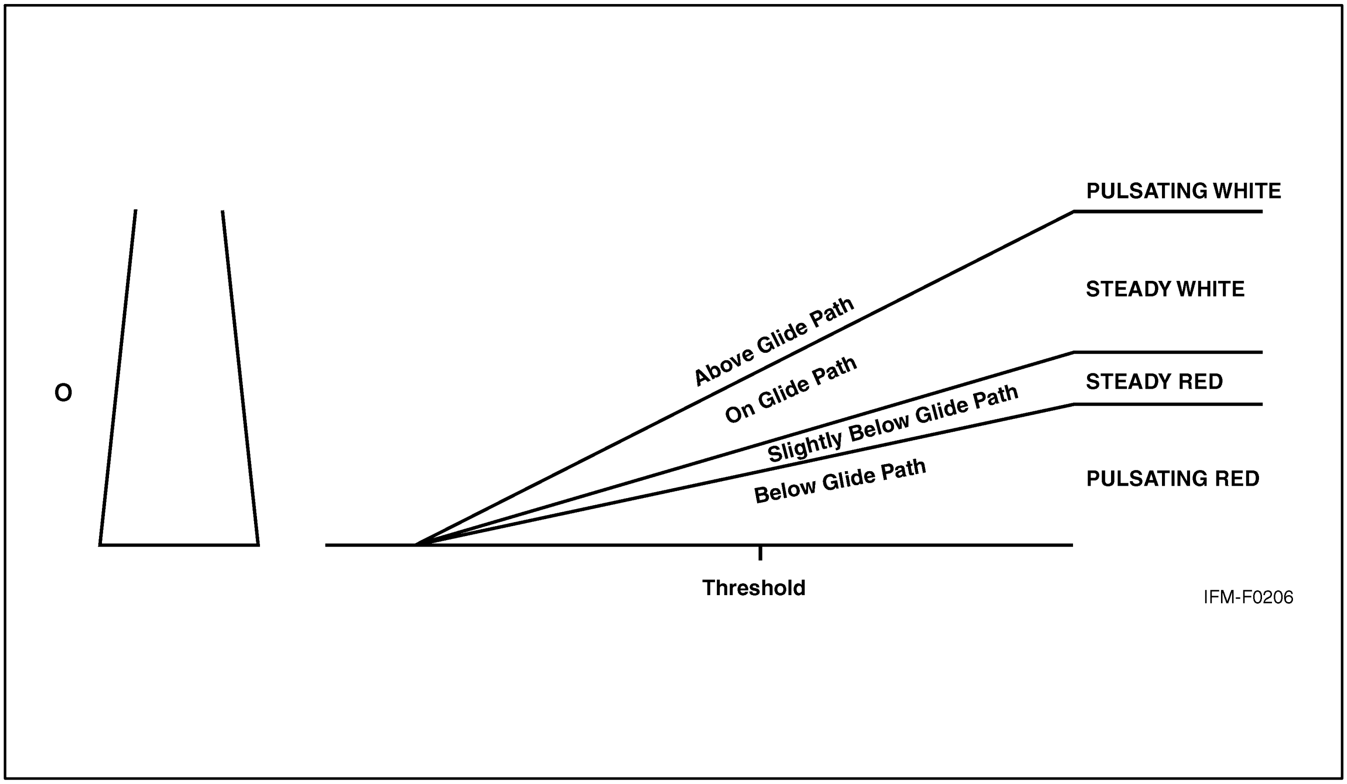


Figure 30-29. Pulsating Visual Approach Slope Indicator

30.25.5 Alignment of Elements Systems

Alignment of elements systems are installed on some small general aviation airports and are a low-cost system consisting of painted plywood panels, normally black and white or fluorescent orange. Some of these systems are lighted for night use. The useful range of these systems is approximately three-quarters of a mile. To use the system, the pilot positions the aircraft so the elements are in alignment. The glidepath indications are shown in Figure 30-30.

30.26 RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS (REIL)

REILs are installed at many airfields to provide rapid and positive identification of the approach end of a particular runway. The system consists of a pair of synchronized flashing lights located laterally on each side of the runway threshold. REILs may be either omnidirectional or unidirectional facing the approach area. They are effective for:

1. Identification of a runway surrounded by a preponderance of other lighting.

2. Identification of a runway that lacks contrast with surrounding terrain.

3. Identification of a runway during reduced visibility.

30.27 RUNWAY EDGE LIGHT SYSTEMS

Runway edge lights are used to outline the edges of runways during periods of darkness or restricted visibility conditions. These light systems are classified according to the intensity or brightness they are capable of producing: they are the High Intensity Runway Lighting (HIRL), Medium Intensity Runway Lighting (MIRL), and the Low Intensity Runway Lighting (LIRL). The HIRL and MIRL systems have variable intensity controls, whereas the LIRLs normally have one intensity setting.

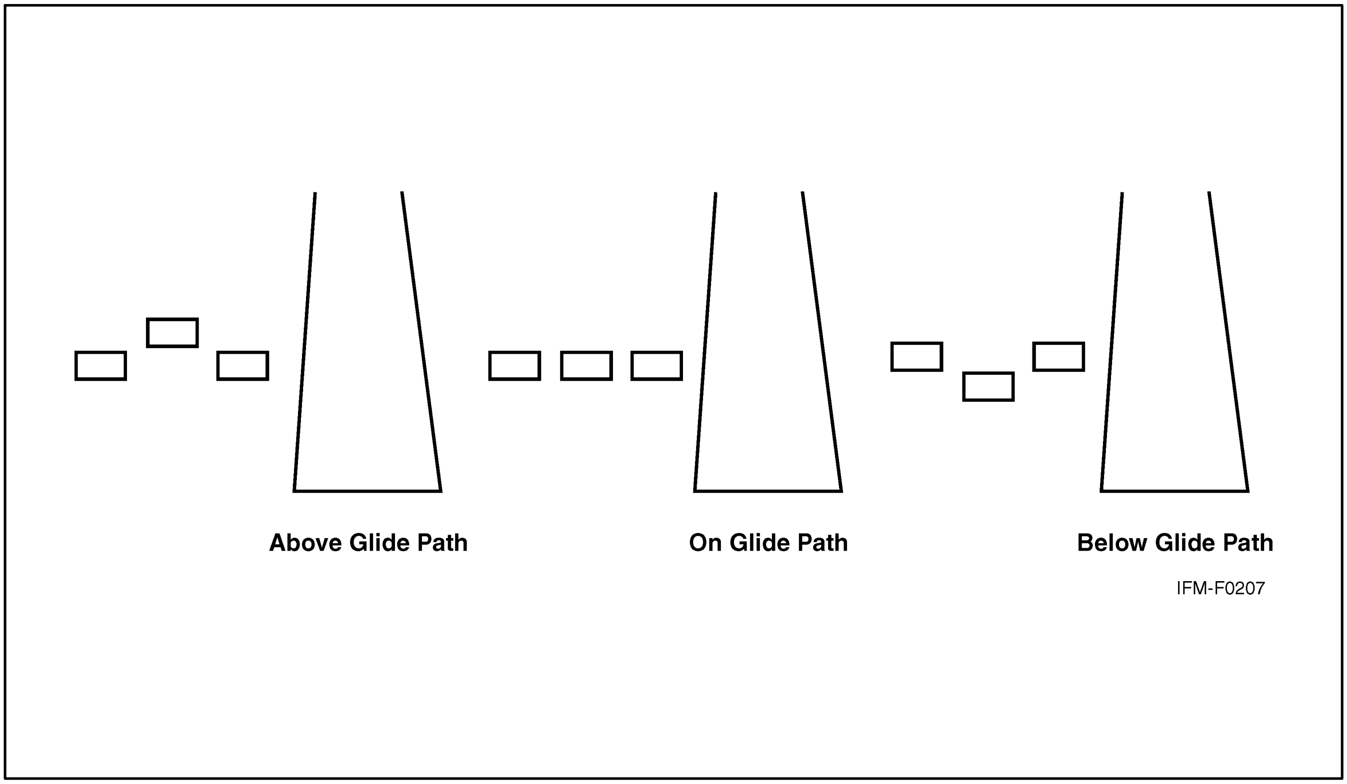


Figure 30-30. Alignment of Elements

The runway edge lights are white, except on instrument runways, where yellow replaces white on the last 2,000 feet or half the runway length, whichever is less, to form a caution zone for landings.

The lights marking the ends of the runway emit red light toward the runway to indicate the end of runway to a departing aircraft and emit green outward from the runway end to indicate the threshold to landing aircraft.

30.28 IN-RUNWAY LIGHTING

30.28.1 Runway Centerline Lighting System (RCLS)

Runway centerline lights are installed on some precision approach runways to facilitate landing under adverse visibility conditions. They are located along the runway centerline and are spaced at 50-foot intervals. When viewed from the landing threshold, the runway centerline lights are white until the last 3,000 feet of the runway. The white lights begin to alternate with red for the next 2,000 feet, and for the last 1,000 feet of the runway, all centerline lights are red.

30.28.2 Touchdown Zone Lights (TDZL)

Touchdown zone lights are installed on some precision approach runways to indicate the touchdown zone when landing under adverse visibility conditions. They consist of two rows of transverse light bars disposed symmetrically about the runway centerline. The system consists of steady-burning white lights that start 100 feet beyond the landing threshold and extend to 3,000 feet beyond the landing threshold or to the midpoint of the runway, whichever is less.

30.28.3 Taxiway Lead-Off Lights

Taxiway lead-off lights extend from the runway centerline to a point on an exit taxiway to expedite movement of aircraft from the runway. These lights alternate green and yellow from the runway centerline to the runway holding position or the ILS/MLS critical area, as appropriate.

30.28.4 Land and Hold Short Lights

Land and hold short lights are used to indicate the hold short point on certain runways that are approved for Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO). Land and hold short lights consist of a row of pulsing white lights installed across the runway at the hold short point. Where installed, the lights will be on anytime LAHSO is in effect. These lights will be off when LAHSO is not in effect. Reference Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM), Pilot Responsibilities When Conducting Land and Hold Short Operations (LAHSO).

30.29 CONTROL OF LIGHTING SYSTEMS

Operation of approach light systems and runway lighting is controlled by the control tower (ATCT). At some locations, the FSS may control the lights where there is no control tower in operation.

Pilots may request that lights be turned on or off. Runway edge lights, in-pavement lights, and approach lights also have intensity controls that may be varied to meet the pilot's request. Sequenced Flashing Lights (SFL) may be turned on and off. Some sequenced flashing light systems also have intensity control.

30.30 PILOT CONTROL OF AIRPORT LIGHTING

Radio control of lighting is available at selected airports to provide airborne control of lights by keying the aircraft microphone. Control of lighting systems is often available at locations without specified hours for lighting and where there is no control tower or FSS or when the tower or FSS is closed (locations with a part-time tower or FSS) or specified hours. All lighting systems that are radio controlled at an airport, whether on a single runway or multiple runways, operate on the same radio frequency (Figures 30-31 and 30-32).

Lighting System	No. of Int. Steps	Status During Nonuse Period	Intensity Step Selected Per No. of Mike Clicks		
			3 Clicks	5 Clicks	7 Clicks
Approach Lights (Med. Int.)	2	Off	Low	Low	High
Approach Lights (Med. Int.)	3	Off	Low	Med	High
MIRL	3	Off or Low	•	•	•
HIRL	5	Off or Low	•	•	•
VASI	2	Off	*	*	*

NOTES:

• Predetermined intensity step.

* Low intensity for night use. High intensity for day use as determined by photocell control.

Figure 30-31. Runways with Approach Lights

Lighting System	No. of Int. Steps	Status During Nonuse Period	Intensity Step Selected Per No. of Mike Clicks		
			3 Clicks	5 Clicks	7 Clicks
MIRL	3	Off or Low	Low	Med.	High
HIRL	5	Off or Low	Step1 or 2	Step 3	Step 5
LIRL	1	Off	On	On	On
VASIL*	2	Off	•	•	•
REIL*	1	Off	Off	On/Off	On
REIL*	3	Off	Low	Med.	High

NOTES:

• Low intensity for night use. High intensity for day use as determined by photocell control.

* The control of VASIL and/or REIL may be independent of other lighting systems.

Figure 30-32. Runways without Approach Lights

With FAA-approved systems, various combinations of medium-intensity approach lights, runway lights, taxiway lights, VASI, and/or REIL may be activated by radio control. On runways with both approach lighting and runway lighting (runway edge lights, taxiway lights, etc.) systems, the approach lighting system takes precedence for air-to-ground radio control over the runway lighting system, which is set at a predetermined intensity step, based on expected visibility conditions. Runways without approach lighting may provide radio-controlled intensity adjustments of runway edge lights. Other lighting systems, including VASI, REIL, and taxiway lights, may either be controlled with the runway edge lights or controlled independently of the runway edge lights.

The control system consists of a 3-step control responsive to 7, 5, and/or 3 microphone clicks. This 3-step control will turn on lighting facilities capable of either 3-step, 28-step, or 1-step operation. The 3-step and 28-step lighting facilities can be altered in intensity, whereas the 1-step cannot. All lighting is illuminated for a period of 15 minutes from the most recent time of activation and may not be extinguished prior to end of the 15-minute period (except for 1-step and 28-step REILs, which may be turned off when desired by keying the mike 5 or 3 times, respectively).

Suggested use is always to key the mike 7 times initially; this ensures all controlled lights are turned on to the maximum available intensity. If desired, adjustment can then be made, where the capability is provided, to a lower intensity (or the REIL turned off) by keying 5 and/or 3 times. Due to the close proximity of airports using the same frequency, radio-controlled lighting receivers may be set at a low sensitivity requiring the aircraft to be relatively close to activate the system. Consequently, even when lights are on, always key mike as directed when overflying an airport of intended landing or just prior to entering the final segment of an approach. This will ensure the aircraft is close enough to activate the system and a full 15 minutes lighting duration is available. Approved lighting systems may be activated by keying the mike (within 5 seconds) as indicated below:

Radio Control System

Key Mike	Function
7 times within 5 seconds	Highest intensity available
5 times within 5 seconds	Medium or lower intensity (Lower REIL or REIL off)
3 times within 5 seconds	Lowest intensity available (Lower REIL or REIL off)

For all public use airports with FAA standard systems, the Airport/Facility Directory contains the types of lighting, runway, and the frequency that is used to activate the system. Airports with IAPs include data on the approach chart identifying the light system, the runway on which they are installed, and the frequency that is used to activate the system.

Note

Although the CTAF is used to activate the lights at many airports, other frequencies may also be used. The appropriate frequency for activating the lights on the airport is provided in the Airport/Facility Directory and the standard instrument approach procedures publications. It is not identified on the sectional charts.

Where the airport is not served by an IAP, it may have either the standard FAA-approved control system or an independent type system of different specification installed by the airport sponsor. The Airport/Facility Directory contains descriptions of pilot-controlled lighting systems for each airport having other-than-FAA-approved systems and explains the type lights, method of control, and operating frequency in clear text.

30.31 AIRPORT/HELIPORT BEACONS

Airport and heliport beacons have a vertical light distribution to make them most effective from 1 to 10 degrees above the horizon; however, they can be seen well above and below this peak spread. The beacon may be an omnidirectional capacitor-discharge device, or it may rotate at a constant speed, which produces the visual effect of flashes at regular intervals. Flashes may be one or two colors alternately. The total number of flashes are:

1. 24 to 30 per minute for beacons marking airports, landmarks, and points on Federal airways.
2. 30 to 45 per minute for beacons marking heliports.

The colors and color combinations of beacons are:

1. White and green — lighted land airport.
2. *Green alone — lighted land airport.
3. White and yellow — lighted water airport.
4. *Yellow alone — lighted water airport.
5. Green, yellow, and white — lighted heliport.

Note

*Green alone or yellow alone is used only in connection with a white-and-green or white-and-yellow beacon display, respectively.

Military airport beacons flash alternately white and green, but are differentiated from civil beacons by dual-peaked (two quick) white flashes between the green flashes.

In Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas, operation of the airport beacon during the hours of daylight often indicates the ground visibility is less than 3 miles and/or the ceiling is less than 1,000 feet. ATC clearance in accordance with 14 CFR Part 91 is required for landing, takeoff, and flight in the traffic pattern. Pilots should not rely solely on the operation of the airport beacon to indicate if weather conditions are IFR or VFR. At some locations with operating control towers, ATC personnel turn the beacon on or off when controllers are in the tower. At many airports, the airport beacon is turned on by a photoelectric cell or time clocks and ATC personnel cannot control them. There is no regulatory requirement for daylight operation and it is the pilot's responsibility to comply with proper preflight planning as required by 14 CFR Section 91.103.

30.32 TAXIWAY LIGHTS

30.32.1 Taxiway Edge Lights

Taxiway edge lights are used to outline the edges of taxiways during periods of darkness or restricted visibility conditions. These fixtures emit blue light.

Note

At most major airports, these lights have variable intensity settings and may be adjusted at pilot request or when deemed necessary by the controller.

30.32.2 Taxiway Centerline Lights

Taxiway centerline lights are used to facilitate ground traffic under low visibility conditions. They are located along the taxiway centerline in a straight line on straight portions, on the centerline of curved portions, and along designated taxiing paths in portions of runways, ramps, and apron areas. Taxiway centerline lights are steady burning and emit green light.

30.32.3 Clearance Bar Lights

Clearance bar lights are installed at holding positions on taxiways in order to increase the conspicuity of the holding position in low visibility conditions. They may also be installed to indicate the location of an intersecting taxiway during periods of darkness. Clearance bars consist of three in-pavement steady-burning yellow lights.

30.32.4 Runway Guard Lights

Runway guard lights are installed at taxiway/runway intersections. They are primarily used to enhance the conspicuity of taxiway/runway intersections during low visibility conditions, but may be used in all weather conditions. Runway guard lights consist of either a pair of elevated flashing yellow lights installed on either side of the taxiway or a row of in-pavement yellow lights installed across the entire taxiway at the runway holding position marking.

Note

Some airports may have a row of three or five in-pavement yellow lights installed at taxiway/runway intersections. They should not be confused with clearance bar lights described in paragraph 30.32.3.

30.32.5 Stop Bar Lights

Stop bar lights, when installed, are used to confirm the ATC clearance to enter or cross the active runway in low visibility conditions (below 1,200 feet runway visual range). A stop bar consists of a row of red, unidirectional, steady-burning in-pavement lights installed across the entire taxiway at the runway holding position and elevated steady-burning red lights on each side. A controlled stop bar is operated in conjunction with the taxiway centerline lead-on lights, which extend from the stop bar toward the runway. Following the ATC clearance to proceed, the stop bar is turned off and the lead-on lights are turned on. The stop bar and lead-on lights are automatically reset by a sensor or backup timer.

CAUTION

Pilots should never cross a red illuminated stop bar, even if an ATC clearance has been given to proceed onto or across the runway.

Note

If, after crossing a stop bar, the taxiway centerline lead-on lights inadvertently extinguish, pilots should hold their position and contact ATC for further instructions.

PART VIII

Indoctrination and Flight Evaluation

CHAPTER 31

The Instrument Flight Evaluation

31.1 PURPOSE OF THE INSTRUMENT FLIGHT EVALUATION

Maintaining a high degree of instrument flight proficiency is basic to safe and effective flight operations and essential for meeting unit all-weather operational commitments. The NATOPS instrument flight evaluation program was established to assist the commanding officer in maintaining a high level of all-weather flying proficiency in his unit. Instrument flight procedures contained in this manual represent the optimum methods for training for and performing the various maneuvers that will be required for Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) flight. The NATOPS instrument evaluation is intended to evaluate the pilot's knowledge and application of these procedures and techniques during flight operations in instrument weather conditions.

31.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR INSTRUMENT FLIGHT EVALUATIONS

Together, OPNAVINST 3710.7 and this manual contain the elements that compose the NATOPS evaluation program. The requirements and administrative procedures for NATOPS instrument flight evaluations are contained in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series. The conduct, content, and grading criteria for these instrument evaluations, which compliment the information contained OPNAVINST 3710.7, are contained in this chapter. If conflicts develop between the contents in this manual and OPNAVINST 3710.7 series, the requirements in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series shall take precedence.

31.3 THE INSTRUMENT FLIGHT EVALUATION PROCESS

The instrument flight evaluation process requires completion of a formal TYCOM-approved ground training syllabus (if available), a ground evaluation, and a flight evaluation.

31.3.1 Instrument Ground Training

OPNAVINST 3710.7 series requires that all pilots and Naval Flight Officers (NFOs) in DIFOPS status shall complete a formal TYCOM-approved ground training syllabus (if one is available). In addition to the subjects normally addressed during the instrument ground and flight evaluations and listed below, the ground training syllabus shall include any additional ground training subjects listed in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series.

31.3.2 Instrument Ground Evaluation

Incident to the completion of instrument ground training (if utilized) and prior to the evaluation flight, pilots and NFOs shall satisfactorily complete an approved written examination. The written examination may be open book or closed book or both. In addition to any subjects listed for coverage during the ground training and written examination evaluation phases in OPNAVINST 3710.7 series, the written examination shall include questions on the following subjects:

1. Pertinent Navy regulations, orders, and instructions.

2. Pertinent parts of the Federal aviation regulations, other regulations, and/or aeronautical publications that are applicable.

3. Interpretation of weather information normally used in flight planning.

The written examination should emphasize air traffic control procedures that have been issued or revised during the preceding year. The written examination shall be completed with a grade of “Qualified,” in accordance with OPNAVINST 3710.7 series, prior to the commencement of the instrument evaluation flight.

31.3.3 Instrument Flight Evaluation

Following completion of the ground evaluation, an instrument flight evaluation shall be flown and completed with a grade of “Qualified.” The number of flights required to complete the instrument flight evaluation should be kept to a minimum — normally one flight. Areas to be observed and graded on an evaluation flight are outlined in the grading criteria. The instrument flight evaluation shall consist of two parts. Part One covers basic instrument flying, and Part Two covers the planning and conduct of a flight under actual or simulated instrument conditions in controlled airspace. Flight evaluations may be in an aircraft or an approved flight simulator. Instrument flight checks under actual instrument conditions are encouraged.

31.3.3.1 Basic Instrument Flying (Part One)

Part One of the instrument flight evaluation shall consist of:

1. Instrument takeoff (optional).

*2. Climbing, descending, and timed turns.

*3. Steep turns.

*4. Recovery from unusual attitudes.

5. Positioning aircraft on predetermined VHF Omnidirectional Range (VOR)/Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN) radial.

*6. Partial panel airwork.

7. ADF orientation.

   a. ADF/Manual Direction Finder (MDF) for pilots operating in areas where radio beacons are the primary or secondary means of instrument navigation.

   b. Ultrahigh Frequency (UHF)/ADF for jet aircraft.

Note

Asterisked items above are not required when the evaluation is conducted under actual instrument conditions.

31.3.3.2 Instrument Flight in Controlled Airspace (Part Two)

Part Two of the instrument evaluation shall consist of:

1. Airways flight — The pilot shall be required to take off and proceed to a destination in accordance with an Air Traffic Control (ATC) clearance and execute an appropriate published instrument approach, utilizing the available and pertinent navigation facilities. If weather and other conditions permit, the pilot shall be required to execute approaches (including ILS/radar or GPS) and missed approaches as applicable, utilizing as many of the existing navigation aids as practicable. The use of VOR/TACAN shall be emphasized when feasible.

2. The pilot shall demonstrate a thorough working knowledge of the operation and use of all installed communications and navigation equipment.

3. The pilot shall demonstrate ability to cope with any emergency situation that might logically be expected to occur on an instrument flight, for example:

   a. Engine failure.

   b. Instrument failure.

   c. Communications failure.

   d. Navigation equipment failure.

31.4 FLIGHT EVALUATION GRADING CRITERIA

The criteria for determining area adjective grades are outlined in the following paragraphs.

31.4.1 Basic Instrument Flying (Part One) Grading Criteria

31.4.1.1 Instrument Takeoff

31.4.1.1.1 Qualified

Receives and acknowledges ATC clearances. Executes engine runup and instrument checks. Brake release is smooth and good directional control is maintained. Liftoff is accomplished as required to a positive climbing attitude and acceleration to climb schedule is expeditiously and safely accomplished.

31.4.1.1.2 Unqualified

Does not receive and acknowledge takeoff clearance, causing unnecessary delay or traffic disruption. Exhibits poor or unsafe technique in directional control, liftoff, transition, climb attitude, or in establishing climb schedule.

31.4.1.2 Climbing, Descending, and Timed Turns

31.4.1.2.1 Qualified

Smoothly transitions to an angle of bank that approximates that required for the desired rate of turn. Adjusts angle of bank as required to maintain desired rate of turn. Maintains relatively constant turn throughout maneuver.

31.4.1.2.2 Unqualified

Transition to angle of bank indicates a lack of knowledge of procedure and technique or results in an unsafe maneuver. Exhibits poor or unsafe technique in attaining desired rate of turn. Does not maintain a relatively constant turn throughout maneuver.

31.4.1.3 Steep Turns

31.4.1.3.1 Qualified

Maintains positive control and applies proper correction to keep within safe limits of altitude and airspeed.

31.4.1.3.2 Unqualified

Exhibits poor or unsafe control. Allows altitude and airspeed to exceed safe limits.

31.4.1.4 Recovery from Unusual Attitudes

31.4.1.4.1 Qualified

Demonstrates proper procedure for recovery from unusual attitudes.

31.4.1.4.2 Unqualified

Not familiar with proper procedures for recovery from unusual attitudes.

31.4.1.5 VOR/TACAN Positioning

31.4.1.5.1 Qualified

Demonstrates proper procedures for positioning aircraft on predetermined VOR/TACAN radial.

31.4.1.5.2 Unqualified

Not familiar with proper procedures for positioning aircraft on predetermined VOR/TACAN radial.

31.4.1.6 Partial Panel Airwork

31.4.1.6.1 Qualified

Maintains control and applies proper corrections to keep within safe limits of altitude, airspeed, attitude, and heading.

31.4.1.6.2 Unqualified

Exhibits poor or unsafe control. Exceeds safe limits of altitude, airspeed, attitude, or heading.

31.4.1.7 ADF/MDF Orientation

31.4.1.7.1 Qualified

Demonstrates proper procedures for aural null/ADF orientation.

31.4.1.7.2 Unqualified

Not familiar with proper procedures for aural null/ADF orientation.

31.4.2 Instrument Flight in Controlled Airspace (Part Two) Grading Criteria

31.4.2.1 Flight Planning

31.4.2.1.1 Qualified

Flight plan and clearance executed in accordance with LOCAL, Flight Information Publications (FLIP), OPNAV, and other governing instructions. Special factors, as required by the mission or aircraft configuration, are computed and recorded where applicable. Completes flight planning log for route without major errors. Fuel consumption is properly computed based upon available planning factors and recorded on the flight log. Ensures that maps and charts for route, destination, and alternate are available and are current. Weather factors, temperatures and winds aloft information, and Notices to Airmen (NOTAMs) are used in planning the mission. Standard Instrument Departure (SID)/IFR departure procedures and routes are obtained, if required, and takeoff/climb planned accordingly.

31.4.2.1.2 Unqualified

Flight planning was incomplete or resulted in discrepancies that could possibly prevent successful completion of the mission.

31.4.2.2 Clearance Compliance

31.4.2.2.1 Qualified

Maintains heading/track, airspeed, and altitude as briefed or cleared by controlling agency. Observes good radio discipline. Gives required reports clearly and in proper sequence.

31.4.2.2.2 Unqualified

Does not maintain heading/track, airspeed, or altitude as cleared. Little or no radio discipline. Unable to communicate without excessive words and time. Reports incomplete, requiring repeated transmissions.

31.4.2.3 Instrument Approaches

31.4.2.3.1 Qualified

Executes approaches as published or instructed. Completes prelanding checks and executes smooth, safe aircraft configuration transitions. Adheres to all altitude restrictions. A successful straight-in or circling approach to landing can be made.

31.4.2.3.2 Unqualified

Deviations from procedures, restrictions, instructions, or errors in technique jeopardize flight safety.

31.4.2.4 Communication and Navigation Equipment

31.4.2.4.1 Qualified

Executes prompt, proper procedures for activating, tuning, and utilizing installed communication and navigation equipment.

31.4.2.4.2 Unqualified

Not familiar with operation and use of installed communication and navigation equipment.

31.4.2.5 Emergency Procedures

31.4.2.5.1 Qualified

Properly analyzes the emergency situation and takes appropriate action without deviation, error, or omission.

31.4.2.5.2 Unqualified

Improperly analyzes or takes inappropriate action for emergency situations that jeopardizes the mission or flight safety.

31.4.2.6 Voice Procedures

31.4.2.6.1 Qualified

Complies with procedures prescribed by military and Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) regulations. Transmissions are made and received correctly on the proper frequency in minimum time and without interruption of other transmission. Monitored frequencies and/or facilities at appropriate time. Utilizes backup facilities without hesitation.

31.4.2.6.2 Unqualified

Fails to transmit or receive mandatory reports through omission or lack of familiarity with procedures. Any violation of military/FAA regulations. Any violation of safety.

31.4.3 Flight Evaluation Grade Determination

All areas on the instrument flight evaluation are critical. An unsatisfactory grade in any area shall result in an unsatisfactory grade for the flight.

31.5 INSTRUMENT EVALUATION FINAL GRADE DETERMINATION

The final NATOPS instrument evaluation grade shall be the same as the grade assigned for the flight evaluation. An evaluee who receives an “Unqualified” grade on the ground or flight evaluation shall be placed in an “Unqualified” instrument flight status until the evaluee achieves a grade of “Qualified” on a reevaluation.

31.6 RECORDS AND REPORTS

A NATOPS Instrument Rating Request OPNAV Form 3710/2 shall be completed for each evaluation and forwarded to the evaluee’s commanding officer. When completed, this form shall be retained in the individual’s flight training record. In addition, an entry shall be made in the pilot’s/NFO’s flight log book under “Qualifications and Achievements” as follows:

QUALIFICATION

Standard (or) special instrument rating.

Exp. (expiration date) DATE (Date issued).

SIGNATURE (Authenticating signature) (Unit issuing rating).

31.7 MAINTAINING ALL-WEATHER READINESS

NATOPS instrument evaluations, combined with a unit training syllabus that includes periodic flights to maintain these skills, will help each unit prepare for and remain ready to safely and successfully meet its all-weather commitments.

APPENDIX A

References

A.1 PURPOSE

As discussed in Chapter 1, this appendix lists publication series that contain additional information related to instrument flight. These publications are listed in Figure A-1 below.

Pub Number or Author	Pub Title and Other Significant Information
AFM 11-217V1	USAF Instrument Flight Manual
BUMEDINST 6410.9	Medical Monitoring Flight Personnel in Locations Where Flight Surgeons are not Available
FAA Order 7110.65	Air Traffic Control
MIL-DTL-85025 (AS)	Draft NATOPS Program Technical Publications and Products; Style, Format, and Common Technical Content
NAVAIR 00-80T-105	CV NATOPS Manual
NAVAIR 00-80T-106	LHA/LHD NATOPS Manual
NAVAIR 00-80T-111	V/STOL Shipboard and Landing Signal Officer NATOPS Manual
NAVAIR 00-80T-113	NATOPS Aircraft Signals Manual
NAVAIR 00-80T-122	NATOPS Helicopter Operating Procedures For Air-Capable Ships Manual
NAVMED FM 6410/1	Aeromedical Grounding Notice
NAVMED FM 6410/2	Aeromedical Flight Clearance Notice
OPNAVINST 3710.7	NATOPS General Flight and Operating Instructions
OPNAVINST 6110.1	Physical Readiness Standards
FAA	Aeronautical Information Manual
14 CFR Part 71	Airspace
14 CFR Part 91	General Operating and Flight Rules

Figure A-1. Other Publications Related to Instrument Flight

INDEX

B

G

R

S

LIST OF EFFECTIVE PAGES